

CHAPTER

23

Communications

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-EFFECTIVE PAGES			23-11-00 (cont.)		
1 thru 12	Oct 15/2023		11	Oct 15/2021	
23-CONTENTS			12	Oct 15/2022	
1	Oct 15/2021		13	Oct 15/2022	
2	Oct 15/2021		14	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		15	Oct 15/2021	
4	Oct 15/2021		16	Oct 15/2021	
5	Oct 15/2021		17	Oct 15/2021	
6	Oct 15/2021		18	Oct 15/2021	
7	Oct 15/2021		19	Oct 15/2021	
8	Oct 15/2021		20	Oct 15/2021	
9	Oct 15/2021		21	Oct 15/2021	
10	Oct 15/2021		22	Oct 15/2021	
11	Oct 15/2021		23	Oct 15/2021	
12	BLANK		24	Oct 15/2021	
23-11-00			25	Oct 15/2021	
1	Oct 15/2021		26	Oct 15/2021	
2	Oct 15/2021		27	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		28	Oct 15/2021	
4	Oct 15/2021		29	Oct 15/2021	
5	Oct 15/2021		30	Oct 15/2021	
6	Oct 15/2021		31	Oct 15/2021	
7	Oct 15/2021		32	Oct 15/2021	
8	Oct 15/2021		33	Oct 15/2021	
9	Oct 15/2021		34	Oct 15/2021	
10	Oct 15/2021				

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-11-00 (cont.)			23-12-00 (cont.)		
35	Oct 15/2021		11	Oct 15/2021	
36	Oct 15/2021		12	Feb 15/2022	
37	Oct 15/2021		13	Oct 15/2021	
38	Oct 15/2021		14	Feb 15/2022	
39	Oct 15/2021		15	Oct 15/2021	
40	Oct 15/2021		16	Feb 15/2022	
41	Oct 15/2021		17	Oct 15/2022	
42	Oct 15/2021		18	Feb 15/2022	
43	Oct 15/2021		19	Oct 15/2021	
44	Oct 15/2021		20	Feb 15/2022	
45	Oct 15/2021		21	Oct 15/2021	
46	BLANK		22	Oct 15/2021	
23-12-00			23	Oct 15/2021	
1	Oct 15/2021		24	Oct 15/2021	
2	Feb 15/2022		25	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		26	Oct 15/2021	
4	Feb 15/2022		27	Oct 15/2021	
5	Oct 15/2021		28	Oct 15/2021	
6	Feb 15/2022		29	Oct 15/2021	
7	Feb 15/2022		30	Feb 15/2022	
8	Oct 15/2021		31	Oct 15/2021	
9	Oct 15/2021		32	Oct 15/2021	
10	Oct 15/2021		33	Oct 15/2021	
			34	Feb 15/2022	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-12-00 (cont.)			23-15-00 (cont.)		
35	Oct 15/2021		20	Oct 15/2021	
36	Oct 15/2021		21	Oct 15/2021	
37	Oct 15/2021		22	Oct 15/2021	
38	BLANK		23	Oct 15/2021	
23-15-00			24	Oct 15/2021	
1	Oct 15/2021		25	Jun 15/2022	
2	Oct 15/2021		26	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		27	Oct 15/2021	
4	Oct 15/2021		28	Oct 15/2021	
5	Oct 15/2021		29	Oct 15/2021	
6	Oct 15/2021		30	Oct 15/2021	
7	Oct 15/2021		31	Oct 15/2021	
8	Oct 15/2021		32	Oct 15/2021	
9	Oct 15/2021		33	Oct 15/2021	
10	Oct 15/2021		34	Oct 15/2021	
11	Oct 15/2021		35	Oct 15/2021	
12	Oct 15/2021		36	Oct 15/2021	
13	Oct 15/2021		37	Oct 15/2021	
14	Oct 15/2021		38	Oct 15/2021	
15	Oct 15/2021		39	Oct 15/2021	
16	Oct 15/2021		40	Oct 15/2021	
17	Oct 15/2021		41	Oct 15/2021	
18	Oct 15/2021		42	Oct 15/2021	
19	Oct 15/2021		43	Oct 15/2021	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-15-00 (cont.)			23-15-00 (cont.)		
44	Oct 15/2021		67	Oct 15/2021	
45	Oct 15/2021		68	Oct 15/2021	
46	Oct 15/2021		69	Oct 15/2021	
47	Oct 15/2021		70	Oct 15/2021	
48	Oct 15/2021		71	Oct 15/2021	
49	Oct 15/2021		72	Oct 15/2021	
50	Oct 15/2021		73	Oct 15/2021	
51	Oct 15/2021		74	Oct 15/2021	
52	Oct 15/2021		75	Oct 15/2021	
53	Oct 15/2021		76	Oct 15/2021	
54	Oct 15/2021		77	Oct 15/2021	
55	Oct 15/2021		78	Oct 15/2021	
56	Oct 15/2021		79	Oct 15/2021	
57	Oct 15/2021		80	Oct 15/2021	
58	Oct 15/2021		81	Oct 15/2021	
59	Oct 15/2021		82	BLANK	
60	Oct 15/2021		23-24-00		
61	Oct 15/2021		1	Oct 15/2021	
62	Oct 15/2021		2	Oct 15/2021	
63	Oct 15/2021		3	Oct 15/2021	
64	Oct 15/2021		4	Oct 15/2021	
65	Oct 15/2021		5	Oct 15/2021	
66	Oct 15/2021		6	Oct 15/2021	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-24-00 (cont.)			23-24-01		
7	Oct 15/2022		1	Oct 15/2021	
8	Oct 15/2021		2	Oct 15/2021	
9	Oct 15/2021		3	Oct 15/2021	
10	Oct 15/2021		4	Oct 15/2021	
11	Oct 15/2021		5	Oct 15/2021	
12	Oct 15/2021		6	BLANK	
13	Oct 15/2021		23-27-00		
14	Oct 15/2021		1	Oct 15/2021	
15	Oct 15/2021		2	Oct 15/2021	
16	Oct 15/2021		3	Oct 15/2021	
17	Oct 15/2021		4	Oct 15/2021	
18	Oct 15/2021		5	Oct 15/2021	
19	Oct 15/2021		6	Oct 15/2021	
20	Oct 15/2021		7	Oct 15/2021	
21	Oct 15/2021		8	Oct 15/2021	
22	Oct 15/2021		9	Oct 15/2021	
23	Oct 15/2021		R 10	Oct 15/2023	
24	Oct 15/2021		11	Oct 15/2022	
25	Oct 15/2021		12	Oct 15/2021	
26	Oct 15/2021		13	Oct 15/2021	
27	Oct 15/2021		R 14	Oct 15/2023	
28	BLANK		15	Oct 15/2021	
			16	Oct 15/2021	
			17	Oct 15/2021	
			18	Oct 15/2021	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-27-00 (cont.)			23-28-00 (cont.)		
19	Oct 15/2021		9	Oct 15/2021	
20	Oct 15/2021		10	Oct 15/2021	
21	Oct 15/2021		11	Oct 15/2021	
22	Oct 15/2021		12	Oct 15/2021	
23	Oct 15/2021		13	Oct 15/2021	
24	Oct 15/2021		14	Oct 15/2021	
25	Oct 15/2021		15	Oct 15/2021	
26	Oct 15/2021		16	Oct 15/2021	
27	Oct 15/2021		17	Oct 15/2021	
28	Oct 15/2021		18	Oct 15/2021	
29	Oct 15/2021		19	Oct 15/2021	
30	Oct 15/2021		20	Oct 15/2021	
31	Oct 15/2021		21	Oct 15/2021	
32	BLANK		22	BLANK	
23-28-00			23-31-00		
1	Oct 15/2021		1	Oct 15/2021	
2	Oct 15/2021		2	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		3	Oct 15/2021	
4	Oct 15/2021		4	Oct 15/2021	
5	Oct 15/2021		5	Jun 15/2023	
6	Jun 15/2023		6	Jun 15/2023	
7	Jun 15/2023		7	Oct 15/2021	
8	Oct 15/2021		8	Oct 15/2021	
			9	Oct 15/2021	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-31-00 (cont.)			23-31-00 (cont.)		
10	Oct 15/2021		33	Oct 15/2021	
11	Oct 15/2021		34	Oct 15/2021	
12	Oct 15/2021		35	Oct 15/2021	
13	Oct 15/2021		36	Oct 15/2021	
14	Oct 15/2021		37	Oct 15/2021	
15	Jun 15/2022		38	Oct 15/2021	
16	Jun 15/2022		39	Oct 15/2021	
17	Oct 15/2021		40	BLANK	
18	Oct 15/2021		23-41-00		
19	Oct 15/2021		1	Oct 15/2021	
20	Oct 15/2021		2	Oct 15/2021	
21	Oct 15/2021		3	Oct 15/2021	
22	Oct 15/2021		4	Jun 15/2022	
23	Oct 15/2021		5	Oct 15/2021	
24	Oct 15/2021		6	Oct 15/2021	
25	Oct 15/2021		7	Oct 15/2021	
26	Jun 15/2022		8	Oct 15/2021	
27	Oct 15/2021		9	Oct 15/2021	
28	Oct 15/2021		10	Jun 15/2022	
29	Oct 15/2021		11	Oct 15/2021	
30	Oct 15/2021		12	Jun 15/2022	
31	Jun 15/2022		13	Oct 15/2021	
32	Jun 15/2022		14	Jun 15/2022	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-41-00 (cont.)			23-42-00 (cont.)		
15	Oct 15/2021		21	Oct 15/2021	
16	BLANK		22	Oct 15/2021	
23-42-00			23	Oct 15/2021	
1	Oct 15/2021		24	Oct 15/2021	
2	Oct 15/2021		25	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		26	Oct 15/2021	
4	Oct 15/2021		27	Oct 15/2021	
5	Oct 15/2021		28	Oct 15/2021	
6	Oct 15/2021		29	Oct 15/2021	
7	Oct 15/2021		30	Oct 15/2021	
8	Jun 15/2022		31	Oct 15/2021	
9	Oct 15/2021		32	Oct 15/2021	
10	Oct 15/2021		33	Oct 15/2021	
11	Oct 15/2021		34	Oct 15/2021	
12	Oct 15/2021		35	Oct 15/2021	
13	Oct 15/2021		36	Oct 15/2021	
14	Oct 15/2021		23-43-00		
15	Oct 15/2021		1	Oct 15/2021	
16	Oct 15/2021		2	Oct 15/2021	
17	Oct 15/2021		3	Oct 15/2021	
18	Oct 15/2021		4	Oct 15/2021	
19	Oct 15/2021		5	Oct 15/2021	
20	Oct 15/2021		6	Oct 15/2021	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-43-00 (cont.)			23-51-00 (cont.)		
7	Oct 15/2021		13	Oct 15/2021	
8	Oct 15/2021		14	Oct 15/2021	
9	Oct 15/2021		15	Oct 15/2021	
10	Oct 15/2021		16	Oct 15/2021	
11	Oct 15/2021		R 17	Oct 15/2023	
12	Oct 15/2021		R 18	Oct 15/2023	
13	Oct 15/2021		R 19	Oct 15/2023	
14	Oct 15/2021		20	Feb 15/2022	
15	Oct 15/2021		21	Feb 15/2022	
16	BLANK		22	Jun 15/2022	
23-51-00			23	Oct 15/2021	
1	Oct 15/2021		24	Oct 15/2021	
2	Oct 15/2021		25	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		26	Oct 15/2021	
4	Jun 15/2022		27	Oct 15/2021	
5	Jun 15/2022		28	Oct 15/2021	
R 6	Oct 15/2023		29	Feb 15/2022	
7	Oct 15/2021		R 30	Oct 15/2023	
R 8	Oct 15/2023		31	Feb 15/2022	
9	Feb 15/2022		R 32	Oct 15/2023	
R 10	Oct 15/2023		33	Oct 15/2021	
R 11	Oct 15/2023		34	Feb 15/2022	
12	Oct 15/2021		35	Oct 15/2021	
			36	Oct 15/2021	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-51-00 (cont.)			23-71-00 (cont.)		
37	Oct 15/2021		7	Oct 15/2021	
38	Oct 15/2021		8	Oct 15/2021	
39	Oct 15/2021		9	Oct 15/2021	
40	Oct 15/2021		10	Oct 15/2021	
41	Oct 15/2021		11	Oct 15/2021	
42	Feb 15/2022		12	Oct 15/2021	
43	Oct 15/2021		13	Oct 15/2021	
44	Oct 15/2021		14	Oct 15/2021	
45	Oct 15/2021		15	Oct 15/2021	
46	Oct 15/2021		16	Oct 15/2021	
R 47	Oct 15/2023		17	Oct 15/2021	
R 48	Oct 15/2023		18	Oct 15/2021	
23-61-00			19	Oct 15/2021	
1	Oct 15/2021		R 20	Oct 15/2023	
2	Oct 15/2021		21	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		22	Feb 15/2022	
4	BLANK		23	Feb 15/2022	
23-71-00			24	Oct 15/2021	
1	Oct 15/2021		25	Oct 15/2021	
2	Oct 15/2021		26	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		27	Oct 15/2021	
4	Oct 15/2021		28	Oct 15/2021	
5	Oct 15/2021		29	Oct 15/2021	
6	Oct 15/2021		30	Oct 15/2021	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-71-00 (cont.)			23-81-00 (cont.)		
31	Oct 15/2021		3	Oct 15/2021	
32	BLANK		4	Oct 15/2021	
23-75-00			5	Oct 15/2021	
1	Oct 15/2021		6	Oct 15/2021	
2	Oct 15/2021		7	Oct 15/2021	
3	Oct 15/2021		8	Oct 15/2021	
4	Oct 15/2021		9	Oct 15/2021	
5	Oct 15/2021		10	Oct 15/2021	
6	Oct 15/2021		11	Oct 15/2021	
7	Oct 15/2021		12	Oct 15/2021	
8	Jun 15/2022		13	Oct 15/2021	
9	Oct 15/2021		14	Oct 15/2021	
10	Oct 15/2021		15	Oct 15/2021	
11	Oct 15/2021		16	Oct 15/2021	
12	Oct 15/2021		17	Oct 15/2021	
13	Oct 15/2021		18	Oct 15/2021	
14	Jun 15/2022		19	Oct 15/2021	
15	Oct 15/2021		20	BLANK	
16	Oct 15/2021		23-82-00		
17	Oct 15/2021		1	Oct 15/2021	
18	BLANK		2	Oct 15/2021	
23-81-00			3	Oct 15/2021	
1	Oct 15/2021		4	Oct 15/2021	
2	Oct 15/2021		5	Oct 15/2021	

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS

Subject/Page	Date	COC	Subject/Page	Date	COC
23-82-00 (cont.)					
6	Oct 15/2021				
7	Oct 15/2021				
8	Oct 15/2021				
9	Oct 15/2021				
10	BLANK				

A = Added, R = Revised, D = Deleted, O = Overflow, C = Customer Originated Change

23-EFFECTIVE PAGES

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

CH-SC-SU	SUBJECT	PAGE	EFFECT
23-11-00	HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	5	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS	8	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSCEIVER LOCATION	10	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ANTENNA COMPONENT LOCATIONS	12	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTERFACES	15	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNING INTERFACES	18	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF COMMUNICATION TRANSCEIVER	20	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF ANTENNA COUPLER	22	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF ANTENNA	24	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF FUNCTIONAL MODES	26	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HOME/RECEIVE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	28	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	31	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSMIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	34	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - OPERATION	37	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - BITE	41	SIA ALL
23-11-00	HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY	44	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VERY HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

<u>CH-SC-SU</u>	<u>SUBJECT</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>EFFECT</u>
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS	6	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT (EEC) COMPONENT LOCATIONS	8	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ANTENNA COMPONENT LOCATIONS	10	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 1 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES	12	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 2 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES	14	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 3 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES	16	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNING INTERFACES	18	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL	20	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF TRANSCEIVER	22	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF ANTENNA	24	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - RECEIVE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	26	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSMIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	28	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - OPERATION	30	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - BUILT IN TEST	32	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL BITE	34	SIA ALL
23-12-00	VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY	36	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	1	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	5	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

CH-SC-SU	SUBJECT	PAGE	EFFECT
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT	8	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - AFT CARGO COMPARTMENT	10	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - ANTENNA	12	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - POWER	14	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - TRANSMIT/RECEIVE	16	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - CONTROL AND STATUS	19	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - SATELLITE DATA UNIT	22	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	24	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - LOW NOISE AMPLIFIER/DIPLEXER	28	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - LNA/DIP - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	30	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - HIGH GAIN ANTENNA	32	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODULE	34	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODULE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	37	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAIN MENU	40	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - LOG ON	44	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - DIRECTORY	48	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAKE CALL	51	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - VOICE COMMUNICATION	54	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SOFTWARE LOADING	56	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

CH-SC-SU	SUBJECT	PAGE	EFFECT
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SDU BITE	59	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SATCOM MAINT PAGE	62	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - LAST & PREVIOUS LEG REPORT PAGES	64	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - CLASS 3 FAULTS PAGE	66	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - TEST PAGE	68	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - LRU IDENTIFICATION PAGE	70	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - DATA LOADER MENU	72	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - CONFIGURATION DATA PAGES	74	SIA ALL
23-15-00	SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY	76	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS	6	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - INTERFACE	8	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - ELT CONTROL PANEL	10	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRANSMITTER	12	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION MODULE	14	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

<u>CH-SC-SU</u>	<u>SUBJECT</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>EFFECT</u>
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - ANTENNA	16	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	19	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINTS - BATTERY	22	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINTS - SYSTEM TEST	24	SIA ALL
23-24-00	EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY	26	SIA ALL
23-24-01	LOW FREQUENCY UNDERWATER LOCATOR - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-24-01	LOW FREQUENCY UNDERWATER LOCATOR - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-27-00	AIRCRAFT COMMUNICATIONS ADDRESSING AND REPORTING SYSTEM (ACARS) - INTRODUCTION	1	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION	6	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS	8	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - POWER, CALL, AND COMMUNICATION INTERFACES	10	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - DISCRETE INTERFACES	12	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - DIGITAL INTERFACES	14	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - COMMUNICATIONS MANAGEMENT UNIT	16	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - AIRPLANE PERSONALITY MODULE	18	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - OPERATION - 1	20	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - OPERATION - 2	23	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

<u>CH-SC-SU</u>	<u>SUBJECT</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>EFFECT</u>
23-27-00	ACARS - OPERATION - DOWNLINK REPORTS	26	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SOFTWARE LOADING	28	SIA ALL
23-27-00	ACARS - SYSTEM SUMMARY	30	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELECTIVE CALLING SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELCAL SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELCAL SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS	6	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELCAL SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS	8	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELCAL SYSTEM - NOSE WHEEL WELL COMPONENT LOCATION	10	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELCAL SYSTEM - INTERFACES	12	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELCAL SYSTEM - SELCAL DECODER UNIT	14	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELCAL SYSTEM - SELCAL PROGRAM SWITCH MODULE	16	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELCAL SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	18	SIA ALL
23-28-00	SELCAL SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY	20	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PASSENGER ADDRESS SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	5	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION	10	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS	12	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION	14	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - INTERFACES	16	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

<u>CH-SC-SU</u>	<u>SUBJECT</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>EFFECT</u>
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - CREW ANNOUNCEMENT INTERFACE	18	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - INDICATION INTERFACE	20	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER ADDRESS AMPLIFIER	22	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER SERVICE UNIT SPEAKERS	24	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - LAVATORY SPEAKERS	26	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - ATTENDANT SPEAKERS	28	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - AMPLIFIER FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	31	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - OPERATION - ANNOUNCEMENTS	34	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - AMPLIFIER TEST	36	SIA ALL
23-31-00	PA SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY	38	SIA ALL
23-41-00	SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-41-00	SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-41-00	SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS	6	SIA ALL
23-41-00	SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - HANDSET LOCATIONS	8	SIA ALL
23-41-00	SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - JACK LOCATIONS	10	SIA ALL
23-41-00	SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTERFACES	12	SIA ALL
23-41-00	SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	14	SIA ALL
23-42-00	FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-42-00	FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM/CABIN INTERPHONE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

CH-SC-SU	SUBJECT	PAGE	EFFECT
23-42-00	FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - PASSENGER COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS	8	SIA ALL
23-42-00	FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION	10	SIA ALL
23-42-00	FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTERFACES	14	SIA ALL
23-42-00	FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - HANDSET	18	SIA ALL
23-42-00	FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	20	SIA ALL
23-42-00	FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL	24	SIA ALL
23-43-00	GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-43-00	GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-43-00	GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - EXTERNAL COMPONENT LOCATION	6	SIA ALL
23-43-00	GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS	8	SIA ALL
23-43-00	GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - INTERFACES	10	SIA ALL
23-43-00	GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - CALL HORN	12	SIA ALL
23-43-00	GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	14	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS	6	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS	8	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

<u>CH-SC-SU</u>	<u>SUBJECT</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>EFFECT</u>
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - EXTERNAL FLIGHT INTERPHONE JACK LOCATION	12	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - POWER INTERFACE	14	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT INTERFACES	17	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMMUNICATION SYSTEM INTERFACES	22	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - NAVIGATION INTERFACE	24	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL	27	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT	32	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - CONTROL WHEEL PTT SWITCH	34	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	37	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - PTT FUNCTION	40	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	43	SIA ALL
23-51-00	FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY	46	SIA ALL
23-61-00	STATIC DISCHARGERS	2	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION	6	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - RECORDER LOCATION	8	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - INTERFACE	11	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

<u>CH-SC-SU</u>	<u>SUBJECT</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>EFFECT</u>
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - VOICE RECORDER SWITCH PANEL	14	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - VOICE RECORDER UNIT	16	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - COCKPIT VOICE RECORDER PANEL OPERATION	18	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - UNDERWATER LOCATOR BEACON	20	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - RECORDER INDEPENDENT POWER SUPPLY (RIPS)	22	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	25	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - MAINTENANCE	28	SIA ALL
23-71-00	VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - SUMMARY	30	SIA ALL
23-75-00	FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-75-00	FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-75-00	FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS	6	SIA ALL
23-75-00	FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INTERFACES	8	SIA ALL
23-75-00	FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INFRARED CAMERA	10	SIA ALL
23-75-00	FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	12	SIA ALL
23-75-00	VIDEO INTERFACE UNIT	14	SIA ALL
23-75-00	CAMERA CONTROL PANEL	16	SIA ALL
23-81-00	PC POWER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS

**CHAPTER 23
COMMUNICATIONS**

<u>CH-SC-SU</u>	<u>SUBJECT</u>	<u>PAGE</u>	<u>EFFECT</u>
23-81-00	PC POWER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	4	SIA ALL
23-81-00	PC POWER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION	6	SIA ALL
23-81-00	PC POWER SYSTEM - MCU - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	8	SIA ALL
23-81-00	PC POWER SYSTEM - MCU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION	11	SIA ALL
23-81-00	PC POWER SYSTEM - OUTLET UNITS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	14	SIA ALL
23-81-00	PC POWER SYSTEM - ISPS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	16	SIA ALL
23-81-00	PC POWER SYSTEM - CONFIGURATION MODULE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	18	SIA ALL
23-82-00	FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION	2	SIA ALL
23-82-00	FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - OUTLET UNITS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	6	SIA ALL
23-82-00	FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - ISPC - GENERAL DESCRIPTION	8	SIA ALL

23-CONTENTS



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-11-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

General

The high frequency (HF) communication system supplies voice communication over long distances. It gives communication between airplanes or between ground stations and airplanes.

The HF system operates in the aeronautical frequency range of 2 MHz to 29.999 MHz. The system uses the surface of the earth and an ionized layer to cause a reflection (skip) of the communication signal. The distance between skips changes due to the time of day, radio frequency, and airplane altitude.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- ACARS - aircraft communications addressing and reporting system
- ACP - audio control panel
- AM - amplitude modulated
- AME - amplitude modulation equivalent
- ARINC - Aeronautical Radio Incorporated
- BITE - built-in test equipment
- comm - communication
- EE - electronic equipment
- EEC - electronic equipment compartment
- FDR - flight data recorder
- FDRS - flight data recorder system
- freq - frequency
- HF - high frequency
- I/C - interphone communication
- LCD - liquid crystal display
- LED - light emitting diode
- LRU - line replaceable unit
- mic - microphone
- PSEU - proximity switch electronics unit
- PTT - push-to-talk

- RCP - radio communication panel
- REU - remote electronics unit
- RF - radio frequency
- R/T - receive/transmit
- SELCAL - selective calling
- sq - squelch
- sql - squelch
- SSB - single side band
- USB - upper side band
- VSWR - voltage standing wave ratio
- xmit - transmit

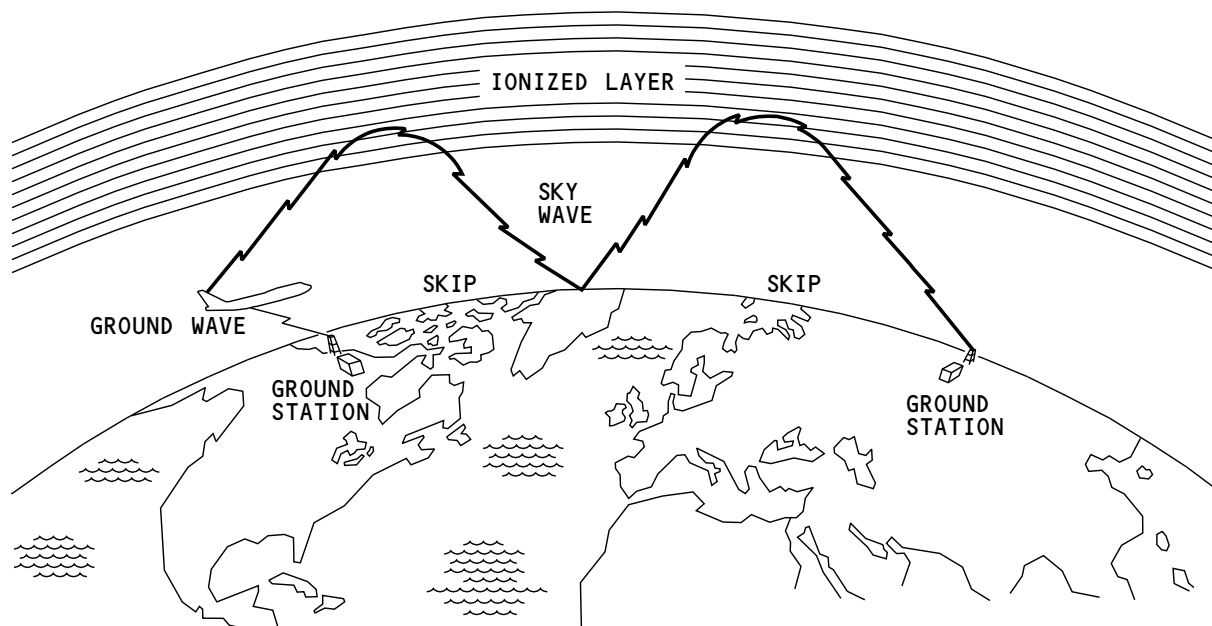
23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



M79362 S0004622709_V1

HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-11-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-11-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The HF communication system supplies the flight crew with long range voice communication. The HF communication system can be used to communicate between airplanes and between airplanes and ground stations.

The HF communication radio uses frequency select and control signals to transmit and receive voice communication. The HF radio modulates an RF carrier signal with voice audio from the flight interphone system. During the receive mode, the HF radio demodulates the RF carrier signal. This isolates the voice audio from the RF signal. The HF transceiver sends the audio to the flight interphone system.

The HF system operates in the frequency range of 2.000 MHz to 29.999 MHz.

System Components

The HF communication system has two HF radios. These are the components:

- Radio communication panel
- HF transceiver
- HF antenna coupler
- Common or shared HF antenna.

The radio communication panel (RCP) supplies selected frequency information and control signals to tune the HF transceivers and make radio selections. You can use the RCP to select amplitude modulated (AM) or upper side-band (USB) operation. Use the RF sensitivity control to improve HF reception. The RCPs can select and control the frequency of any HF communication radio.

The HF transceiver transmits and receives information. The transceiver transmit circuits use flight interphone audio to modulate an RF carrier signal. This voice information goes to other airplanes and ground stations. The receive circuits demodulate the received RF carrier signal to isolate the audio. The received audio is used by the flight crew or other airplane systems.

The HF antenna coupler matches the antenna impedance to the transceiver output over the HF frequency range. During the transmit mode, the antenna coupler receives modulated RF from the transceiver and sends it to the antenna. During the receive mode, the antenna coupler receives modulated RF from the antenna and sends it to the transceiver.

The HF antenna transmits and receives audio modulated RF signals.

External Interface

The HF communication system connects with these components/systems:

- Remote electronics unit (REU)
- SELCAL decoder unit
- Air/ground relay
- Flight data acquisition unit (FDAU).

System Operation

The control panel sends selected frequency information and control signals to the transceiver. The audio control panel sends these signals to the REU:

- HF radio select signal
- Receive volume control
- Push-to-talk (PTT).

During transmit, microphone audio and PTT signals go to the HF transceiver through the REU. The transceiver uses the microphone audio to modulate an RF carrier signal generated in the transceiver. The transceiver sends the modulated RF signal through the antenna coupler to the antenna for transmission to other airplanes and ground stations.

Also during transmit, the flight data acquisition unit receives a PTT signal from the transceiver. The flight data acquisition unit uses the PTT for key event marking to record the transmit event.

23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION**

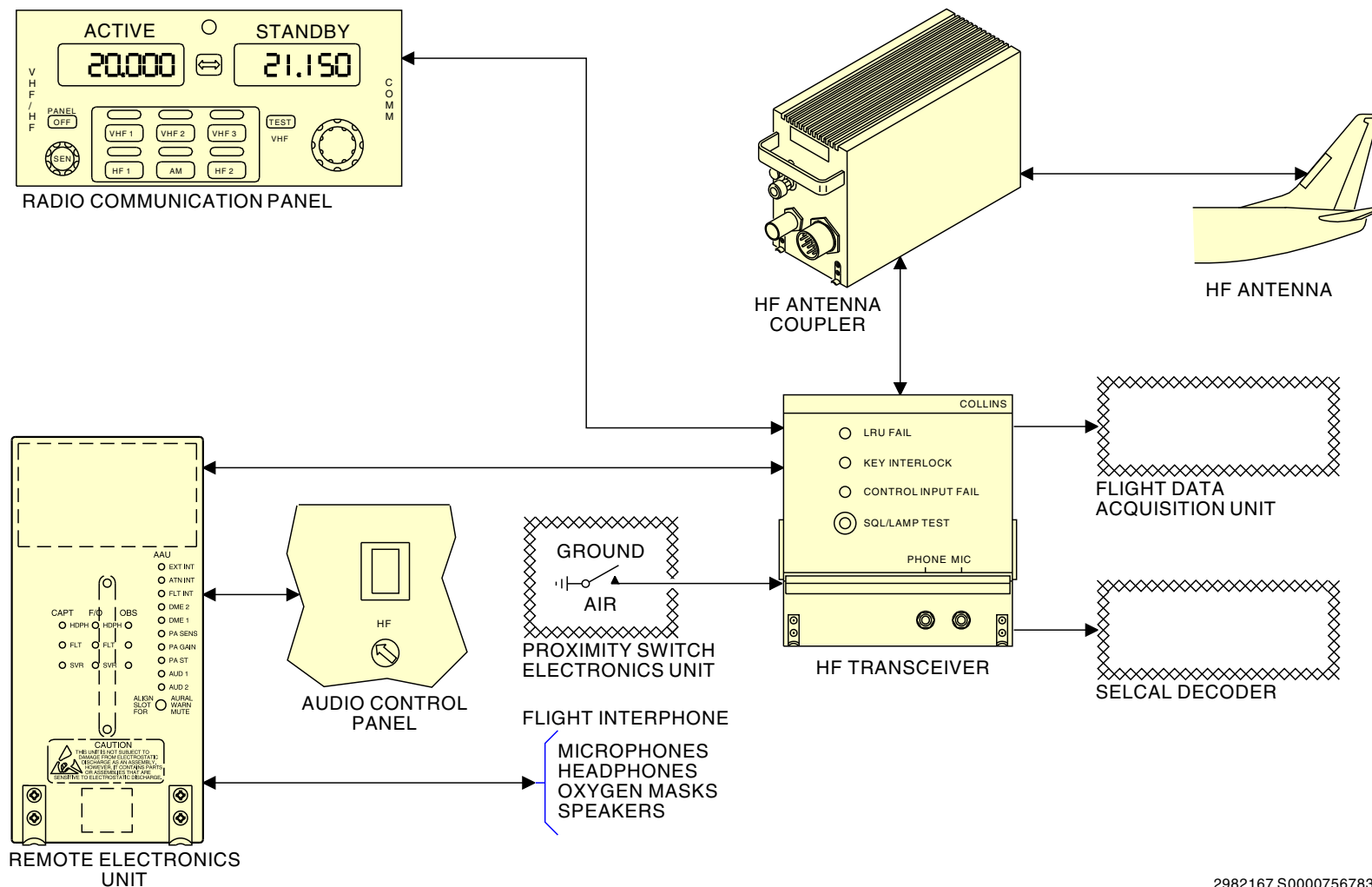
During receive, the antenna receives a modulated RF signal and sends it through the antenna coupler to the transceiver. The transceiver demodulates or isolates the audio from the RF carrier. The received audio goes from the HF transceiver to the flight interphone speakers and headsets through the REU.

The SELCAL decoder unit receives audio from the HF transceiver. The SELCAL decoder unit monitors the audio for SELCAL calls that come from the ground station.

The HF transceiver receives an air/ground discrete. The HF transceiver uses the discrete to calculate flight legs for internal fault memory.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



2982167 S0000756783_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

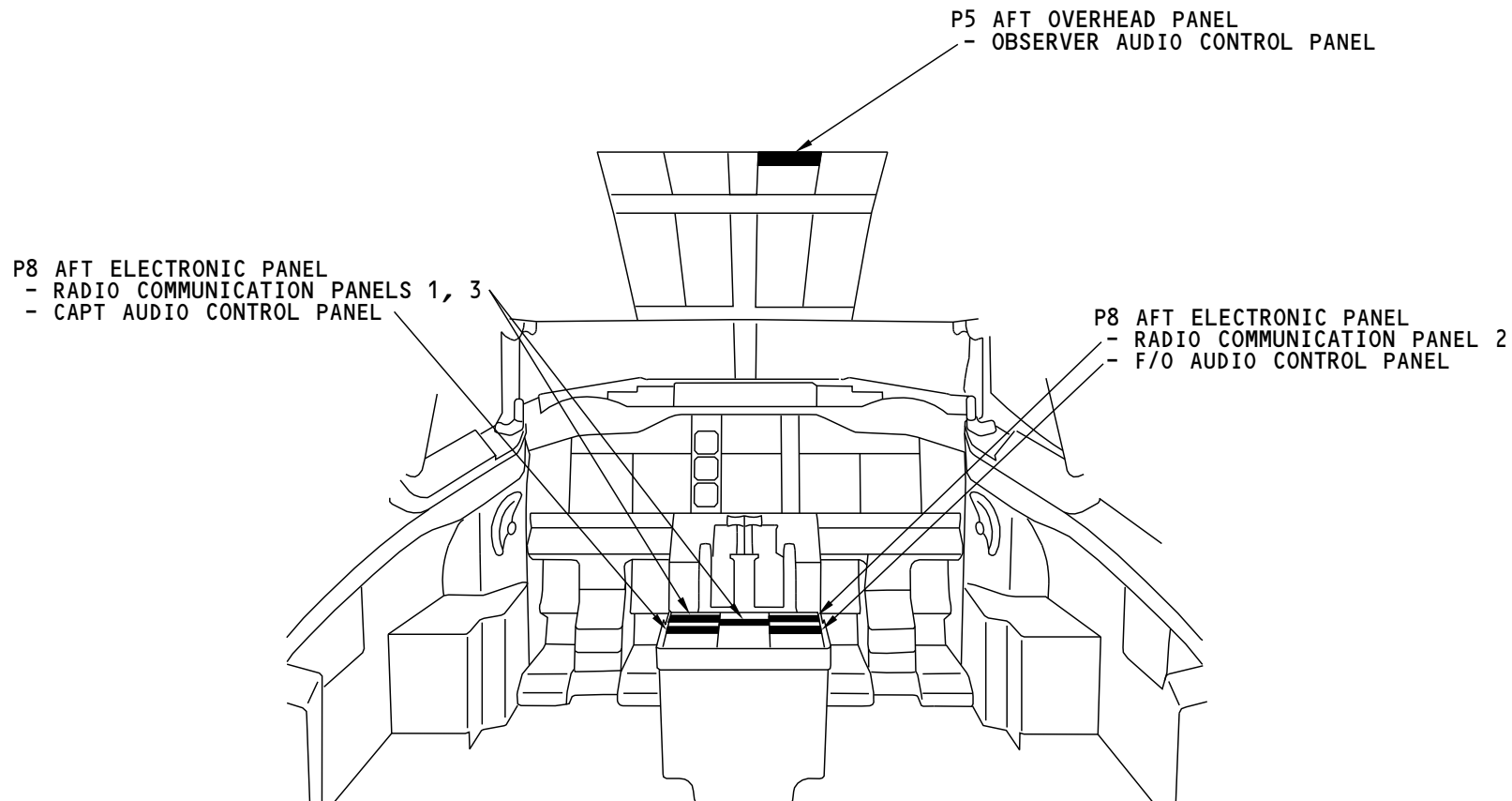
Flight Compartment

The radio communication panels are on the P8 aft electronics panel.

The audio control panels (ACPs) are part of the flight interphone system. The ACPs have an interface with the HF communication system through the REU. The captain and first officer ACPs are on the P8 aft electronics panel. The first observer ACP is on the P5 aft overhead panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M79397 S0004622747_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



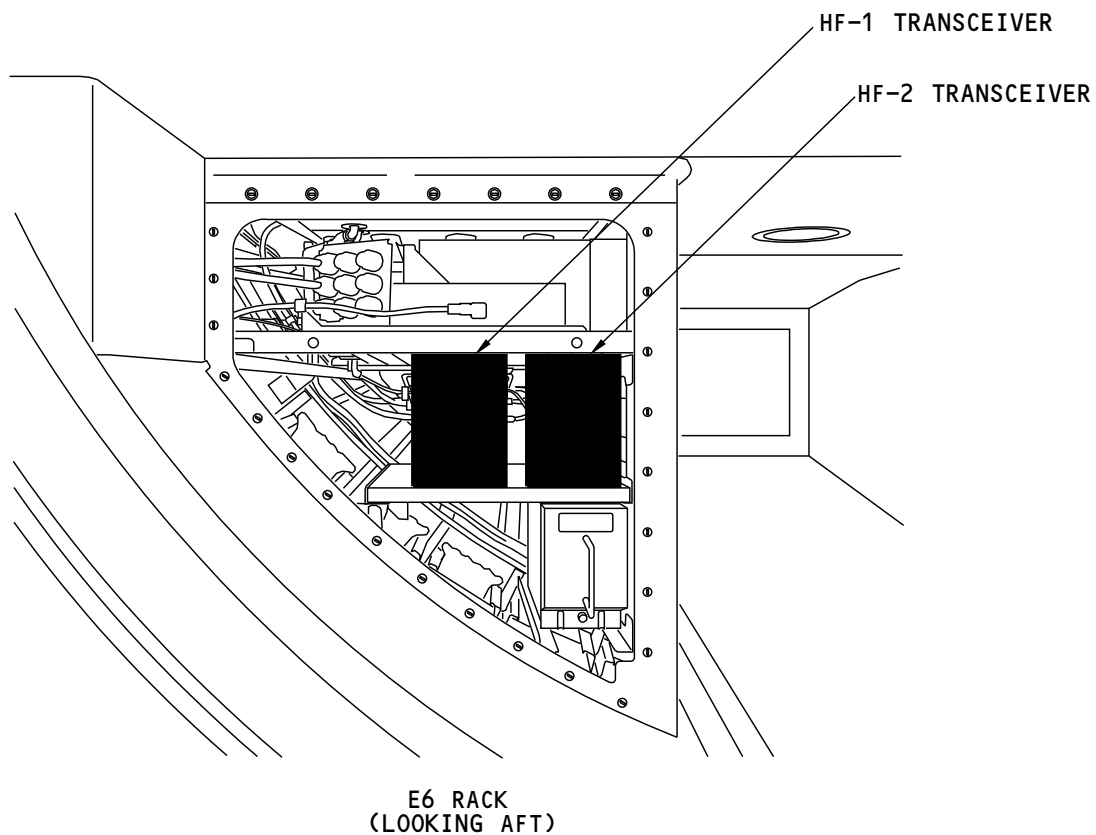
HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSCEIVER LOCATION

HF Transceiver

The HF transceivers are on the E6-2 shelf.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSCEIVER LOCATION



M79401 S0004622757_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSCEIVER LOCATION

23-11-00

23-11-00-004

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ANTENNA COMPONENT LOCATIONS

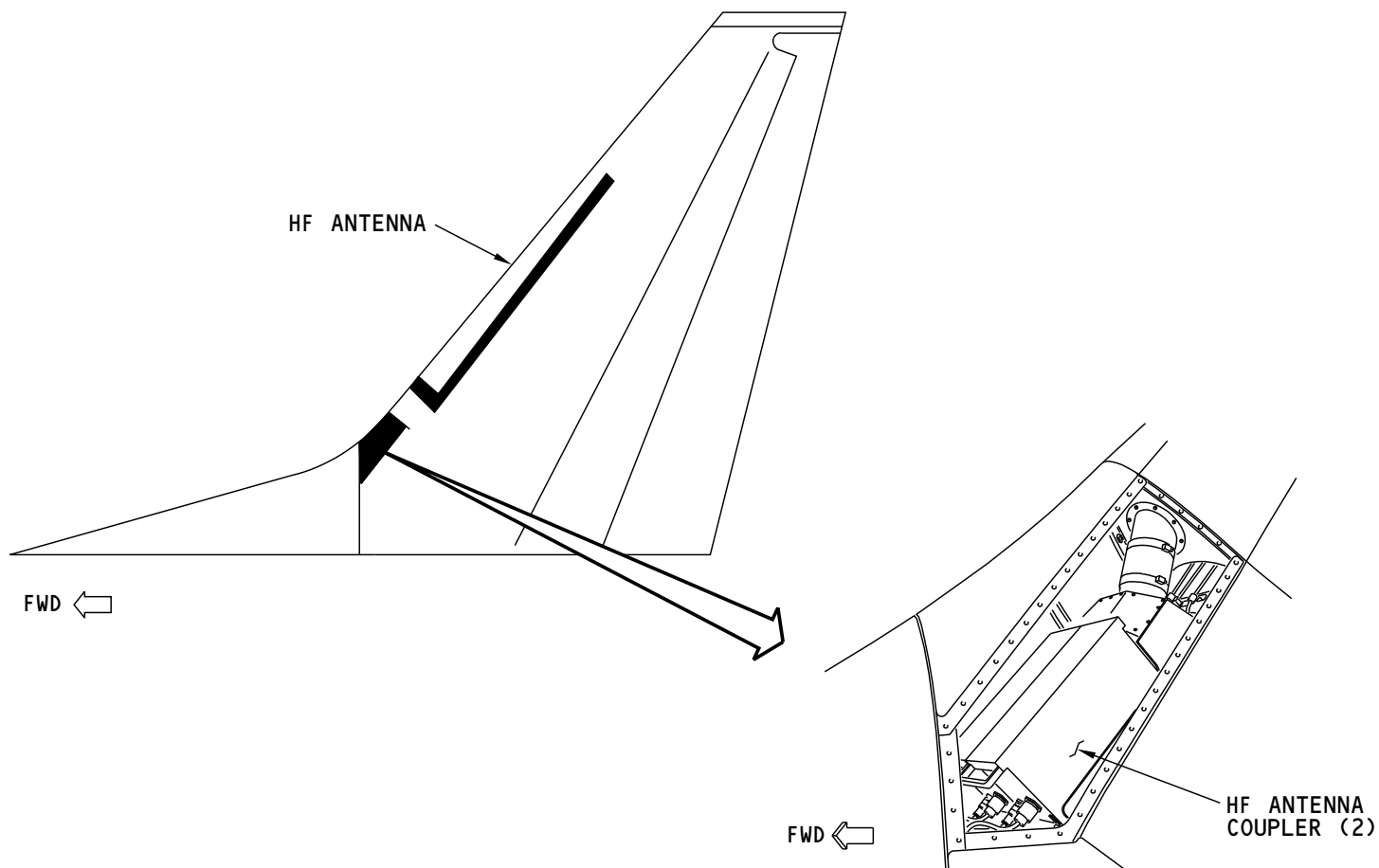
General

The HF antenna is on the leading edge of the vertical stabilizer.

The antenna couplers are inside the vertical stabilizer.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ANTENNA COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M79409 S0004622763_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ANTENNA COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-11-00



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-11-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTERFACES

Power

The 115v ac transfer (XFR) bus supplies three-phase power to the HF transceiver.

The transceiver supplies 115v ac and 28v dc power to the HF antenna coupler.

HF Transceiver

The HF transceiver has an interface with these components:

- RCP 1, 2, and 3
- Selective calling (SELCAL) decoder
- Remote electronics unit (REU)
- HF antenna coupler
- Flight data acquisition unit
- Proximity switch electronics unit (PSEU).

Radio Communication Panel

RCP 1 supplies frequency information to the HF 1 transceiver on an ARINC 429/719 bus to port A and to the HF 2 transceiver on port B. RCP 2 supplies frequency information to the HF 1 transceiver on an ARINC 429/719 bus to port B and to the HF 2 transceiver on port A. For more information about tuning interfaces, see HF Communication System - Tuning Interfaces.

The HF transceiver supplies the condition of the transceiver to the radio communication panels. The condition of the transceiver is one of the two: OK or FAILED.

The radio communication panel supplies these to the HF transceiver:

- Amplitude modulated or single side-band control
- Tuning data
- Port select discrete.

Antenna Couplers

The antenna couplers supply these to the transceivers:

- Key interlock
- Tune in progress
- Received RF
- RF fault
- Coupler fault.

The antenna coupler opens the key interlock discrete to stop the transceiver transmit mode. The coupler sends the tune in progress discrete to request tuning power from the transceiver. The RF fault is sent to the transceiver when the coupler detects a fault external to the coupler. The coupler sends the coupler fault discrete to the transceiver when it detects an internal failure. Received RF from the antenna is sent to the transceiver during receive mode.

The antenna couplers share one common HF antenna. During the transmit mode, only one coupler has an electrical interface with the antenna. The on-side coupler sends the off-side coupler an inhibit discrete to prevent the off-side radio from transmitting. The couplers supply transmitted RF to the antenna. They receive push-to-talk (PTT) from the REU to enable the coupler tune mode.

The HF transceiver supplies these to the antenna coupler:

- Transmitted RF
- RF carrier during tune mode
- Rechannel pulse.

Modulated RF is sent to the antenna through the antenna coupler to be transmitted. During tune mode, a low wattage RF carrier signal is sent to the coupler to match impedance between the transceiver and the antenna. The transceiver sends the rechannel pulse to start the coupler home sequence mode.



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTERFACES

HF Antenna

The HF antenna receives an RF signal from the antenna coupler and transmits the RF signal to other airplane and ground HF communication systems. The antenna also receives incoming RF signals and sends the RF signals to the antenna coupler.

External Interfaces

The HF transceiver has an interface with these components from other airplane systems:

- Remote electronics unit (REU)
- Selective calling (SELCAL) decoder
- Flight data acquisition unit
- PSEU.

The remote electronics unit sends flight crew microphone (mic) audio to the transceiver to be transmitted. It also sends a PTT to start the transceivers transmit mode. The transceiver sends side tone and received audio to the REU for the flight interphone system.

The transceiver sends received audio to the SELCAL decoder. The SELCAL decoder isolates the SELCAL code from voice audio.

The flight data acquisition unit receives a PTT from the transceiver for key event marking.

The PSEU tells the HF transceiver whether the airplane is on the ground or in the air.

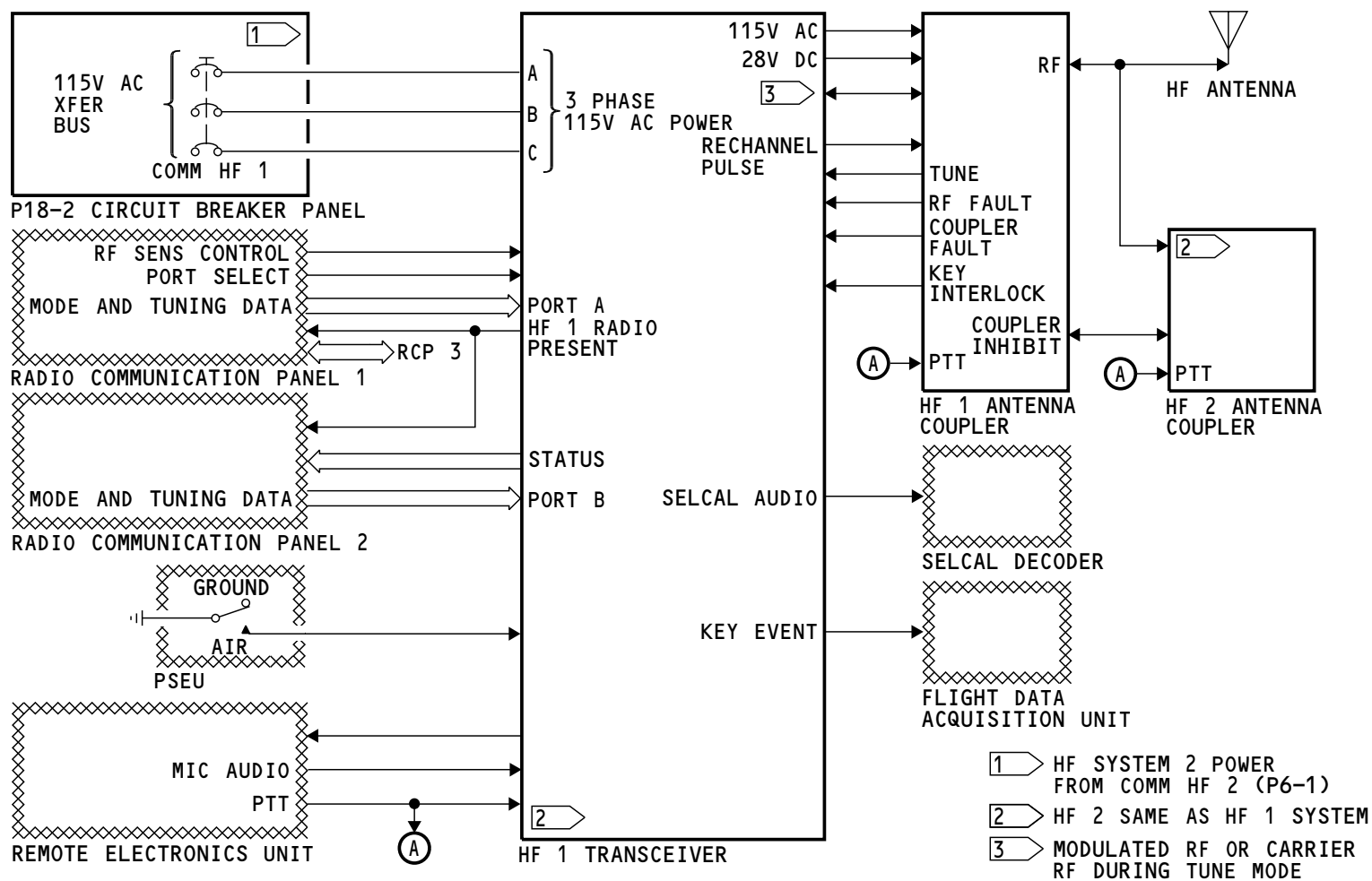
23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTERFACES



M79416 S0004622777_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTERFACES

23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNING INTERFACES

General

The HF communication system uses data buses to share tuning information between the radio communication panels (RCPs) and the communication transceivers.

Tuning Bus

Each RCP has one ARINC 429/719 output bus.

The RCPs send tuning data to the communication transceivers. Any RCP can tune any transceiver.

Each RCP sends tuning data and status to the other radio communication panels. This keeps the tuning data synchronized and lets any RCP tune any transceiver.

The RCP keeps the tuning data in memory. Usually, the RCP uses the tuning data from its memory to send on the output bus.

The RCP connects the CROSSTALK 1 bus directly to the output bus. This occurs for these RCP conditions:

- RCP does not have power
- RCP is OFF
- RCP is failed.

Port Select Discrete

RCP 1 and 2 send the port select discretes to the transceivers.

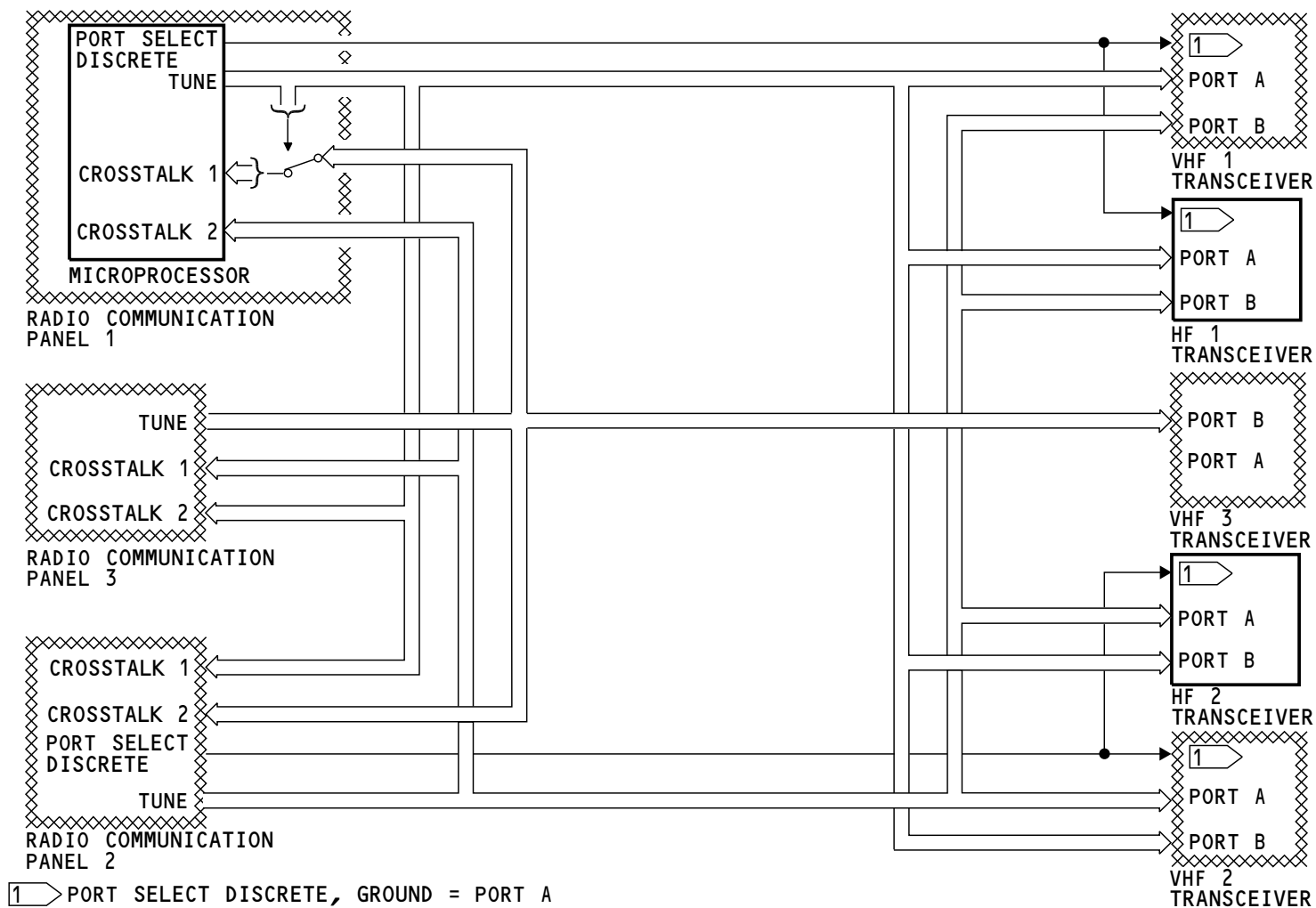
Each transceiver has two tuning data input ports, port A and port B. The transceiver uses the port select discrete to select the input port. A grounded port select discrete causes the transceiver to use port A. An open port select discrete causes the transceiver to use port B.

Training Information Point

If RCP 1 fails, you can tune the HF 1 transceiver with RCP 2 or 3. RCP 1 port select discrete changes from ground to open, and RCP 2 sends tuning data to input port B. RCP 3 sends tuning data on CROSSTALK 2 bus which is connected to RCP 2. RCP 2 connects this tuning data to the output TUNE bus.

If RCP 2 fails, you can tune the HF 2 transceiver with RCP 1 or 3. RCP 2 port select discrete changes from ground to open, and RCP 1 sends tuning data to input port B. RCP 3 sends tuning data on CROSSTALK 1 bus which is connected to RCP 1. RCP 1 connects this tuning data directly to the output TUNE bus.

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNING INTERFACES



M79469 S0004622781_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNING INTERFACES

23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF COMMUNICATION TRANSCEIVER****Purpose**

The HF communication transceiver transmits and receives RF signals for voice communication.

Physical Description

The front panel has these components:

- Three fault LEDs
- A TEST push-button
- A microphone jack
- A headphone jack.

All electrical connections are through connectors at the rear of the transceiver.

Power

The transceiver must have 115 volts, 400 Hz, 3 phase ac power to operate.

Transceiver RF output is 400 watts peak envelope power (PEP) in the single sideband (SSB) mode. It is 125 watts average in the amplitude modulated (AM) mode. In the AM mode the transceiver transmits the amplitude modulation equivalent (AME). AME is the carrier frequency plus the upper side band.

Indications

The KEY INTERLOCK LED comes on red when the transceiver keys and there is a failure in the HF coupler. Transmission is not possible at this time.

The CONTROL FAIL LED comes on red if there is no input from the control panel or if the control panel input goes invalid.

BITE

Push the TEST push button to test the transceiver front panel LEDs and to start a self-test. Connect a headphone to the transceiver front panel microphone jack to hear two short tones, and after one second, one additional tone through the audio system.

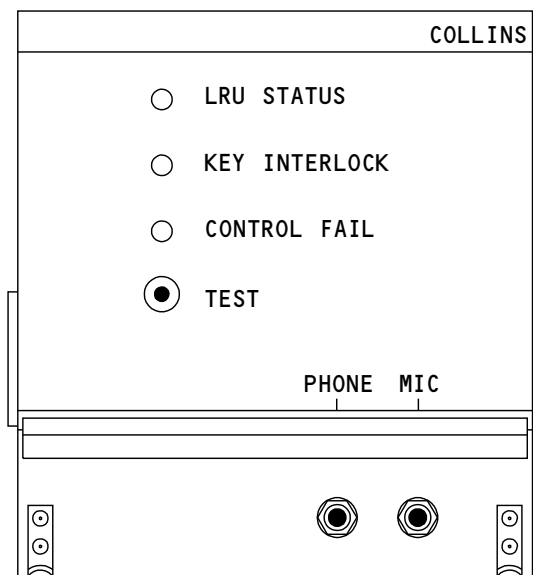
23-11-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF COMMUNICATION TRANSCEIVER



M79429 S0004622800_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF COMMUNICATION TRANSCEIVER

23-11-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF ANTENNA COUPLER****Purpose**

The HF antenna coupler matches the transceiver 50 ohm impedance output to the antenna impedance at the set frequency. This decreases the voltage standing wave ratio (VSWR) to less than 1.3:1.

Physical Description

The coupler front panel has these components:

- Fill valve
- Electrical connector to transceiver
- Coaxial connector to transceiver
- Pressure nozzle.

The rear panel has the antenna feedline connector.

Operation

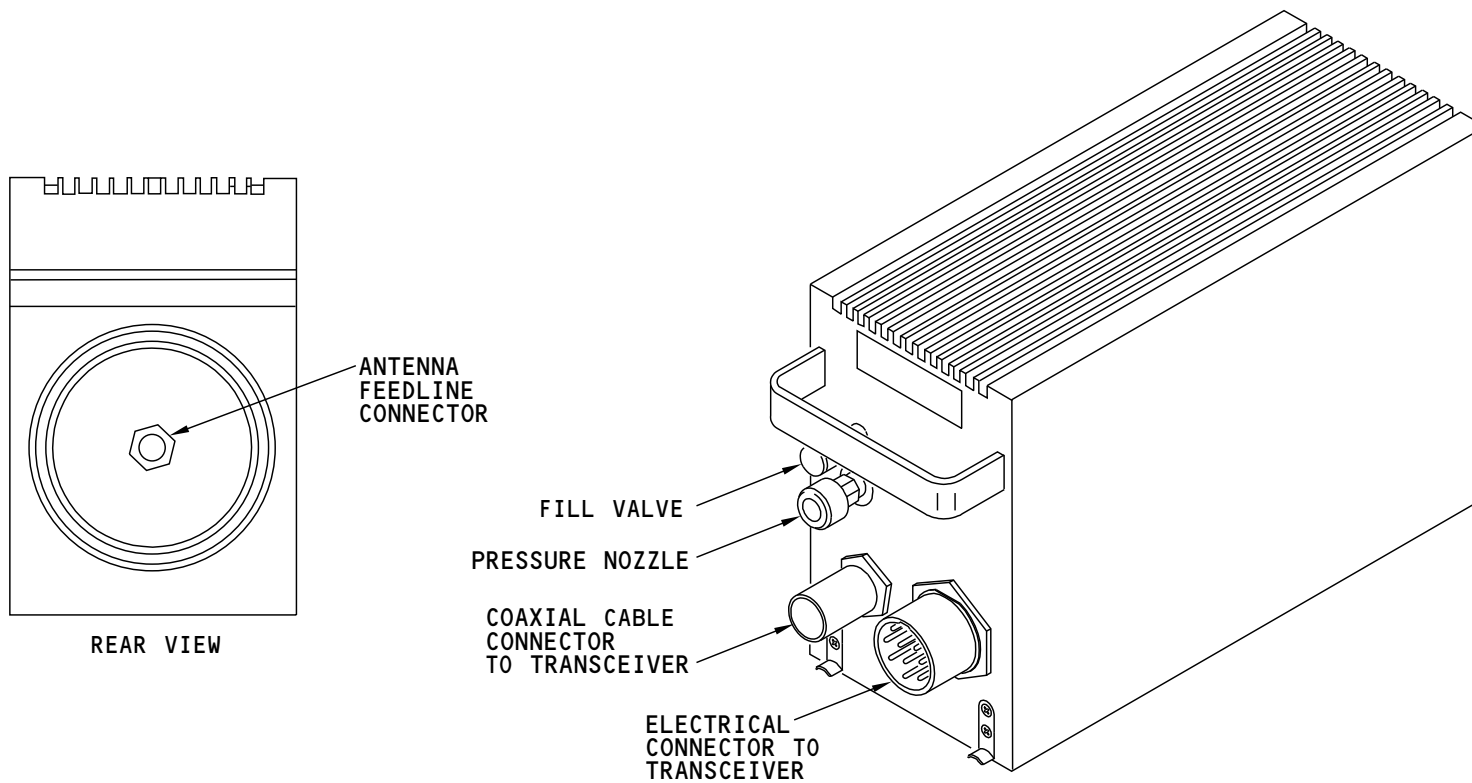
The coupler uses 115v ac to operate. It does not need special cooling.

The coupler tunes in the aeronautical frequency range of 2 to 29.999 MHz.

The tune time for a frequency not in memory is 2 to 4 seconds typical, 7 seconds maximum. If HFS-700 or HFS-900 is installed, the tune time for a frequency saved in memory is 1 second typical. The tune tone is pulsed. If using a previously tuned channel, the tune tone may not be audible. But at the first tuning after a cold start, the tune tone is always audible regardless of whether this frequency is stored (average 2 to 4 seconds, 7 seconds maximum). If HFS-900D is installed, the tune time for a frequency saved in memory is 200 milliseconds typical. The tune tone is continuous.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF ANTENNA COUPLER



M79432 S0004622804_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF ANTENNA COUPLER

23-11-00

23-11-00-009

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF ANTENNA

Purpose

The HF antenna radiates and receives the RF signal.

Physical Description

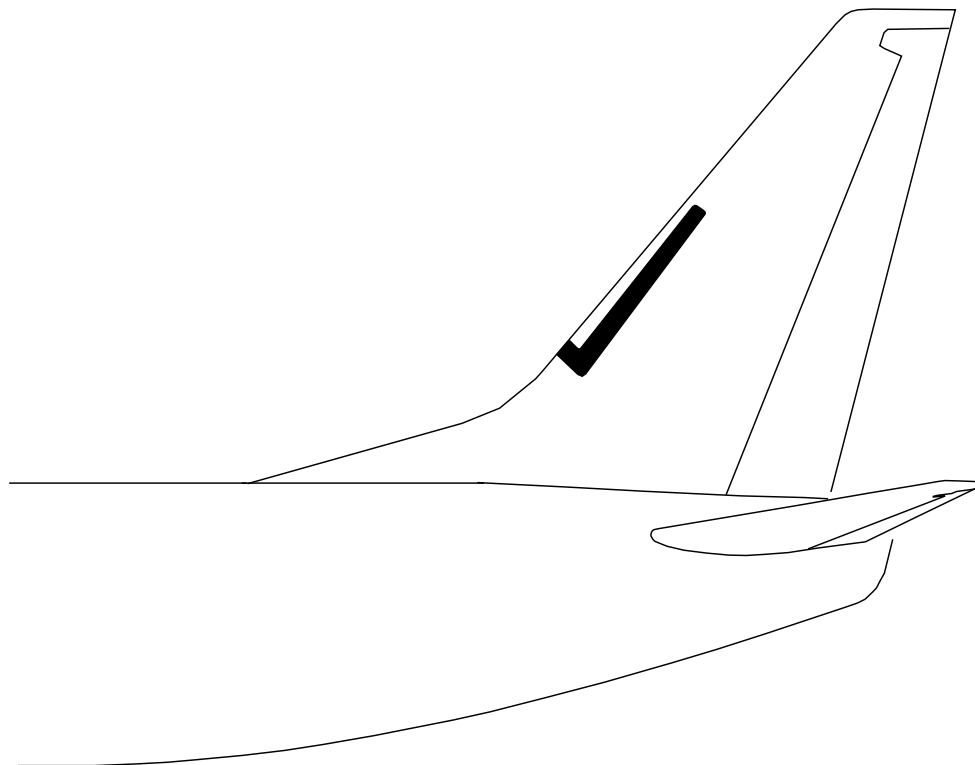
The HF antenna is a notch type antenna. It is a U-shaped fiberglass material. The antenna is sealed within the leading edge of the vertical stabilizer.

The antenna receives the feed line from the antenna coupler.

**WARNING**

MAKE SURE THAT PERSONNEL STAY A MINIMUM OF 10 FT (3 M) AWAY FROM THE VERTICAL STABILIZER WHEN THE HF SYSTEM TRANSMITS. RF ENERGY FROM THE HF ANTENNA CAN CAUSE INJURIES TO PERSONNEL.

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF ANTENNA



M79354 S0004622807_V2

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF ANTENNA

23-11-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF FUNCTIONAL MODES

General

The HF communication system uses an antenna coupler to keep a 50 ohm impedance match between the transceiver and the antenna. This impedance match decreases reflected power through the RF output circuit back to the transceiver. The HF communication system uses functional modes to complete the receive, tune, and transmit operation. These are the HF communication system functional modes:

- Home
- Receive/standby
- Tune
- Receive/operate
- Transmit.

The HF system controls the modes in sequence. The modes do not change until all necessary conditions for the modes occur.

Home Mode

The home mode starts at power-up or when a new frequency is set. The transceiver sends a rechannel pulse to the coupler to start the home mode. The antenna tuning elements in the coupler move to the home position. The elements are in a position for minimum attenuation of incoming signals.

Receive/Standby Mode

The receive/standby mode starts when the antenna tuning elements are in the home position.

In the receive/standby mode, the HF system can receive RF signals at the set frequency. The system is ready to key for tuning at any time when it receives a PTT from the REU.

Tune

The tune occurs in these steps:

- Determine Frequency
- Calibrate

- Tune

To Determine the Frequency the HF Coupler activates the tune power input to the HF transceiver; this causes the transceiver to send a burst of reduced tune power (approximately 80 W) to find out the operating frequency. When the frequency is determined it is stored in memory.

For the Calibration step the coupler asks the Transceiver for another brief burst of tune power. The RF Network resistor provides a 50-Ohm resistance to ground for transmit calibration. After this the quick tune is enabled and the coupler sets the tuning element relays to match the last setting at the frequency.

During the tuning step the coupler requests a series of short bursts of tune power from the transceiver to determine the voltage standing wave ratio (VSWR). The coupler adjusts the tuning elements to reduce the (VSWR) with each burst of tune power until a VSWR of 1.3:1 or less is accomplished. After the tuning cycle typically 2 to 4 seconds, 7 maximum the coupler is tuned.

If a frequency in memory is used again (quick tune) the coupler is able to tune within a second.

The quick tune allows the coupler to skip the calibration step in the tuning process and reduce the tuning time.

Receive/Operate

The receive/operate mode occurs when tune mode is complete. The key latch is removed. The tuning RF power from the transceiver is tuned off, and the 1 kHz tone stops. The system is ready for reception or transmission.

Transmit

The pilot keys the microphone to transmit. The coupler adjusts the tuning elements to keep the VSWR less than 1.3:1 for modulated transmission. The audio tone through the flight interphone system does not sound at this time.

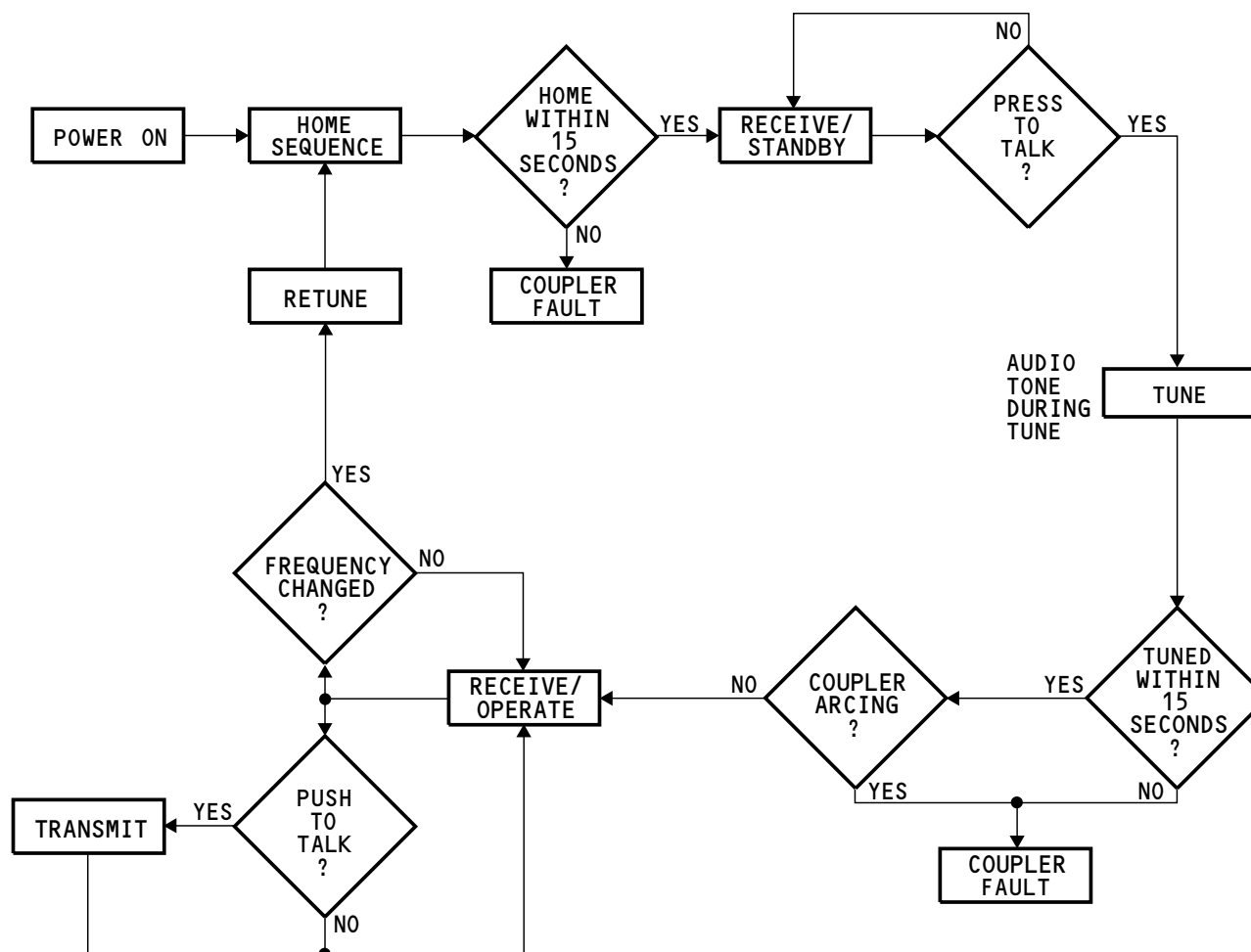
23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF FUNCTIONAL MODES



M79433 S0004622809_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HF FUNCTIONAL MODES

23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HOME/RECEIVE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

During the home mode, the antenna coupler tuning circuits are adjusted for minimum attenuation of the incoming RF signal. This is called the tuning circuit home position. The tuning circuits are adjusted to the home position at the start of every new tune cycle and at power up. The HF communication system can receive audio modulated RF after the tuning circuits are in the home position and the HF system goes to receive/standby mode.

Home Mode

The control panel sends tune and modulation mode (AM or USB) data to the HF transceiver control circuits. When the control panel sends a change in frequency, the transceiver control circuits send a rechannel pulse to the antenna coupler control logic. This causes the coupler to begin the home sequence mode. The home mode also starts at power up.

During the home mode, the coupler control logic has these functions:

- Tells the tuning circuits to go to the home position
- Energizes relay K6
- De-energizes relays K4 and K5.

The control logic energizes K6 so that the HF system can receive during home mode. When the tuning elements are in the home position, the HF system goes to the receive/standby mode.

Receive/Standby Mode

During the receive/standby mode, relay K1 in the transceiver and K4 and K5 in the coupler de-energize. Relay K6 energizes. Incoming RF signals go to an isolation amplifier and a discriminator in the coupler. The RF output from the coupler goes to the RF section of the transceiver.

The RF section has these functions:

- Amplifies the RF signal
- Mixes, filters, and processes the RF signal to make an intermediate frequency (IF) output.

The AM and the USB circuits in the IF section amplify the IF signal and detect the audio from the signal.

The AM section sends the audio to the SELCAL decoder and to a solid state switch.

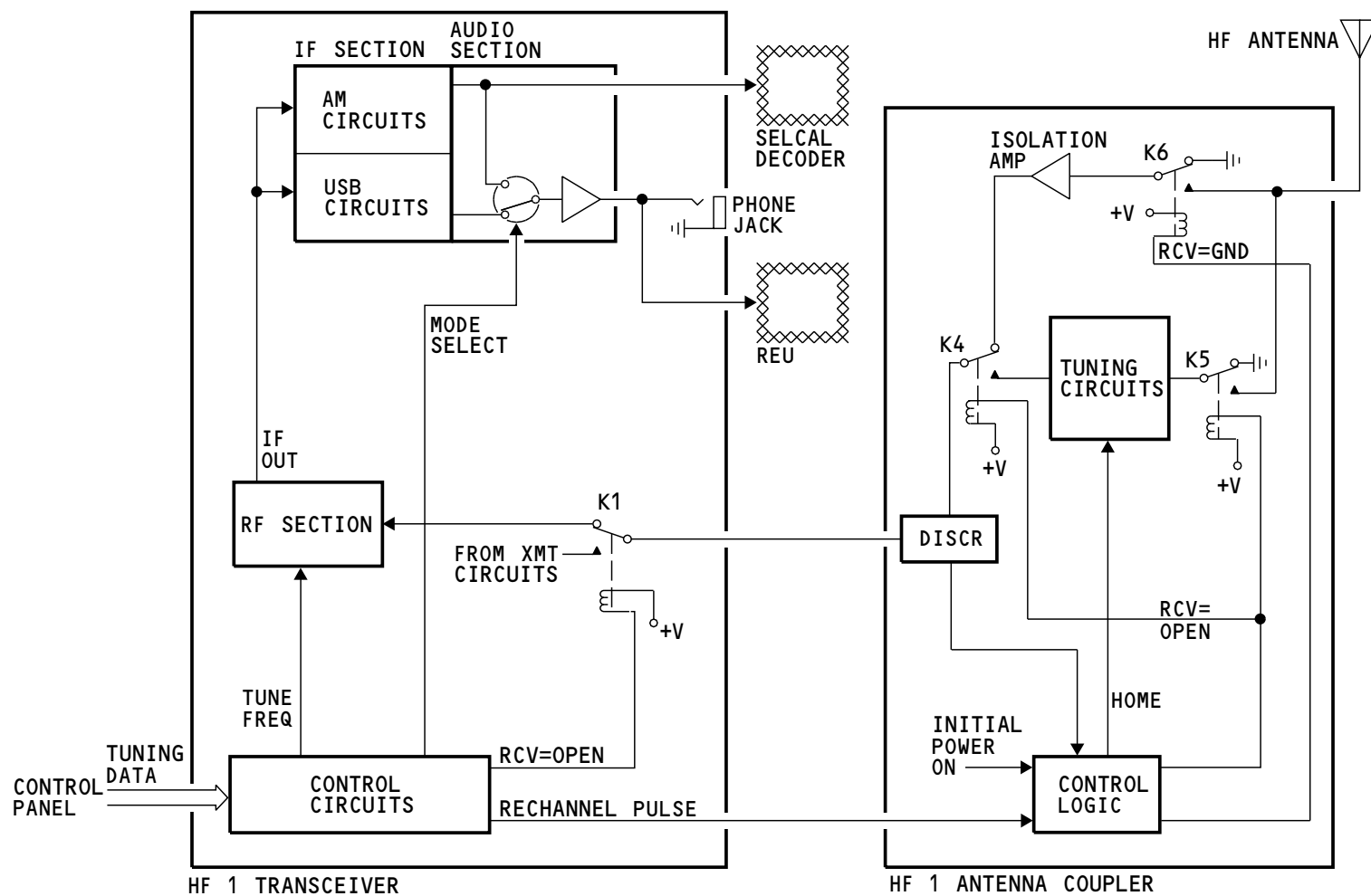
Audio from the USB detector also goes to this switch. The mode select output, from the transceiver control circuits, selects audio from either the AM section or the USB section.

The mode select output audio goes through an amplifier to these two points:

- A phone jack on the transceiver front panel
- The flight interphone system.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HOME/RECEIVE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M79435 S0004622811_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - HOME/RECEIVE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-11-00-014

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-11-00



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-11-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The HF 1 and HF 2 systems are the same. This example shows the HF 1 system.

Before the HF communication system can transmit, the antenna coupler must be tuned to match the impedance between the transceiver and the antenna. The antenna coupler tune circuits keep the impedance at 50 ohms over the HF frequency range. The tune sequence begins with the first push-to-talk (PTT) after the tune circuits are in the home position, and the HF system is in the receive/standby mode.

Tune Mode Initiation

Select the HF communication frequency on the control panel and key the mic. The mic sends a PTT signal through the REU to start the tune sequence. The same PTT goes to the control circuits in the transceiver and the control logic circuits in the antenna coupler. The coupler control logic latches the PTT discrete to ground until the tuning is complete.

The coupler control logic energizes relays K4 and K5, and de-energizes relay K6.

The coupler control logic sends a key interlock signal to the HF transceiver. It also sends a disable discrete to the off-side antenna coupler to keep the off-side HF system from transmitting.

The coupler control logic can start tuning only in these conditions:

- There is a ground on the PTT line
- There is no disable from the HF 2 coupler
- The home sequence is complete
- There are no coupler faults.

Tune Mode Operation

The coupler control logic sends a tune-in-progress discrete to the transceiver when the coupler is in tune mode. This tune-in-progress discrete tells the transceiver to send a RF carrier tuning signal to the coupler.

The tune-in-progress discrete energizes relay K2 in the transceiver. It also goes to the transceiver RF circuits. The RF circuits send a 1 kHz audio tone to the front panel phone jack and to the flight interphone system. This tone tells the operator that the system is in the tune mode.

The control circuits in the transceiver energize relay K1 and tell the RF circuits to send an RF carrier in these conditions:

- There is a PTT signal
- There is no transceiver fault
- There is a key interlock signal from the coupler.

In the tune mode, the RF carrier contains no audio. The carrier goes to relay K2. Because relay K2 energizes in the tune mode, the output goes through the resistor. The resistor reduces the power to 75 watts.

Relay K1 energizes in the tune mode and the RF carrier goes to the coupler. The RF carrier goes through the discriminator, energized relay K4, the tuning elements, and energized relay K5 to the antenna.

During the tune mode, the discriminator samples the RF carrier and sends analog signals to the coupler control logic circuits. The control logic circuits use the signals from the discriminator to generate controls for the tuning circuits. The tune mode continues until the impedance of the transceiver and the antenna are in balance for the frequency the flight crew selects. When the impedance balances, the control logic circuits remove these signals:

- The tune-in-progress discrete
- The ground on the PTT discrete
- The 28v dc key interlock signal.

If the tune mode does not end within 15 seconds, the coupler control logic sends a coupler fault to the transceiver.

Operate Mode (Receive)

When the tune mode ends, the HF system begins the operate (receive) mode. Relays K1 and K2 in the transceiver and K4 and K5 in the antenna coupler de-energize. Relay K6 energizes. The HF system is ready to transmit when it receives a PTT signal.

23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



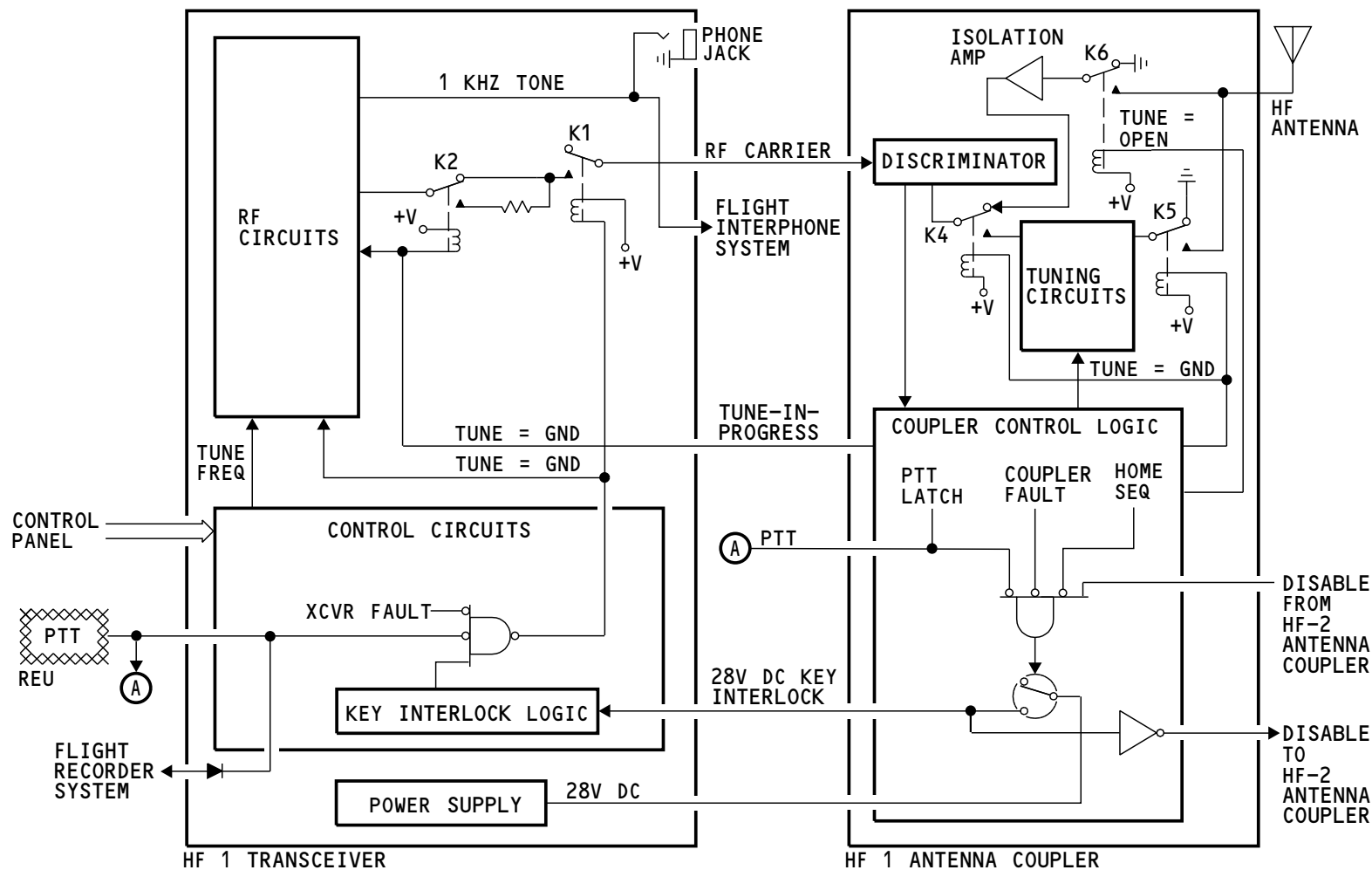
HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

Key Event Output

The PTT discrete goes to the flight recorder system for key event marking.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M79437 S0004622815_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-11-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSMIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The HF 1 AND HF 2 systems are the same. This example shows the HF 1 system.

When the tune sequence is complete, the HF system goes to the receive/operate mode and is ready to transmit. A PTT discrete starts the operation in the transceiver and antenna coupler.

Transmit Mode

In the receive/operate mode, the PTT discrete from the REU to the transceiver and coupler control logic circuits starts the transmit mode. The coupler control logic circuits energize relays K4 and K5, and de-energize relay K6. This puts a ground on the input to the isolation amplifier. It connects the tuning elements in-line between the discriminator and the antenna.

The coupler control logic sends a ground to disable the off-side coupler. At the same time, it sends a key interlock signal to the HF transceiver. The coupler control logic does this only in these conditions:

- There is a ground on the PTT line
- There is no disable from the HF 2 antenna coupler
- The coupler control logic circuits are not in the home mode
- There are no coupler faults.

The control circuits in the transceiver energize relay K1 and tell the RF circuits to transmit a carrier in these conditions:

- There is a ground on the PTT line
- There is no transceiver fault
- There is a key interlock signal from the coupler.

The RF circuits mix the carrier from the frequency synthesizer with the mic audio. The RF signal goes through these:

- A power amplifier
- The relaxed contacts of relay K2

- The energized contacts of relay K1
- The discriminator in the coupler.

The RF signal then goes through these:

- Energized relays K4 and K5
- The tuning elements.

The antenna receives the RF from the tuning elements and transmits it.

Side Tone

When the output from the transceiver power amplifier is more than 40 watts in the AM mode, a switch connects the microphone audio to an audio amplifier. The amplified audio goes to the audio jack and to the flight interphone system for side tone. When the output is less than 40 watts, there is no side tone. When the output is less than 30 watts, an LRU fault occurs.

Key Event Output

The PTT discrete goes to the flight recorder system for key event marking.

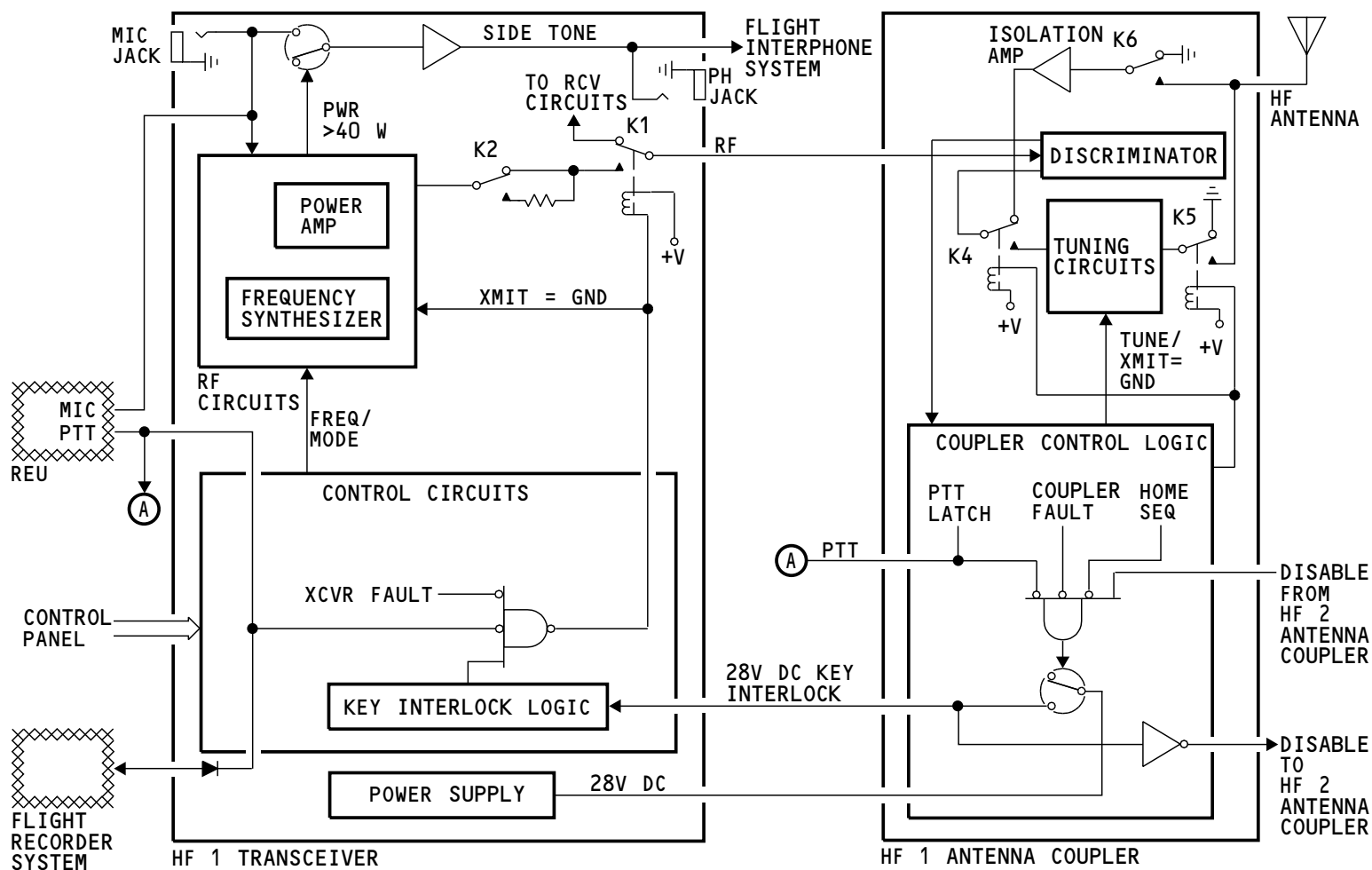
23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSMIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M79439 S0004622818_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSMIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-11-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-11-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - OPERATION

General

You use these components to operate the HF radio:

- Hand microphone or headset
- Radio communication panel
- Control wheel mic switch
- Remote MIC switch
- Audio control panel.

Receive Operation

You use the radio communication panel and the audio control panel to receive transmissions on the HF radio.

On the audio control panel, push the receiver volume control for the HF radio. Turn the control to adjust the volume from the HF radio.

You hear audio on the headset and the flight interphone speakers. To hear sound from the flight interphone speakers, push the speaker (SPKR) volume control to turn on the speaker. Turn the control to adjust the volume of sound from the speaker.

Use the on/off control to turn on the radio communication panel. When you first turn it on, the radio communication panel tunes the VHF radio. Push the HF 1 switch to make the radio communication panel tune the HF radio. A light above the switch comes on to show which radio the panel controls. The frequency displays show HF radio frequencies (2.000 to 29.999 MHz). The HF radio uses the frequency in the active frequency display.

Use the frequency selectors to tune the radio to a new frequency. The standby frequency display shows the new frequency.

When you are sure the frequency is correct, push the frequency transfer switch. The active frequency display shows the new frequency. The HF radio uses the new frequency.

NOTE: When you select a new frequency, the HF coupler drives its tuning elements to the home position.

Listen for audio from the HF radio on the speaker or headset. Adjust the volume control switches on the audio control panel for a comfortable sound level.

Use the HF sensitivity (HF SENS) control on the radio communication panel to adjust the sensitivity of the HF radio receiver.

Transmit Operation

 WARNING	MAKE SURE THAT PERSONNEL STAY A MINIMUM OF 10 FT (3 M) AWAY FROM THE VERTICAL STABILIZER WHEN THE HF SYSTEM TRANSMITS. RF ENERGY FROM THE HF ANTENNA CAN CAUSE INJURIES TO PERSONNEL.
---	--

 WARNING	DO NOT OPERATE THE HF SYSTEM WHILE THE AIRPLANE IS REFUELED OR DEFUELED. AN EXPLOSION CAN CAUSE INJURIES TO PERSONNEL AND DAMAGE TO THE AIRPLANE.
---	--

Make sure the active frequency display shows the frequency you want to transmit. Make sure the frequency you select is a valid transmit frequency.

Push the microphone selector switch on the audio control panel for the HF radio.

Listen for transmissions on the frequency you selected. When the frequency is clear, push and release the push-to-talk for the microphone. This causes the HF coupler to tune to the transmission frequency. While the coupler tunes, the HF transceiver supplies a 1 kHz tone. You hear this tone on the speaker and in the headset.

Normally, it takes several seconds for the coupler to tune. When the 1 kHz tone stops, the HF system is ready to transmit.

When the frequency is clear and you want to transmit a message, key the mic and speak into it. You hear sidetone in the headphone and muted sidetone from the flight interphone speaker. The flight interphone system mutes the sidetone to the speaker when you use the boom mic or the hand mic.

You can continue to transmit and receive on the frequency you selected.

23-11-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

**HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - OPERATION**

When you select another frequency and key the mic to transmit, the HF coupler tunes again. You hear the 1 kHz tone while it tunes.

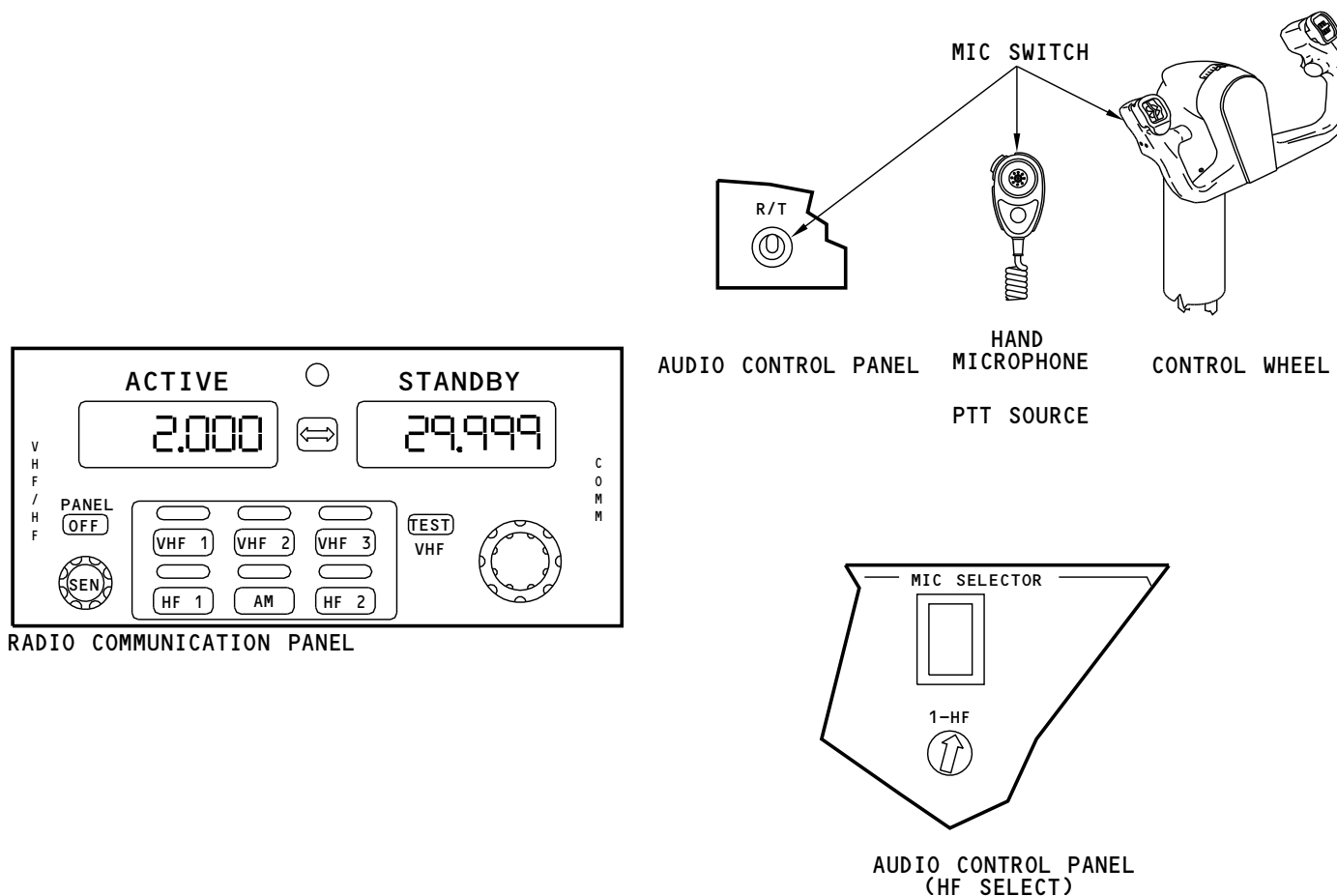
Non-Normal Indications

If you hear the 1 kHz tone for more than 15 seconds when the coupler tunes, there may be a coupler fault.

If the tone only lasts as long as you key the microphone, you may have tuned a frequency which is outside the frequency range for the HF transceiver.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - OPERATION



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - OPERATION

M79459 S0004622821_V1

23-11-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-11-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - BITE

Radio Communication Panel BITE Indication

When you push the HF switch on the radio communication panel (RCP), the display usually shows an HF radio frequency. The range of HF radio frequencies is 2.000 MHz to 29.999 MHz.

If the built-in test equipment in the RCP senses a failure, you see one of these displays:

- INOP INOP
- FAIL FAIL
- PANEL FAIL

If the RCP receives no signal from the HF transceiver, both displays show frequency or INOP INOP. This occurs when one of these conditions is true:

- There is no HF transceiver
- The HF transceiver has no power
- The HF transceiver can not send ARINC 429/719 data to the RCP
- The RCP does not receive the ARINC 429/719 data from the HF transceiver
- Wiring from the HF transceiver to the RCP is bad.

NOTE: RCP may be configured to annunciate "INOP" in the ACTIVE and STANDBY windows when HF1 or HF2 is selected.

If the RCP receives the FAIL WARN signal from the HF transceiver, the display shows FAIL in both displays. This occurs when the BITE in the HF transceiver senses that the transceiver has a failure.

If the RCP has a failure, the display shows PANEL in the active display and FAIL in the standby display.

HF Transceiver BITE Indication

Lights on the front of the HF transceiver only show BITE results when you push the transceiver front panel TEST switch. The lights show these failures:

- LRU STATUS

- KEY INTERLOCK
- CONTROL FAIL.

The LRU STATUS light comes on red if the HF transceiver has a failure. These are examples of failures of the HF transceiver:

- The voltage from the power supply is low
- The microprocessor has a failure
- The frequency synthesizer is not locked-on
- The output power of the RF transmitter is low.

The KEY INTERLOCK light comes on red if the HF coupler has a failure. These are examples of failures of the HF coupler:

- The voltage from the power supply is low
- The microprocessor has a failure
- The frequency synthesizer is not locked-on
- The output power of the RF transmitter is low.

The KEY INTERLOCK light comes on when you key the transceiver and the key interlock signal from the coupler is open.

The HF antenna coupler opens the key interlock signal if one of these conditions occurs:

- The other HF radio transmits at the same time
- The power supply in the HF antenna coupler is not good
- The tuning reactance is not in tolerance
- The time to tune the HF antenna coupler is too long.

The CONTROL FAIL light comes on when the HF transceiver does not receive a signal from the radio communication panel. This occurs when one of these conditions is true:

- The RCP is off
- The RCP has no power
- The RCP can not send the ARINC 429/719 data to the HF transceiver

23-11-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - BITE**

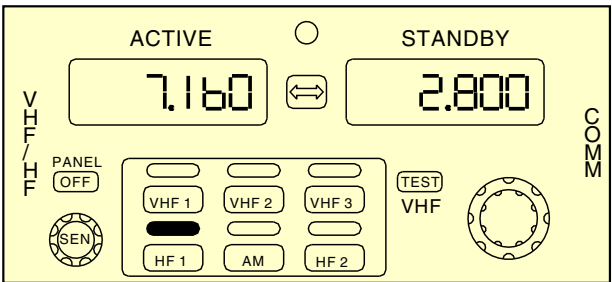
- The HF transceiver does not receive the ARINC 429/719 data from the RCP
- The wiring from the RCP to the HF transceiver is bad.

HF Transceiver Built-In Test

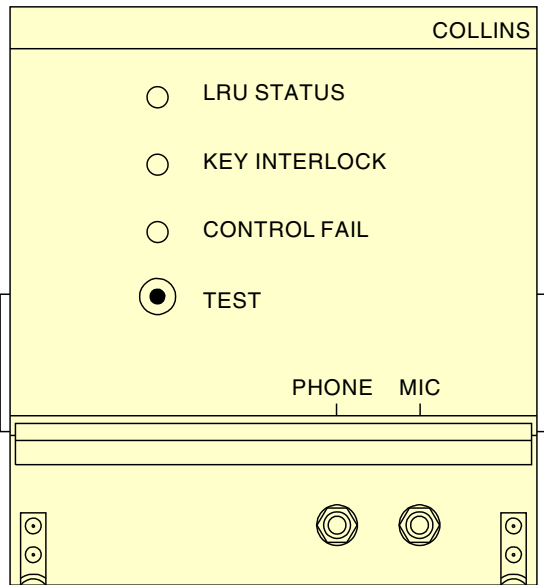
The HF transceiver has a built-in test. To start the test, push the TEST switch on the front of the transceiver. The LRU STATUS, KEY INTERLOCK, AND CONTROL FAIL lights show red for two seconds. Then, the LRU STATUS light shows green for two seconds and the other two lights show red. At the end of two seconds, all lights turn off until the test is complete. Then, the transceiver shows the result of the test for 30 seconds.

The LRU STATUS light comes on red if there is a failure in the HF transceiver. The KEY INTERLOCK light comes on red if there is an HF coupler fault. The CONTROL FAIL light comes on red if there is a control input failure from the control panel.

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - BITE



RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL



HF TRANSCEIVER

DISPLAY		CONDITION
ACTIVE	STANDBY	
7.160	2.800	VALID FREQUENCY FOR THE HF RADIO (2.000 TO 29.999)
INOP	INOP	RCP RECEIVES NO SIGNAL FROM THE HF TRANSCEIVER
FAIL	FAIL	HF TRANSCEIVER FAILURE
PANEL	FAIL	RCP FAILURE

LED LIGHT SEQUENCE TIME	TEST INDICATION			TEST RESULT
	LRU STATUS	KEY INTERLOCK	CONTROL FAIL	
0-2 SECONDS	ON-RED	ON-RED	ON-RED	-
2-4 SECONDS	ON-GREEN	ON-RED	ON-RED	-
4-6 SECONDS	OFF	OFF	OFF	-
6-36 SECONDS	ON-GREEN	OFF	OFF	PASS
	ON-RED	OFF	OFF	XCVR FAULT
	ON-GREEN	ON-RED	OFF	ANTENNA COUPLER FAULT
	ON-GREEN	OFF	ON-RED	CONTROL INPUT FAULT
36+ SECONDS	OFF	OFF	OFF	-

M79448 S0004622837_V2

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - BITE

23-11-00-017

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-11-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



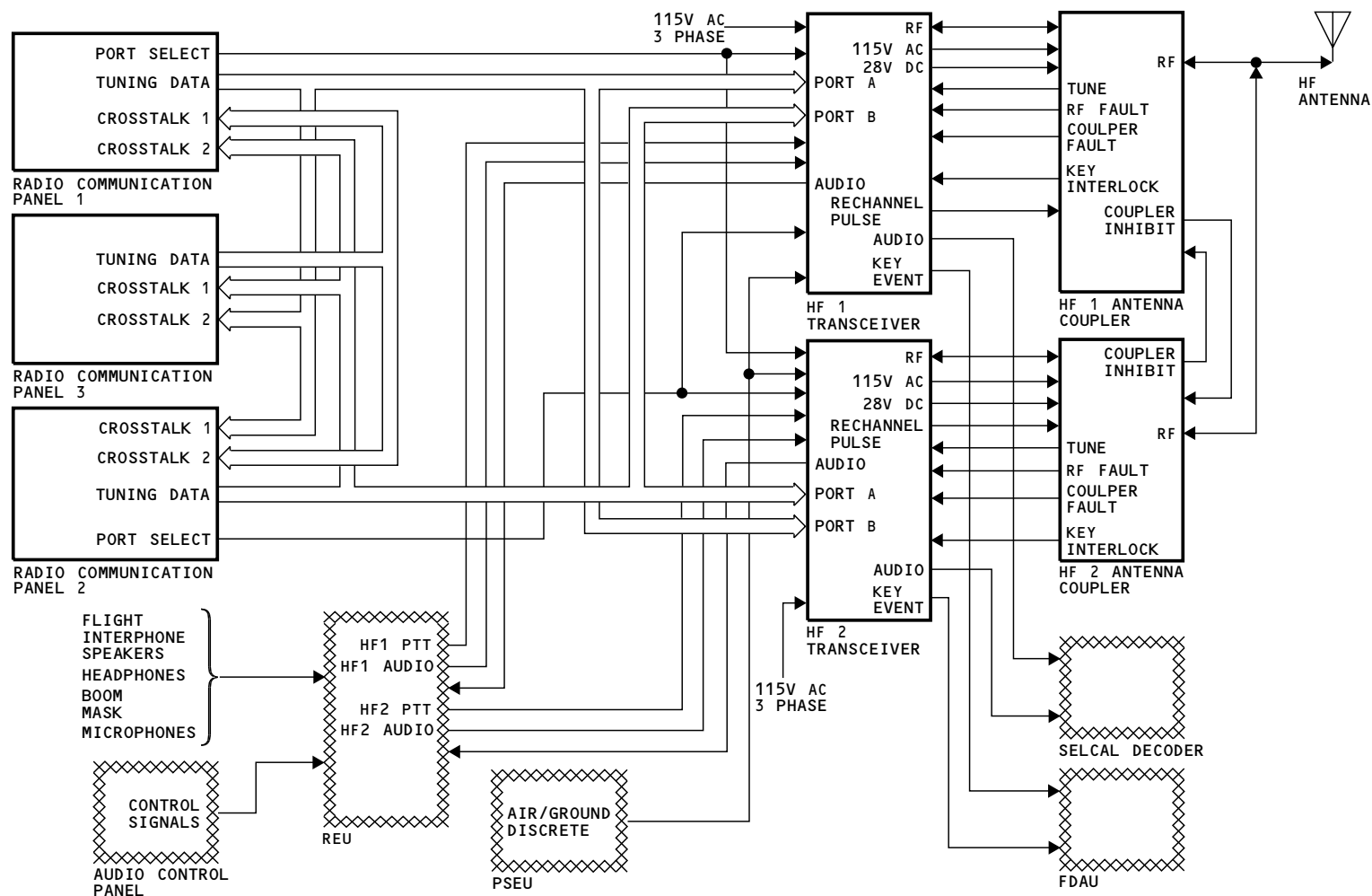
HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

GENERAL

This page is for reference.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY



M79483 S0004622851_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

23-11-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-12-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VERY HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

General

The very high frequency (VHF) communication system supplies communication over line-of-sight distances. It gives communication between airplanes or between ground stations and airplanes.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

- R/T - receive/transmit
- SELCAL - selective calling
- sql - squelch
- SSB - single side band
- SSFDR - solid state flight data recorder
- VHF - very high frequency
- VSWR - voltage standing wave ratio
- xmit - transmit

- ACARS - aircraft communications addressing and reporting system
- ACP - audio control panel
- AM - amplitude modulation
- ARINC - Aeronautical Radio Incorporated
- BITE - built-in test equipment
- comm - communication
- EEC - electronic equipment compartment
- FDAU - flight data acquisition unit
- FDR - flight data recorder
- freq - frequency
- I/C - interphone communication
- LCD - liquid crystal display
- LED - light emitting diode
- LRU - line replaceable unit
- mic - microphone
- MSEC - milli-second
- PSEU - proximity switch electronics unit
- PTT - push-to-talk
- RCP - radio communication panel
- REU - remote electronics unit
- RF - radio frequency
- RTP - radio tuning panel

23-12-00

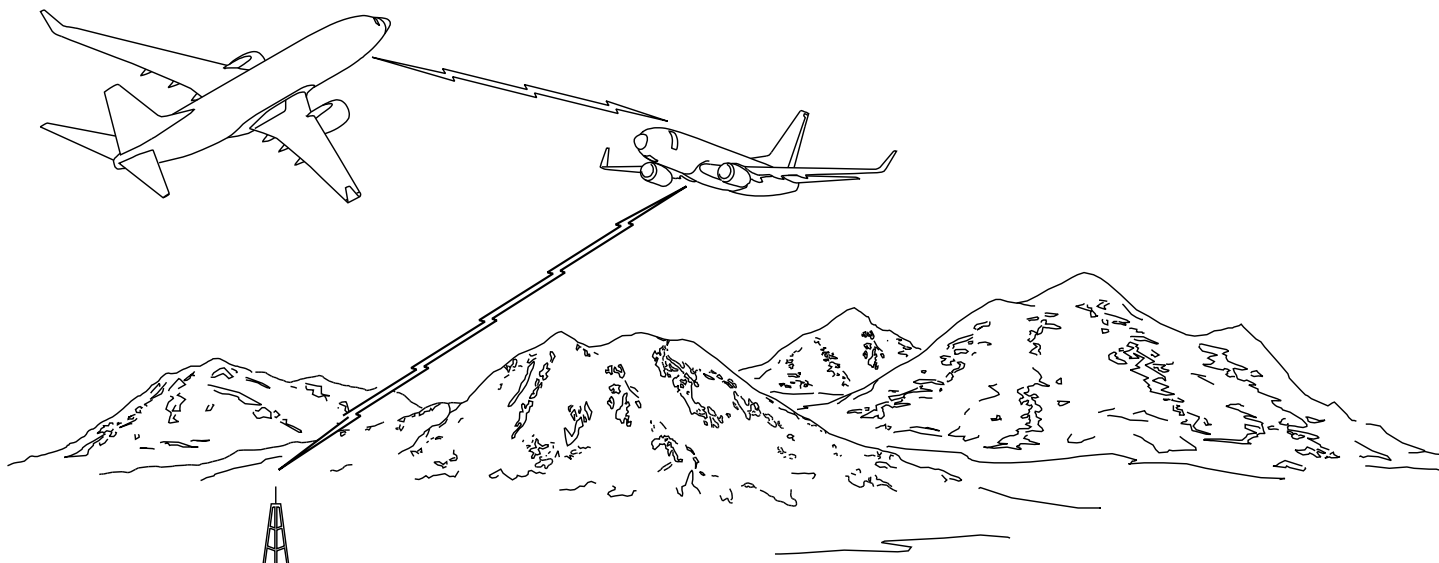
SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VERY HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



M79498 S0004622873_V1

VERY HIGH FREQUENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-12-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The VHF communication system supplies the flight crew with voice and data line-of-sight communication. The VHF communication system can be used to communicate between airplanes and between airplanes and ground stations.

The VHF communication radio is tunable in the frequency range of 118.000 MHz to 136.990 MHz. The VHF radio is used to transmit and receive voice communication.

The VHF communication system operates in the frequency range of 118.000 MHz to 136.990 MHz. The 8.33 kHz spacing is only available for these frequency ranges:

- 118.000 to 121.400
- 121.600 to 123.050
- 123.150 to 136.475.

System Components

The VHF communication system has these components:

- Radio Tuning Panel (RTP) or Radio Communication Panel (RCP)
- VHF transceiver
- VHF antenna.

The RTP (RCP) supplies selected frequency signals to tune the VHF transceivers. You can use the RTP (RCP) to select the frequency of any VHF communication radio.

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

The VHF transceiver transmit circuits modulate an RF carrier signal with voice audio. The receive circuits demodulate the incoming RF carrier signal to detect the audio from the RF carrier. The detected audio is used by the flight crew and other airplane systems.

The VHF antenna transmits and receives RF signals.

External Interface

The VHF communication system connects with these components/systems:

- Remote electronics unit (REU)
- Proximity switch electronic unit (PSEU)
- SELCAL decoder unit
- Flight data acquisition unit (FDAU).

System Operation

The control panel sends selected frequency signals to the transceiver. The audio control panel sends radio select signals and receive volume control to the REU.

During transmit, microphone audio and PTT signals go to the VHF transceiver through the REU. The transceiver uses the microphone audio to modulate an RF carrier signal made in the transceiver. The transceiver sends the modulated RF signal to the antenna for transmission to other airplanes and ground stations.

During transmit, the flight data acquisition unit receives a PTT signal from the transceiver. The flight data acquisition unit uses the PTT for key event marking to record the transmit event.

During receive operation, the antenna receives a modulated RF signal and sends it to the transceiver. The transceiver demodulates or removes the audio information from the RF carrier. The received audio goes from the VHF transceiver through the REU to the flight interphone speakers and headsets.

The SELCAL decoder unit receives audio from the VHF transceiver. The SELCAL decoder unit monitors the audio for SELCAL calls that come from the ground station.

The VHF transceiver receives an air/ground discrete from the PSEU. The VHF transceiver uses the discrete to calculate flight legs for internal fault memory.

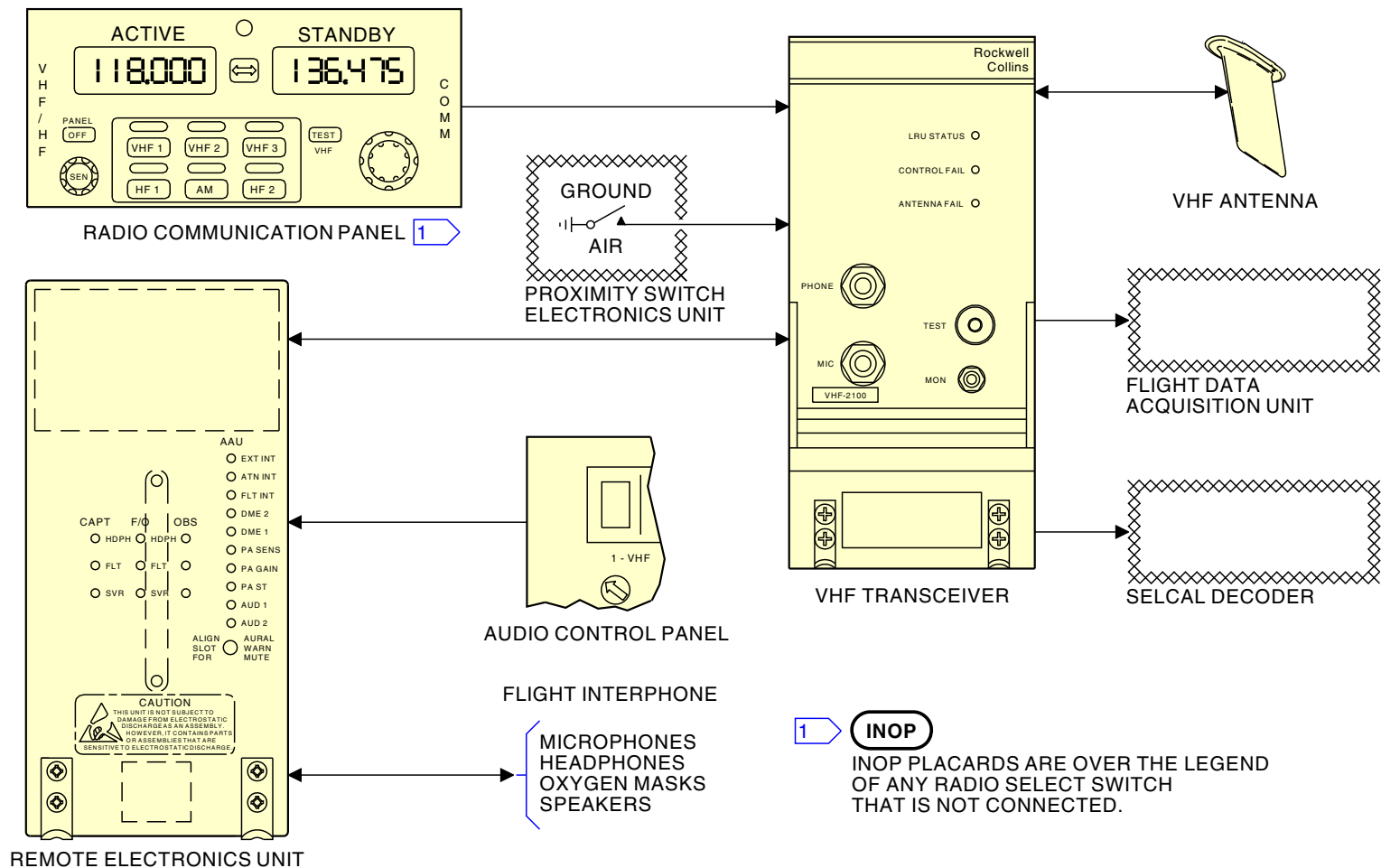
23-12-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



2981898 S0000759567_V1

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-12-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Flight Compartment

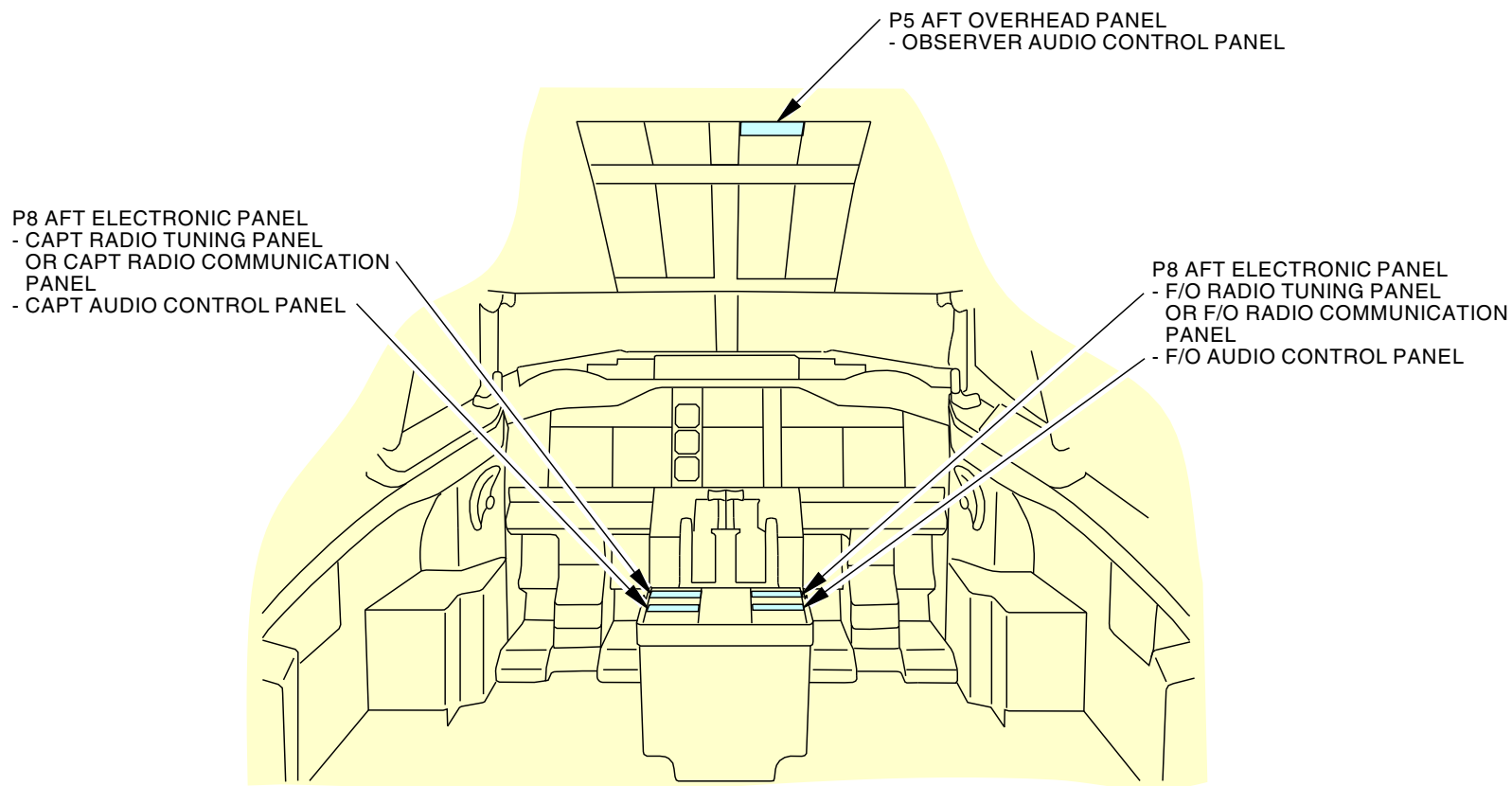
The Radio Tuning Panel (RTP)(s) or Radio Communication Panel (RCP)(s) are on the P8 aft electronic panel.

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

The Audio Control Panel (ACP)s are part of the flight interphone system. The ACPs have an interface with the VHF communication system through the REU. The captain and first officer ACPs are on the P8 aft electronics panel. The first observer ACP is on the P5 aft overhead panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M79552 S0004622932_V3

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-12-00-003

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

23-12-00



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT (EEC) COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Electronic Equipment Compartment

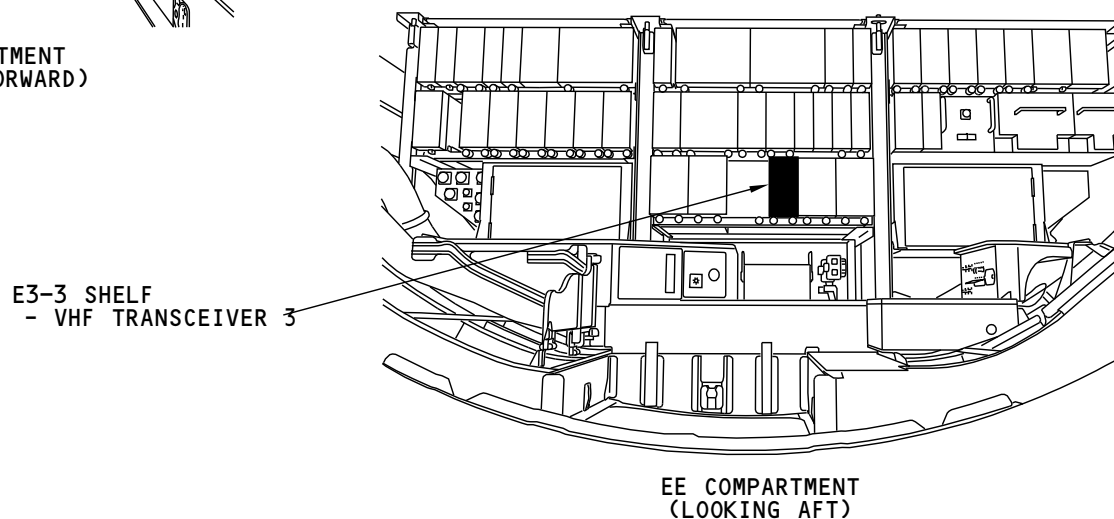
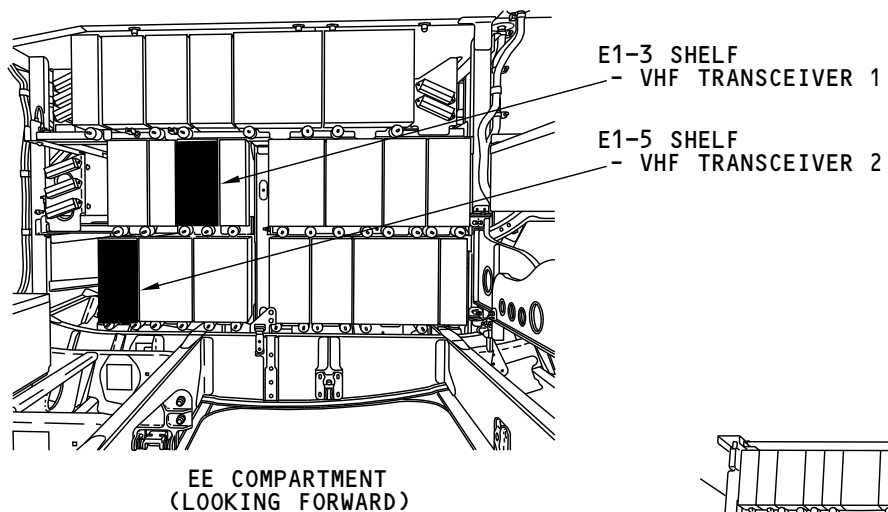
VHF transceiver 1 is on the E1-3 shelf.

VHF transceiver 2 is on the E1-5 shelf.

VHF transceiver 3 is on the E3-3 shelf.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT (EEC) COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M79556 S0004622938_V1

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT (EEC) COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-12-00-004

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-12-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



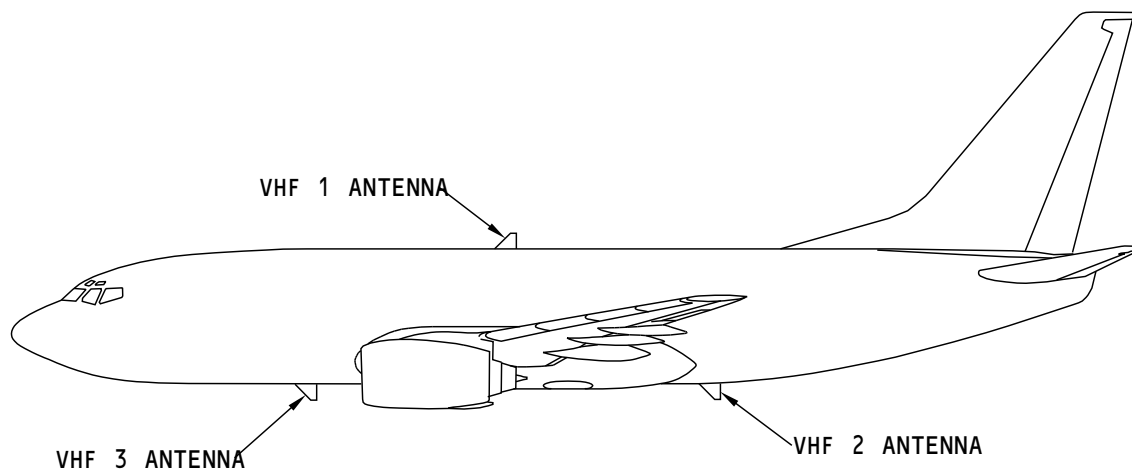
VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ANTENNA COMPONENT LOCATIONS

General

The VHF antennas are on the top and the bottom of the airplane fuselage on the centerline.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ANTENNA COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M79557 S0004622943_V2

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - ANTENNA COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-12-00

23-12-00-005

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 1 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES****Power**

The 28v dc standby bus supplies power to the VHF 1 transceiver and Radio Communication Panel (RCP) 1.

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

VHF 1 Transceiver

The VHF 1 transceiver has an interface with these components:

- RCP1, 2, and 3
- VHF antenna
- Proximity switch electronics unit
- Remote electronics unit
- SELCAL decoder unit
- Flight data acquisition.

Radio Communication Panel

RCP 1 supplies frequency information to the VHF 1 transceiver on an ARINC 429 bus to port A. RCP 2 supplies frequency information to the VHF 1 transceiver on an ARINC 429 bus to port B. RCP 3 can supply frequency data to the VHF 1 transceiver through RCP 1 or 2. For more information about tuning interfaces, see VHF Communication System - Tuning Interfaces.

The VHF transceiver supplies the status of the transceiver to the RCPs.

The transceiver sends a ground to the control panel to provide the capability to tune VHF frequencies at 8.33 kHz spacing.

VHF Antenna

The VHF antenna receives an RF signal from the VHF transceiver and transmits the RF signal to other airplane and ground VHF communication systems. The antenna also receives incoming RF signals and sends the RF signals to the VHF transceiver. The transceiver demodulates or detects the audio from the RF carrier signal.

External Interfaces

The VHF 1 transceiver has an interface with components from other airplane systems.

The proximity switch electronic unit sends a ground signal to increase the flight leg count to track fault history.

The remote electronics unit sends flight crew microphone (mic) audio to the transceiver to be transmitted. It also sends a PTT to start the transceiver transmit mode. The transceiver sends side tone and received audio to the REU for the flight interphone system.

The transceiver sends received audio to the SELCAL decoder. The SELCAL decoder isolates the SELCAL code from voice audio.

The flight data acquisition unit receives a PTT from the transceiver for key event marking.

23-12-00

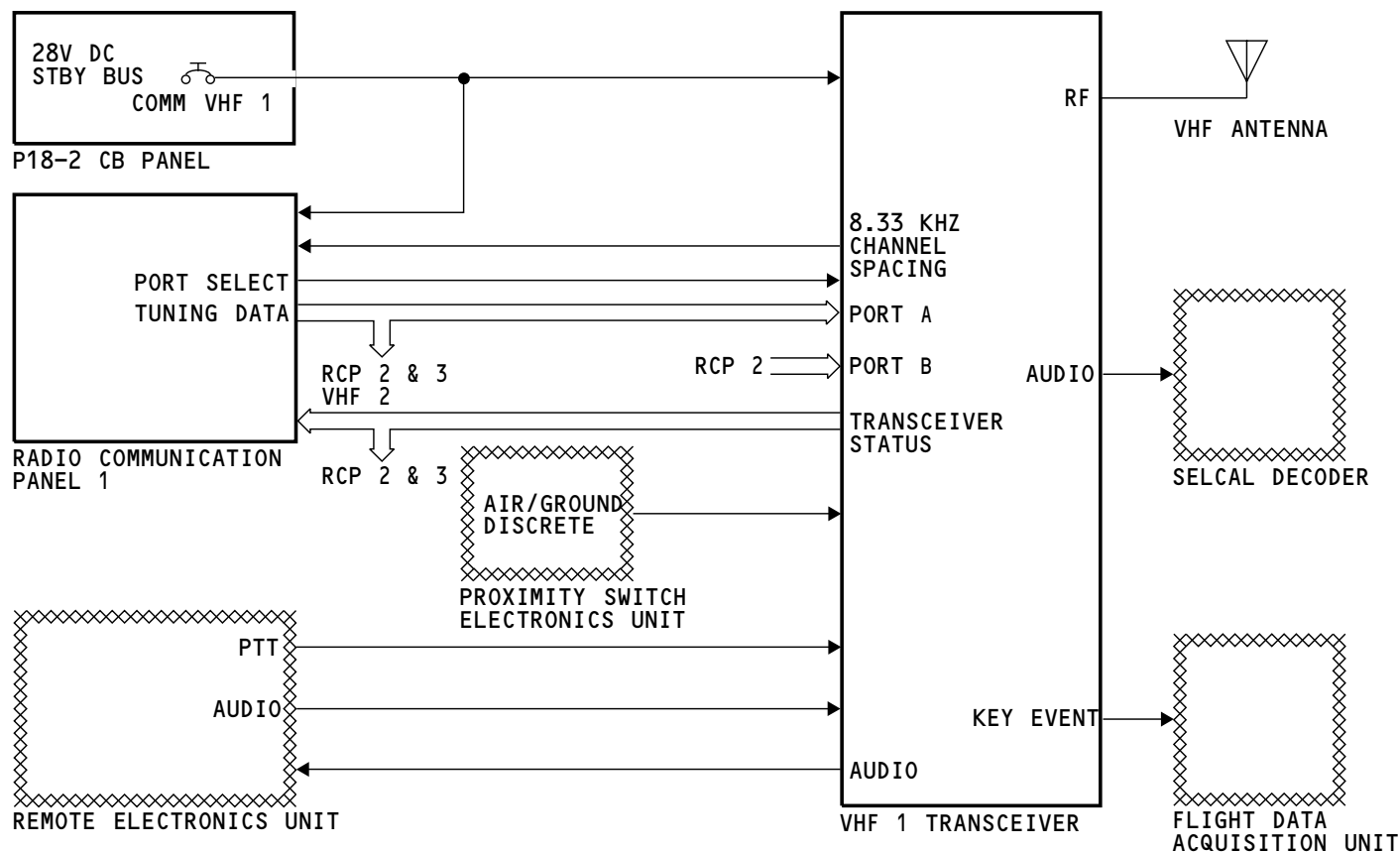
EFFECTIVITY

SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 1 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES



M79630 S0004622953_V1

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 1 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES

23-12-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 2 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES

Power

The dc bus 2 supplies 28v dc power to the VHF 2 transceiver and Radio Communication Panel (RCP) 2.

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

VHF 2 Transceiver

The VHF 2 transceiver has an interface with these components:

- RCP 1, 2, and 3
- VHF antenna
- Proximity switch electronics unit
- Remote electronics unit
- SELCAL decoder unit
- Flight data acquisition.

Radio Communication Panel

RCP 2 supplies frequency information to the VHF 2 transceiver on an ARINC 429 bus to port A. RCP 1 supplies frequency information to the VHF 2 transceiver on an ARINC 429 bus to port B. RCP 3 can supply frequency data to VHF 2 transceiver through RCP 1 or 2. For more information on tuning interfaces, see VHF Communication System - Tuning Interfaces.

The VHF transceiver supplies the status of the transceiver to the RCPs.

The transceiver sends a ground to the RCP to provide the capability to tune VHF frequencies at 8.33 kHz spacing.

VHF Antenna

The VHF antenna receives an RF signal from the VHF transceiver and transmits the RF signal to other airplane and ground VHF communication systems. The antenna also receives incoming RF signals and sends the RF signals to the VHF transceiver. The transceiver demodulates or detects the audio from the RF carrier signal.

External Interfaces

The VHF 2 transceiver has an interface with components from other airplane systems.

The proximity switch electronic unit sends a ground signal to increase the flight leg count to track fault history.

The remote electronics unit sends flight crew audio to the transceiver to be transmitted. It also sends a PTT start the transceiver transmit mode. The transceiver sends side tone and received audio to the REU for the flight interphone system.

The transceiver sends received audio to the SELCAL decoder. The SELCAL decoder isolates the SELCAL code from voice audio.

The flight data acquisition unit receives a PTT from the transceiver for key event marking.

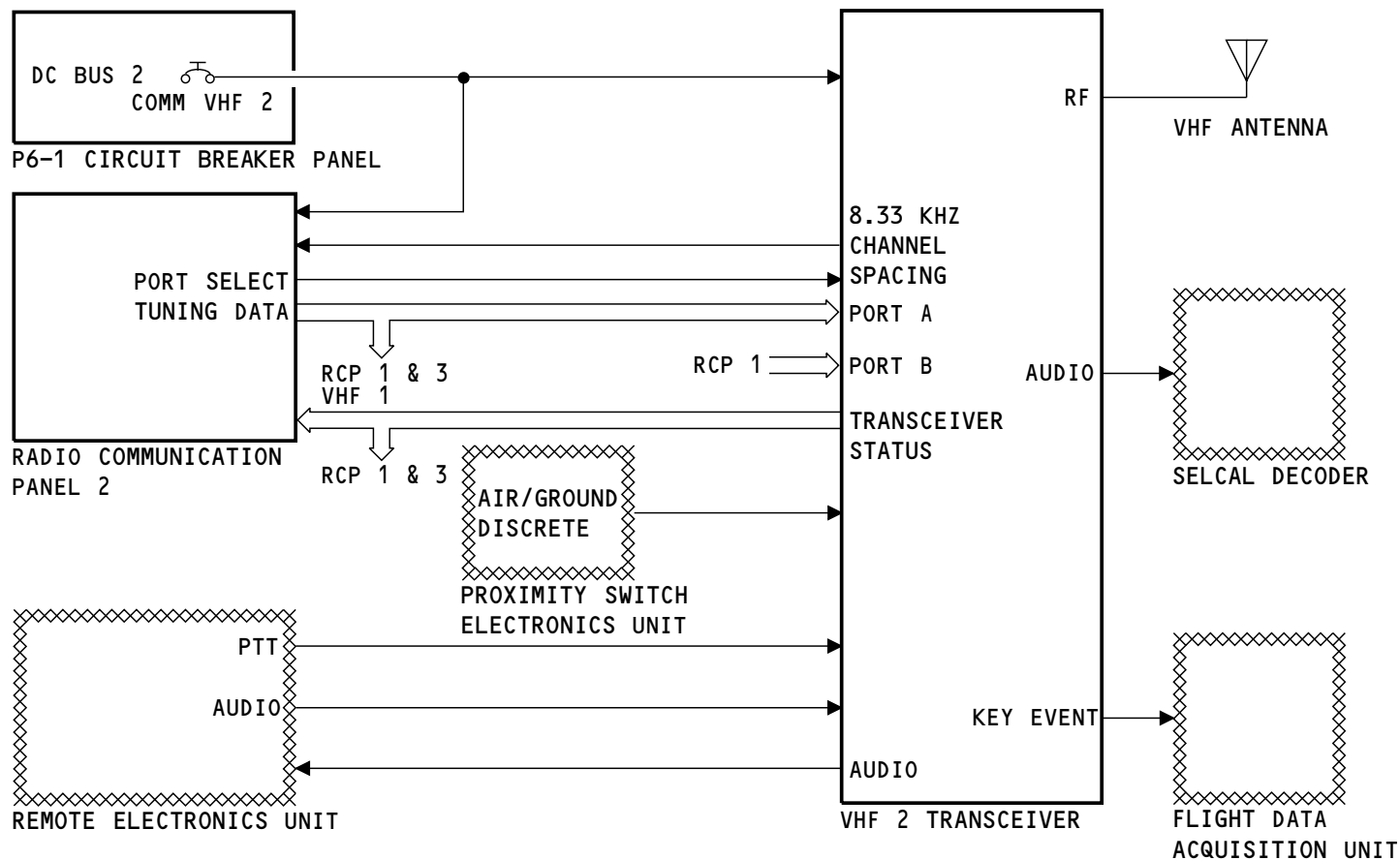
23-12-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 2 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES



M79644 S0004622969_V2

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 2 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES

23-12-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 3 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES

Power

The DC bus 2 supplies 28v dc power to the VHF 3 transceiver and Radio Communication Panel (RCP) 3.

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

VHF 3 Transceiver

The VHF 3 transceiver has an interface with these components:

- RCP 1, 2, and 3
- VHF antenna
- Proximity switch electronics unit
- Remote electronics unit
- SELCAL decoder unit
- ACARS communications management unit
- Flight data acquisition unit.
- Voice protection relay (IDU controlled or RCP controlled)

Radio Communication Panel

RCP 3 supplies frequency information to the VHF 3 transceiver on an ARINC 429/750 bus to port B. For more information on tuning interfaces see VHF Communication System - Tuning Interfaces.

The VHF transceiver supplies the status of the transceiver to the RCPs.

The transceiver sends a ground to the radio control panel to give the capability to tune VHF frequencies at 8.33 kHz spacing.

VHF Antenna

The VHF antenna receives an RF signal from the VHF transceiver and transmits the RF signal to other airplane and ground VHF communication systems. The antenna also receives RF signals and sends the RF signals to the VHF transceiver. The transceiver demodulates or detects the audio from the RF carrier signal.

External Interfaces

The VHF 3 transceiver has an interface with components from other airplane systems.

The proximity switch electronic unit sends a ground signal to increase the flight leg count to track fault history.

The remote electronics unit sends flight crew audio to the transceiver to be transmitted. It also sends a PTT to start the transceivers transmit mode. The transceiver sends received audio to the REU for the flight interphone system.

The transceiver sends received audio to the SELCAL decoder. The SELCAL decoder isolates the SELCAL code from voice audio.

The flight data acquisition unit receives a PTT from the transceiver for key event marking.

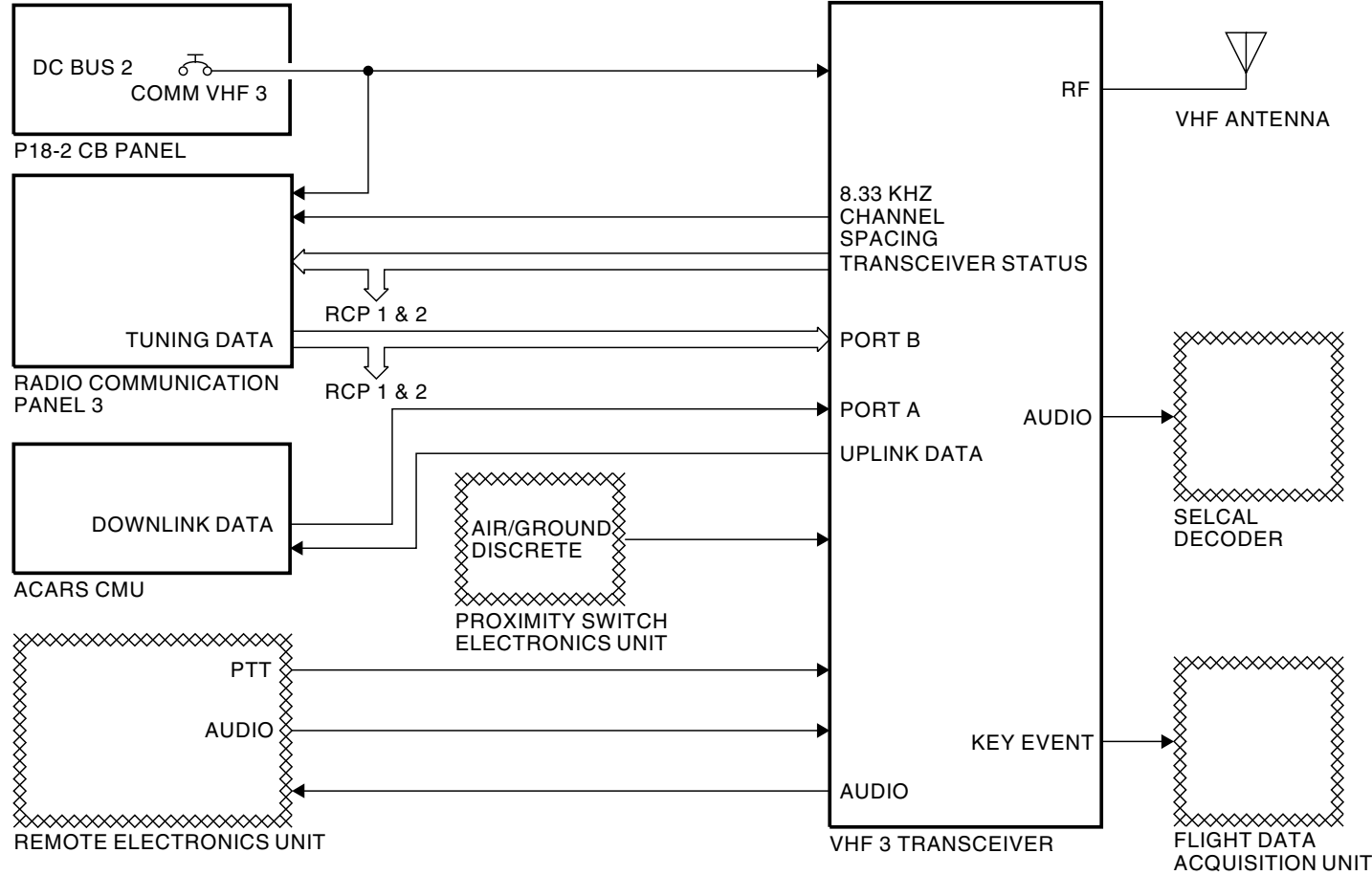
23-12-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 3 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES



M79680 S0004623002_V2

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF 3 TRANSCEIVER INTERFACES

23-12-00-024

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-12-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNING INTERFACES

General

The VHF communication system uses data buses to share tuning information between the Radio Communication Panel (RCP)s and the communication transceivers.

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

Tuning Bus

Each RCP has one ARINC 429 output bus.

The RCPs send tuning data to the communication transceivers. Any RCP can tune any transceiver.

Each RCP sends tuning data and status to the other radio communication panels. This keeps the tuning data synchronized and lets any RCP tune any transceiver.

The RCP keeps the tuning data in memory. Usually, the RCP uses the tuning data from its memory to send on the output bus.

The RCP can connect the CROSSTALK 1 bus directly to the output bus. This occurs for these RCP conditions:

- RCP does not have power
- RCP is OFF
- RCP is failed.

Port Select Discrete

RCP 1 and 2 send the port select discretes to the transceivers.

Each transceiver has two tuning data input ports, port A and port B. The transceiver uses the port select discrete to select the input port. A grounded port select discrete causes the transceiver to use port A. An open port select discrete causes the transceiver to use port B.

Training Information Point

These are the RCP VHF radio selections when the airplane receives power and there are no RCP faults:

- RCP 1 - VHF 1
- RCP 3 - VHF 3
- RCP 2 - VHF 2.

If RCP 1 fails, you can tune the VHF 1 transceiver with RCP 2 or 3. RCP 1 port select discrete changes from ground to open, and RCP 2 sends tuning data to input port B. RCP 3 sends tuning data on CROSSTALK 2 bus which connects to RCP 2. RCP 2 sends this tuning data to the VHF 1 transceiver on the output TUNE bus.

If RCP 2 fails, you can tune the VHF 2 transceiver with RCP 1 or 3. RCP 2 port select discrete changes from ground to open, and RCP 1 sends tuning data to input port B. RCP 3 sends tuning data on CROSSTALK 1 bus which connects to RCP 1. RCP 1 sends this tuning data to the VHF 2 transceiver on the output TUNE bus.

If RCP 3 fails, you can tune the VHF 3 transceiver with RCP 1 or 2. RCP 1 sends tuning data to RCP 2 on CROSSTALK 1 bus. RCP 2 puts RCP 1 tuning data on the output TUNE bus. RCP 2 output TUNE bus is connected to RCP 3 CROSSTALK 1 bus. The bus relay in RCP 3 is closed. The tuning data connects directly to the output TUNE bus and goes to the VHF 3 transceiver. RCP 2 tuning data goes to the RCP 3 CROSSTALK 1 bus and to VHF 3 transceiver on the output TUNE bus.

23-12-00

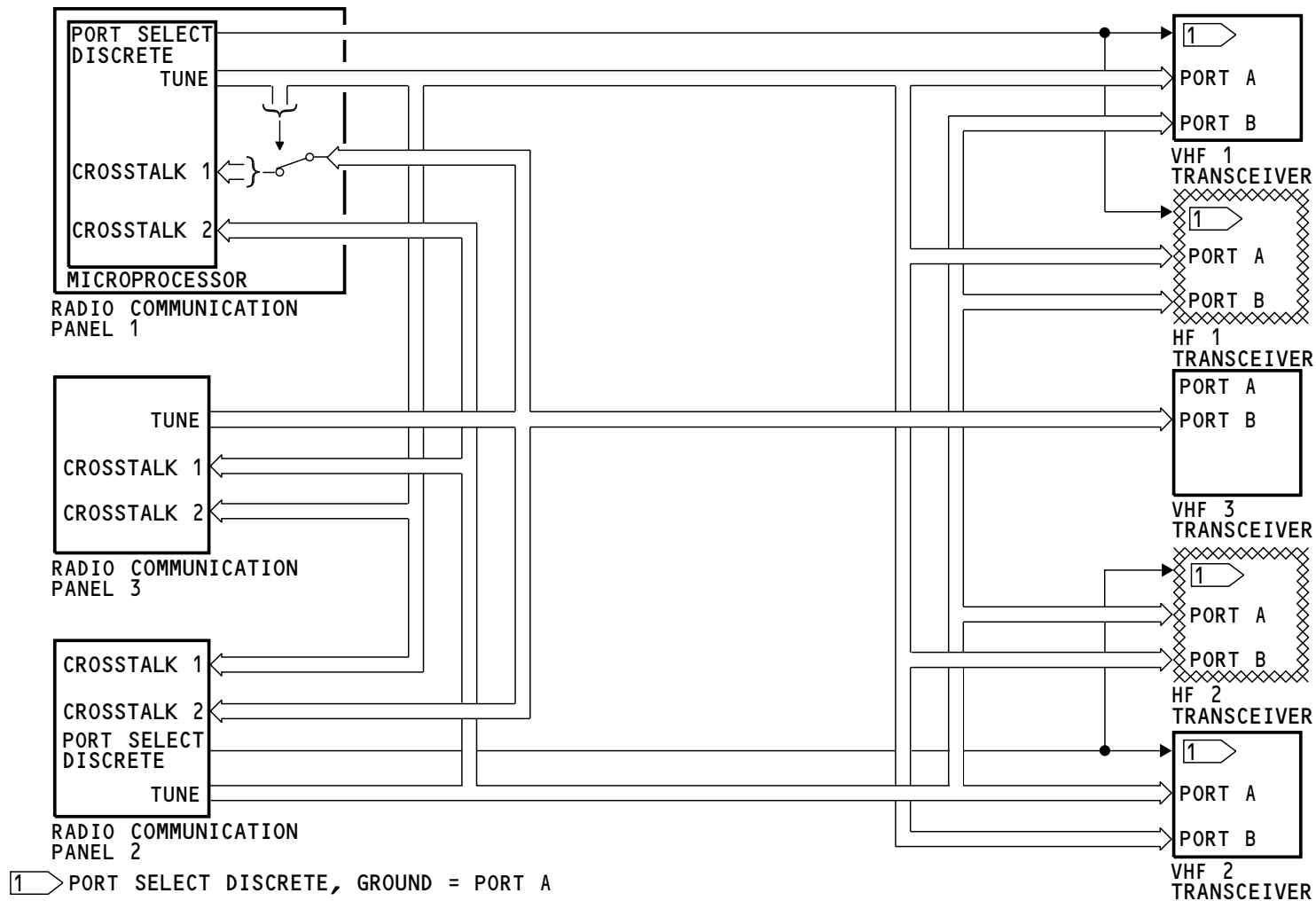
SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNING INTERFACES



M79608 S0004623008_V1

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TUNING INTERFACES

23-12-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL****General**

The Radio Communication Panel (RCP) provides these functions:

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

- VHF and HF radio selection
- Active/standby frequency selection
- HF sensitivity control
- Test initiation to the VHF transceiver
- Mode selection to the HF transceiver
- Off switch.

Controls and Indicators

At power up, RCP 1 controls VHF 1, RCP 2 controls VHF 2, and RCP 3 controls VHF 3.

Any RCP can control any transceiver. Push the radio tuning switch to select the transceiver for that RCP. The light above the switch comes on. Each RCP can tune only one transceiver at a time.

When you select an off-side radio, two off-side tuning lights come on. One light is on the RCP that you use to make the selection. This is the off-side radio. The other light is on the RCP of the radio you select. This is the on-side radio.

Set the frequency in the standby frequency indicator. Turn the frequency selectors to set the frequency. The first digit is always 1. The outer knob sets the second two digits (10 MHz and 1MHz) in 1 MHz increments. The inner knob sets the fourth, fifth, and sixth digits (100 kHz, 10 kHz, and 1 kHz) in 5kHz increments if the 8.33 KHz spacing capability is activated.

Push the frequency transfer switch to change the active and standby frequencies.

The HF SENS control sets the RF sensitivity level of the HF transceiver. Rotate the control to adjust the sensitivity of the HF transceiver.

The inactive frequency indicator shows a value between 0 and 99. Maximum sensitivity is 99. Minimum sensitivity is 0. After a delay, the inactive frequency indicator shows the inactive frequency again.

The VHF communication test switch starts a confidence check of the VHF transceiver. Push the VHF communication test switch to stop the squelch in the VHF transceiver. You hear static when you push the switch.

Push the OFF switch to stop the operation of the RCP. The switch shows white when it is off.

BITE

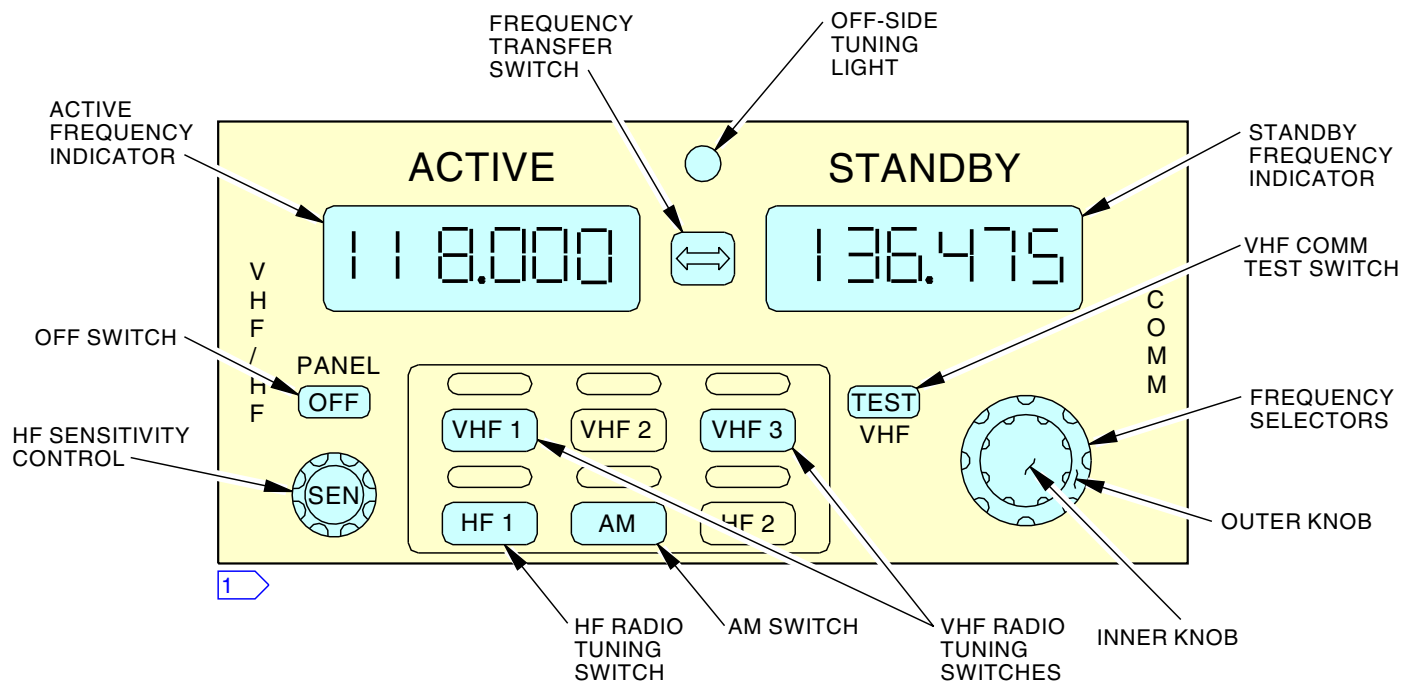
The RCP continuously does a self-test. The frequency indicators show PANEL FAIL when there is an internal failure of the radio communication panel.

The RCP continuously monitors the condition of the transceiver. If the transceiver had failed, the two frequency indicators show FAIL.

EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL



NOTE:

ON THE FREQUENCY TUNING PANEL THERE IS A DOUBLE KNOB. THE OUTER KNOB WHEN ROTATE WILL CHANGES THE LEFT DIGITS. THE INNER KNOB WHEN ROTATE WILL CHANGES THE RIGHT DIGITS.

1 **INOP**

INOP PLACARDS ARE OVER THE LEGEND OF ANY RADIO SELECT SWITCH THAT IS NOT CONNECTED.

M79577 S0004623039_V2

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL

23-12-00



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF TRANSCEIVER

Purpose

The purpose of the VHF transceiver is to transmit and receive information.

Physical Description

The transceiver is a solid state device. It has these components:

- Power supply
- Frequency synthesizer
- Receiver
- Modulator
- Transmitter
- Microprocessor.

Functional Description

The transceiver has these properties:

- 118.000 to 136.990 MHz frequency range
- 8.33 kHz frequency spacing
- Voice or data operation
- 25 watts output power
- Built-in fault detection and memory.

Power

The transceiver operates with +27.5v dc.

Controls, Indicators, and BITE

Push the TEST switch to start a system self-test. This includes these tests:

- Transceiver self-test
- Input serial tuning word test
- Antenna VSWR test.

The front panel LEDs show the results of the VHF system self-test. These are the front panel LEDs:

- LRU
- CONTROL
- ANTENNA.

The LRU LED shows a failure of the transceiver. The CONTROL LED shows a failure of the ARINC 429 input. The ANTENNA LED shows a failure of the antenna.

All LEDs come on red for two seconds. Then the LRU LED changes to green and the other LEDs stay red for two seconds. Then all 3 LEDs turn off for two seconds and the LRU LED comes on green for 30 seconds while the CONTROL and ANTENNA LEDs remain off.

If any of the three LEDs come on red after the self-test a defective condition is present.

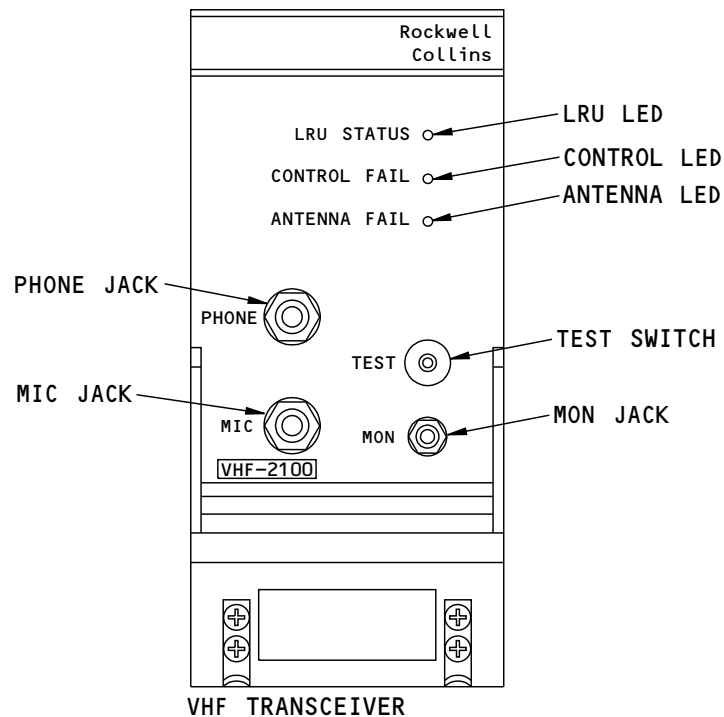
Microphone and Headphone Jacks

Microphone (mic) and headphone (phone) jacks give connection points for mic and phone use.

Monitor Jacks

Monitor port to give access to RS-232 debug data being transmitted by the unit.

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF TRANSCEIVER



1303175 S0000220646_V1

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF TRANSCEIVER

23-12-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF ANTENNA

General Description

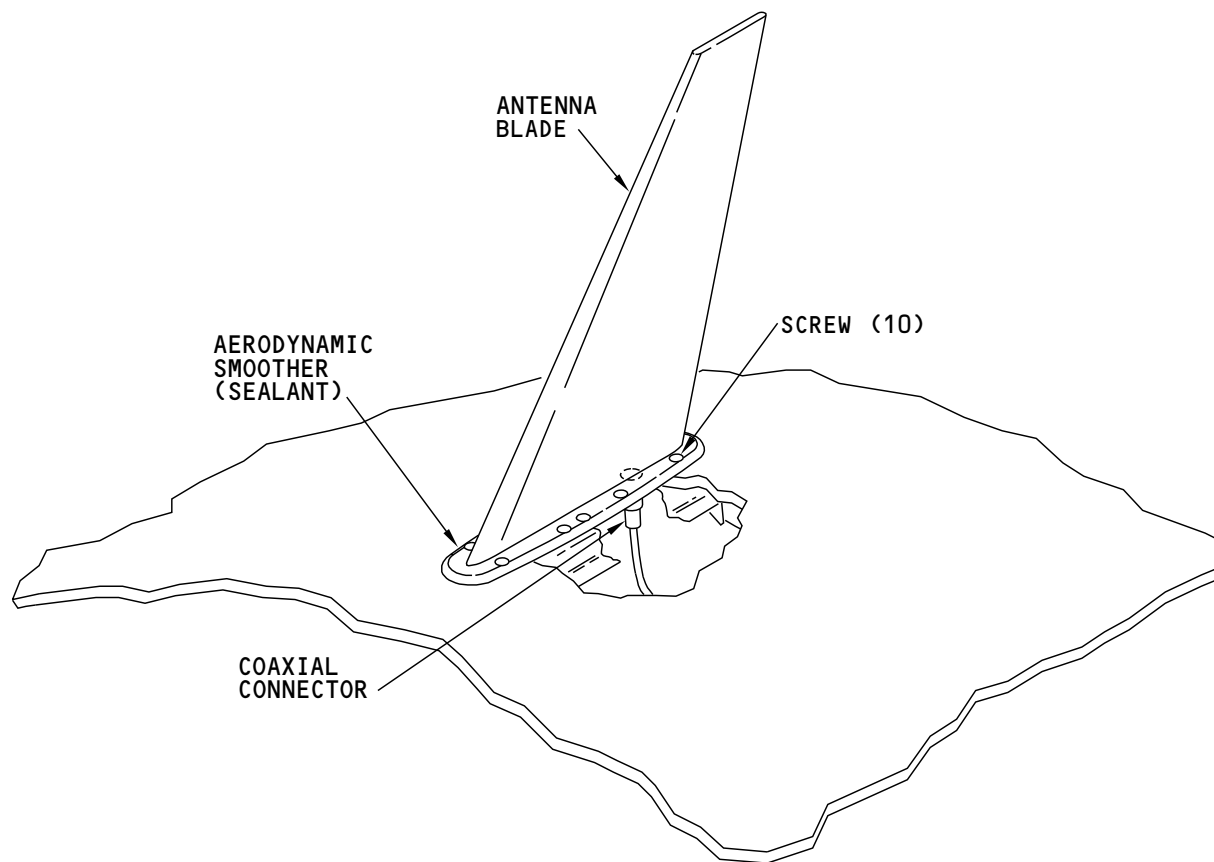
The VHF antenna receives and transmits RF signals in the VHF frequency range.

The antenna attaches with 10 screws. There is an aerodynamic smoother around the antenna base. This aerodynamic smoother is a sealant. An o-ring seals the coaxial connector.

NOTE: For the top antenna, the cable can fall through the hole. When you remove the top antenna, make sure you attach the cable to something to prevent this.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF ANTENNA



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - VHF ANTENNA

M79573 S0004623050_V1

23-12-00-012

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-12-00

**VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - RECEIVE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION****Receive Operation**

The VHF antenna receives RF signals and sends them to the VHF communication transceiver through the coaxial cable. The transceiver sends the RF signal through the receive circuits and then sends the audio to the flight interphone system.

The transceiver also sends data to the selective calling (SELCAL) decoder.

The microprocessor sends the receive frequency to the frequency synthesizer. The frequency synthesizer sets the frequency of the AM receiver.

The microprocessor also sends a logic 1 to the transfer switch when the transceiver is in the receive mode. This closes the transfer switch and sends the RF signal from the antenna to the AM receiver.

The AM receiver demodulates the RF input and detects the audio signal. The audio output from the AM receiver goes to these circuits:

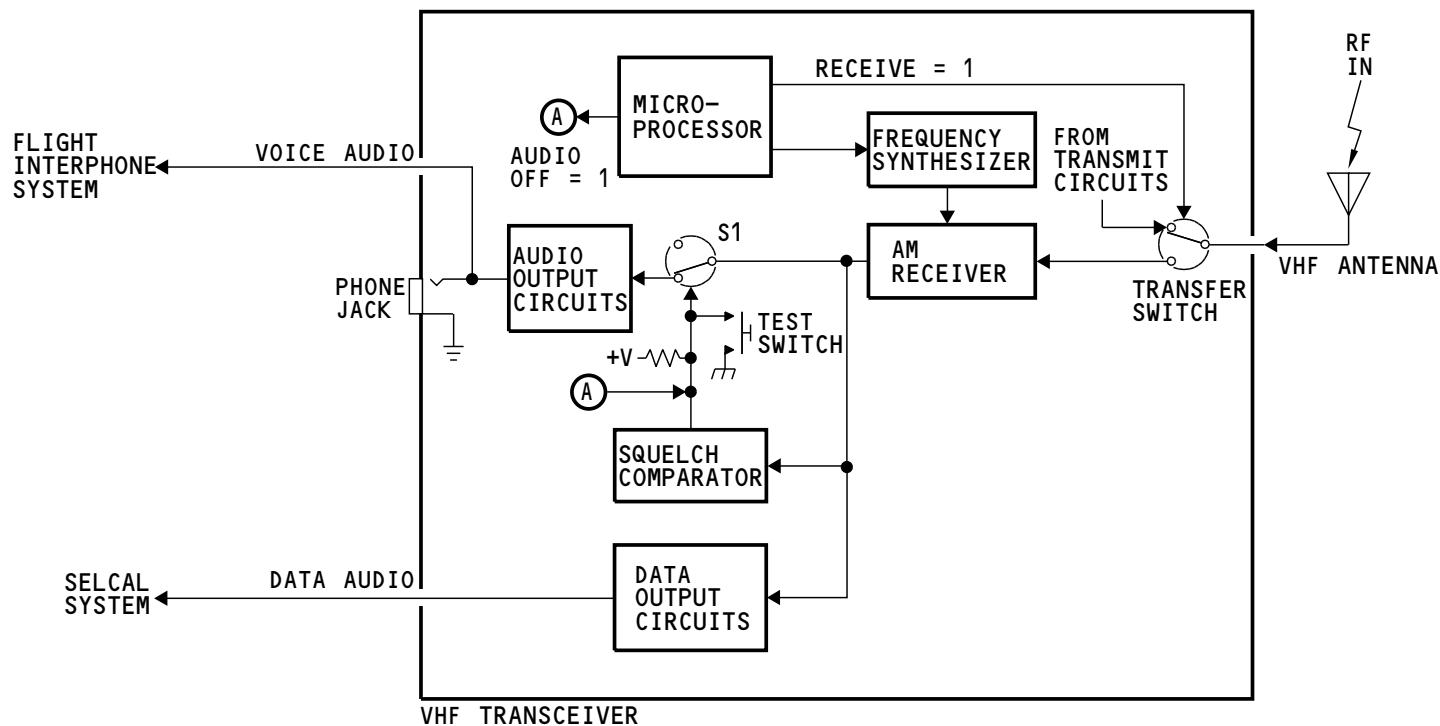
- Switch S1
- Squelch comparator.

The audio output circuits send the audio signal to the flight interphone system and to the headphone jack.

Do a test of the receive audio circuits with the TEST push button. Push the TEST push button to close switch S1 and send the receive audio to the audio output circuits. This lets the operator hear background noise not normally heard.

The squelch comparator circuit compares the detected audio with a threshold value. If the level of the detected audio is larger than the threshold, the squelch circuits sends a ground to switch S1. Switch S1 closes and sends the audio to the audio output circuits.

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - RECEIVE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M79582 S0004623053_V1

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - RECEIVE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-12-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

**VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSMIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION****Transmit Operation**

The VHF transceiver receives audio from the remote electronics unit (REU). The transceiver sends the signals through the transmit circuits and then to the antenna for transmission.

During transmission, the microprocessor receives a push-to-talk (PTT) signal from the REU. This causes the microprocessor to send a logic 0 to the transfer switch. The transfer switch connects the output of the transmit circuits to the VHF antenna.

Mic audio from the REU goes to the transmit circuits in the transceiver. The transmit circuits modulate the RF carrier with the mic audio. This makes an amplitude modulated RF signal. The signal goes to the directional coupler and transfer switch. The RF signal goes through the transfer switch and to the antenna. The antenna transmits the RF signal.

The RF output from the directional coupler also goes to the power monitor. The power monitor sends a logic 1 when the output power is larger than 15 watts.

The side tone switch closes when the output power is larger than 15 watts and the transceiver is in the voice mode. The microphone audio goes through the REU to the flight interphone speakers.

Keyline Timer

The keyline timer is a function that limits VHF transmission to approximately 35 seconds. Approximately 25 to 30 seconds after PTT is selected, the transceiver makes an aural tone (or, side-tone) to the headset. This tone continues for approximately five seconds. When the tone stops, the RF transmission also stops, and the radio is set to receive mode automatically. The radio remains in receive mode until the PTT is released, and selected again.

The keyline timer function is serviceable when the side-tone, and RF transmission, stop within 33-36 seconds after PTT selection.

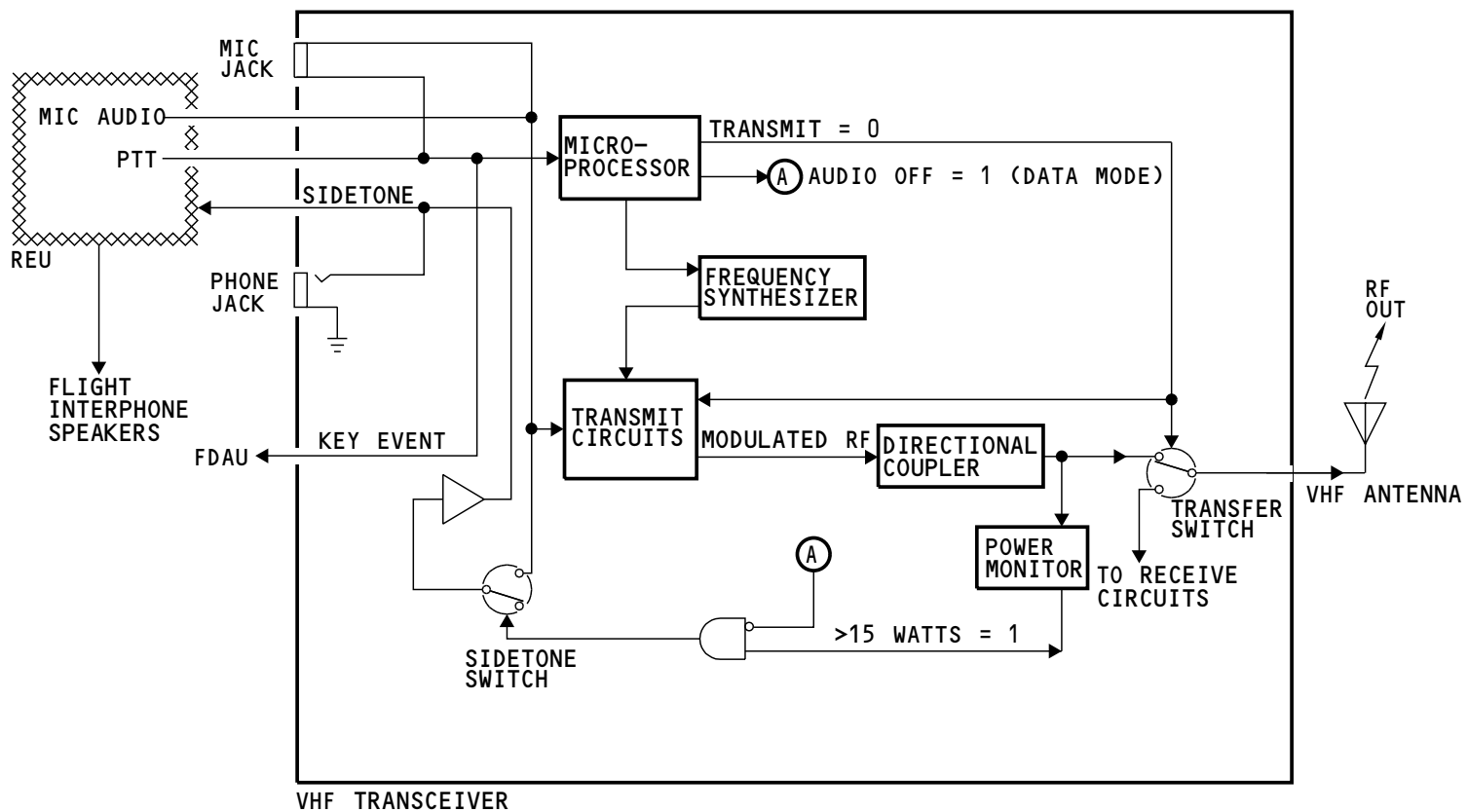
23-12-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSMIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M79587 S0004623059_V1

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRANSMIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-12-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - OPERATION

General

You use these components to operate the VHF radio:

- Microphone or headset
- Control wheel mic switch
- Radio Communication Panel (RCP)
- Remote mic switch
- Audio control panel.

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

Receive Operation

You use the RCP and the audio control panel to receive transmissions on the VHF radio.

On the audio control panel, push the receiver volume control for the VHF radio. Turn the control to adjust the volume from the VHF radio.

You hear audio on the headset and the flight interphone speakers. To hear sound from the flight interphone speakers, push the speaker (SPKR) volume control to turn on the speaker. Turn the control to adjust the volume of sound from the speaker.

When you apply power to the airplane, the RCPs are on. Initially, RCP 1 tunes VHF 1 and RCP 2 tunes VHF 2. Push the VHF microphone selector switch for the VHF radio you want to use. A light above the switch comes on to show which radio the panel controls. When you push the audio control panel microphone selector switch, the VHF receiver volume control is automatically selected. The frequency indicators show VHF radio frequencies. The VHF transceiver tunes to the frequency in the active frequency indicator.

Use the frequency selectors to tune the radio to a new frequency. The standby frequency display shows the new frequency.

When you are sure the frequency is correct, push the frequency transfer switch. The active frequency indicator shows the new frequency. The VHF radio uses the new frequency.

Listen to the audio from the VHF radio on the speaker or headset. Adjust the volume control switches on the audio control panel for a comfortable sound level.

Transmit Operation

Make sure the active frequency indicator shows the frequency you want to transmit. Make sure the frequency you select is a valid transmit frequency.

Push the microphone selector switch on the audio control panel for the VHF radio.

Listen for transmissions on the frequency you selected. When the frequency is clear and you want to transmit a message, key the mic and speak into it. You hear sidetone in the headphone and muted sidetone from the speaker. The flight interphone system mutes the sidetone to the speaker when you use the boom mic or the hand mic.

You can continue to transmit and receive on the frequency you selected.

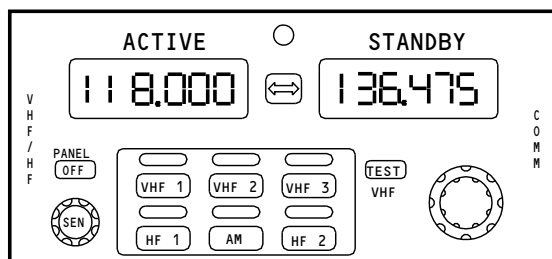
23-12-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - OPERATION

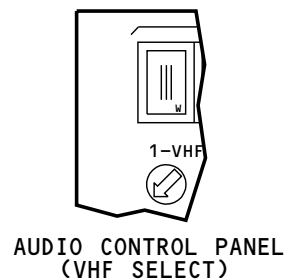
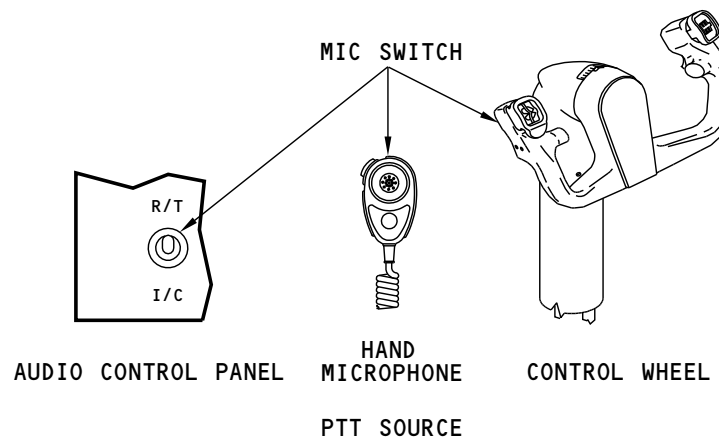


RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL

1

1 INOP

INOP PLACARDS ARE OVER THE LEGEND OF ANY RADIO SELECT SWITCH THAT IS NOT CONNECTED.



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - OPERATION

M79592 S0004623062_V1

23-12-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - BUILT IN TEST**General**

The VHF transceiver has built-in test equipment (BITE). You start the test on the front of the VHF transceiver.

When you start the test, the built-in test equipment examines the input from the control panel, the internal circuits and processors of the transceiver, and the output to the antenna.

Test Operation

When you push the TEST switch, the transceiver does these checks:

- Monitors the power supply
- Does a test of the memory devices
- Does a test of the input from the control panel
- Does a test of the frequency synthesizer
- Keys the transmitter for 100 ms at 128.475 MHz and does a test of the modulation, power and VSWR (voltage standing wave ratio)
- Does a test of the receiver automatic-gain-control and squelch operation.

Test Indications

Push the TEST switch to start the test. The LRU STATUS, CONTROL FAIL, and ANTENNA FAIL indicators show red for three seconds. Then, the LRU STATUS indicator shows green and the other indicators show red for three more seconds. Then, all indicators go off for three seconds.

Then, the transceiver shows the result of the test for 30 seconds. If the LRU STATUS indicator is green and the CONTROL FAIL and ANTENNA FAIL indicators are not on, then the test result is good. If an indicator is red, then there is a failure.

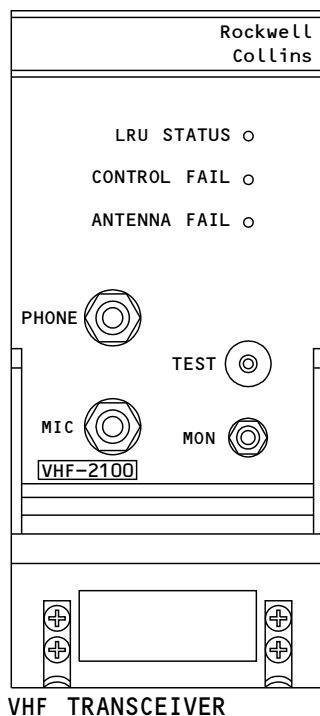
The red LRU STATUS indicator comes on if there is a failure of the VHF transceiver. The red CONTROL FAIL indicator comes on if there is a failure of the signal from the control panel. The red ANTENNA FAIL comes on if there is a failure of the antenna or the wiring between the transceiver and the antenna.

23-12-00**SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - BUILT IN TEST



TIME, AFTER TEST STARTS	TEST INDICATION			TEST RESULT
	LRU STATUS	CONTROL FAIL	ANTENNA FAIL	
0-3 SECONDS	ON-RED	ON-RED	ON-RED	-
3-6 SECONDS	ON-GREEN	ON-RED	ON-RED	-
6-9 SECONDS	OFF	OFF	OFF	-
9-39 SECONDS	ON-GREEN	OFF	OFF	PASS
	ON-RED	OFF	OFF	XCVR FAULT
	ON-GREEN	ON-RED	OFF	CONTROL PANEL FAULT
	ON-GREEN	OFF	ON-RED	ANTENNA SYSTEM FAULT
39+ SECONDS	OFF	OFF	OFF	-

1302880 S0000220678_V1

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - BUILT IN TEST

23-12-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL BITE

Radio Communication Panel BITE Indication

When you push the VHF switch on the Radio Communication Panel (RCP), the display usually shows a VHF radio frequency.

NOTE: Radio Communication Panel (RCP) is an approved alternative name for Radio Tuning Panel (RTP).

If the built-in test equipment in the RCP senses a failure, you see one of these displays:

- INOP INOP
- FAIL FAIL
- PANEL FAIL.

If the RCP receives no signal from the VHF transceiver, both displays show frequency or INOP INOP. This occurs when one of these conditions is true:

- There is no VHF transceiver
- The VHF transceiver has no power
- The VHF transceiver can not send ARINC 429 data to the RCP
- The RCP does not receive the ARINC 429 data from the VHF transceiver
- Wiring from the VHF transceiver to the RCP is bad.

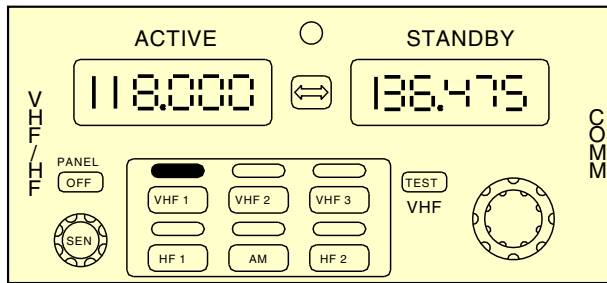
NOTE: RCP may be configured to annunciate "INOP" in the ACTIVE and STANDBY windows when VHF3 is selected.

If the RCP receives the FAIL WARN signal from the VHF transceiver, both displays show FAIL. This occurs when the BITE in the VHF transceiver senses that the transceiver has a failure.

If the RCP has a failure, the active display shows PANEL and the standby display shows FAIL.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL BITE



RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL

1

DISPLAY		CONDITION
ACTIVE	STANDBY	
118.000	136.475	VALID FREQUENCY FOR THE VHF RADIO (118.000 TO 136.475)
INOP	INOP	RCP RECEIVES NO SIGNAL FROM THE VHF TRANSCEIVER
FAIL	FAIL	VHF TRANSCEIVER FAILURE
PANEL	FAIL	RCP FAILURE

1 INOP

INOP PLACARDS ARE OVER THE LEGEND OF ANY RADIO SELECT SWITCH THAT IS NOT CONNECTED.

M79687 S0004623083_V3

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - RADIO COMMUNICATION PANEL BITE

23-12-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



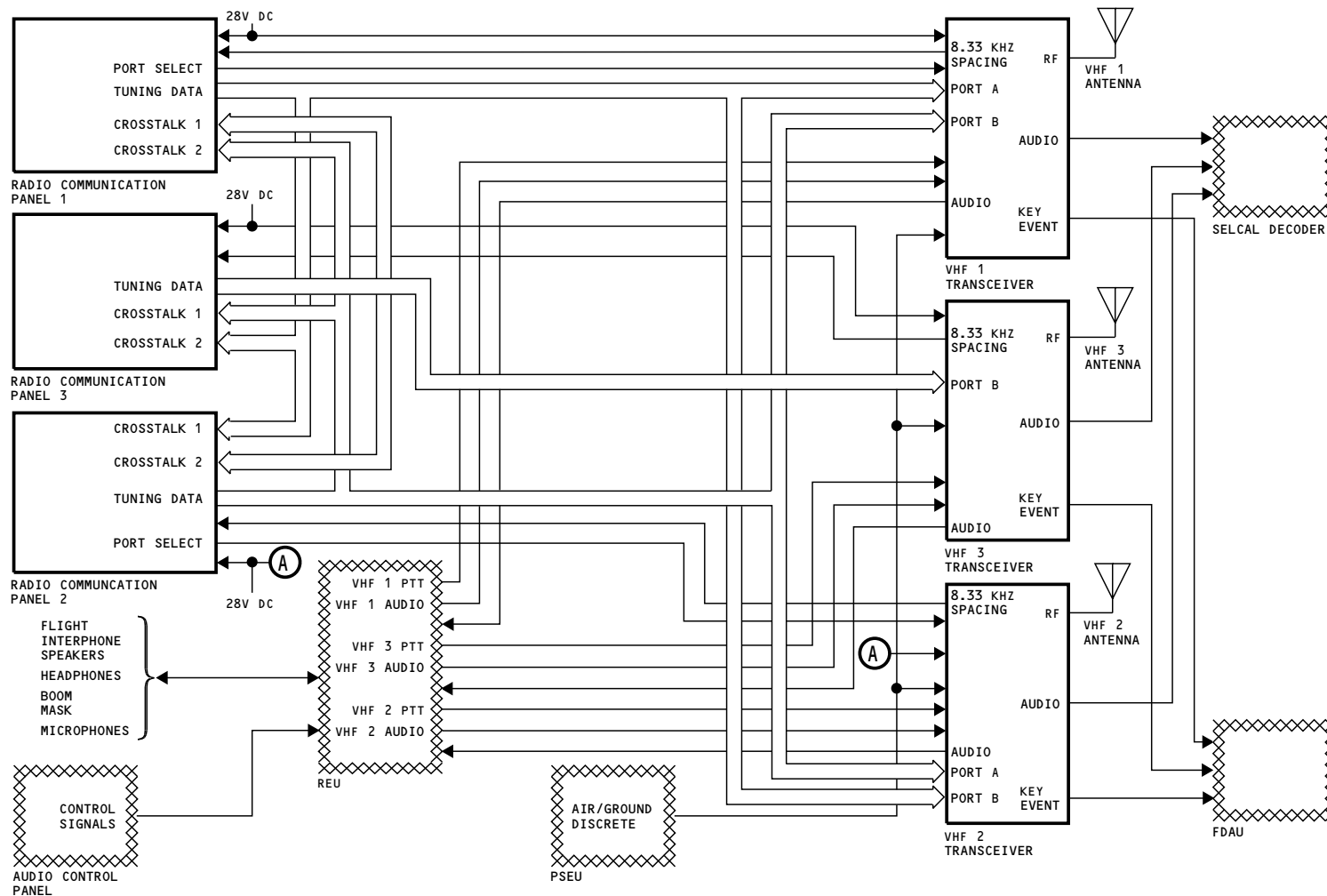
VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

General

This page is for reference.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY



M79720 S0004623122_V1

VHF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

23-12-00

23-12-00-0027

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

Purpose

The satellite communication (SATCOM) system uses ground stations and satellites to transmit and receive data and voice messages. The SATCOM system supplies higher quality data and voice message signals for passengers and crew over longer distances than VHF and HF communication systems.

The SATCOM uses satellites in geosynchronous orbit as relay stations between the Aeronautical Earth Station (AES) and the Ground Earth Station (GES). The GES use telephone lines or microwave links to complete the communication link between the airplane and the selected GES.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- ACARS - airplane communications addressing and reporting system
- ACMS - airplane condition and monitoring system
- ACP - audio control panel
- ADIRS - air data inertial reference system
- ADIRU - air data inertial reference unit
- AES - aeronautical earth station
- APM - avionics processor module
- APU - auxiliary power unit
- ARINC - Aeronautical Radio Incorporated
- ATA - Air Transport Association
- ATC - air traffic control
- ATTN - attenuator
- BGAN - broadband global area network
- BITE - built-in test equipment
- C - center
- capt - captain
- CCM - channel card module
- CDU - control display unit
- CH - channel
- cm - centimeter
- CM - continuous monitor
- CMU - communication management unit
- config - configuration
- CPM - communications processor module
- dc - direct current
- DEU - display electronics unit
- DFDAU - digital flight data acquisition unit
- ECM - external configuration memory
- FCC - flight control computer
- FDAU - flight data acquisition unit
- FLTNO - flight number
- FMC - flight management computer
- F/O - first officer
- GES - ground earth station
- GHz - gigahertz
- GPS - global positioning system
- gspd - ground speed
- HDOP - horizontal dilution of precision
- HF - high frequency
- HGA - high gain antenna
- ICAO - International Civil Aviation Organization
- ident - identification
- IF - intermediate frequency
- IFC - intermittent fault count
- IGA - intermediate gain antenna
- I/O - input/output
- IRS - inertial reference system
- kg - kilogram
- L - left

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

- LED - light emitting diode
- LNA/DIP - low noise amplifier/diplexer
- LSK - line select key
- LRU - line replaceable unit
- lwr - lower
- MCU - modular concept unit
- MHz - megahertz
- mic - microphone
- MU - management unit
- obs - observer
- ORT - owner requirement table
- PDL - portable data loader
- PAST - person-activate self-test
- PFIDS - passenger flight information distribution system
- P/N - part number
- POC - power-on count
- POST - power-on self-test
- pri - priority
- PSM - power supply module
- PTT - push-to-talk
- pwr - power
- R - right
- REU - remote electronics unit
- RF - radio frequency
- rx - receive
- SATCOM - satellite communication
- SBB - SwiftBroadband
- SCM - SDU configuration module
- SDU - satellite data unit
- temp - temperature
- TSPO - time since power-on
- tx - transmit
- UHF - ultra high frequency
- upr - upper
- USIM - universal subscriber identity module
- UTC - universal coordinated time
- v ac - volts alternating current
- v dc - volts direct current
- VHF - very high frequency
- W - Watt
- warn - warning
- xfr - transfer

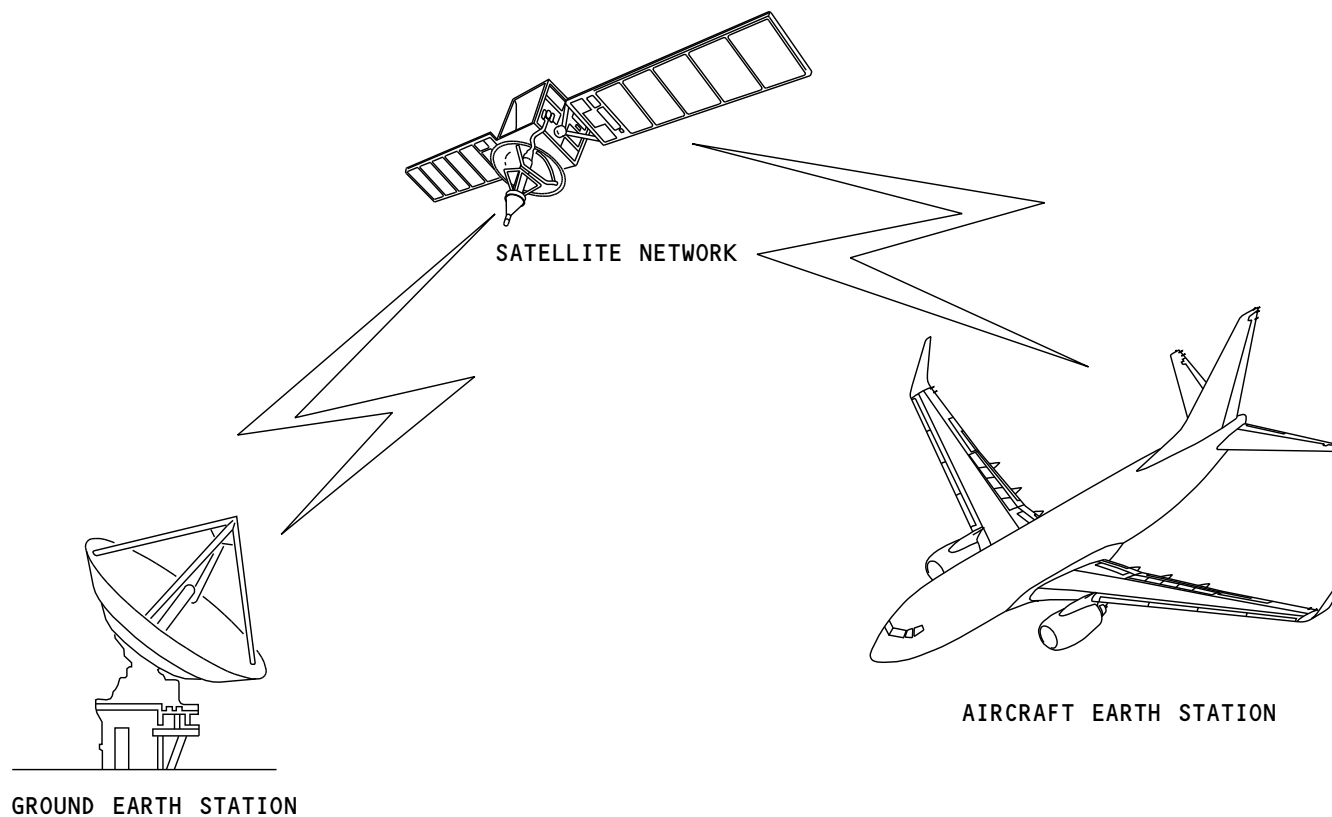
23-15-00

SIA ALL **EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



M79765 S0004623200_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-15-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-15-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The satellite communication (SATCOM) system is a mobile communication system which supplies long-range voice and data communication between the airplane and the ground communication networks.

The global satellite communication system includes global satellite networks, Aeronautical Earth Stations (AES) and Ground Earth Stations (GES).

The satellite network is the geostationary satellites orbit directly above the earth equator.

The AES is the part of the satellite communication system that is on the aircraft.

The GES is the part of the satellite communication system that is on the ground.

The SATCOM system supplies these communication channels:

- One voice channel of Aero-H+ Classic for flight compartment communications.
- One voice channel of SwiftBroadband (SBB) for flight compartment communications.
- One data channel for ACARS communications.

In addition, the SBB channel also allows other applications (i.e. cabin IFE systems) to use with the SBB flight deck voice channel simultaneously (if applicable).

The SATCOM system uses a communication link between the airplane and ground earth stations (GESs) through a network of satellites.

Satellite Network

The satellite network acts as a relay between the ground earth stations and the airplane. The satellites are part of the International Maritime Satellite Organization (Inmarsat) or Iridium Communication System (ICS). The satellites are in geosynchronous orbit above the Earth.

There must be a line of sight between the airplane and the satellite in order to do operational tests of the SATCOM.

The Inmarsat satellite network uses C-Band frequency to receive and transmit the SATCOM links to and from the GES.

The satellites that provide SBB services are called Inmarsat-4 (I-4) satellites.

I-4 is the fourth generation of satellites. In addition to the services that I-3 satellites provided, I-4 satellites provide worldwide SwiftBroadband (SBB) service. The SBB service and I-4 satellites support broadband applications such as video on demand, video-conferencing, fax, e-mail, telephone and high-speed LAN access.

The names of the I-4 satellites are:

- AMERICAS
- EMEA (Europe, Middle East, and Africa)
- APAC (Asia-Pacific)

Ground Earth Station

The ground earth stations (GES) are the part of the satellite communication system that is on the ground. The GES are responsible for routing the voice and data calls from the AES to their destinations around the world.

The GES connects the SATCOM system to the ground-based ACARS and public telephone networks.

Aeronautical Earth Station

The aeronautical earth station (AES) is the part of the satellite communication system that is on the aircraft.

The SATCOM system on the aircraft acts as an AES, which provides users with a data and voice communications link to the satellite network and global telecommunications system.

The AES uses L-band frequency to receive and transmit the SATCOM links to and from the satellites.

23-15-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

Airplane SATCOM Equipment

These are the components for the SATCOM system on the airplane:

- Satellite data unit (SDU)
- SDU Configuration Module (SCM)
- Low noise amplifier/duplexer (LNA/DIP)
- Top-mounted high gain antenna (HGA)

The satellite data unit (SDU) is the system interface and controller for the airplane SATCOM system.

The low noise amplifier/duplexer (LNA/DIP) lets the SATCOM system receive and transmit signals at the same time. It also increases the strength of the received satellite signals which are a low power level.

The high gain antenna (HGA) receives and transmits radio frequency (RF) signals for voice and data communication. .

SATCOM System Connections

The airplane SATCOM has interfaces with these systems or components:

- Control display units (CDUs) - The SATCOM control and status pages on the CDU give control of the SATCOM system. These pages also show system status.
- Audio control panels (ACPs) - The SDU sends call light discrete signals to the ACPs. The ACPs send call cancel discrete signals to the SDU.
- Remote electronics unit (REU) - Microphone audio goes to the SDU through the REU. Receive audio goes from the SDU to the speakers and headsets through the REU.
- ACARS communication management unit (CMU) - The ACARS CMU sends and receives data to and from the SDU for datalink communication with ground stations.
- Air data inertial reference unit (ADIRU). The ADIRU sends inertial reference data to the SDU for beam steering.

- Multi-Mode Receiver (MMR) - The MMR contains a GPS sensor unit (GPSSU) for the GPS function. The SDU gets the GPS position data and time from the GPS sensor unit of the MMR. The SDU uses the GPS data during the SBB operation.
- Aural warning module - When the SDU receives a SATCOM call from the ground station, the SDU causes the aural warning module to make a high-low chime in the flight compartment .
- Flight data acquisition unit (FDAU) - The remote electronics unit (REU) sends a keyline signal to the SDU when a crew member wants to transmit on SATCOM channel 1 or 2. The keyline signals also go to the FDAU for recording.
- Air traffic control (ATC) transponder - The ATC transponder supplies the airplane ID or AES ID to the SDU.
- Airplane interface (AI) - The AI connects with the SDU through an Ethernet interface cable to send and receive the SBB high-speed data to/from the IFE system (If installed).

SATCOM SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

CONTROL DISPLAY
UNIT (CDU)

AUDIO CONTROL
PANEL (ACP)

REMOTE
ELECTRONICS
UNIT (REU)

ACARS
COMMUNICATION
MANAGEMENT
UNIT (CMU)

AIR DATA
INERTIAL
REFERENCE UNIT
(ADIRU)

DATA LOADER
CONTROL PANEL

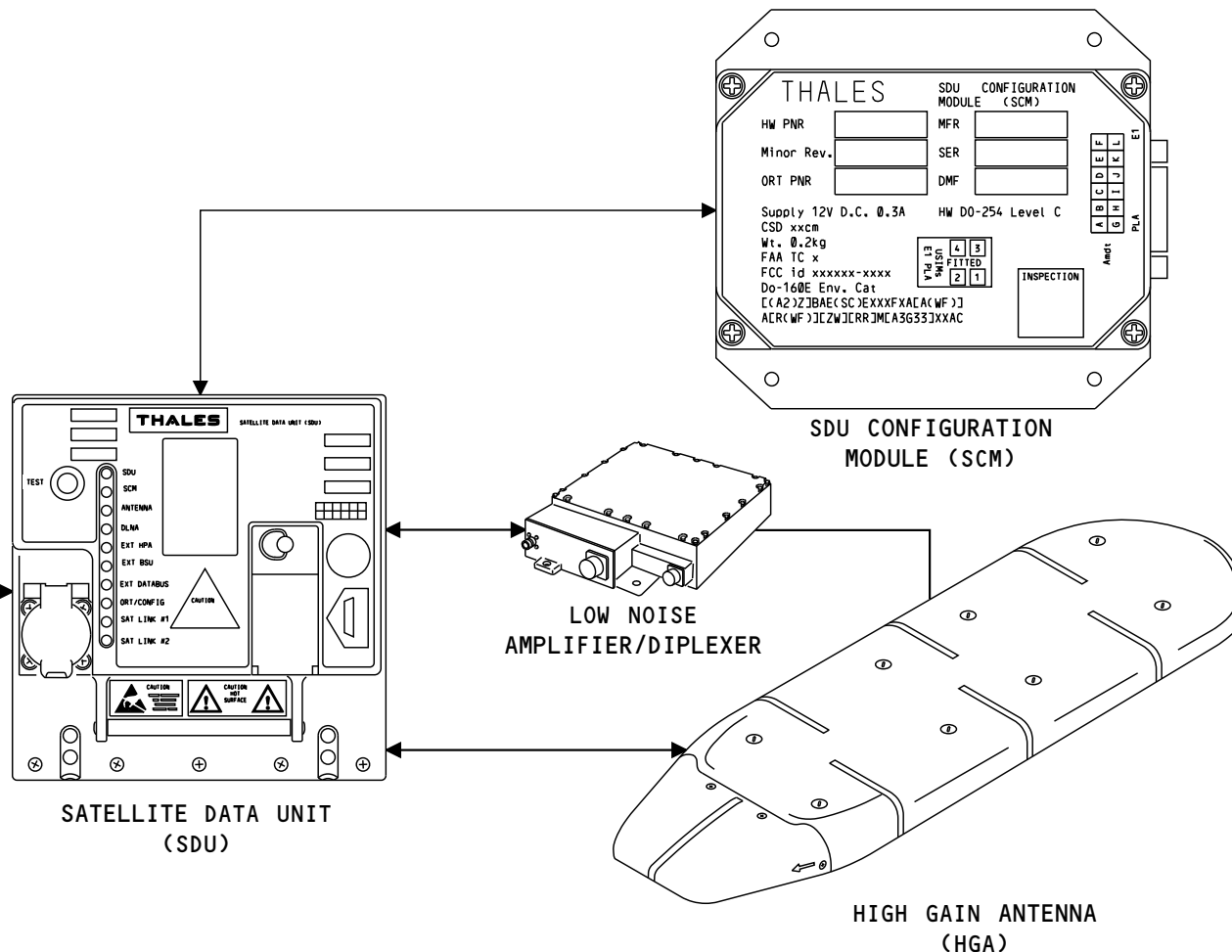
FLIGHT DATA
ACQUISITION
UNIT (FDAU)

AURAL WARNING
MODULE

AIRPLANE
INTERFACE (AI)

ATC TRANSPONDER

MULTI MODE
RECEIVER (MMR)



1926052 S0000363914_V2

SATCOM SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-15-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT

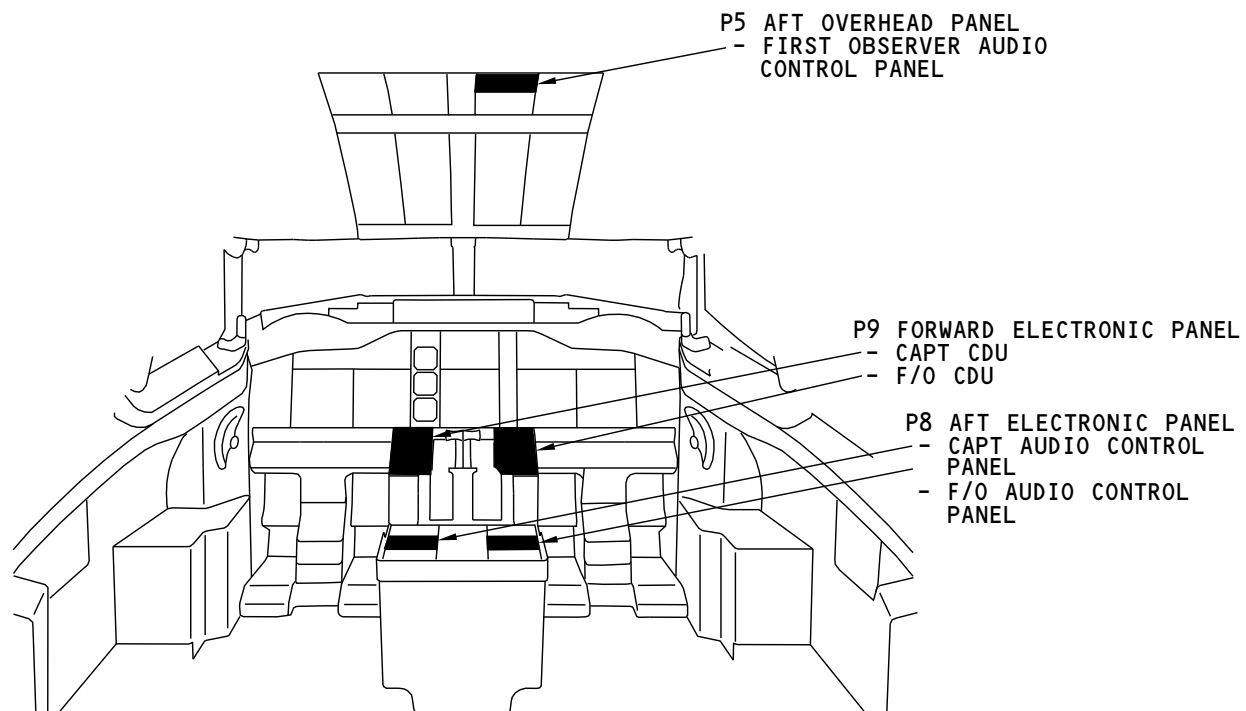
Flight Compartment Interface Components

These flight compartment components interface with the SATCOM system:

- Captain and first officer control display units (CDUs)
- Captain, first officer, and first observer audio control panels (ACPs).

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT



M79769 S0004623206_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT

23-15-00

23-15-00-003

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - AFT CARGO COMPARTMENT

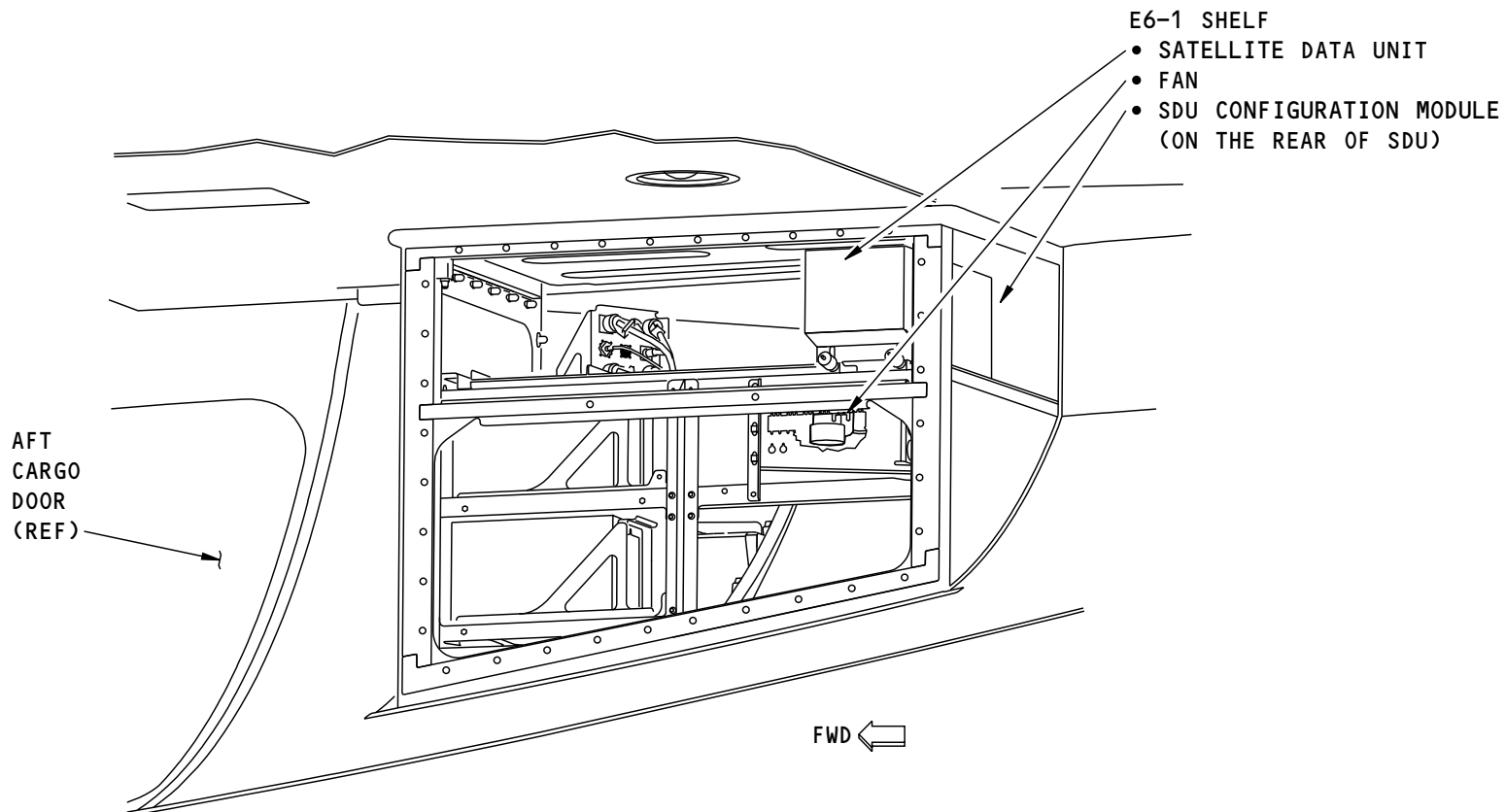
Aft Cargo Compartment

These components for the SATCOM system are in the aft cargo compartment on the E6 rack:

- Satellite data unit
- SDU configuration module
- Fan.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - AFT CARGO COMPARTMENT



AFT CARGO COMPARTMENT
(VIEW IN THE OUTBOARD DIRECTION)

SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - AFT CARGO COMPARTMENT

1929201 S0000363928_V2



SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - ANTENNA

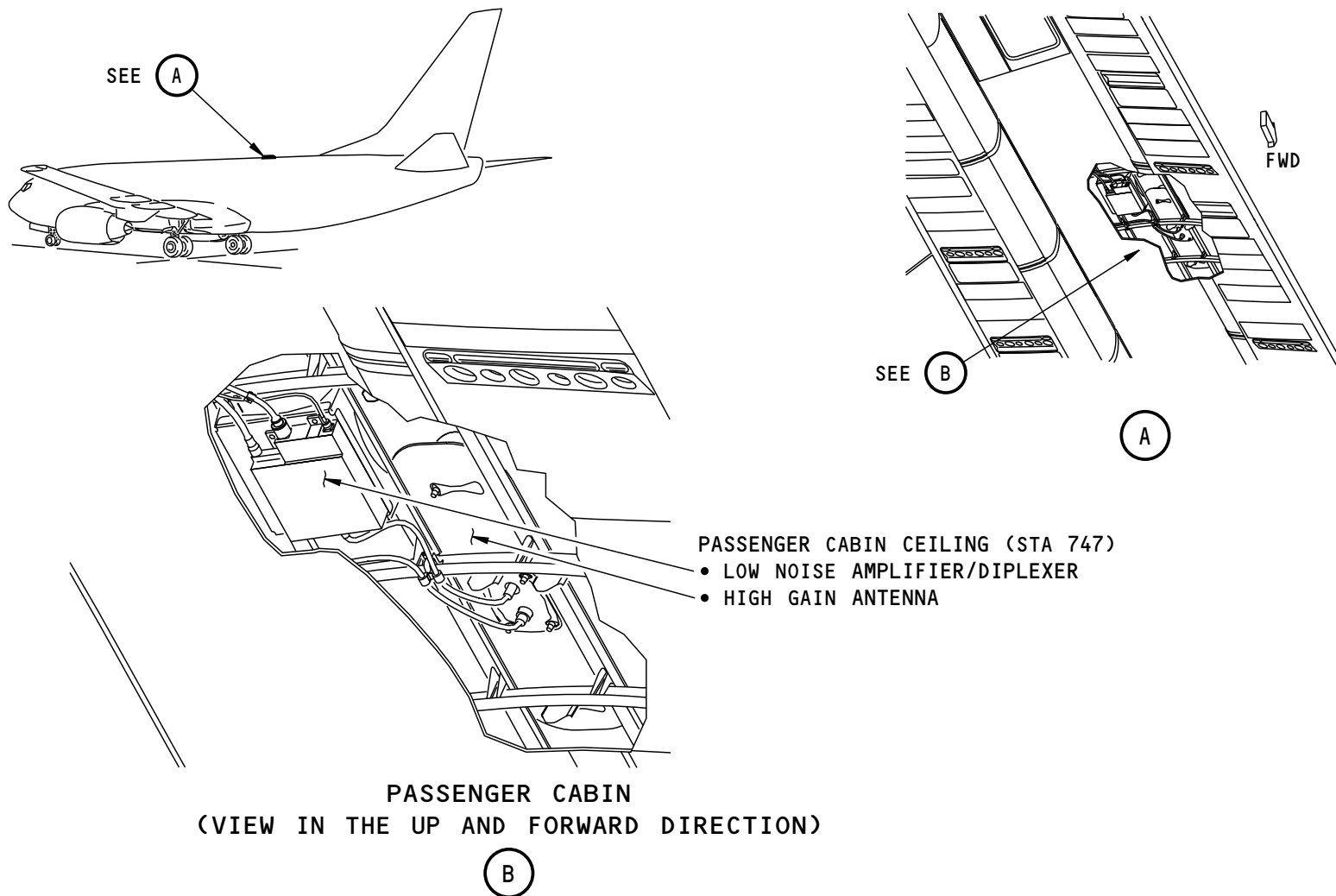
High Gain Antenna System

These components of the antenna system are in the cabin above the ceiling:

- Top-mounted high gain antenna (HGA)
- Low noise amplifier/diplexer (LNA/DIP).

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - ANTENNA



SATCOM SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION - ANTENNA

1352653 S0000242049_V1

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - POWER

Power

The 115v ac XFER bus 1 supplies 115 VAC power to the SATCOM system's circuit breaker(s).

The SATCOM system has these circuit breakers:

- SATCOM SDU
- SATCOM AURAL WARNING
- SATCOM HIGH

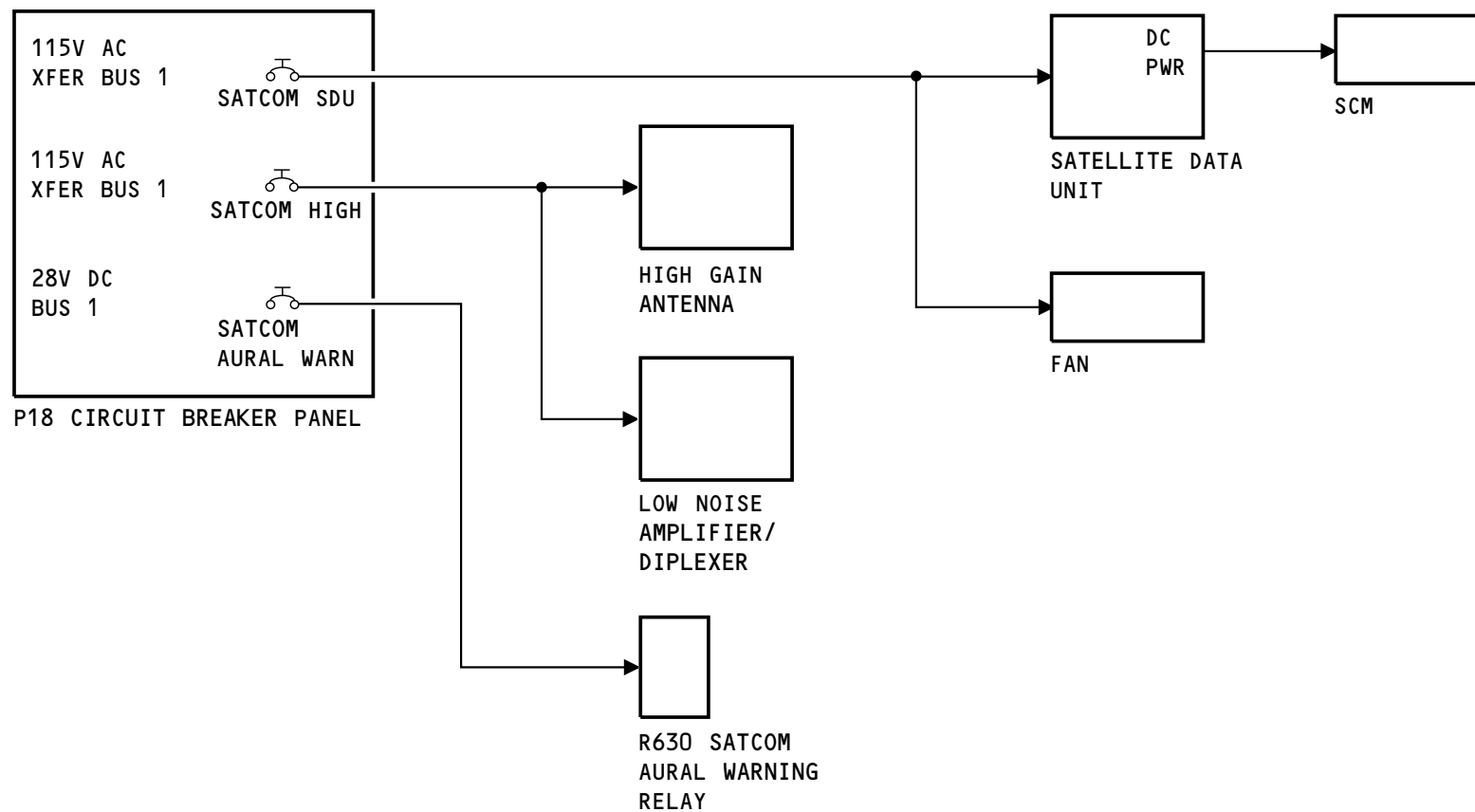
The SATCOM SDU circuit breaker gives power to these components:

- Satellite data unit (SDU).
- The SDU Configuration Module (SCM) receives +8 VDC to +15 VDC power from the SDU.
- Fan

The SATCOM HGA circuit breaker gives power to these components:

- Low noise amplifier/diplexer (LNA/DIP)
- The high gain antenna (HGA).

SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - POWER



1929205 S0000363929_V2

SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - POWER

23-15-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

**SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - TRANSMIT/RECEIVE****General**

The SATCOM system provides three channels to support voice and data communications. The first channel is for Aero classic voice communication, the second channel is for SwiftBroadband (SBB) voice communication, and the third channel is for datalink communication through the airplane communication addressing and reporting system (ACARS).

In addition, the SwiftBroadband channel allows other applications (i.e. cabin IFE system) to use the SwiftBroadband channel simultaneously (if applicable).

The control display units (CDU) connect with the satellite data unit (SDU) to control the SATCOM system.

The SDU configuration module (SCM) supplies the airplane identity information to the SDU during a SwiftBroadband operation.

Voice Operation

The audio control panel (ACP) connects to the remote electronics unit (REU) to control the voice signals from the flight compartment to the SATCOM system.

The REU connects with the SDU to send and receive audio signals for the flight crew.

Data Operation

The ACARS management unit connects with the SDU to send and receive data signals.

High Speed Data Operation

The airplane interface unit (AI) connects with the SDU through the Ethernet interface cable to send and receive SwiftBroadband high-speed data for the internet and/or Pico-cell (mobile phone) communications (If applicable).

Signal Flow - Receive

The high gain antenna (HGA) receives L-Band radio frequency (RF) signals from the satellite. It sends them to the low noise amplifier/diplexer (LNA/DIP).

The diplexer couples the received signals from the antenna to the low noise amplifier (LNA). The LNA increases the power level of the received RF signal, and sends it to the SDU.

The SDU receives the amplified RF signals from the LNA/Diplexer and demodulates them. The demodulated signals are sent to the REU or the ACARS management unit.

For SBB operation, the SDU changes the RF signals that received from the LNA/Diplexer to an Ethernet signal, and sends it to the airplane interface (AI).

Signal Flow - Transmit

The SDU modulates and changes the signals that received from the REU and ACARS communication management unit to a L-Band RF signal. The L-Band RF signals then sends to an internal high power amplifier (HPA) of the SDU.

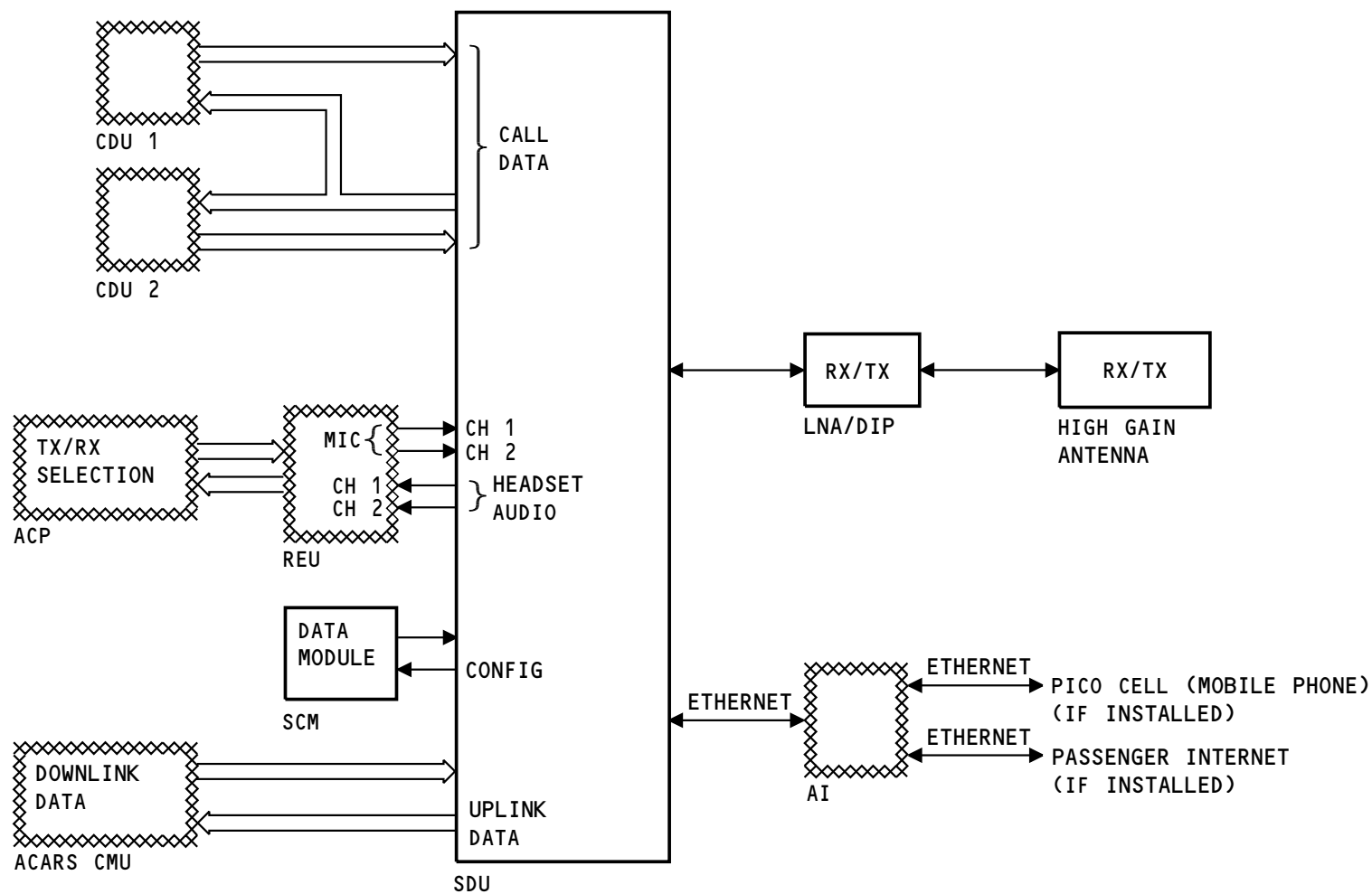
For SBB operation, the SDU also changes the Ethernet signal that received from the AI to a L-Band RF signal, and sends it to the internal HPA of the SDU.

The internal HPA of the SDU increases the RF signal strength and sends it to the LNA/DIP.

The transmit RF signals go through the diplexer of the LNA/DIP to the beam steering unit (BSU) in the high gain antenna. The BSU in the high gain antenna points the beam to the satellite by sending the L-Band RF signals through the antenna array at different phase angles. The HGA sends a narrow beam to the satellite.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - TRANSMIT/RECEIVE



1929208 S0000363930_V3

SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - TRANSMIT/RECEIVE

23-15-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-15-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - CONTROL AND STATUS****General**

The Satellite Data Unit (SDU) supplies control data and collects failure data for the SATCOM system.

These components have an interface with the SDU for control and status data:

- SDU configuration module (SCM)
- Low noise amplifier/diplexer (LNA/DIP)
- High gain antenna (HGA)
- Control display units (CDU)
- Remote electronics unit (REU)
- Audio control panels (ACPs)
- Air data inertial reference unit (ADIRU)
- Multi mode receiver (MMR)
- Air traffic control (ATC)

SDU Configuration Module (SCM)

The SCM receives the configuration data from the SDU.

The SCM sends the module data to the SDU for the SwiftBroadband operation.

High Gain Antenna (HGA)

The high gain antenna (HGA) contains an integrated beam steering function inside the antenna. The HGA receives beam steering control signals from the SDU. The beam steering function maintains the transmitted beam performance with aircraft attitude rates of change.

The high gain antenna sends BSU BITE data to the SDU.

Control Display Units

The flight crew uses the CDUs to send control signals to the SDU for SATCOM system operation.

Remote Electronics Unit

The REU sends microphone audio from the captain and first officer stations to the SDU. SAT 1 connects to the captain station. SAT 2 connects to the first officer station.

The SDU sends the received audio from channels 1 and 2 (SAT1, SAT2) to the REU. SAT1 audio goes to the captain card in the REU. SAT 2 audio goes to the first officer card.

The REU sends keyline (PTT) signals to the SDU when the crew wants to transmit on the SATCOM system. The keyline signal also goes to the flight data acquisition unit (FDAU) for recording on the flight data recorder.

Audio Control Panels

The ACPs receive call light signals from the SDU.

The ACPs send call cancel signals to the SDU when the crew pushes the call cancel switch on the ACP.

Aural Warning Module

The SDU sends a discrete signal to the aural warning module to make a high/low chime.

When the SDU receives a call from the satellite system, the SDU causes the R630 SATCOM aural warning relay to energize. The relay sends 28v dc to the aural warning module. The aural warning module gives the high/low chime in the flight compartment.

Air Data Inertial Reference Unit (ADIRU)

The left and the right ADIRU send these data to the SDU:

- Present position
- Ground speed
- Track angle
- True heading
- Pitch angle
- Roll angle

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - CONTROL AND STATUS**

- Inertial altitude

The SDU uses this data for location, attitude and computed Doppler correction. The SDU uses the data to compute beam steering commands for the antenna system.

Multi Mode Receiver (MMR)

The MMR of the global positioning system (GPS) sends the GPS navigational data to the SDU.

The SDU uses these GPS navigational data for SwiftBroadband high-speed data operation.

The MMR sends these data to the SDU:

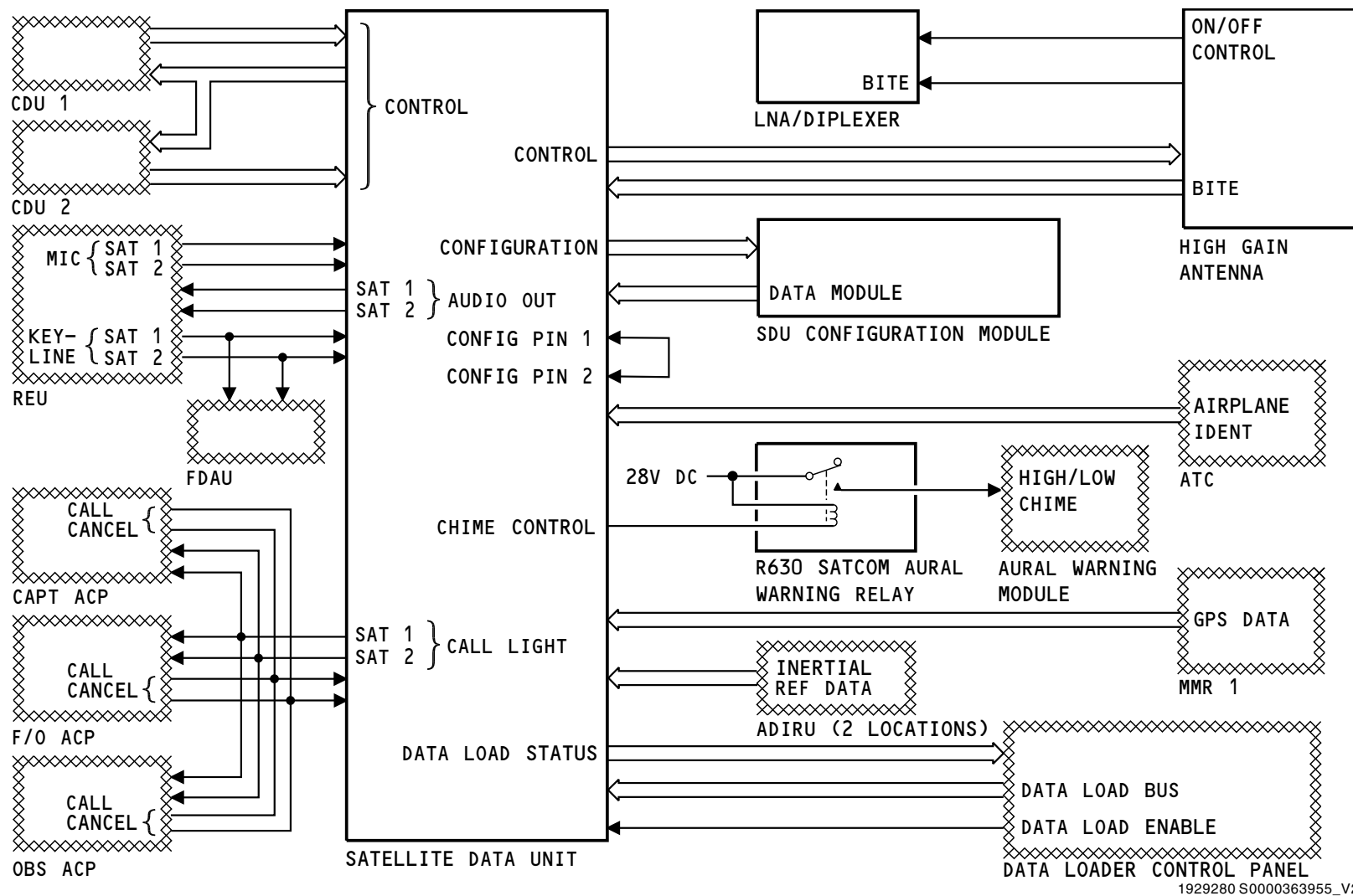
- GPS present position (Latitude and Longitude)
- GPS ground speed
- GPS track angle
- True heading
- Pitch angle
- Roll angle
- GPS altitude.
- GPS UTC
- GPS date
- GPS sensor status
- GPS HDOP

Air Traffic Transponder (ATC)

The air traffic transponder (ATC) sends the airplane identification (AES ID) to the SDU through the general purpose data bus.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - CONTROL AND STATUS



SATCOM SYSTEM - INTERFACE - CONTROL AND STATUS

23-15-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - SATELLITE DATA UNIT****Purpose**

The satellite data unit (SDU) is the system interface and controller for the SATCOM system. It contains the system operation software. The SDU also contains position and frequency data for each satellite.

Physical Description

The SDU is a 6-MCU LRU and weighs 23.1 pounds (10.5 kilograms).

The SDU has these controls and indicators on the front panel:

- Visual indications of the system status with ten Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs) - A steady green LED shows when the system is operating correctly and there are no faults present. A red LED shows when there is hard system faults. A flash green LED shows when the SDU is in self-test mode. An amber LED shows when the SDU is at power up or there are partial system faults. A partial system fault which includes a bus fault, invalid data or attempting log on or registration.
- A push-to-test switch - push this switch to start a SDU self-test.
- An Ethernet RJ45 10BaseT/100Base maintenance connector - Upload and download of ORT, and download of BITE data.
- A Standalone Identification System (SIS) connector for DB9 interface.

These are the LEDs on the SDU front panel:

- SDU
- SCM
- Antenna
- DLNA
- Ext. HPA
- Ext. BSU
- Ext. Data Bus
- ORT/Config.
- Sat. Link #1
- Sat. Link #2

The Satellite Data Unit (SDU) has these approximate physical characteristics:

- Height: 7.62 in. (19.35 cm)
- Width: 7.52 in. (19.10 cm)
- Depth: 15.06 in. (38.25 cm)
- Weight: 23.1 lb (10.5 kg)

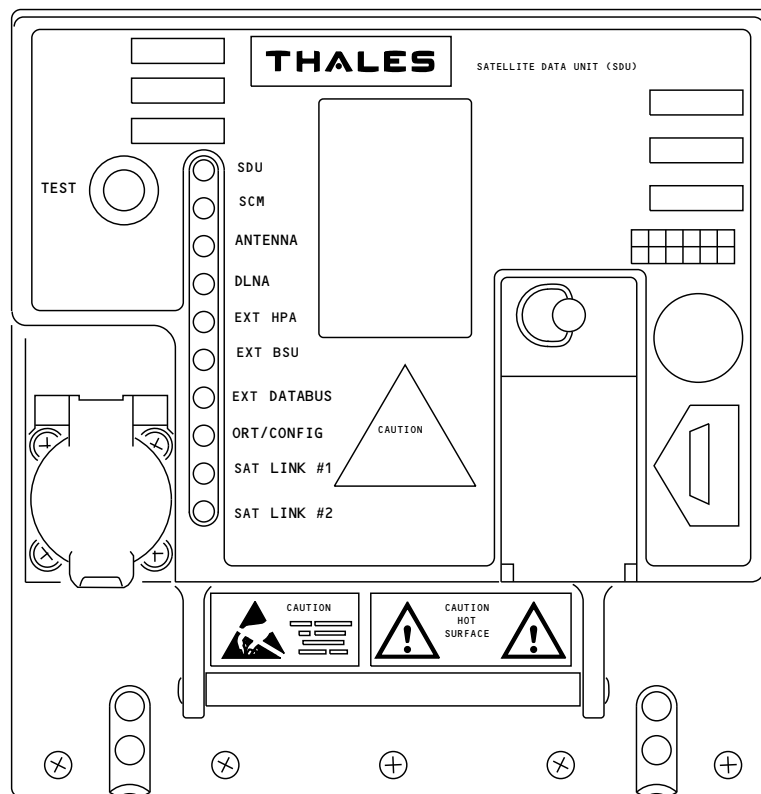
23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - SATELLITE DATA UNIT



SATELLITE DATA UNIT

SATCOM SYSTEM - SATELLITE DATA UNIT

1581104 S0000298024_V1

23-15-00-051

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-15-00

**SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION****General**

The satellite data unit (SDU) is the system interface and controller for the SATCOM system. It contains system operation programs.

The SDU has these components:

- Power Supply Module (PSM).
- Front panel.
- Avionics Processor Module (APM).
- Communication Processor Module (CPM).
- Two Channel Card Modules (CCM).
- ARINC 429 Input/Output (I/O).
- RF transmitter combiner.
- RF receiver splitter.
- Oven Controlled Oscillator (OCXO).

The SDU supplies one or two Aero-H+ Classic voice channel, one Swift Broadband voice or data channel (if applicable), and one ACARS data channel.

Power Supply Module

The power supply module (PSM) gets 115 Vac from the power distribution panel 1 (P91).

The PSM supplies low dc power to the Shop Replaceable Units (SRU) internal of the SDU and 12 Vdc to the SDU Configuration Module (SCM).

Front Panel Assembly

The front panel assembly provides the visual indications for system status, the external maintenance interface connections, the access for the standalone identification system (SIS) connection and a push-to-test switch.

The front panel assembly has these functions:

- Ten light emitting diodes (LEDs) for visual indications of the system status.

- The external connection lets the maintenance technician to upload and download software parts through the RJ-45 interface.
- A test switch for maintenance to do a self-test for SDU .
- A standalone identification system (SIS) connection.

The front panel assembly has these ten LEDs:

- SDU
- SCM
- Antenna
- DLNA
- Ext. HPA
- Ext. BSU
- Ext. Data Bus
- ORT/Config.
- Sat Link #1
- Sat Link #2

The visual indications of the LEDs that show the status of a component:

- Steady Green LED - the system is operating correctly and there are no faults present.
- Flash Green LED - the SDU is in the self-test mode.
- Red LED - there is a hard fault in the system.
- Amber LED - the SDU is at the power up or there are partial system faults. A partial system fault which includes a bus fault, invalid data or attempting log on or the registration.
- The LED is not come on - it shows that the related service is not provided.

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

Avionics Processor Module

The avionics processor module (APM) is the main SDU control processor.

The APM has these functions:

- Manages all avionics functions
- Controls and monitors all the SDU internal interfaces
- Controls functions of the channel card modules (CCM)
- Handles the ARINC 429 interfaces and system BITE
- Monitors temperature conditions of the communication processor module (CPM) and internal power supply unit (PSU)
- Manages avionics full-duplex Ethernet (AFDX) interfaces (If available)

The test switch in the front panel assembly is to make the APM start a self-test of the SDU. The APM sends display data to the front panel assembly to show the status of the test.

The APM has these ARINC 429 interfaces:

- Control Display Unit (CDU)
- The high gain antenna (HGA)
- Air data inertial reference system (ADIRS)
- Remote electronic unit (REU)
- ACARS communication management unit (CMU)
- Data loader control panel
- Airborne data loader (ADL)

The APM has these discrete interfaces:

- Audio control panels (ACP)
- Remote electronic unit (REU)
- Weight on Wheels (WOW)
- Configuration straps.

Communication Processor Module

The communication processor module (CPM) handles and controls all the communications interfaces.

The CPM has these functions:

- Manages all communications interfaces (Ethernet, ISDN, RS232 and RS422).
- Changes the analog audio from the REU to digital data for the SDU and the digital SDU data to analog voice signals for the REU.
- Sends call lights signals to the ACP.

The CPM has these interfaces:

- The remote electronic unit (REU) for the Cockpit voice (4-wire analog audio).
- SDU configuration module (SCM) through the RS422 (4 data wires)
- Call progress (discrete)
- Cabin/Cockpit, Internet Protocol (IP), Telephone subsystem

Channel Card Module

The channel card module (CCM) transfers the user's input/output data to RF signals applicable for transmit and receive of L-band signals that uses the satellite link. It also maintains the satellite link.

The CCM has these functions:

- Provides the satellite modem functions within the SDU.
- Transfers the user's input/output data to signals applicable for transmitting and receiving L-band signals using the satellite link.
- Combines analogue RF up/down conversion and the channel selection with digital baseband signal processing and protocol stack functions.
- Provides system health monitoring and BITE function.

SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION**Oven Controlled Oscillator**

The oven controlled oscillator (OCXO) provides the 10 MHz clock reference signal for the CCM circuit. The SATCOM system uses this oscillator as a precise reference for the modulation and demodulation of the RF signals.

Internal High Power Amplifier

The internal high power amplifier (HPA) is a 30 Watts high power amplifier. It combines and amplifies the transmit RF signals from the CCMs. The internal HPA sends the transmit RF signal to the low noise amplifier/diplexer (LNA/DIP).

The internal HPA has these functions:

- Amplifies the low RF signals from the CCMs to produce high power output.
- Combines the multiple CCM transmit RF signals.
- Monitors the transmit RF path to and from the SDU.
- The operating frequency range of the internal HPA is between 1626.5 MHz and 1660.5 MHz.
- The variable gain of the internal HPA is between 40 dB and 45 dB.

ARINC 429 Input/Output Circuits

The ARINC 429 input/output (I/O) circuits control the interface between the SATCOM components and other systems.

The SDU gets manual commands and data entries from the control display units (CDUs) on the CDU buses. The SDU sends BITE status and system configuration data to the CDUs on the SDU bus.

The SDU gets airplane position data from the left ADIRU. The SDU uses the airplane position data to calculate the beam steering data for the high gain antenna subsystem.

The data loader control panel controls the interface between a data loader and the SDU. This interface is used to load the software parts for the SATCOM system. The data loader control panel sends a discrete to the SDU to enable the processor to accept new software parts through the ARINC 429 input/output circuits.

The SDU sends and gets BITE and control data from the high gain antenna (HGA).

Audio Interface

The audio interface connects the SDU to the remote electronics unit (REU). It changes analog audio from the REU to digital data for the SDU.

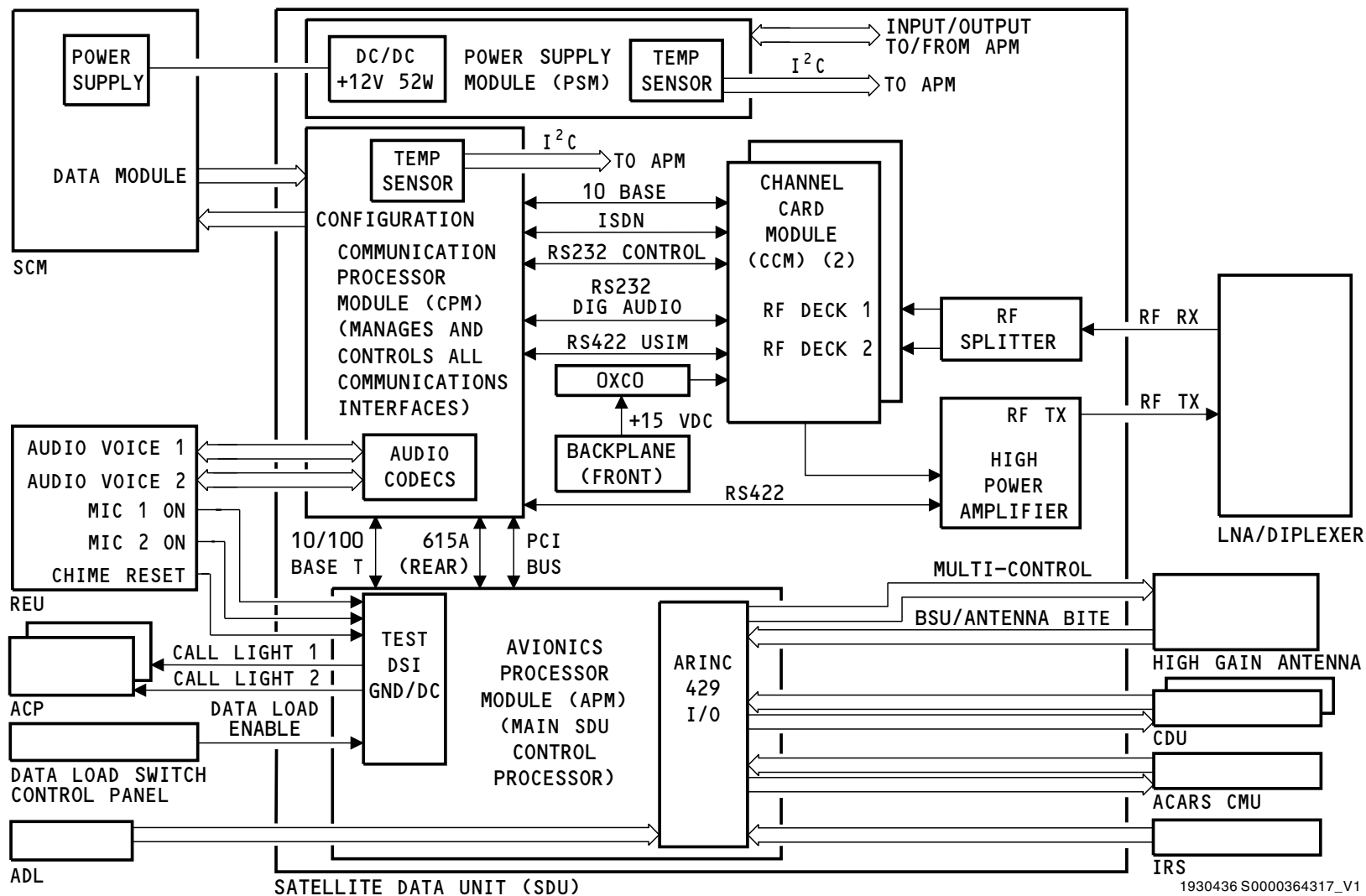
The audio interface also changes the digital SDU data to analog voice signals for the REU.

23-15-00**SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-15-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - LOW NOISE AMPLIFIER/DIPLEXER****Purpose**

The Low-Noise Amplifier and Diplexer (LNA/DIP) are put together into one unit. The LNA/DIP is a filter and an amplifier. It lets the SATCOM system receive and transmit signals at the same time. It also increases the strength of received low level satellite signals.

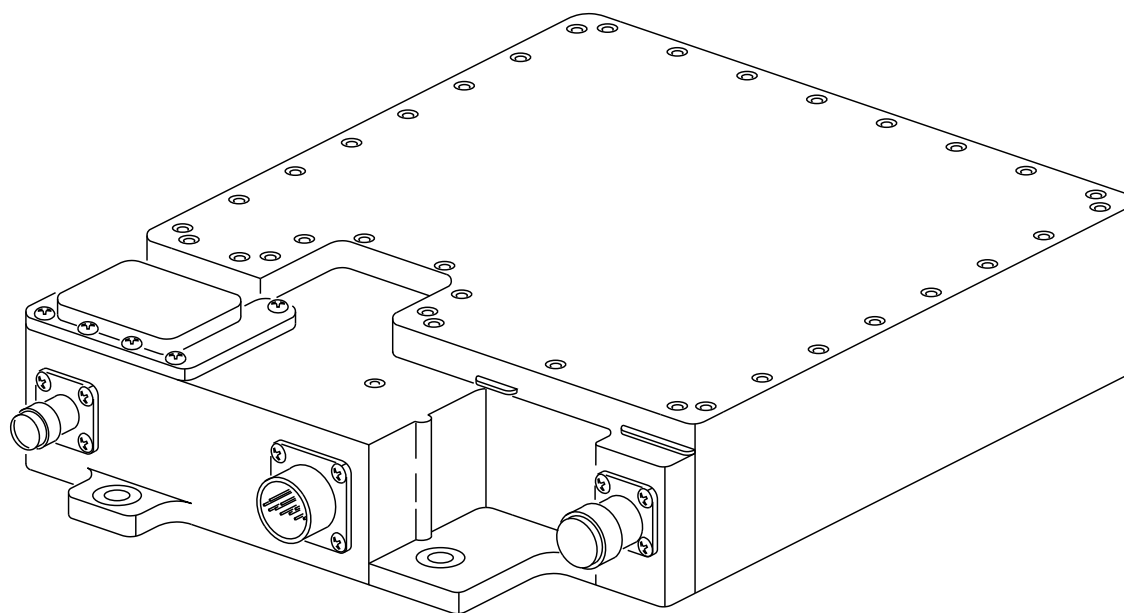
Physical Description

The LNA/DIP has these properties:

- Length - 11.02 in. (27.99 cm)
- Width - 7.76 in. (19.71 cm)
- Height - 1.85 in. (4.70 cm)
- Weight - 6.50 lb (2.95 kg)

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

SATCOM SYSTEM - LOW NOISE AMPLIFIER/DIPLEXER



1581378 S0000298103_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - DIPLEXER/LOW NOISE AMPLIFIER

23-15-00-065

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-15-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - LNA/DIP - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION****General**

The LNA/DIP has these parts:

- Low noise amplifier
- Diplexer
- Transmit/receive switch
- BITE board.

Low Noise Amplifier

The low noise amplifier increases the strength of the received RF signals from the antenna and sends them to the satellite data unit (SDU).

Diplexer

The diplexer has two filters, one for the transmit signal and one for the receive signal. The transmit filter lets the signals go from the satellite data unit (SDU) to the high gain antenna. The receive filter lets the signal go from the high gain antenna to the low noise amplifier. The filters prevent signal interference from other components.

Transmit/Receive Switch

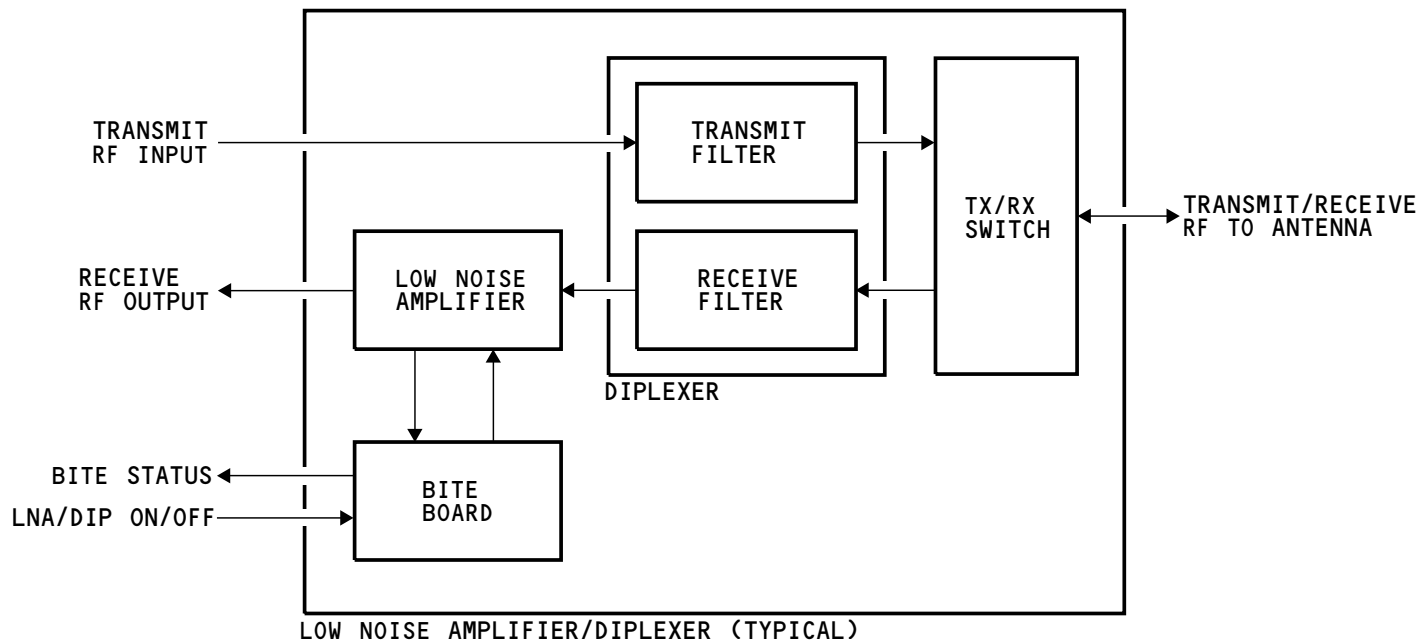
The transmit/receive switch connects the diplexer to the high gain antenna (HGA). In the transmit mode, it receives the RF signal from the transmit filter in the diplexer and sends it to the HGA. In the receive mode, it receives the RF signal from the HGA and sends it to the receive filter in the diplexer.

BITE Board

The BITE board monitors the LNA/Diplexer on/off signal. The LNA/Diplexer gets this signal from a HGA to turn on or turn off the LNA/Diplexer. The BITE board also monitors the amplifier current and sends fault data to the HGA.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

SATCOM SYSTEM - LNA/DIP - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M79807 S0004623264_V2

SATCOM SYSTEM - LNA/DIP - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-15-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

**SATCOM SYSTEM - HIGH GAIN ANTENNA****Purpose**

The top-mounted high gain antenna (HGA) transmits and receives signals.

Functional Description

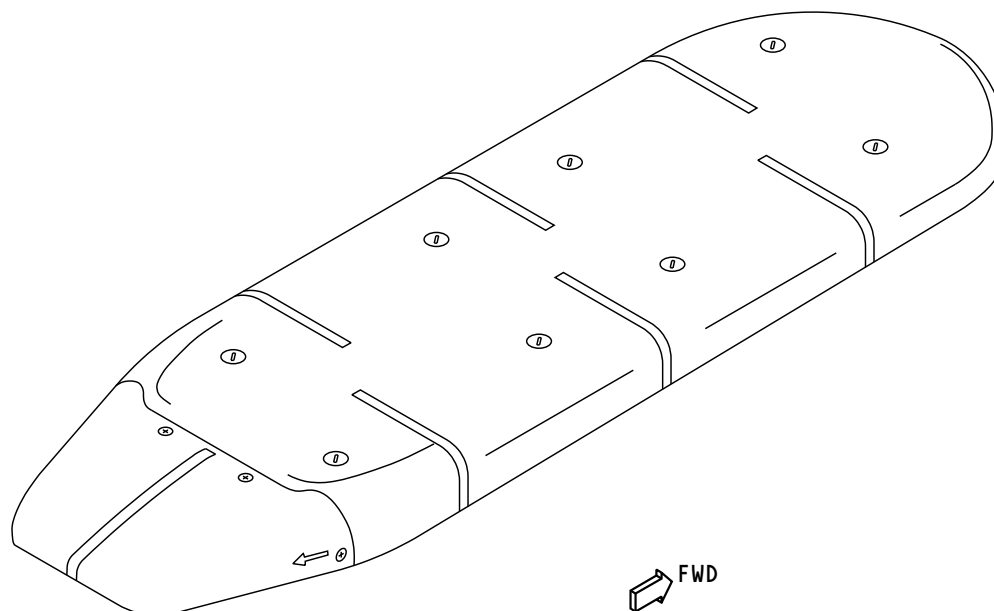
The High Gain Antenna (HGA) is an electronically steerable phased array SATCOM antenna. It does transmit and receive functions for the SATCOM operation. The HGA contains an integrated beam steering unit that receives commands from the SDU. The antenna can operate with the command sets defined in either ARINC 741 or ARINC 781. RF signals are transmitted to and received from the LNA/Diplexer.

Physical Description

- Length - 41.34 in. (1050.04 mm)
- Width - 11.77 in. (298.96 mm)
- Height - 1.91 in. (48.51 mm)
- Weight - 19.8 lb (9.0 kg)

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

SATCOM SYSTEM - HIGH GAIN ANTENNA



1460853 S0000266323_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - HIGH GAIN ANTENNA

23-15-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODULE****Purpose**

The SDU Configuration Module (SCM) provides a location to hold the USIM (Universal Subscriber Identity Module) cards and owner requirements tables (ORT) for the SATCOM system.

The SCM stays with the aircraft in the event of the SDU replacement and facilitates the procedures of SDU replacements without the need to reload ORTs or to interchange USIMs.

Physical Description

The SCM has one printed-circuit board (PCB) module that contains four USIM cards and one external configuration memory (ECM) (Nonvolatile Memory). The USIM cards hold the user registration data necessary for access to the Inmarsat services. The ECM holds the configuration data and the Owner Requirement Table (ORT).

The SCM has these approximate physical properties:

- Height: 0.89 in. (2.26 cm)
- Width: 3.98 in. (10.11 cm)
- Depth: 4.33 in. (11.00 cm)
- Weight: 0.44 lb (0.20 kg)

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODULE

THALES

SDU CONFIGURATION
MODULE (SCM)

HW PNR

Minor Rev.

ORT PNR

Supply 12V D.C. 0.3A HW D0-254 Level C

CSD xxcm

Wt. 0.2kg

FAA TC x

FCC id xxxxxx-xxxx

Do-160E Env. Cat

[(A2)Z]BAE(SC)EXXXFXA[A(WF)]

ACR(WF)][[ZW][RR]M[A3G33]XXAC

MFR

SER

DMF

E1

USIMS

4

3

FITTED

2

1

INSPECTION

A	B	C	D	E	F
G	H	I	J	K	L

Amdt

E1

PLA

1596545 S0000298042_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODULE

23-15-00

23-15-00-075

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY	
---------	-------------	--

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-15-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODULE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The Satellite Data Unit Configuration Module (SCM) is a part of the SATCOM system that allows voice and data services for flight compartment application to communicate at high speed with ground networks through the Inmarsat satellite links.

The SCM is an external peripheral of the SDU and provides a dedicated interface to the SDU. It stores Secure and User ORTs (Owner Requirement Tables) and a Swift 64 Forward ID.

The SCM provides a location to keep the SDU configuration data and the four Universal Subscriber Identity Modules (USIM) cards that store subscriber information for the SwiftBroadband (SBB) network.

The USIM cards are required only for SBB service (not required for Swift 64 or Classic Aero service).

The SCM has these functions:

- Holds SDU configuration data and ORT parameters.
- Holds International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI).
- Interfaces with the SDU.

SCM Basic Operation

The SCM interfaces with the SDU through the Communication Processor Module (CPM) inside the SDU. When it senses an input voltage signal from the SDU, the SCM starts operation.

At each power up, the SDU does an ORT synchronization with the SCM, the SDU reads the ORT from the SCM and compares it with its locally stored copy. In the usual condition the SDU and SCM ORTs are the same. If different, the SDU overwrites its local copy with the ORT read from the SCM. The SDU uses that ORT until the electrical power is removed from the SDU.

The SCM supports four USIMs. One USIM is necessary for each Swift Broadband channel operated by the SDU.

SCM Internal Components

The SCM has these primary components:

- A Printed Electronic circuit (PEC) card with a 15 way D-type connector attached.
- An external configuration memory (ECM).
- Four Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) cards.
- Programmable Logic Device (PLD).

SCM External Interface

The SCM has these external interfaces through the RS422 data bus with the SDU:

- The SCM data from SCM to SDU (2 lines).
- The configuration data from SDU to SCM (2 lines).

SCM Power Supply

The SDU supplies 12V dc electrical power to the SCM.

Printed Electronic Card

The PEC is a card that holds all the components for the SCM. The 15 way D-type connector also attached on the PEC. It is a main and only input/output interface for the SCM.

External Configuration Memory

The ECM is a non-volatile memory that stores the ORT database. The ORT database contains a set of configuration data for the exclusive use of the SDU.

There are two types of parameters of the ORT partition:

- Secure ORT - The secure parameters are for aircraft specific configurations.
- User ORT - The user parameters are for operator use.

23-15-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODULE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION**

The ECM is a non-volatile electronically writable 512 Kbit memory chip.

The ECM can be accessed through the external RS422 or RS232 serial port.

Universal Subscriber Identity Module

An USIM is an application for Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS).

The USIM holds International Mobile Subscriber Identity (IMSI). The SwiftBroadband (SBB) uses the IMSI to identify each SBB channel in the AES.

Programmable Logic Device

The PLD manages the internal and external interfaces. The PLD adapts the signals to the protocols used to interface to the USIM and the ECM interface.

The PLD has these five multiplexed data internal interfaces:

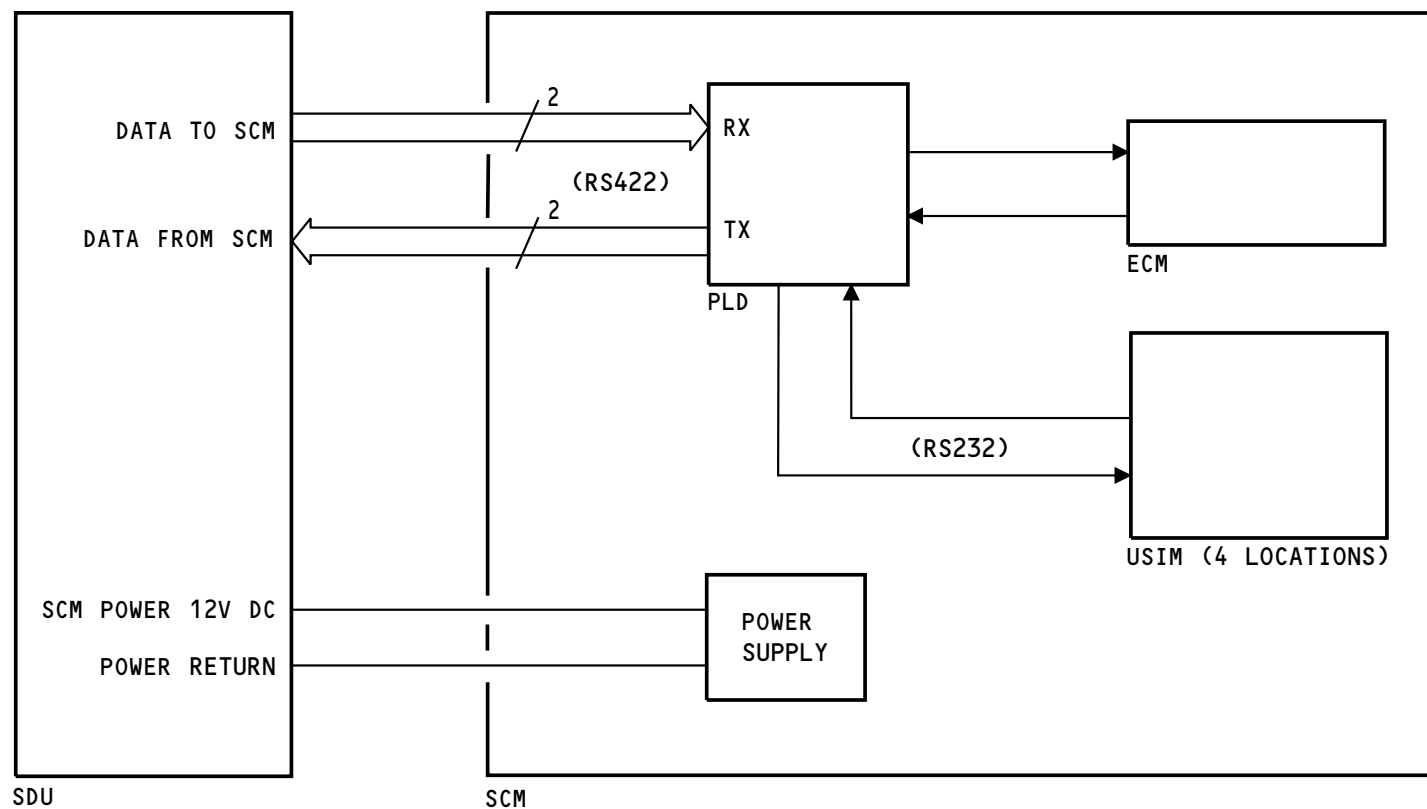
- Broadband Global Area Network (BGAN) USIMs (4 lines).
- External Configuration Memory (ECM) (1 line).

The PLD has these external interfaces:

- The PLD interfaces through the RS422 data bus with the SDU.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODULE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



1597270 S0000298753_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODULE FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-15-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAIN MENU****General**

The control display unit (CDU) has SATCOM pages that give control and status of the SATCOM system. You access the SATCOM pages from the MENU page on the CDU.

SATCOM Main Menu

To show the SAT-PHONE menu, push the MENU key on the CDU and then push the line select key (LSK) adjacent to <SAT.

The SAT-PHONE menu shows this data:

- Name selected for call on channel 1 or 2.
- Call controls
- Readiness of SAT-1 and SAT-2.
- DIRECTORY INDEX access.
- LOG-ON access.
- CHAN STATUS access.
- MAINTENANCE access.
- CONFIG access.

For each channel, SATCOM shows this data:

- Channel status
- Call commands or status
- Call destination name chosen from the directory.

23-15-00**SIA ALL** **EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

The diagram illustrates the SATCOM system interface. On the left is the main unit, labeled (EXAMPLE), which features a control panel with various buttons and a small display. The control panel includes buttons for INIT REF, RTE, CLB, CRZ, VNAV, MENU, LEGS, DEP ARR, HOLD, PROG, EXEC, N1 LIMIT, FIX, A, B, C, D, E, PREV PAGE, NEXT PAGE, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z, SP, DEL, /, CLR, and a numeric keypad (1-0, +/-). The small display shows the MENU screen with options <FMC>, <ACT>, and <SAT>. An arrow points from the <SAT> option to a series of display screens on the right, labeled (EXAMPLE).

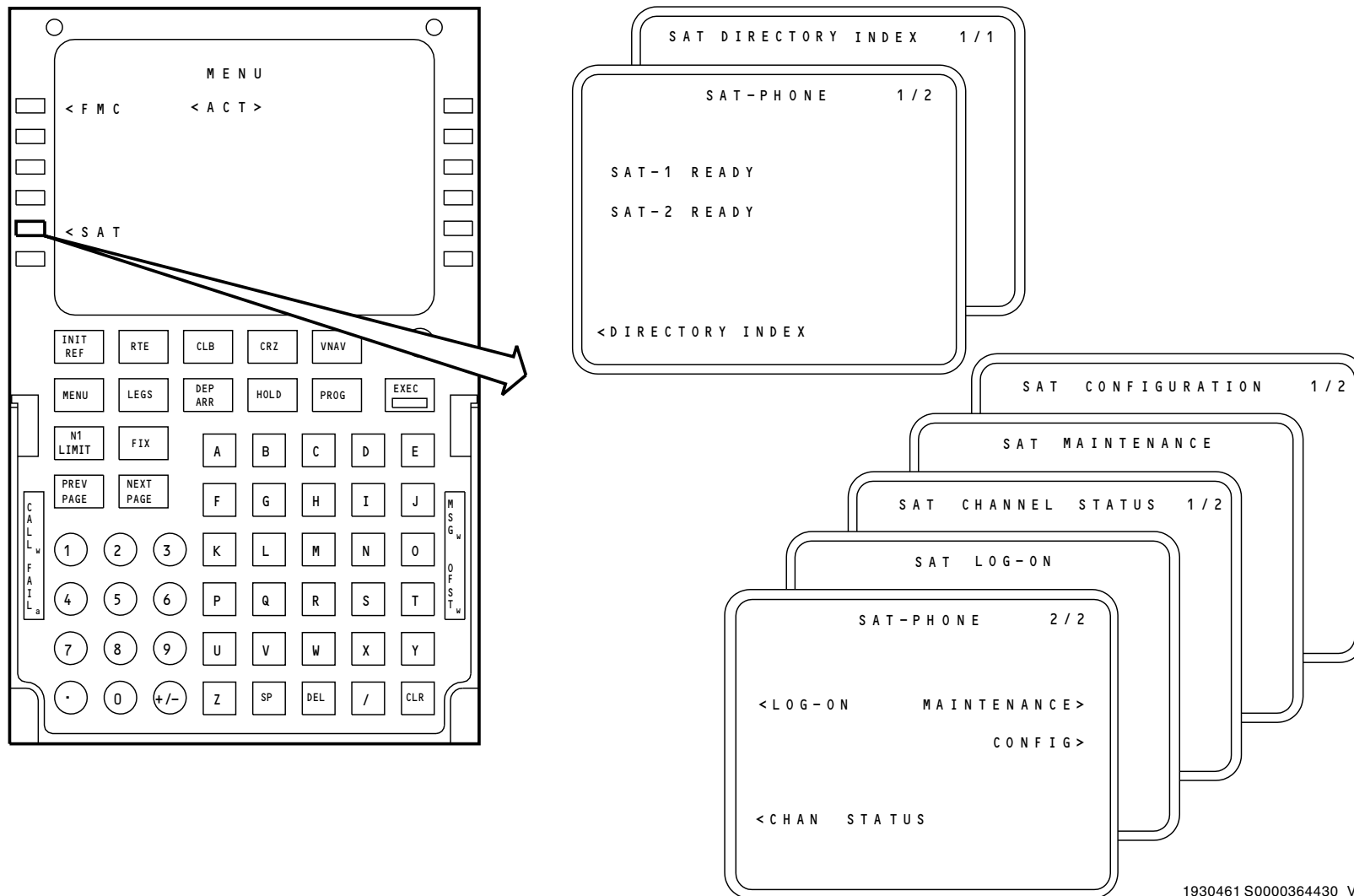
The display screens show the following information:

- SAT DIRECTORY INDEX 1/2**
 - SAT-PHONE 1/2
 - CLSSC: STATUS PRIORITY
 - <ACTION1 EMG>
 - LABEL1
 - <ACTION2 DIRECTORY>
 - SBB : STATUS PRIORITY
 - <ACTION1 SBB PUB
 - LABEL2
 - <ACTION2
- SWIFT 64 STATUS**
- SATCOM CONFIG 1/4**
- SATCOM BITE**
- SAT DIR DETAILS 1/20**
- SATCOM LOG 1/2**
- SAT-PHONE 2/2**
 - <LOG BITE OK>
 - <DIR DETAILS CONFIG>
 - SWIFT>

2131842 S0000461877_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAIN MENU

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAIN MENU



1930461 S0000364430_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAIN MENU

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-15-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - LOG ON****General**

SATCOM communication is possible when these three parts connect together with normal telephone equipment on the ground:

- Aircraft earth station (AES) - the SATCOM system on the airplane
- Space segment - the satellite
- Ground earth station (GES) - the ground based SATCOM system.

The SATCOM system on the airplane controls the connection of the aircraft earth station to the ground earth station. This process is called a log-on.

NOTE: SATCOM systems will require ADIRS to be aligned prior to log-on. However, the Collins ICS-300 does not require ADIRS alignment prior to log-on.

Automatic Log-On at Power-Up

An automatic log-on occurs when the airplane SATCOM system powers up.

The satellite data unit (SDU) uses satellite frequencies in memory to find a satellite transmit signal. When the SDU finds an active frequency from a satellite, it locks on to it. The SDU then uses the satellite as a relay to connect to a ground earth station.

Auto Log-On

An automatic log-on occurs when the system powers up. The SATCOM system uses satellite frequencies in memory to find a satellite transmit signal. When the SATCOM system finds an active frequency from the satellite, it locks on to it. The system then uses the satellite as a relay to log-on to a ground station.

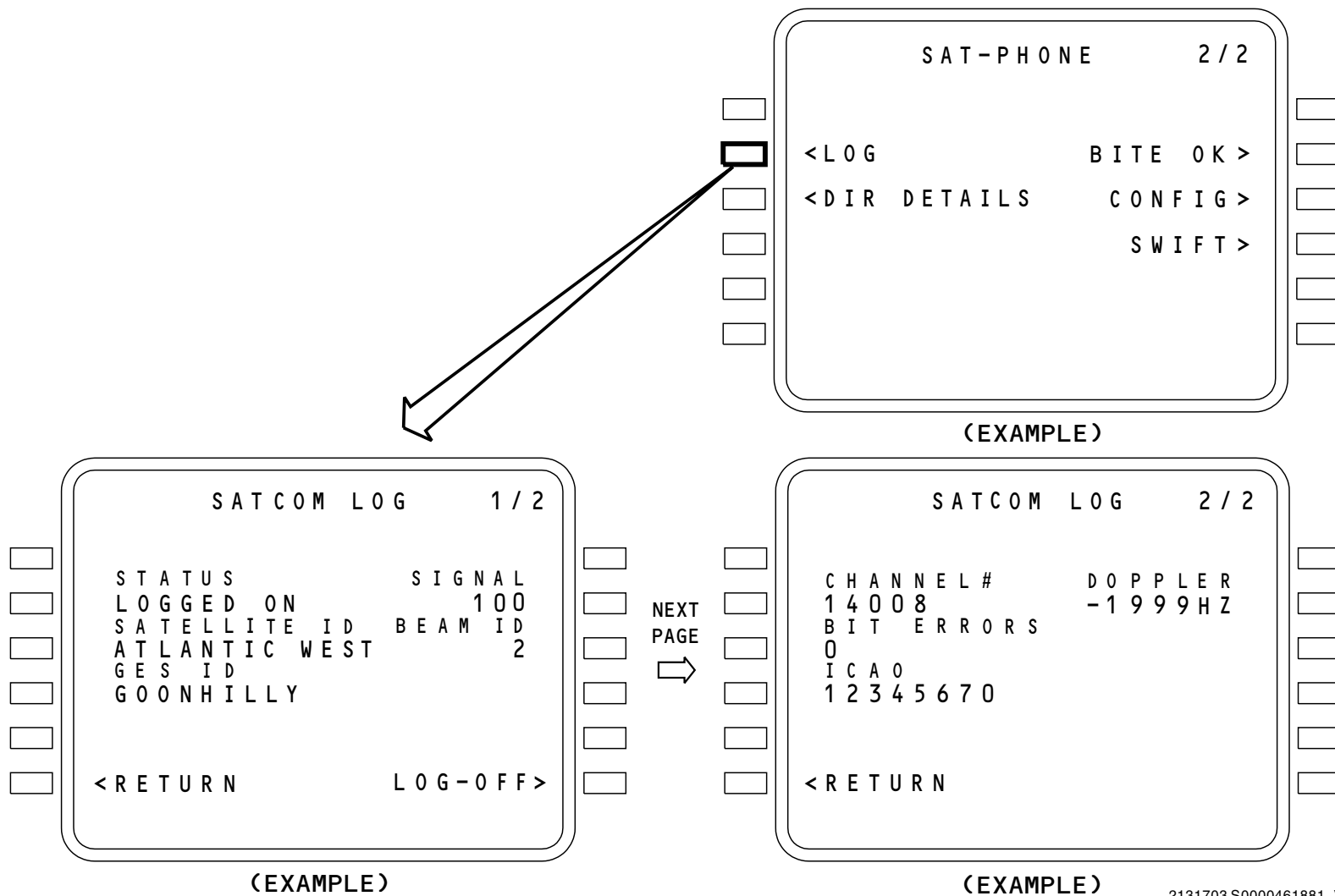
If the SATCOM System has logged-off, you can do these steps on the SAT LOG-ON page to make the system log-on automatically:

- Make sure that AUTO shows in the SAT LOG-ON page.
- Push the LSK adjacent to LOG-ON to make the system automatically log-on to a satellite and GES.

After the airplane logged on, the log-on data goes to all ground station networks so that any of the ground stations can locate a specified airplane SATCOM system.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - LOG ON

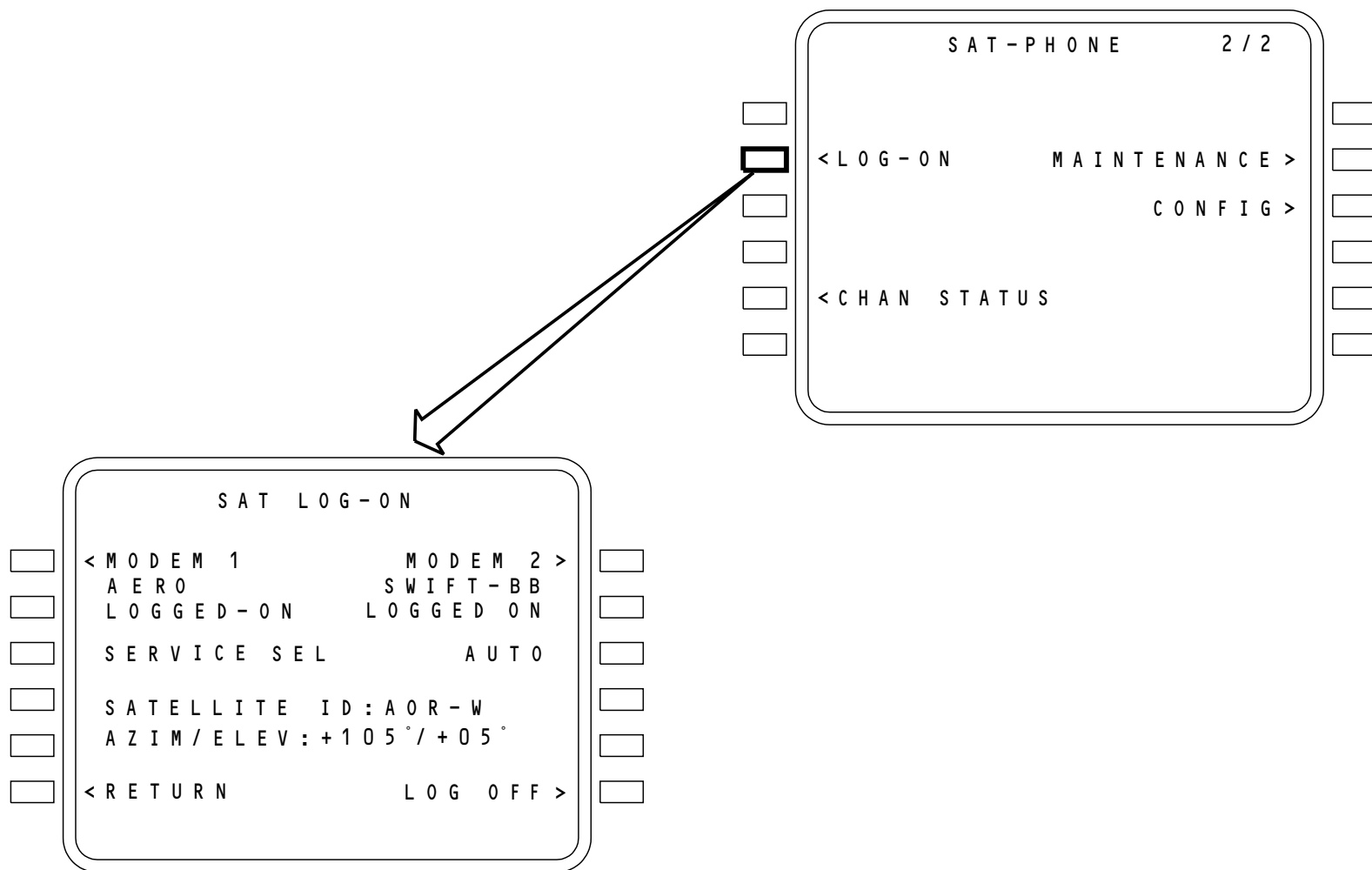


2131703 S0000461881_V1

SATCOM - OPERATION - LOG ON

23-15-00

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - LOG ON



1930448 S0000364447_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - LOG ON

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-15-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - DIRECTORY

General

The DIRECTORY page allows you to access the lists of telephone numbers for making calls using SATCOM.

NOTE: These categories and lists of telephone numbers are examples. Each operator chooses the telephone numbers and categories to use for their operation. The satellite data unit (SDU) contains the specific telephone numbers and categories for the operator in the owner requirements table (ORT).

Categories

Each category contains a list of the telephone numbers. The operator defines the category name and the telephone numbers in each category.

Select the line-select key (LSK) adjacent to the category name to see the CATEGORY NUMBERS page.

Telephone numbers and mnemonic identification

The CATEGORY NUMBERS page shows a list of the telephone numbers in the category.

The display shows the mnemonic identification and the priority for each telephone number. The mnemonic identification is a set of alphanumeric characters which identify a telephone number. For example, AOR CONTROL is a mnemonic identification.

There are two types of telephone numbers: protected and unprotected. The display shows unprotected telephone numbers with brackets, []. You can change unprotected telephone numbers. You can not change or delete protected telephone numbers.

NOTE: A new User ORT needs to be loaded by the operator to change SATCOM telephone numbers. Protected or unprotected SATCOM telephone numbers cannot be changed from the CDU regardless of the supplier's SDU equipped on the aircraft.

Priority

Each telephone number has an assigned priority (PRI). The priority can be EME, HGH, LOW, or SBB.

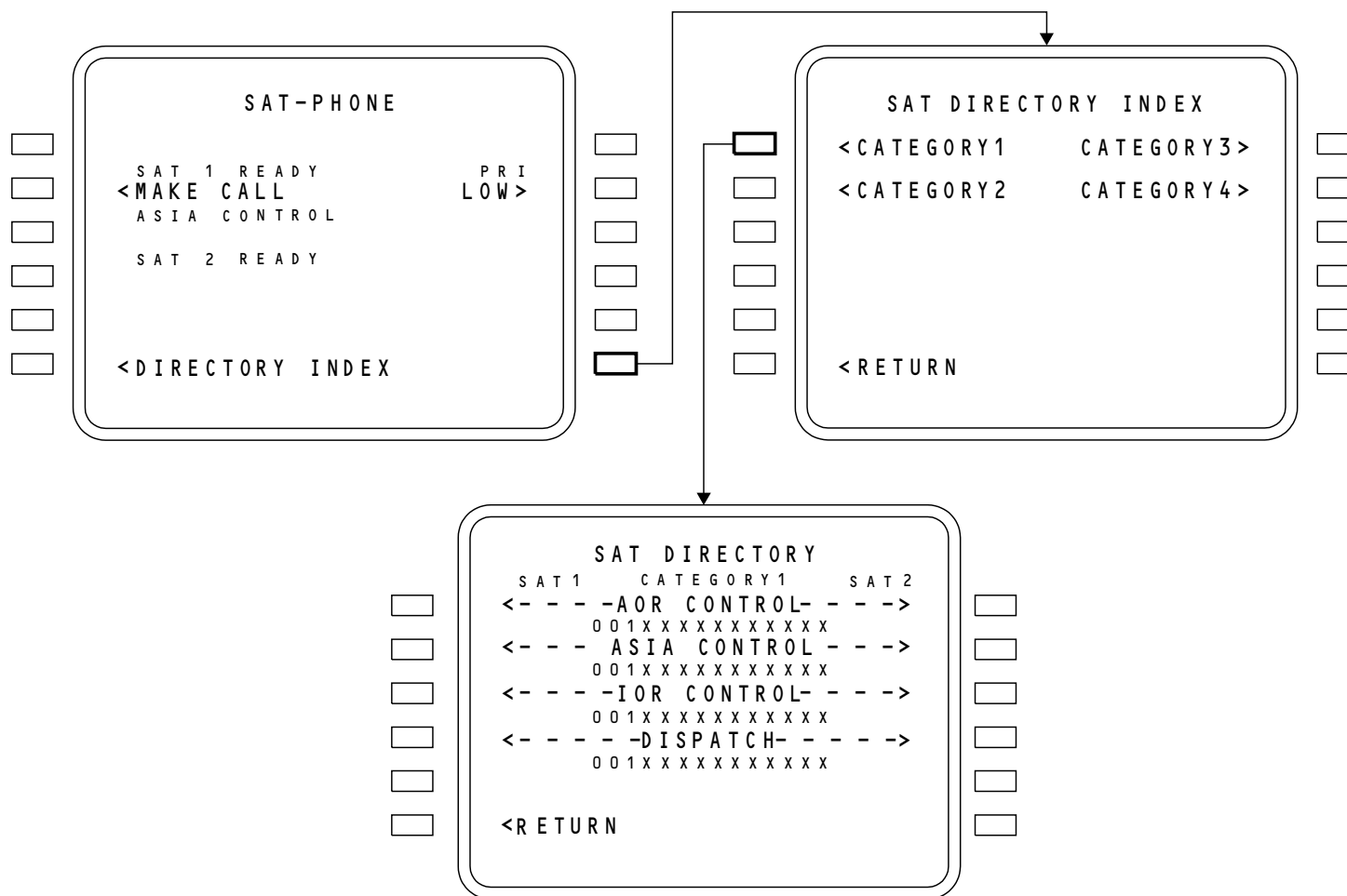
Make Call or Select Number

On the SAT DIRECTORY page, you can select or make a call. The owner requirements table (ORT) defines whether you can MAKE CALL or SELECT NUMBER from this page.

Push the line select key adjacent to the telephone number you want to call. The CDU screen changes to the SAT-PHONE page 1/2 and the name or telephone number that selected from the SAT DIRECTORY page is displayed under the selected channel.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - DIRECTORY



1930465 S0000364448_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - DIRECTORY

23-15-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-15-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAKE CALL****General**

The SAT-PHONE menu shows the status of the SAT 1 and SAT 2 channels. You can make calls, answer calls, and stop calls on this page.

Make Call

Push a MIC select switch on the ACP for the applicable SATCOM channel.

Adjust the volume with the related SAT receiver control.

Push the MENU key on the CDU to show the MENU page.

Push the line select key (LSK) adjacent to <SAT to show the SAT-PHONE page.

Push the NEXT PAGE key on the CDU to show the SAT-PHONE page 2/2.

Push the LSK adjacent to <DIRECTORY INDEX to show the SAT DIRECTORY INDEX page.

Push the LSK adjacent to a category selection to show the SAT DIRECTORY page.

Push the LSK L or LSK R adjacent to a telephone (left LSK is for SAT 1 or right LSK is for SAT 2).

On the SAT-PHONE page 1/2. Check that the name selected in the SAT DIRECTORY page shows below the applicable channel of SAT-1 or SAT-2.

Push the LSK adjacent to <MAKE CALL for SAT-1 or SAT-2 channel. The airplane SATCOM system starts to make the call. The channel status adjacent to the SAT-1 or SAT-2 changes from READY to DIALING.

When the call is connected to the called station, the channel status adjacent to the SAT-1 or SAT-2 changes from DIALING to CONNECTED and the related SAT CALL light comes on at the ACPs.

When the called party answers, you can push any MIC/interphone switch and speak into the microphone.

You do not need to release the MIC/interphone switch to listen. When you finish the call, push the LSK adjacent to <END CALL from the SAT-PHONE page 1/2.

Channel Status

The SAT-PHONE page 1/2 shows the channel status adjacent to SAT 1 and SAT 2.

These indications show in the channel status:

- **CALL FAIL** - The call stops. For example, the connection between the airplane and the GES stops, another call with a higher priority causes this call to stop, or there is an equipment failure.
- **CAMPED-ON** - You start a call and the SDU waits for available resources on the channel. When resources become available, the SDU will make the call.
- **CONNECTED** - The channel is connected. You can use the channel for voice communication.
- **DIALING** - The call is in progress, but the circuit is not connected. When the circuit is connected, the status changes to CONNECTED.
- **INCOMING CALL** - Someone on the ground makes a call to the airplane. The ground station waits for you to answer or reject the call.
- **NO RESOURCES** - You can not use this channel because another call uses the equipment or power needed for this channel.
- **NOT READY** - The system is not ready to make call. The SATCOM system is not logged-on or there is an equipment failure.
- **READY** - The system is ready to make call.
- **READY TO CONNECT** - The system is ready to make call.

Call Control

The SAT-PHONE page 1/2 lets you control the call. These are the controls:

- **MAKE CALL** - Starts a call from the airplane to the ground.
- **ANSWER CALL** - Answers a call from the ground to the airplane.
- **REJECT** - Rejects a call from the ground to the airplane.
- **PREEMPT** - Makes the SDU stop other calls so that there are resources available to make a call.
- **CANCEL CAMP** - Stops the SDU from waiting to make a call.

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAKE CALL**

- END CALL - Stops a call.

Air-to-ground Call Sequence

When the channel status is READY, the crew may make a call to the ground.

Select MAKE CALL or PLACE CALL. The SDU starts to connect the call to the ground telephone network. The channel status shows DIALING.

When the call connects to the ground telephone network, these indications show:

- CONNECTED shows as channel status
- Call light comes on at the audio control panel (ACP) for the SATCOM channel

Ground-to-air Call Sequence

When someone on the ground makes a call to the airplane, these indications show:

- High/low chime from the aural warning module
- Call light comes on at the ACP for the SATCOM channel
- INCOMING CALL shows as the channel status on the SAT-PHONE page 1/2.

To accept the call, select the MIC switch on the ACP to begin voice communication.

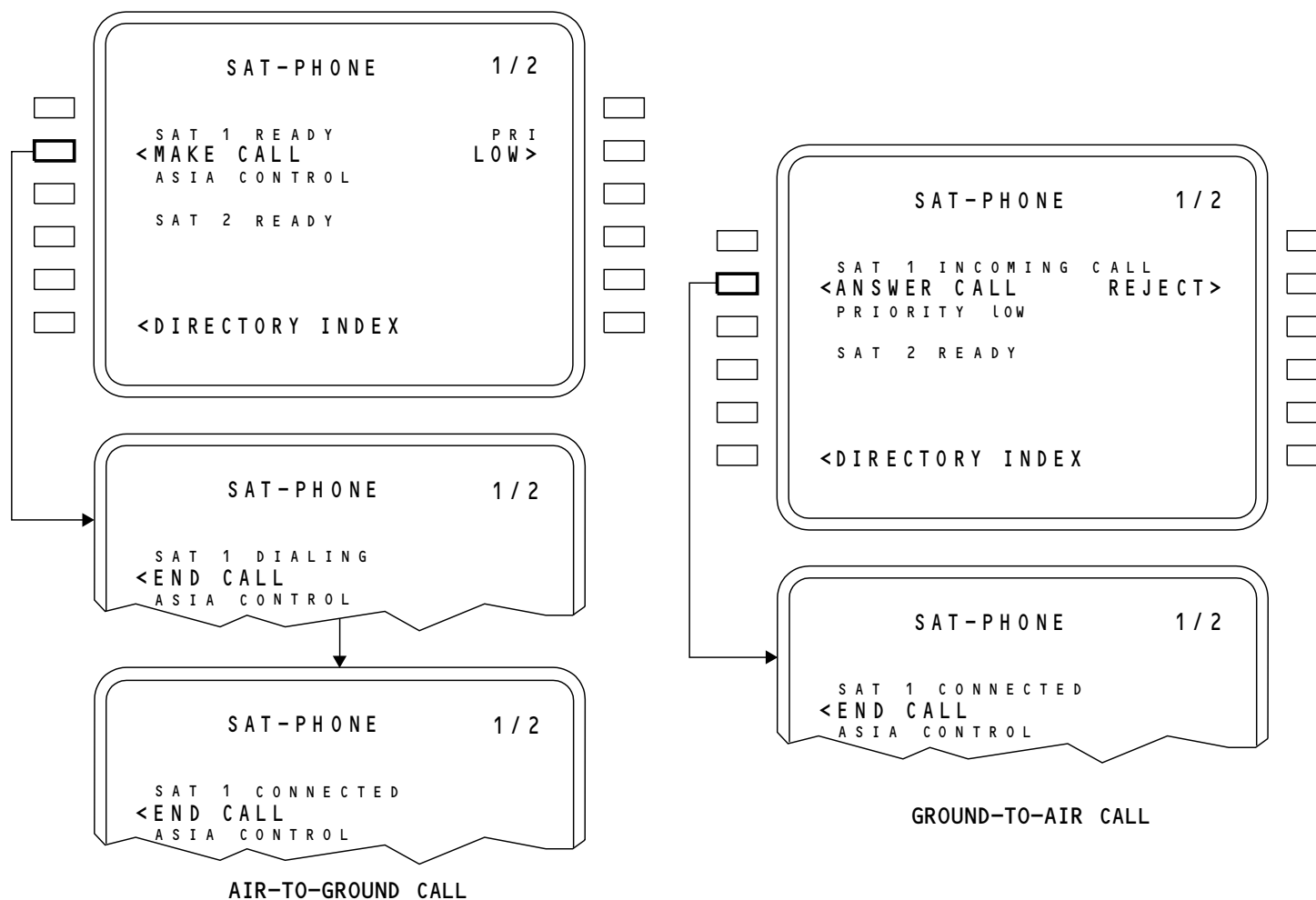
23-15-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAKE CALL



1930455 S0000364580_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - MAKE CALL

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - VOICE COMMUNICATION****General**

The crew uses the control display units (CDUs) and audio control panels (ACPs) to control the voice mode of the SATCOM system.

Outgoing Calls

To make an outgoing call, do these steps at the CDU:

- Push the MENU function key to see the MENU of the CDU, then push the line-select key (LSK) adjacent to <SAT to see the SAT-PHONE main menu.
- Push the LSK adjacent to DIRECTORY INDEX to see the SAT DIRECTORY INDEX page.
- Push LSK adjacent to one of the category selections. The SAT DIRECTORY page shows.
- Use the SAT DIRECTORY page on the CDU to select a ground station or telephone number to call. Use left LSK for the SAT-1 channel or right LSK for the SAT-2 channel. The display returns to the SAT-PHONE page.
- Make sure the name selected in the directory shows below the SAT-1 or SAT-2 channel.
- Select the priority for the SATCOM call (EME, HGH, LOW, or SBB).
- Push the LSK adjacent to <MAKE CALL below the applicable channel (SAT-1 or SAT-2).

When the airplane SATCOM system connected to the ground telephone network, these indications show:

- The status for SAT 1 or SAT 2 channel shows CONNECTED in the SAT-PHONE menu
- The CALL lights of the transmitter select switches for SAT 1 or SAT 2 come On at the ACPs.

Push the transmitter select switch for SAT 1 or SAT 2 on one of the ACPs. The CALL lights on all the ACPs go off. Adjust the volume with the SAT 1 or SAT 2 receiver volume control. You hear the ringback tone in the headset.

When the person on the other end of the telephone line answers, push the PTT switch and speak into the microphone. You do not need to release the PTT switch to listen.

To complete the SATCOM call, do one of these steps:

- Push the LSK adjacent to the <END CALL on the SAT-PHONE page 1/2.
- Push the related END CALL switch on the ACP.

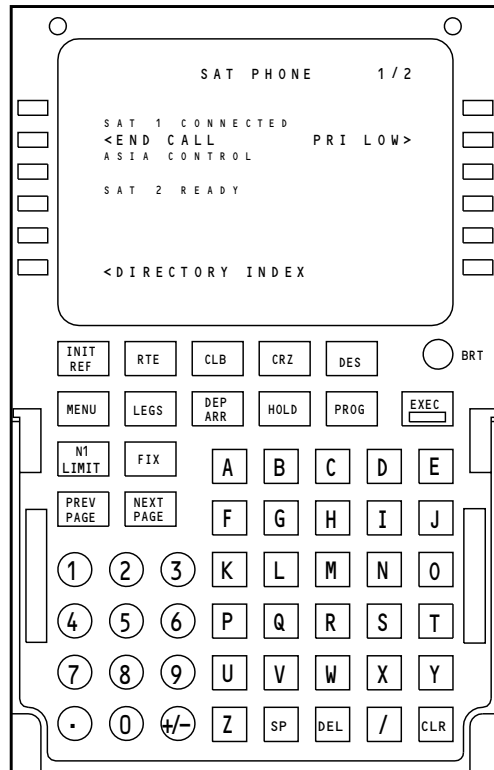
23-15-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

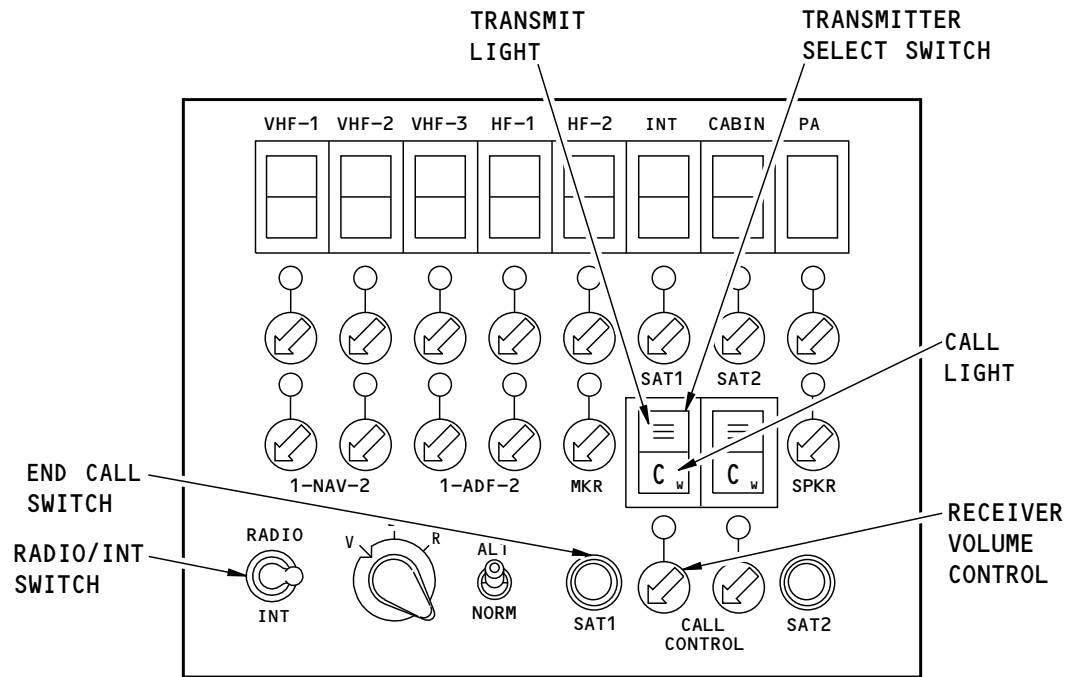
D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - VOICE COMMUNICATION



CONTROL DISPLAY UNIT



AUDIO CONTROL PANEL

1933071 S0000363983_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - OPERATION - VOICE COMMUNICATION

23-15-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SOFTWARE LOADING

SDU Software

You can load software in a SDU or download BITE data from a SDU.

You can upload the owner requirement table (ORT) into the SDU.

You can download this data from the SDU:

- Owner requirement table
- Call events
- Data events
- Maintenance
- Faults
- System events
- Periodic data.

Owner Requirement Table

The ORT lets the airplane operator change the SATCOM system operation to meet specific requirements. For example, the operator defines the telephone numbers and the directories which contain the numbers.

Operation to Load Software

NOTE: On airplanes with one satellite data unit (SDU), you must use the L/CAPT/UPR position of the upper switch on the data loader control panel to load data.

To load software into the SDU, use the data loader control panel and the portable data loader (PDL):

- Connect the PDL to the airplane's DATA TRANSFER receptacle.
- Select the SATCOM position on the lower switch on the data loader control panel. Select the left (L/CAPT/UPR) position on the upper switch on the data loader control panel.
- Put the diskette in the portable data loader and connect the portable data loader to the data transfer unit receptacle.

- On the CDU, go to the SAT MAINTENANCE page. Select the DATA LOAD from the SAT MAINTENANCE page. Select *UPLD OWNER REQS on the DATA LOADER MENU.
- An indication on the data loader shows you when the data load is complete. When the data load is complete, you can verify that the new software part number shows on the SAT EQUIP IDENT page.

Operation to Download BITE Data (Portable Data Loader)

The SDU can download BITE data to a diskette.

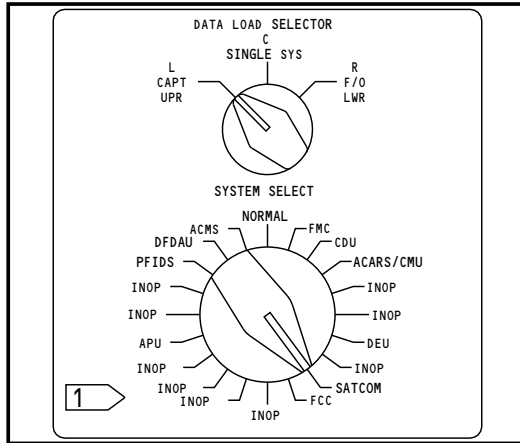
To download the BITE data, connect a portable data loader (PDL) to the Data Transfer Unit Receptacle on the airplane. Put the diskette in the PDL.

Select the SATCOM position on the lower switch on the data loader control panel. Select the left (L/CAPT/UPR) position on the upper switch on the data loader control panel.

NOTE: On airplanes with one satellite data unit (SDU), you must use the L/CAPT/UPR position of the upper switch on the data loader control panel to load data.

On the CDU, go to the SAT MAINTENANCE page. Select the DATA LOAD from the SAT MAINTENANCE page. Select the data you want to download on the DATA LOADER MENU.

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SOFTWARE LOADING



DATA LOADER CONTROL PANEL

SAT EQUIP IDENT	
	SDU HW PART NO
	82155XXXX
	SDU SERIAL NO
	XXXXX
	SDU SW PART NO
	XXXXX
	SCM HW PART NO

	SCM SERIAL NO

	<RETURN

CDU - SATCOM LRU IDENTIFICATION PAGE

1 OPTIONAL SYSTEMS NOT ACTIVE
ARE LABELED INOP.

SATCOM SYSTEM - SDU CONFIGURATION MODEL

1930459 S0000364102_V1

23-15-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-15-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SDU BITE

General

The satellite data unit (SDU) has built-in test equipment (BITE). The BITE examines the operation of the SDU and other SATCOM system LRUs.

The BITE for the SDU does these tests:

- Power-on self-test (POST)
- Person-activated self-test (PAST)
- Continuous monitor.

Front Panel Controls and Indications

The SDU has these front panel controls and indications:

- SDU status Light Emitting Diodes (LED) - shows the status of the SATCOM equipments. See the table below for more information.
- Test switch - push this switch to start a self-test of the SDU.

SDU Front Panel Indications

LED	Flashing Green	Steady Green	Amber	Red	Off
SDU	SDU in Self-Test	SDU ok	Partial Failure or ARINC 429/AFDX /RS-422 Bus	SDU Failed	SDU Not Powered
SCM	SDU in Self-Test	SCM/USIM ok	SCM Memory Fail or RS-422 Bus Failure	USIM Read/Write Fail. No attempt at SSB registration	SCM Not Installed or SDU Not Powered
Antenna	SDU in Self-Test	Antenna ok	Partial Failure or ARINC 429 Bus Failure	Antenna Failed	SDU Not Powered
DLNA	SDU in Self-Test	DLNA ok	N/A	DLNA Failed	SDU Not Powered

LED	Flashing Green	Steady Green	Amber	Red	Off
Ext. HPA	SDU in Self-Test	Ext HPA ok	Partial Failure	Ext HPA Failed	Ext HPA Not Installed or Not Powered
Ext. BSU	SDU in Self-Test	N/A	N/A	N/A	Ext BSU Not Installed or Not Powered Normal case for ARINC 781 antenna system
Ext. Data Bus	SDU in Self-Test	All Data Buses (ARINC 429 /AFDX/RS-422) ok	Nav Data not available. ARINC 429 Bus from IRS inactive or IRS Data invalid	Bus Failed (ARINC 429 / AFDX/RS-422)	SDU Not Powered
ORT/ Config.	SDU in Self-Test	ORT / Hardware Configuration Straps	ORT Minor Failure	ORT Major Failure or Hardware Configuration Straps Parity Failure	SDU Not Powered
Sat. Link #1	SDU in Self-Test	Channel #1 Service available.	Channel #1 attempting Log-On or Registration	N/A	Channel #1 Not attempting Log-On or Registration
Sat. Link #2	SDU in Self-Test	Channel #2 Service available.	Channel #2 attempting Log-On or Registration	N/A	Channel #2 Not attempting Log-On or Registration

23-15-00**EFFECTIVITY**
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SDU BITE

Power-On Self-Tests (POST) and Person-Activated Self-Tests (PAST)

The POST is automatically activated at SDU start up.

The PAST is initiated by an operator by depressing the Test push button located on the front panel of the SDU.

The POST and the PAST do checks of the same functions of the SATCOM system and give the same indications on the front panel of the SDU.

The self-test does checks of SDU operation. The self-test also causes the other SATCOM system LRUs to do tests. The other SATCOM system LRUs send test results back to the SDU.

The POST starts when you apply power to the SDU.

The PAST starts when you push the TEST switch on the front panel of the SDU. Also, you can start the PAST on the SAT TEST page on the CDU.

These are the sequence indications for POST LEDs :

- When the electrical power supply to the SDU and airplane is on the ground configuration.
- All LEDs come on Amber for approximately 45 - 90 seconds.
- LEDs flash Green for approximately 2 - 20 seconds.
- LEDs go off and stay in off condition for approximately 45 - 90 seconds.
- LEDs flash green for approximately 3-20 seconds.
- LEDs show a Green steady condition.

These are the sequence indications for PAST LEDs :

- Push the TEST switch on the front panel of the SDU.
- All LEDs go off and stay in off condition for approximately 45 - 90 seconds.
- LEDs flash green for approximately 3-20 seconds.
- LEDs show a Green steady condition.

Continuous Monitor

The continuous monitor operates all the time that the SDU has power. The continuous monitor examines the SDU with no effect on the operation of the SATCOM system.

The continuous monitor examines these types of data:

- Power supply voltages
- Temperature sensors
- Bias currents
- Input bus activity
- Buffer overflow
- Input data faults.

If the continuous monitor finds a fault of the SDU, the LED for the SDU comes on Red. If the continuous monitor finds a fault in a LRU within the SATCOM system, the LED comes on Red for that LRU.

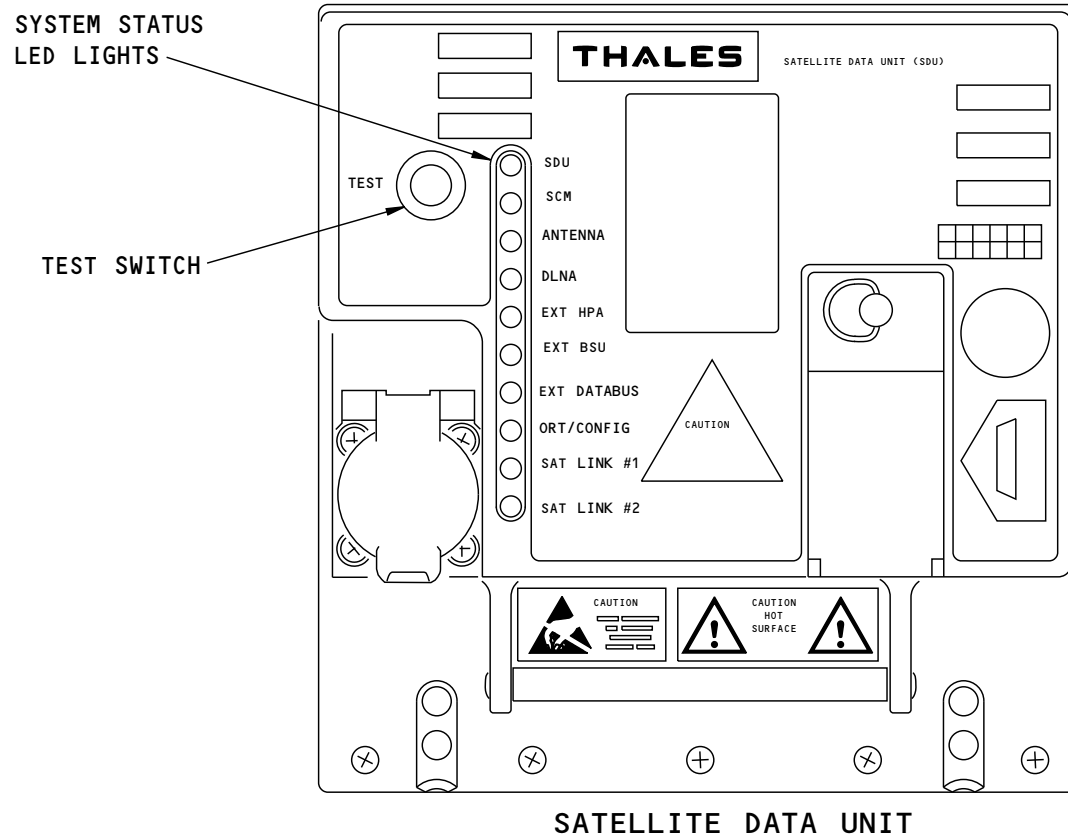
23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SDU BITE



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION - SDU BITE

1931109 S0000364882_V1

**SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SATCOM MAINT PAGE****General**

The SAT MAINTENANCE page lets you get access to the maintenance data for the SATCOM system.

Access

To get access to the SAT MAINTENANCE menu from the SAT-PHONE page 2/2, select the LSK adjacent to the MAINTENANCE>.

SAT MAINTENANCE MENU

Selection of LSK 1L will display the SAT EXISTING FLTS page.

Selection of LSK 2L will display the SAT LAST LEG page.

Selection of LSK 3L will display the SAT FLT HISTORY page.

Selection of LSK 4L will display the SAT GRND FLTS page.

Selection of LSK 5L will display the SAT TROUBLESHOOT page.

Selection of LSK1R will display the SAT TEST page.

Selection of LSK 2R will display the SAT EQUIP STATUS page.

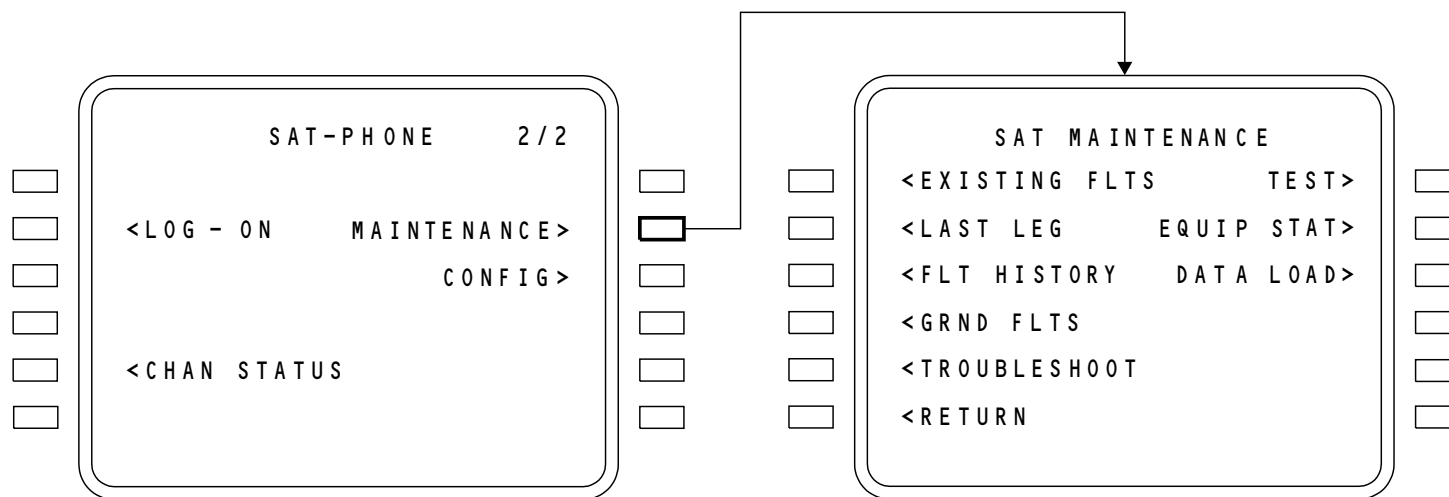
Selection of LSK 3R will display the SAT DATA LOAD page.

23-15-00**SIA ALL** **EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SATCOM MAINT PAGE



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SAT MAINTENANCE PAGE

1930580 S0000364910_V1

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - LAST & PREVIOUS LEG REPORT PAGES****General**

The LAST LEG REPORT and PREVIOUS LEG REPORT pages show the SATCOM system faults that occurred.

The LAST LEG REPORT shows faults that occurred during the last flight leg. The PREVIOUS LEG REPORT shows faults that occurred on flight legs before the last flight leg.

Access

To see the LAST LEG REPORT, select the LSK adjacent to <LAST LEG on the SAT MAINTENANCE page.

To see the PREVIOUS LEG REPORT, select the LSK adjacent to <FLT HISTORY on the SAT MAINTENANCE page.

Last Leg Report

If there are no faults recorded for the last flight leg, the report shows NO FAULT DETECTED.

The report shows two faults on each page. Use the NEXT PAGE and PREV PAGE keys to see all of the faults.

The report shows this data for each fault:

- Time the fault occurred (UTC)
- ATA code
- Classification (CLASS: 1 or 2)
- Maintenance message.

Previous Legs Report

If there are no faults recorded for any previous flight leg, the report shows NO FAULT DETECTED.

The report shows two faults on each page. Use the NEXT PAGE and PREV PAGE keys to see all of the faults.

The report shows this data for each fault:

- Airplane identification
- Leg number
- Date and time the fault occurred (UTC)
- ATA code
- Classification (CLASS: 1 or 2)
- Maintenance message.

23-15-00

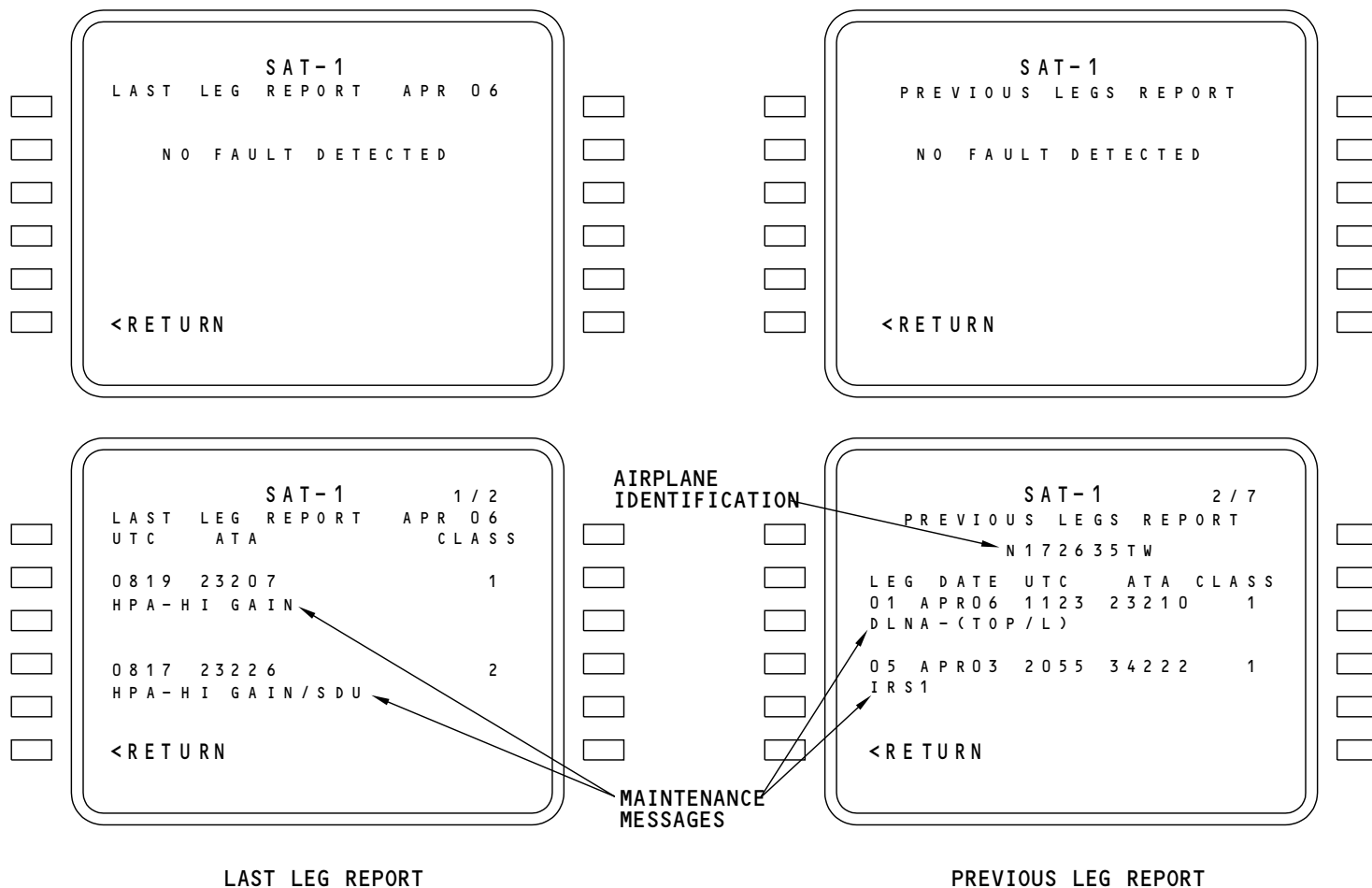
EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - LAST & PREVIOUS LEG REPORT PAGES



M79833 S0004623305_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - LAST & PREVIOUS LEG REPORT PAGES

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - CLASS 3 FAULTS PAGE

General

The LAST LEG CLASS 3 FAULT page shows the class 3 faults that occurred.

NOTE: When a class 3 fault occurs, there is no indication to the flight crew. Class 3 faults can remain uncorrected until a routine scheduled maintenance check.

Last Leg Report

If there are no class 3 faults recorded for the last flight leg, the report shows NO FAULT DETECTED.

The report shows two faults on each page. Use the NEXT PAGE and PREV PAGE keys to see all of the faults.

The report shows these data for each fault:

- Time the fault occurred (UTC)
- ATA code
- Maintenance message.

23-15-00

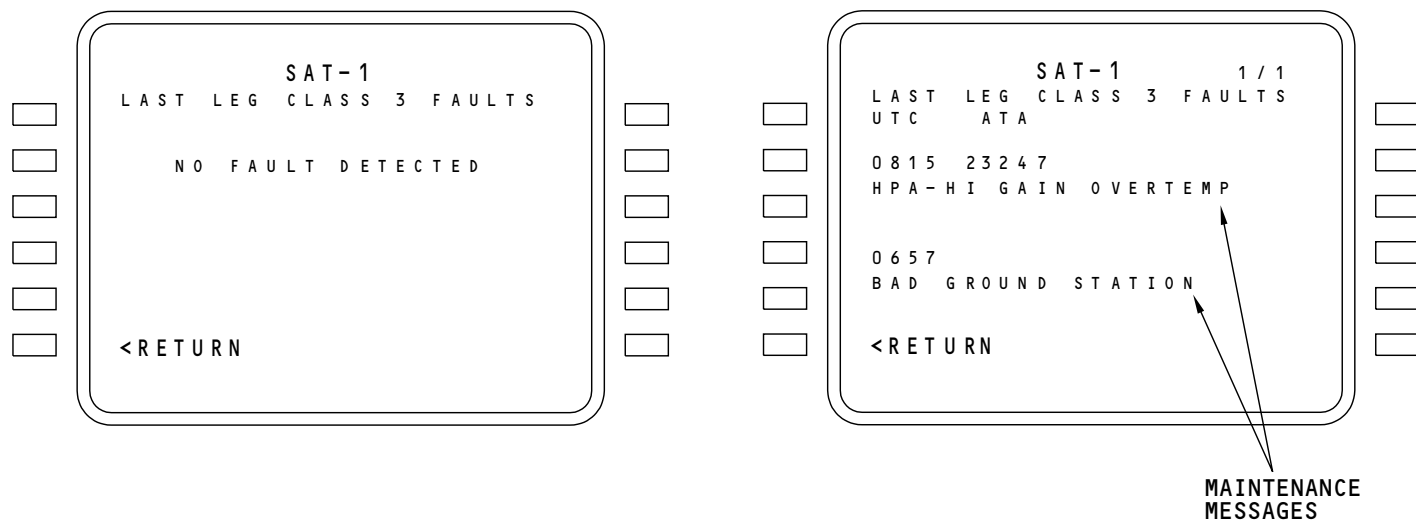
EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - CLASS 3 FAULTS PAGE



M79834 S0004623307_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - CLASS 3 FAULTS PAGE

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - TEST PAGE

General

The SAT TEST page lets you start these tests:

- Self-test of the SATCOM system

Access

To see the SAT TEST page, select TEST> on the SAT MAINTENANCE page.

Self-Test

To start the self-test of the SATCOM system, select *SELF-TEST. During the self-test, the CDU screen shows TEST IN PROGRESS 60S.

At the end of the self-test, if there are no faults, the CDU shows TEST OK.

If there are faults, the CDU shows the faults. The SAT TEST page shows this data for each fault:

- ATA code
- Classification (CLASS: 1 or 2)
- Maintenance message.

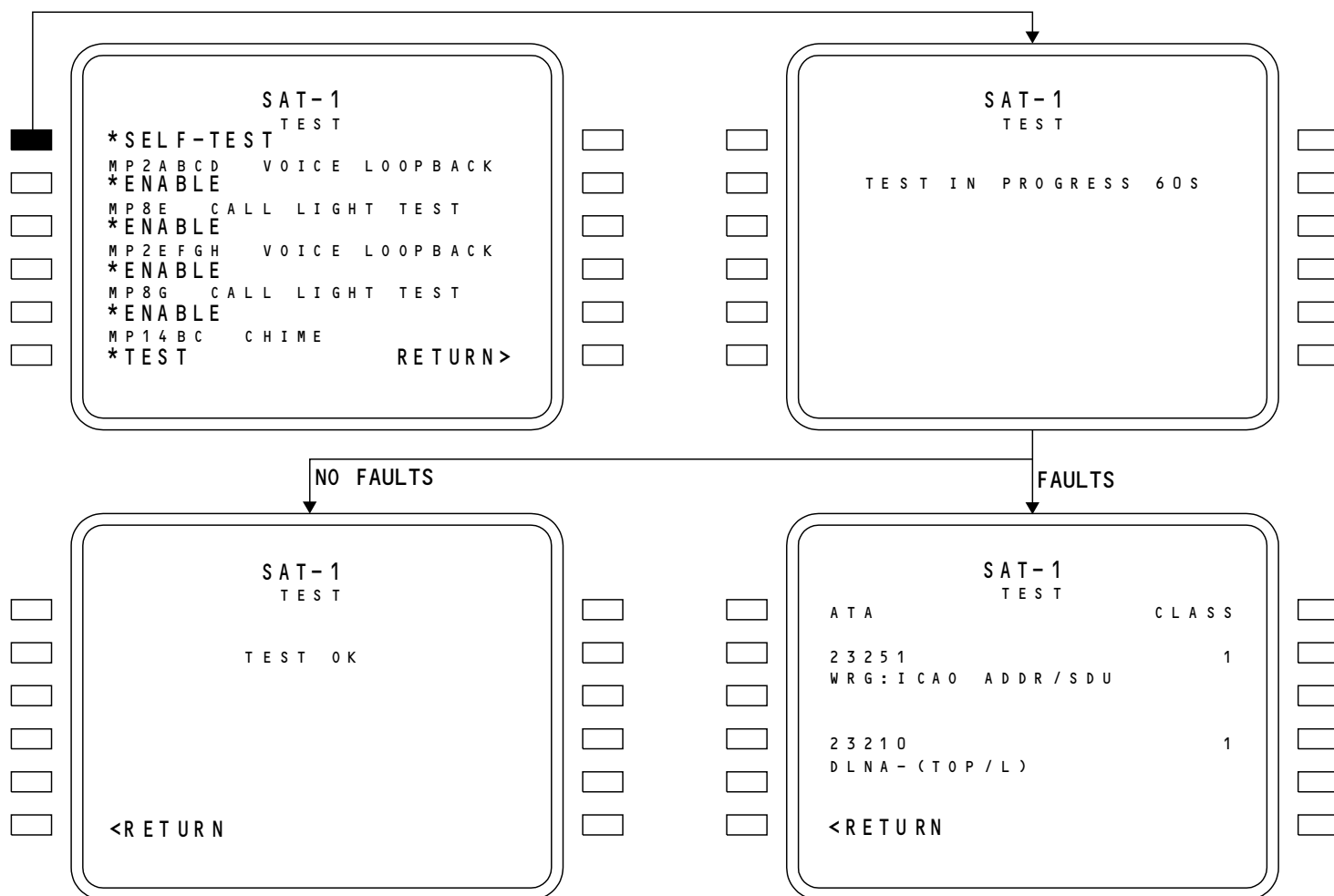
23-15-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - TEST PAGE



M79835 S0004623309_V2

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - TEST PAGE

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - LRU IDENTIFICATION PAGE

General

The SAT EQUIP IDENT page lets you verify the part number of these components:

- Satellite data unit.
- SDU configuration module
- Antenna

The SAT EQUIP IDENT page also shows the software part numbers for the Secure ORT and User ORT.

Access

To see the SAT EQUIP IDENT page, select CONFIG> on the SAT-PHONE page 2/2, then select <EQUIPMENT IDENT on the SAT CONFIGURATION page.

23-15-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - LRU IDENTIFICATION PAGE

SATELLITE DATA UNIT
PART NUMBER

SDU CONFIGURATION
MODULE PART NUMBER

ANTENNA PART NUMBER

SAT EQUIP IDENT 1 / 3

☐ SDU HW PART NO
☐ 8 2 1 5 5 x x x x
☐ SDU SERIAL NO
☐ x x x x x
☐ SDU SW PART NO
☐ x x x x x
☐ SCM HW PART NO
☐ x x x x x x x x
☐ SCM SERIAL NO
☐ x x x x x
☐ <RETURN

SAT EQUIP IDENT 2 / 3

☐ ANTENNA HW PART NO
☐ x x x - x x - x x x x
☐ ANTENNA SERIAL NO
☐ x x x x x
☐ ANTENNA SW PART NO
☐ x x x x x
☐ EXT HPA HW PART NO
☐ -
☐ EXT HPA SERIAL NO
☐ -
☐ <RETURN

SAT EQUIP IDENT 3 / 3

☐ SECURE ORT SW PART NO
☐ SEC ORT x x
☐ USER ORT SW PART NO
☐ USR ORT x x
☐ ORT VERSION NO
☐ x x
☐ <RETURN

OWNER REQUIREMENT
TABLE PART NUMBERS

1930913 S0000364933_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SAT EQUIP IDENT PAGE



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - DATA LOADER MENU

General

The SAT DATA LOAD menu lets you control data transfers to and from the data loader.

Access

To see the SAT DATA LOAD menu, select DATA LOAD> on the SAT MAINTENANCE page.

Data Loader Status

The information in line 1L shows the status of the data loader.

The status can be one of these:

- NOT CONNECTED - The data loader is not connected to the SDU.
- CONNECTED - The data loader is connected to the SDU, but not ready for loading.
- READY - The data loader is ready to receive or transmit data.
- BUSY - The data loader transmits data.
- ERROR - A condition or a fault has caused the data loader to stop transmitting data.

If the data loader status is ERROR, the display can show more information. For example, ERROR-DISK FULL. These are the indications that can show with ERROR:

- DISK FULL
- TRANSFER FAILURE
- FILE NOT FOUND
- CRC FAILURE
- BAD FILE HEADER
- BAD OWNER REQS VER
- OPEN DISK
- CLOSE DISK
- WRITE PROTECT

- COMPOSITE ORT NOT ALLOW.

When an error indication shows, line 6L shows *ACK ERROR. Push this command to remove the error indication and show the current status of the data loader.

Data Load Commands

The SAT DATA LOAD menu shows commands in lines 2L, 3L, 4L, and 5L on page 1. Page 2 has commands in lines 2L, 3L, and 4L.

When the data loader is ready to transmit, the page shows an asterisk (*) adjacent to the data load commands. Push the line-select-key adjacent to a specific command to start the data load.

After you select a data load command, the asterisks go away and the command shows <SEL>. The data loader status shows BUSY as long as the data load process continues without a fault.

Periodic Data Logging

Use the PERIODIC DATA LOGGING command to start and stop the SDU to send operational data to the disk.

23-15-00EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - DATA LOADER MENU

SAT DATA LOAD 1 / 2	
DATA	LOADER
READY	
*UPLD OWNER REQS	
*DNLD OWNER REQS	
*DNLD CALL EVENTS	
*DNLD DATA EVENTS	
<RETURN	

SAT DATA LOAD 2 / 2	
DATA	LOADER
READY	
*DNLD MAINTENANCE	
*DNLD FAILURES	
*DNLD SYS EVENTS	
PERIODIC DATA LOGGING	
*START	
<RETURN	

1930912 S0000364936_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SAT DATA LOAD MENU

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - CONFIGURATION DATA PAGES

General

The SAT CONFIGURATION pages show the status of the inputs to the satellite data unit (SDU).

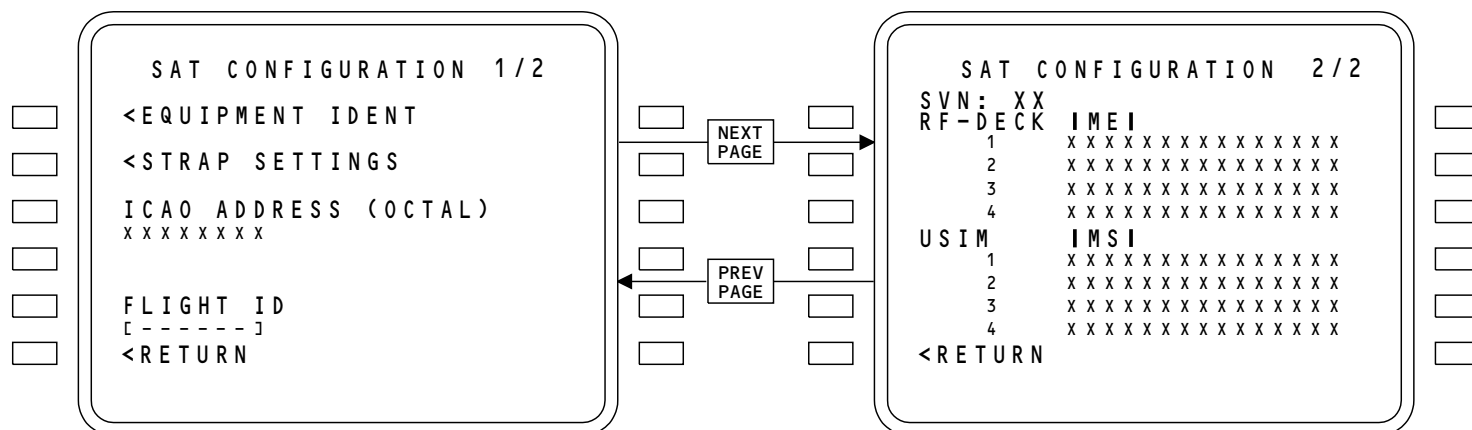
Access

To see the SAT CONFIGURATION pages, select CONFIG on the SAT-PHONE page 2/2.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	



SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - CONFIGURATION DATA PAGES



1930923 S0000365072_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SAT CONFIGURATION PAGE

23-15-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY

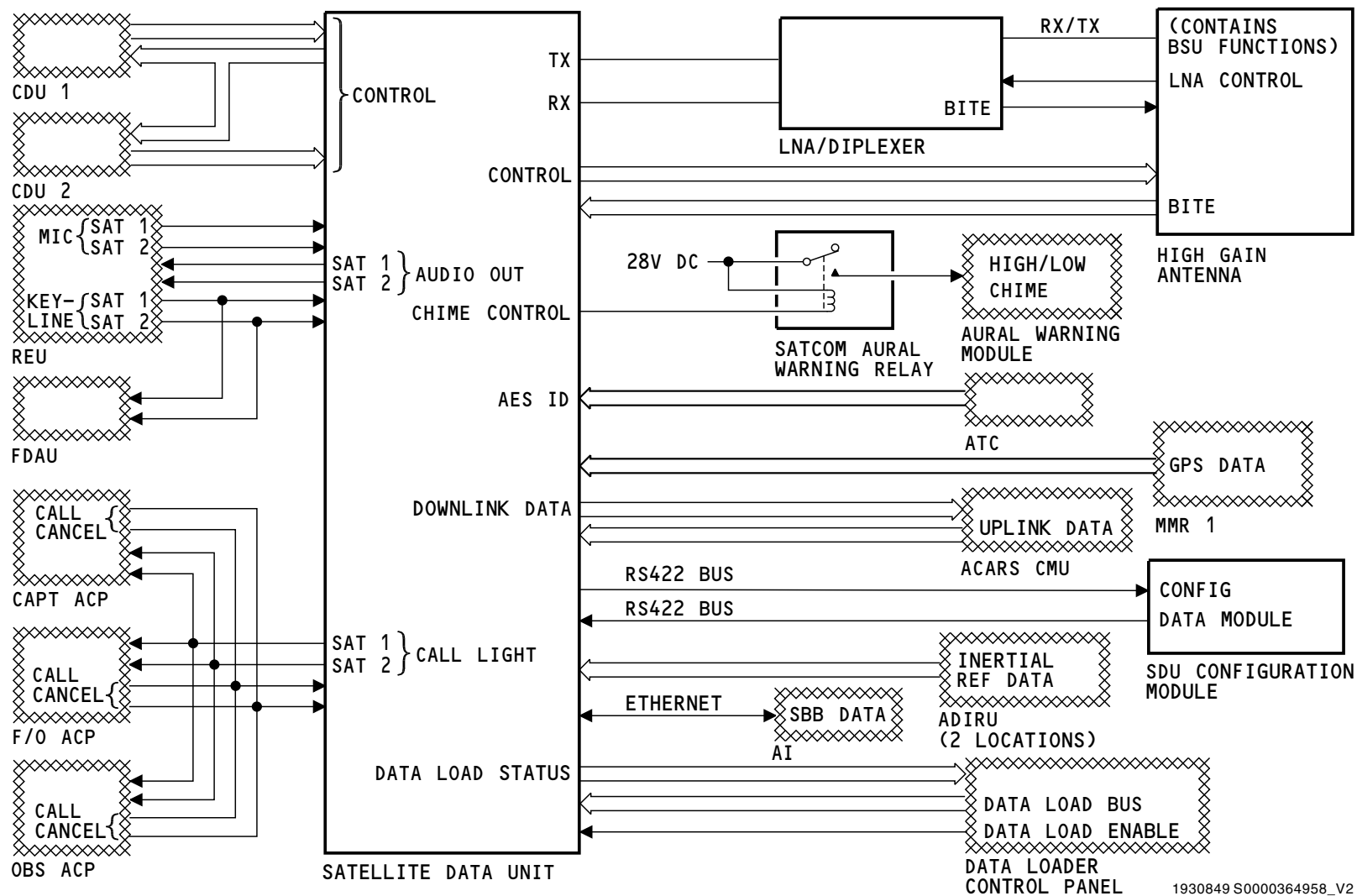
General

This page is for reference.

For more details on the SATCOM System, refer to the wiring diagram and functional schematic manuals.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY



1930849 S0000364958_V2

SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY

23-15-00

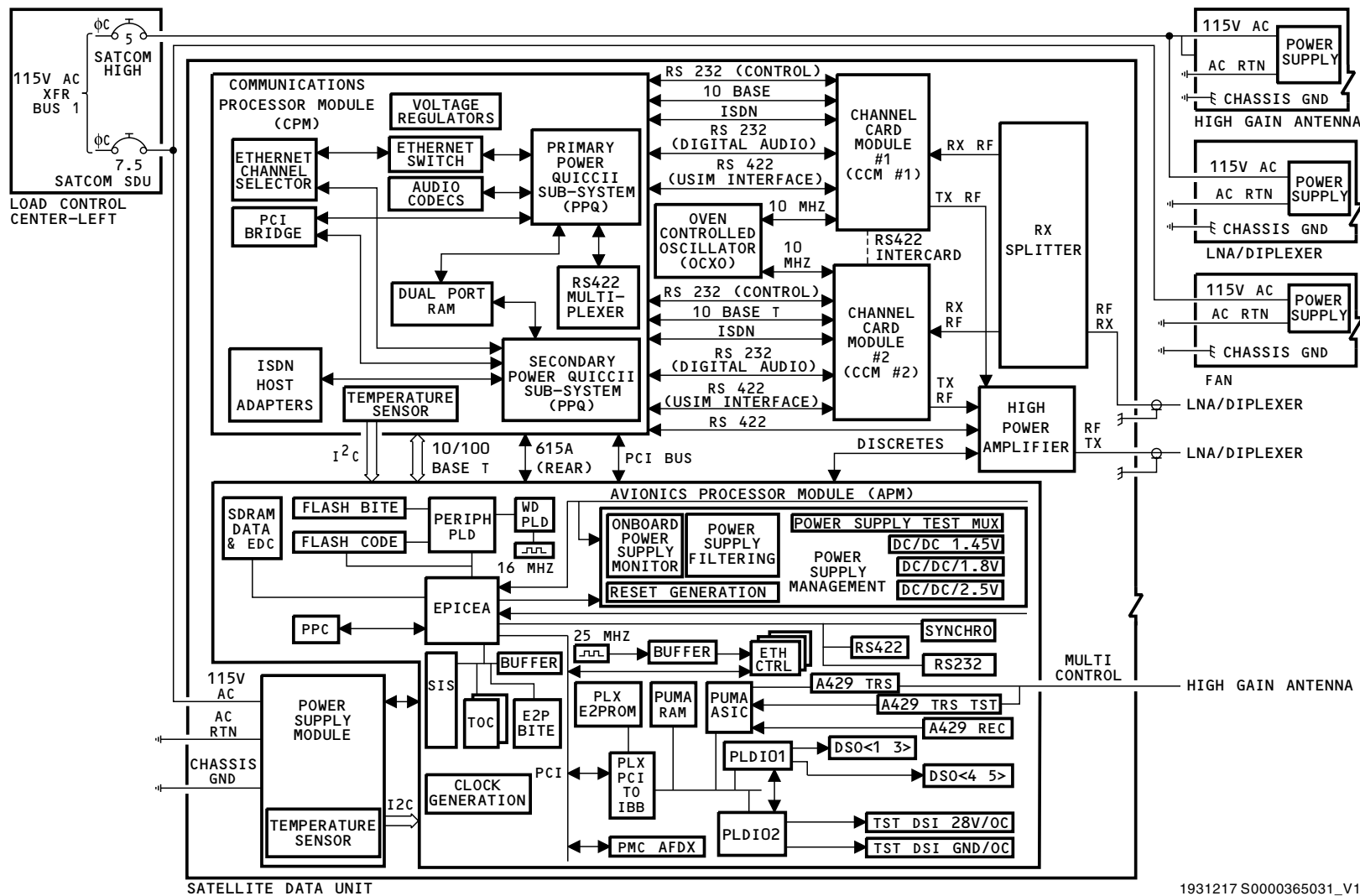
SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY



SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY - SATCOM SYSTEM POWER

1931217 S0000365031_V1

23-15-00

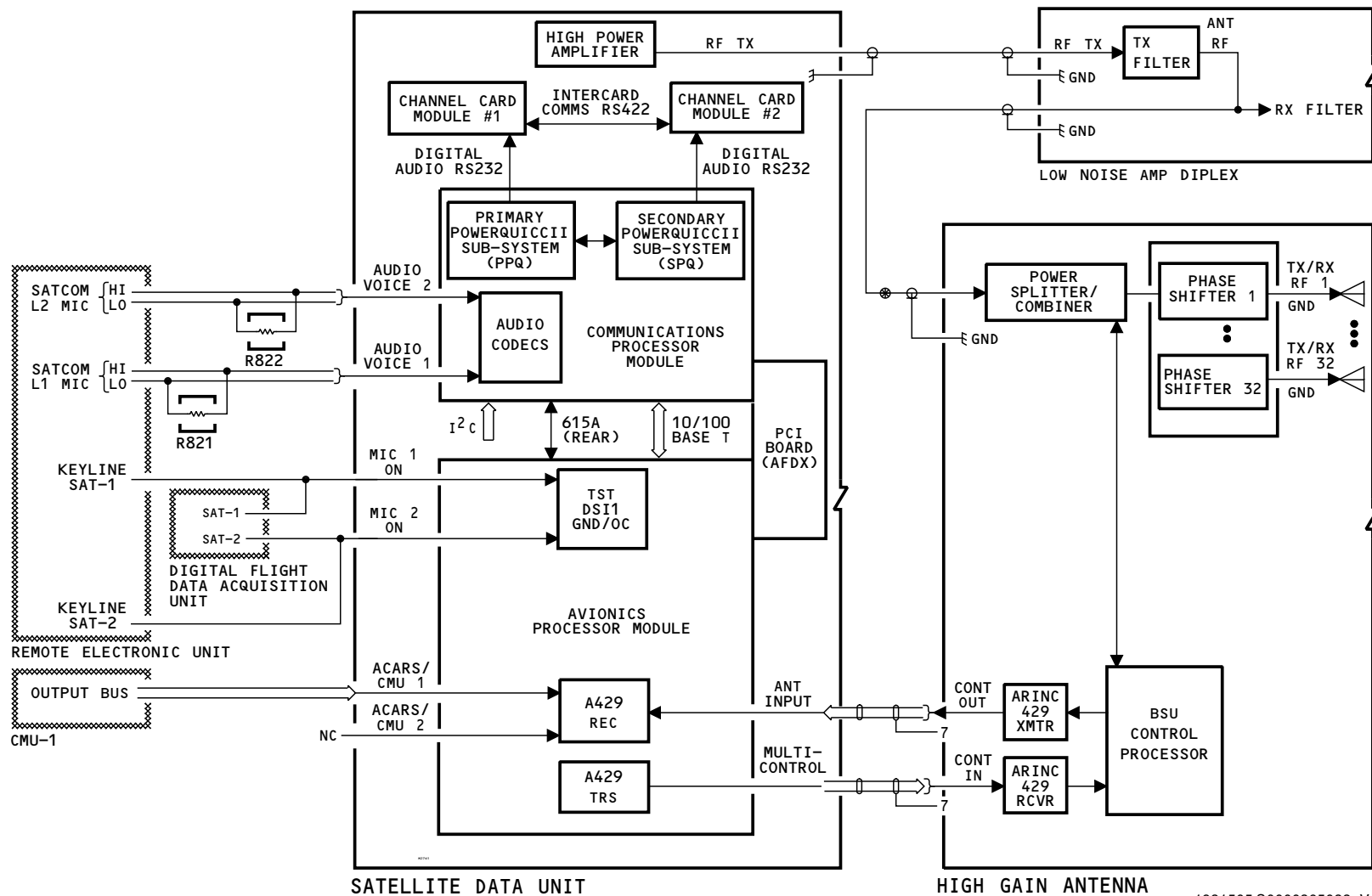
SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY



1931505 S0000365033_V1

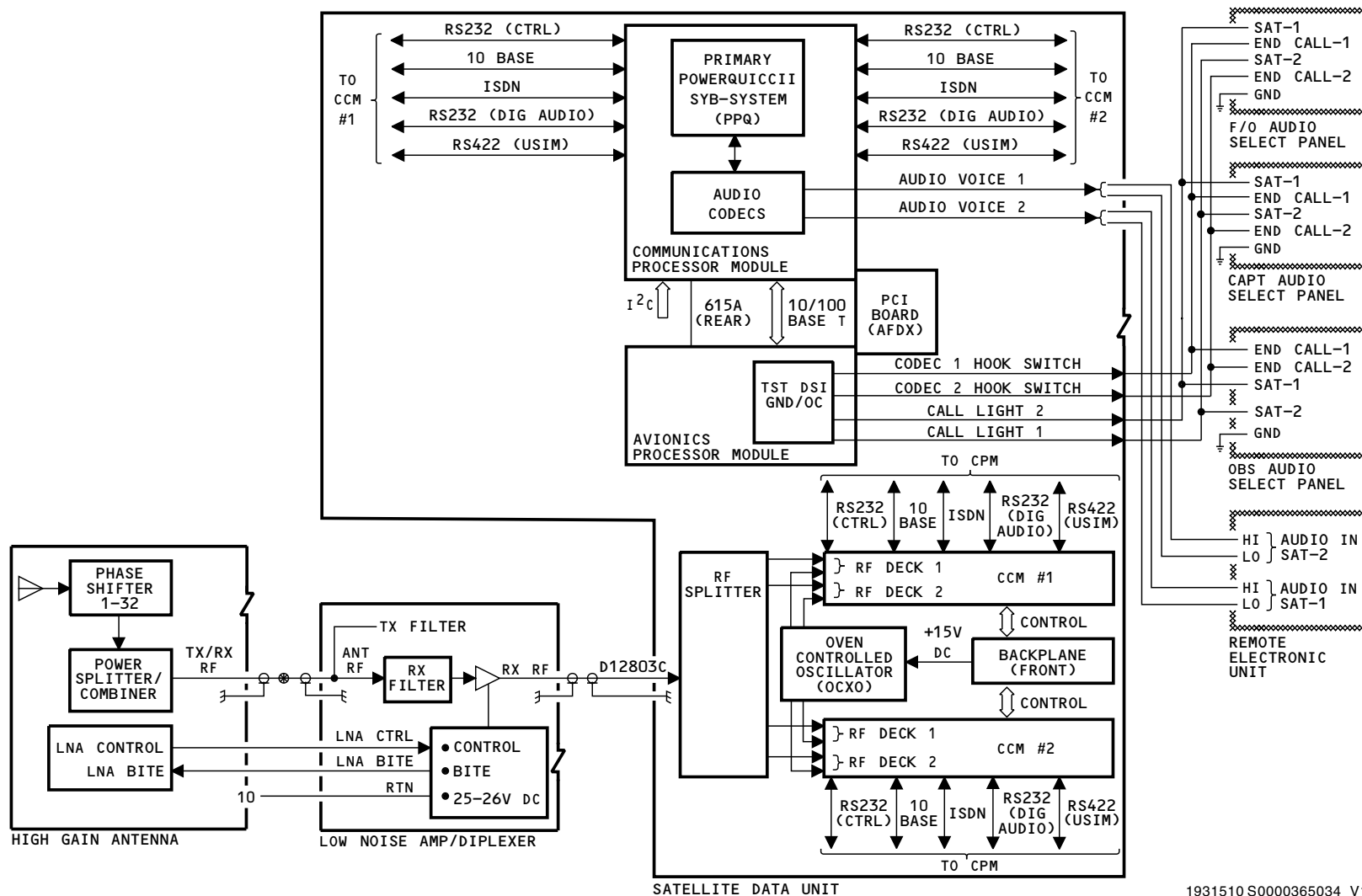
SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY - SATCOM SYSTEM TRANSMITTING

23-15-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY



1931510 S0000365034_V1

SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY - SATCOM SYSTEM RECEIVING

23-15-00

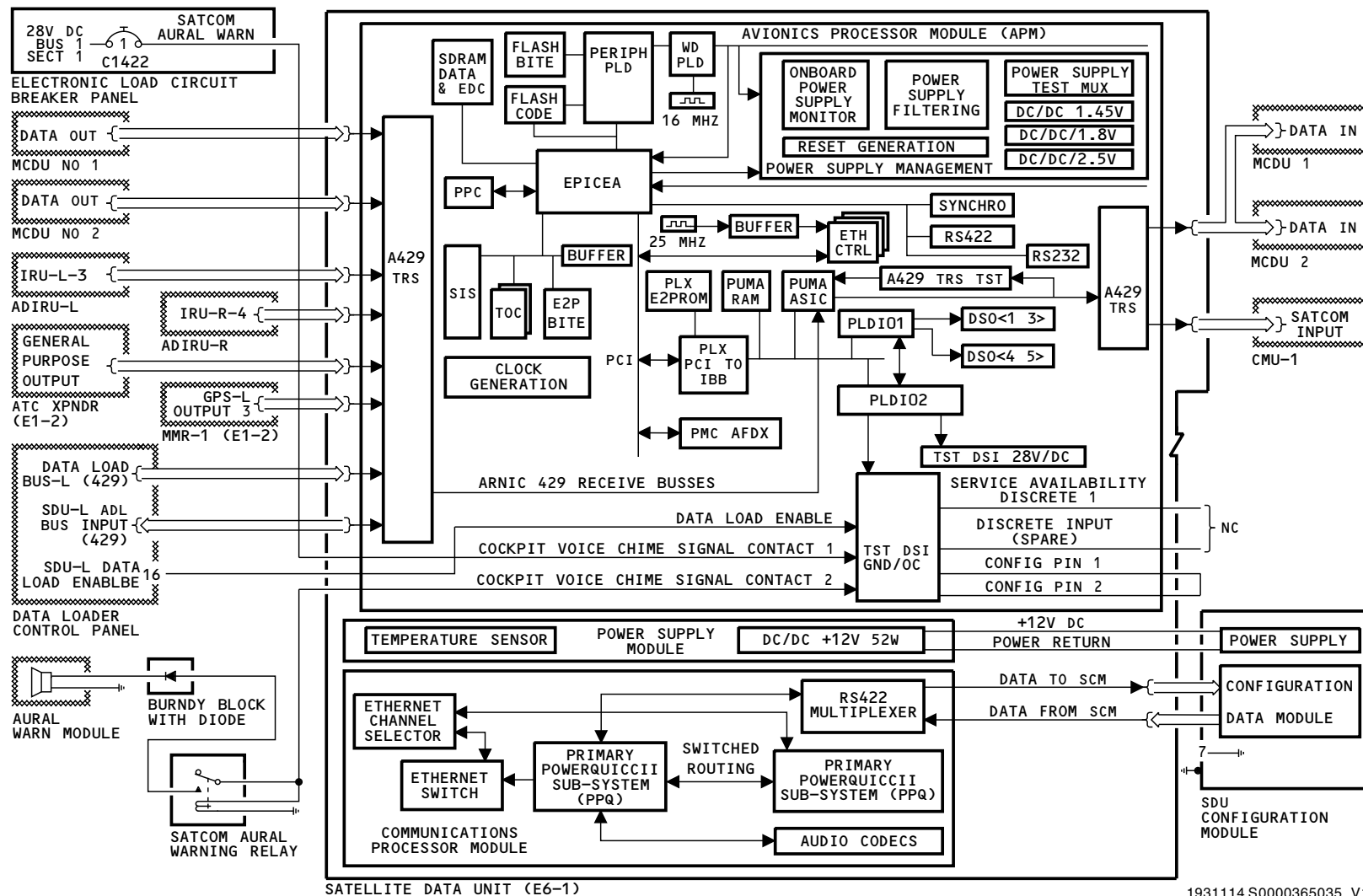
SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY



SATCOM SYSTEM - SUMMARY - SATCOM CONTROL

23-15-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-24-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

Purpose

The emergency locator transmitter (ELT) system automatically sends emergency signals when it senses a large change in the airplane velocity.

The flight crew can start the ELT manually at the flight deck with a switch on a control panel.

The ELT sends homing signals to search and rescue crews on the VHF and UHF emergency channels.

The ELT also sends emergency signals to satellite receivers. The satellite receivers send this information to ground stations to calculate the location of the emergency signals. This signal also has position coordinates and airplane identification data.

The ELT also sends emergency signals to satellite receivers. The satellite receivers send this information to ground stations to calculate the location of the emergency signals.

- UHF - ultra high frequency
- VHF - very high frequency
- v - volt

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- AIM - aircraft identification module
- ANT - antenna
- C - Celsius
- cm - centimeter
- dc - direct current
- deg - degree
- ELT - emergency locator transmitter
- EXT - external
- in - inch
- kg - kilogram
- lb - pound
- MCC - mission control center
- MHz - megahertz
- mW - milliwatt
- PSM - programmable switch module

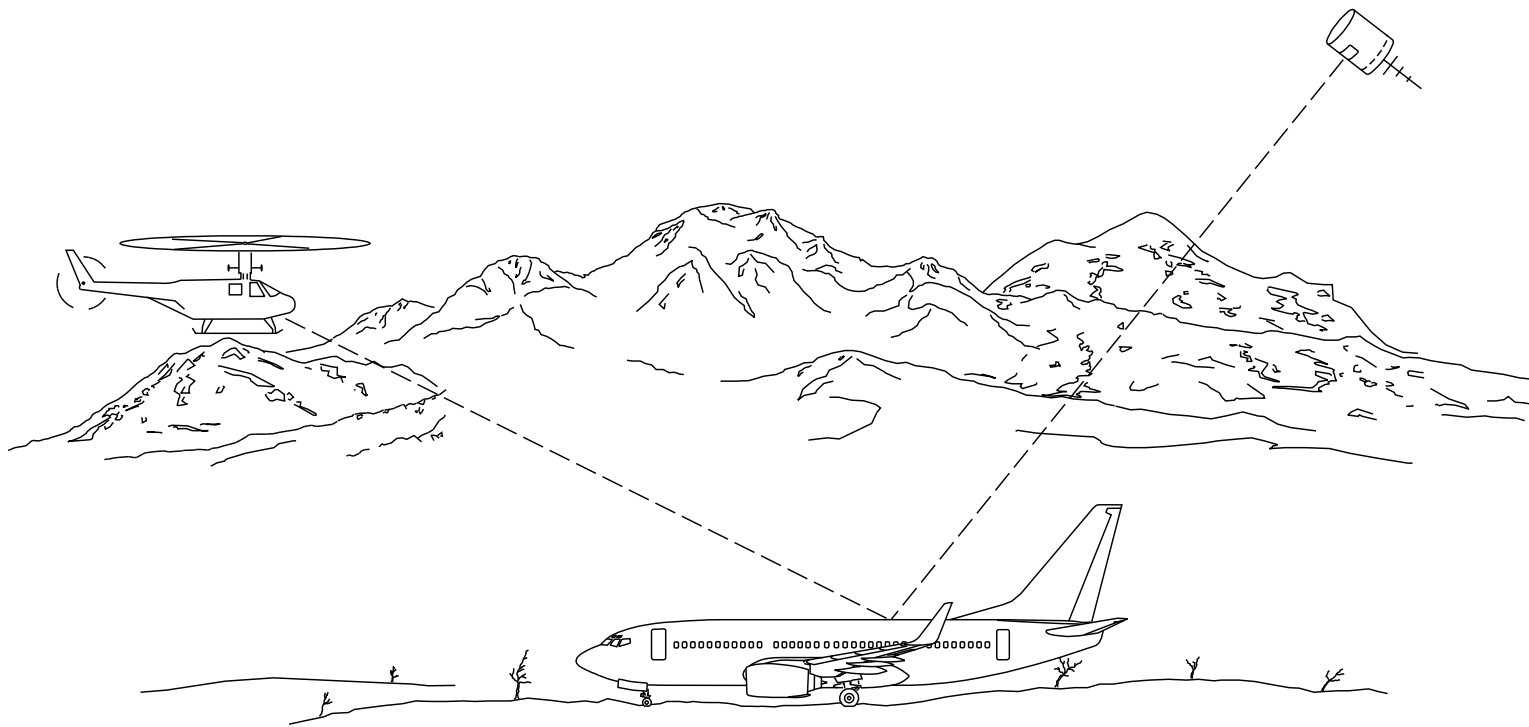
23-24-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



M79852 S0004623342_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-24-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION****General**

The emergency locator transmitter (ELT) system has these components:

- Control panel
- Airplane identification module (AIM)
- Program switch module
- Transmitter
- Antenna.

The control panel has a switch that you use to start the ELT manually. It also has a light to show you that the ELT is in operation.

The program switch module sends analog airplane identification to the AIM.

The AIM automatically downloads aircraft identification information (406 MHz message) into the transmitter.

The ELT transmitter has two transmitter sections. One transmitter sends a swept tone on the VHF and UHF emergency channels (121.5 and 243.0 MHz). The other transmitter sends digital data every 50 seconds on the 406 MHz channel.

ELT Connection

The ELT gets control information from the ELT control panel. The control panel sends discrete signals to the ELT to turn the ELT on manually. It also sends a discrete signal to turn off the ELT if it starts to transmit accidentally. To start a self test of the ELT, move the ARM/ON switch to the ON position for less than 15 seconds and then move it back to the ARM position.

The ELT sends the frequency outputs to a blade antenna.

The antenna sends the 121.5/243.0 MHz or 406 MHz transmit signals.

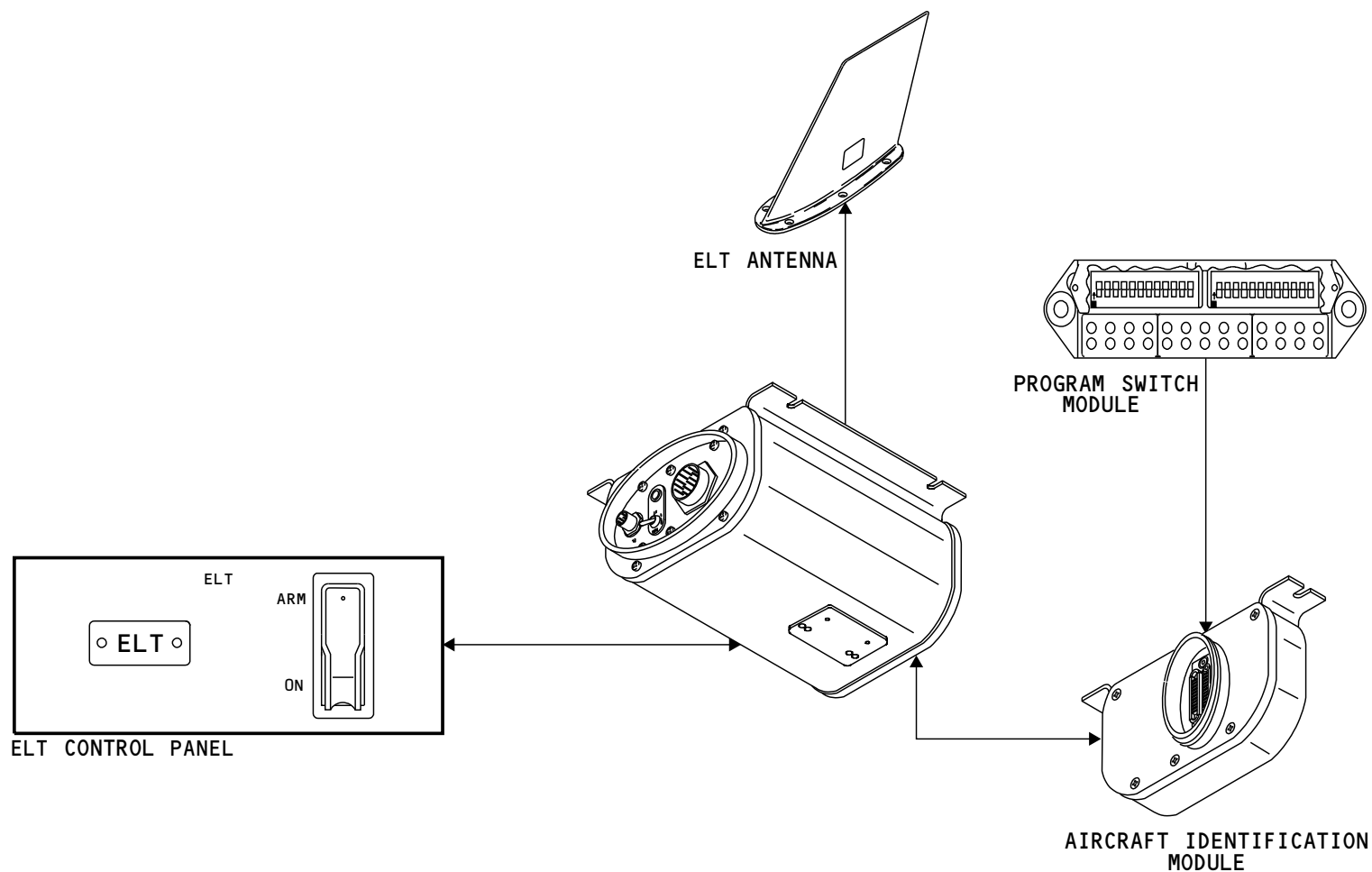
23-24-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



M79853 S0004623347_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-24-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Flight Compartment

The ELT control panel is on the P5 aft overhead panel.

Passenger Cabin

The ELT transmitter is above an access panel in the aft passenger cabin ceiling at station 794.

The aircraft identification module connects to the transmitter but attaches separately to the aircraft structure.

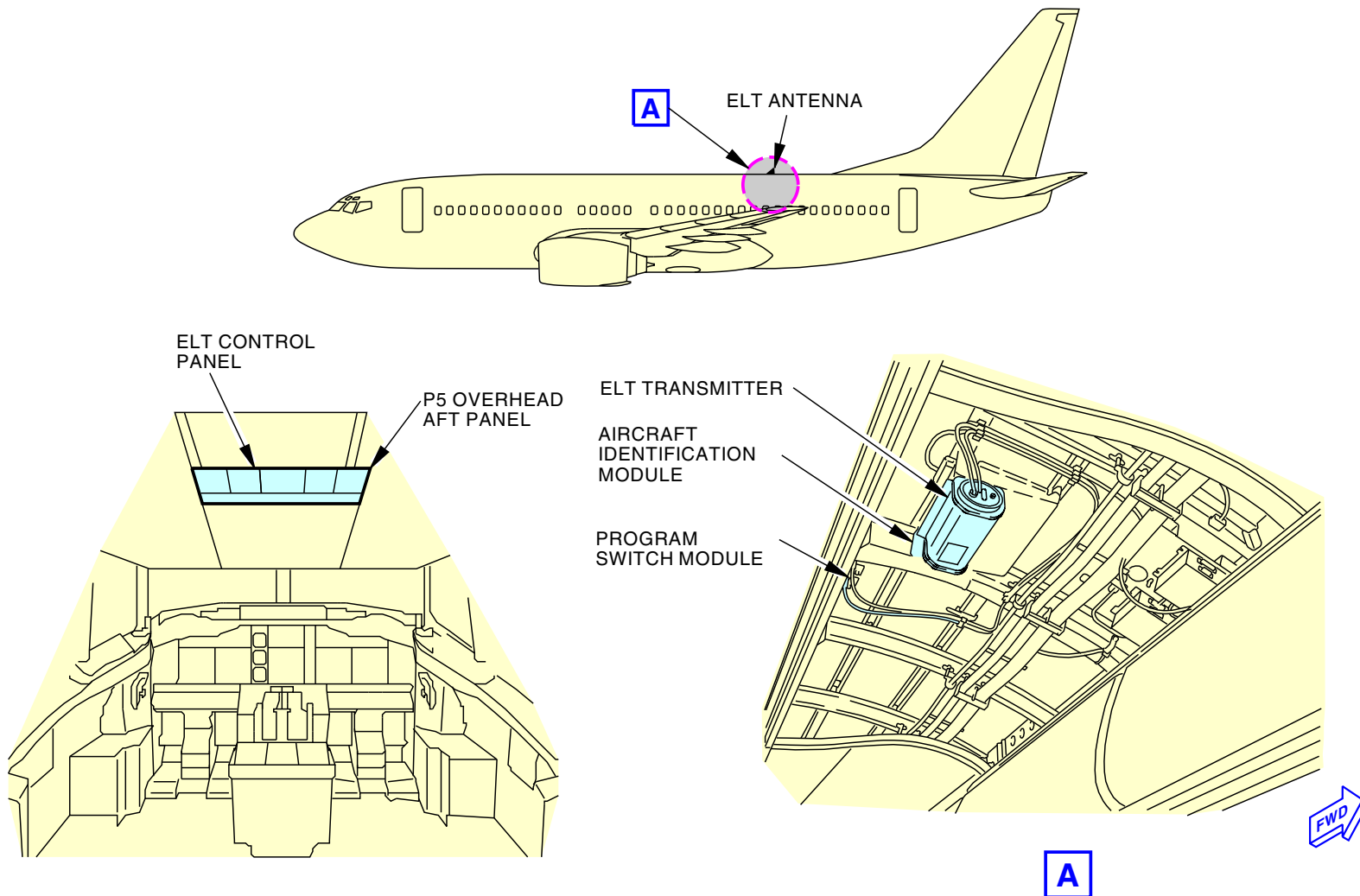
The program switch module is to the right of the ELT transmitter.

Fuselage

The ELT antenna is on top of the fuselage, above and aft of the ELT transmitter at station 795.6.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M79857 S0004623351_V3

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS



EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - INTERFACE

Power

The emergency locator transmitter (ELT) control panel gets 28v dc or 16v dc from the master dim and test (MD&T) circuit. This power is for the ELT light.

The ELT uses an internal battery pack. The battery pack has five D size lithium manganese dioxide cells. The cells connect in series to supply the ELT.

ELT Control Panel

The ELT control panel sends an EXT ON signal to the ELT to start the transmitter. It also sends reset signals to stop the transmitter if it accidentally starts.

The control panel gets the LIGHT signal from the ELT to control the ELT light. It also gets an ELT ON signal to turn on the master caution.

You use the ELT control panel to turn on the ELT or to reset it to the armed mode if there is an accidental activation.

Emergency Locator Transmitter

The ELT supplies these signals:

- ELT ON
- LIGHT
- RF OUT.

The ELT ON and LIGHT signals go to the ELT control panel.

The ELT has two transmitter sections, one for the 121.5/243.0 MHz signal and one for the 406 MHz signal. The two transmitter sections send the RF emergency signals to the ELT antenna on one transmission line.

The ELT receives these signals:

- EXT ON
- RESET 1 and RESET 2
- PWR BAT
- ELT DATA.

The EXT ON signal from the control panel manually starts the transmitter.

The reset signals stop the transmitter if it accidentally starts.

You can hardware select the G-switch to either the North American specification (FAA) or the European specification (JAA).

Aircraft identification module

The aircraft identification module (AIM) has an EEPROM that holds the 406 MHz message. When the AIM connects to the transmitter, the 406 MHz message automatically downloads into the transmitter.

Program switch module

The program switch module (PSM) has a series of 24 mechanical switches. It supplies the AIM with the COSPAS-SARSAT 24 bit data for the aircraft address number protocol. For a functional PSM, the AIM must program with a NULL message protocol. If the AIM is programmed with a valid message protocol, the PSM is non-functional.

ELT Antenna

The ELT antenna sends the emergency signals on the VHF and UHF frequencies.

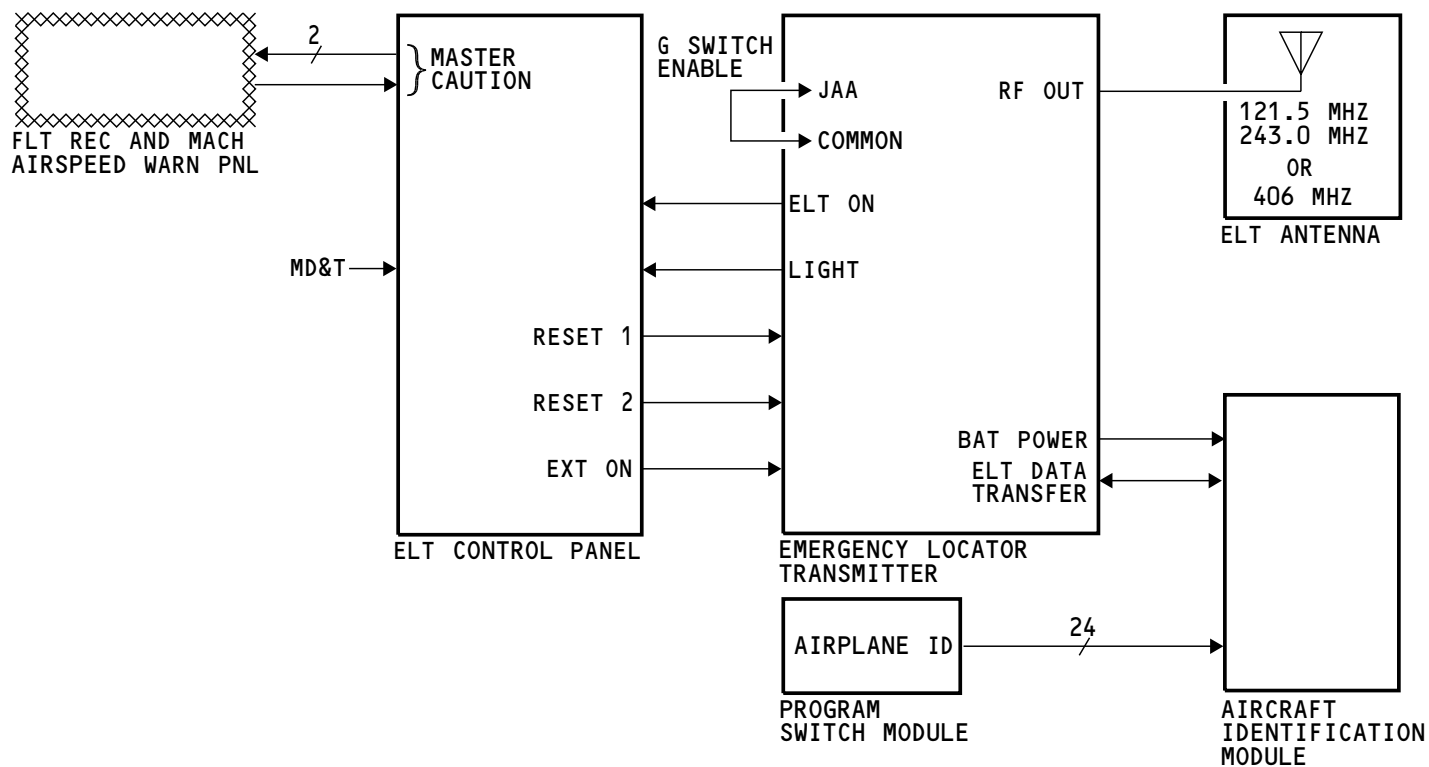
23-24-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - INTERFACE



M79863 S0004623356_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - INTERFACE

23-24-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

**EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - ELT CONTROL PANEL****Purpose**

The emergency locator transmitter (ELT) control panel lets you monitor and do a test of the ELT.

You use the emergency locator transmitter (ELT) control panel for these purposes:

- Turn on the ELT
- Reset the ELT after activation
- Set the ELT for automatic operation.

Indication

The ELT control panel has an ELT light. The light comes on when the ELT transmits.

Control

The ELT control panel switch has an ON and an ARM position.

The ON position manually turns on the transmitter. The ARM position is the normal position for flight.

The switch has a guard to keep it in the ARM position.

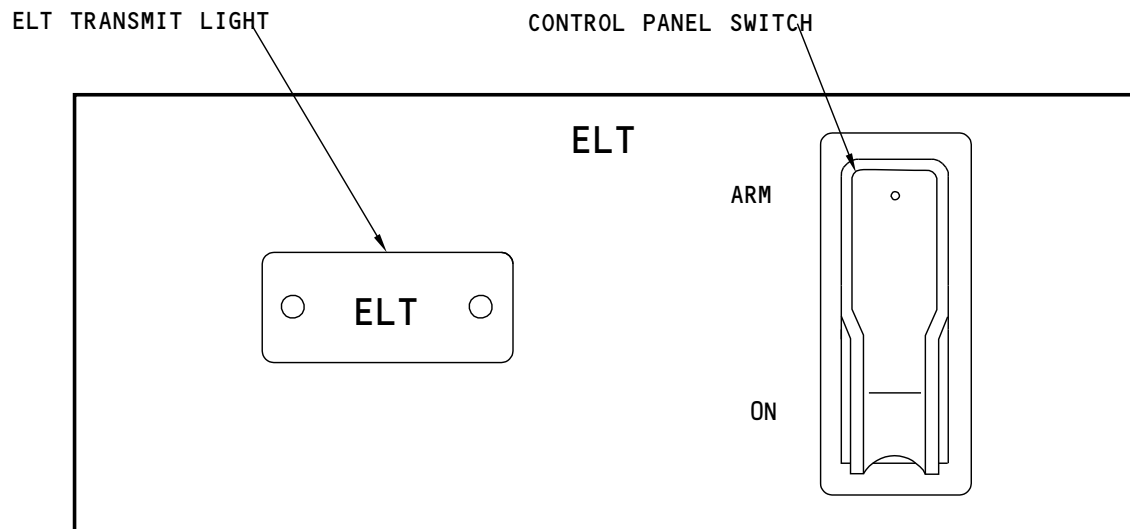
23-24-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - ELT CONTROL PANEL



M79864 S0004623358_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - ELT CONTROL PANEL

23-24-00

23-24-00-005

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRANSMITTER

Purpose

The emergency locator transmitter (ELT) sends emergency signals when it sense excessive change in velocity.

When manually or automatically activated, the emergency locator transmitter (ELT) transmits this information:

- 121.5 MHz homing signal
- 243 MHz homing signal.
- 406 MHz aircraft data

The ELT also transmits on 121.5 MHz and 243 MHz continuously except during the 406 MHz transmission. It continues to transmit until the batteries can no longer supply power.

Power

The transmitter does not use aircraft power but has an internal battery pack. The battery pack has five, lithium manganese dioxide batteries connected in series.

Physical Description

The transmitter has five cards that are not line replaceable units. The case is made of an aluminum alloy.

The transmitter has these properties:

- Length - 10.14 in. (25.76 cm)
- Width - 6.54 in. (16.61 cm)
- Height - 3.62 in. (9.19 cm)
- Weight - 6.6 lb (3.0 kg)

Functional description

The transmitter uses an integrated G-switch to detect a crash and automatically transmits three separate output signals at 121.5 MHz, 243 MHz, and 406 MHz frequencies.

You can set (hardware select) the G-switch to the North American (FAA) or European (JAA) specification.

The transmitter can transmit the 406 MHz digital message using one of these protocols:

- Serialized aviation user protocol
- Aviation user protocol
- 24-bit aircraft address number
- Aircraft operator designator number and serial number
- Serial number protocol.

Front panel

The transmitter front panel has a LED and a toggle switch.

The toggle switch has these positions:

- ARM
- OFF
- TX.

When you set the switch to ARM, the transmitter can detect an activation signal from the G-switch or the ELT control panel. The transmitter also can do a self-test.

When you set the switch to OFF, there is no power from the battery pack to the transmitter. The transmitter can not sense a crash or transmit a rescue signal. Also, the transmitter can not do a self test in this mode.

When you set the switch to TX, the transmitter sends 121.5/243 MHz and 406 MHz rescue signals to the antenna and the LED blinks continuously.

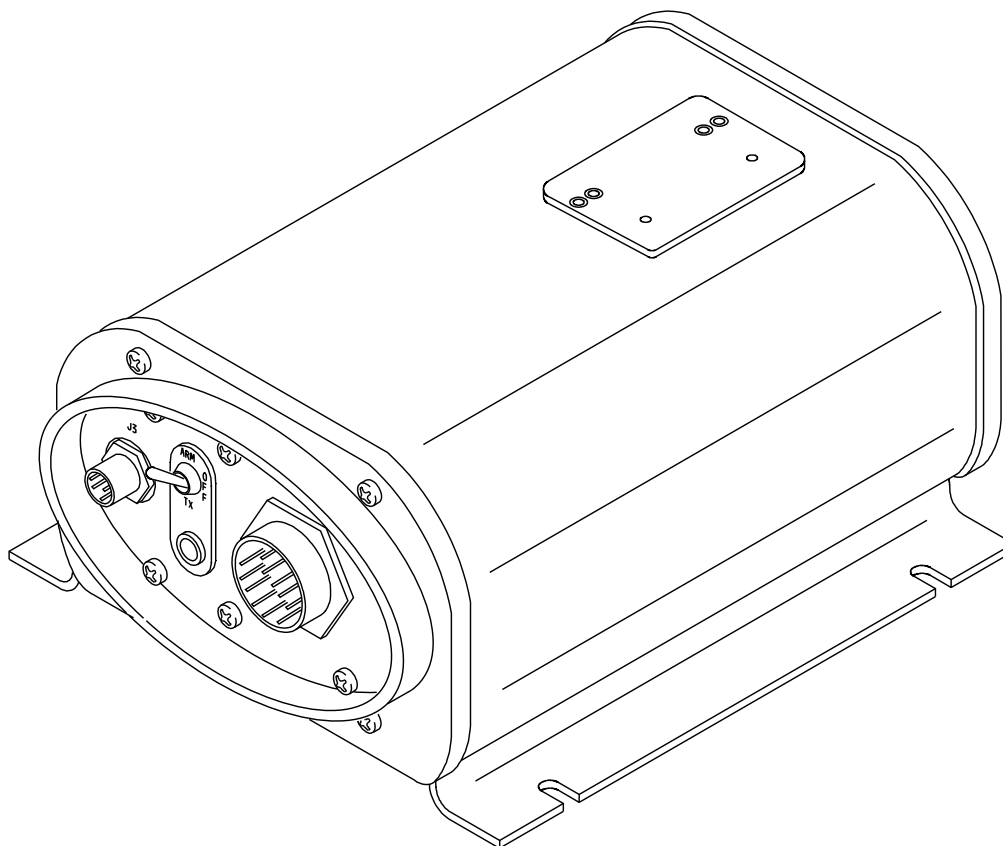
23-24-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRANSMITTER



M79869 S0004623364_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRANSMITTER

23-24-00

23-24-00-006

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION MODULE****Purpose**

The aircraft identification module (AIM) loads aircraft specific data into the transmitter. The AIM can stay on the aircraft when doing regular maintenance on the transmitter unit; so it is not necessary to re-program the transmitter.

During the self-test, the AIM downloads the aircraft identification code into the transmitter. It also makes sure the data transferred correctly.

Power

The AIM gets battery power from the transmitter.

Physical description

The AIM case is made of an aluminum alloy.

The AIM has these properties:

- Length - 1.81 in. (4.60 cm)
- Width - 6.54 in. (16.61 cm)
- Height - 3.43 in. (8.71 cm)
- Weight - 1.1 lb (0.5 kg)

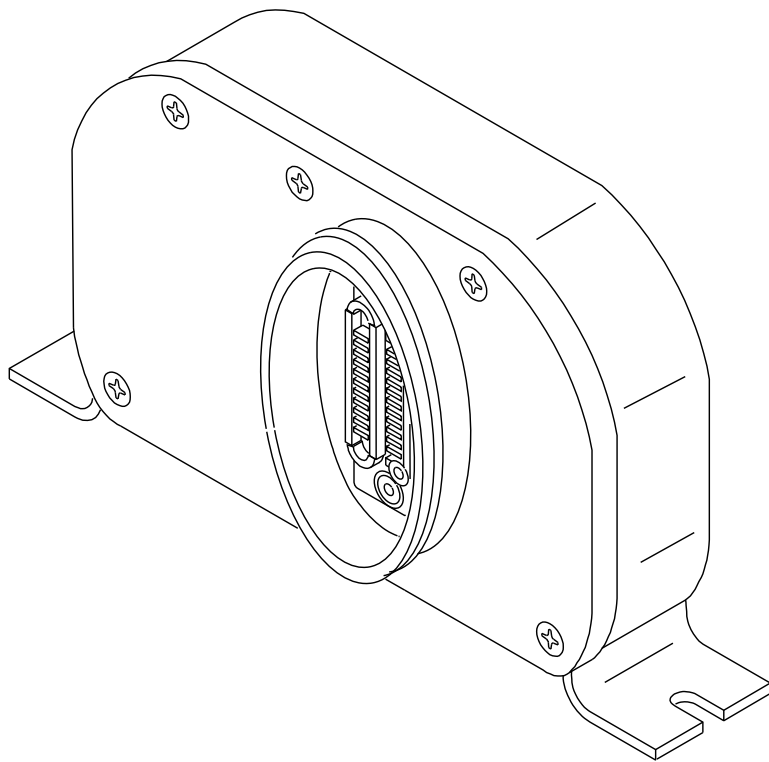
23-24-00**SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION MODULE



M79887 S0004623368_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION MODULE

23-24-00

23-24-00-013

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - ANTENNA****Purpose**

The emergency locator transmitter (ELT) antenna sends radio signals in the very high frequency (VHF) and ultra high frequency (UHF) ranges.

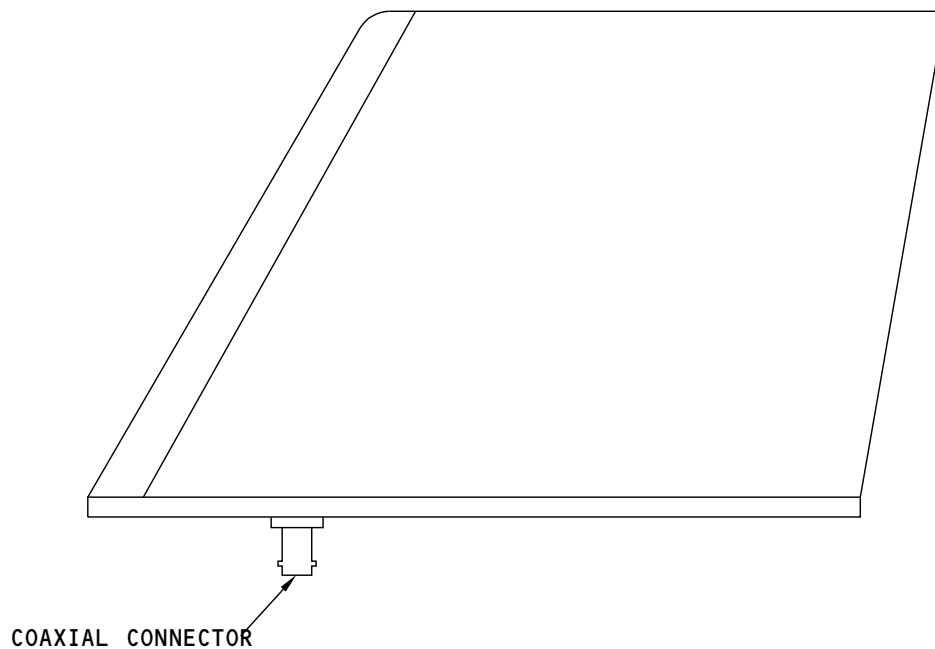
Physical description

The antenna is a vertically polarized monopole type with an omnidirectional radiation pattern.

The 121.5 MHz, 243.0 MHz and 406 MHz transmissions come in on the coaxial connector.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - ANTENNA



EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - ANTENNA

M79870 S0004623371_V1

23-24-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-24-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION****General**

The emergency locator transmitter (ELT) has these components:

- 121.5/243 MHz transmitter
- 406 MHz transmitter
- Antenna coupling unit
- I/O and xmtr control
- G-switch
- ON light
- ELT switch
- Battery pack.

121.5/243 MHz transmitter

The 121.5/243.0 MHz transmitter generates the 121.5 MHz and the 243.0 MHz signals. These signals are amplitude modulated, swept-frequency signals. Then, these signals go to the antenna coupling unit.

406 MHz transmitter

The 406 MHz transmitter generates the 406 MHz phase modulated signal and sends it to an amplification circuit and the antenna coupling unit. It also has an EEPROM that stores data for the transmitted message if there is no AIM installed.

Antenna coupling unit

The antenna coupling unit (ACU) combines the three RF output signals from the 121.5/243 and 406 cards into one RF signal. Then, this signal goes to the antenna via a low-loss coaxial cable. The ACU matches the impedance of each RF output signal to the input impedance of the antenna.

I/O and xmtr control

The I/O and xmtr control logic supplies control and data signals between the aircraft identification module (AIM) and the transmitter and the ELT control panel and the transmitter. It also supplies the control and data lines to the 121.5/243 MHz card on the 406 MHz card. It sends +5 volt to the 406 MHz card.

The I/O and xmtr control receives battery power directly from the battery pack.

ELT Transmitter Inputs

The ELT receives these inputs from the control panel:

- EXT ON
- RESET 1
- RESET 2.

The ELT receives the programmed 406 MHz message from the AIM.

ELT Transmitter Outputs

The ELT has these outputs:

- RF OUT
- ELT ON
- LIGHT.

The ELT sends the LIGHT and ELT ON signals to the control panel when the ELT transmits.

- The LIGHT signal turns on the ELT light on the control panel.
- The ELT ON signal turns on the master caution lights.



EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

Normal Operation

In normal operation, the ELT control panel switch is in the ARM position and the ELT transmitter front panel ARM/OFF/TX switch is in the ARM position. In this condition, the ELT is not active. The control panel, the ELT front panel, and the master caution lights are off. The ELT will automatically activate on impact.

ON Operation

To go from normal (ARM) to ON operation, the ELT needs a change of switch position from one of these sources:

- G-switch
- Control panel switch
- ELT front panel switch.

A G-switch jumper wire prevents the ELT from accidental operation while the unit is in transit to the airplane.

The jumper wire arms the G-switch only when the unit front connector is connected. When the switch is armed, the switch changes position when it senses a large change in velocity.

The ELT control panel switch lets you manually start an emergency transmission if the toggle switch on the transmitter is set to ARM. When you put the ELT control panel switch to ON, an EXT ON signal goes to the ELT. This signal manually starts the transmitter from the ELT control panel.

When you set the toggle switch on the transmitter to TX you can manually start the transmitter. The position of the ELT control panel switch is not relevant.

The 121.5/243.0 MHz transmitter operates until the battery pack becomes unserviceable. The battery pack power lasts for at least 50 hours.

The processor synchronizes the operation of both transmitters. Only one transmitter is on at a time. Every 50 seconds, the processor turns off the 121.5/243.0 MHz transmission for a short time (440 msec) and commands the 406.0 MHz-transmitter to send its signal.

Satellites detect the emergency signals from the 406.0 MHz-transmitter and send this information to ground stations. The ground stations receive and process the emergency signals to find the location of the ELT. The 406.0 MHz-transmitter gives a location precision of approximately 2 Km.

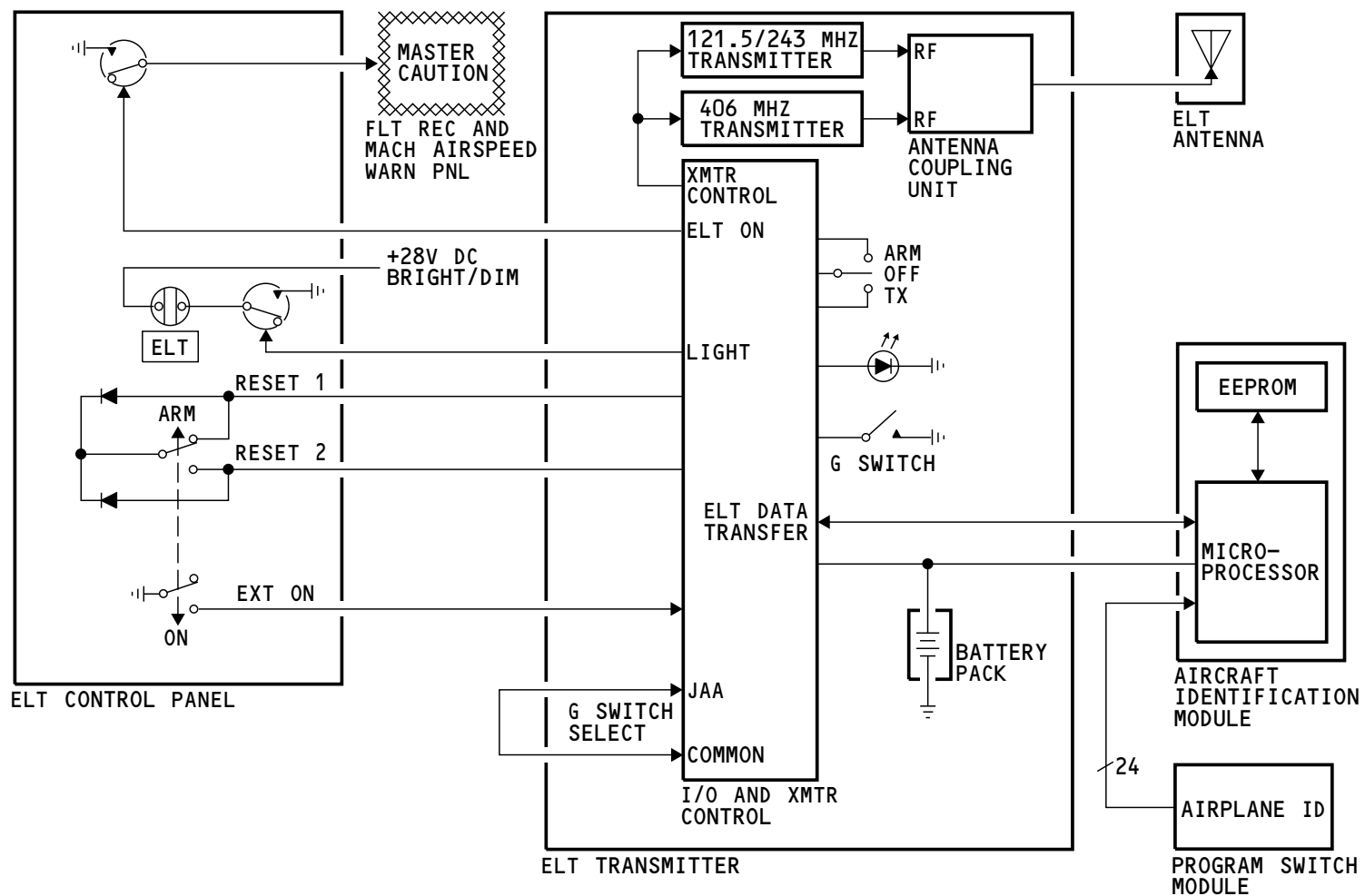
Reset

The RESET 1 and RESET 2 inputs from the control panel let you turn off the transmitter when it comes on accidentally. These inputs turn off the transmitter when you put the control panel switch from ARM to ON and immediately back to ARM.

You can also turn off the transmitter when you put the ELT front panel switch from ARM to OFF and immediately back to ARM.

NOTE: The ELT can not be reset if one of the two control-panel-switch or ELT front-panel-switch is in the "ON" position.

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M79875 S0004623376_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

**EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINTS - BATTERY****Training Information Point**

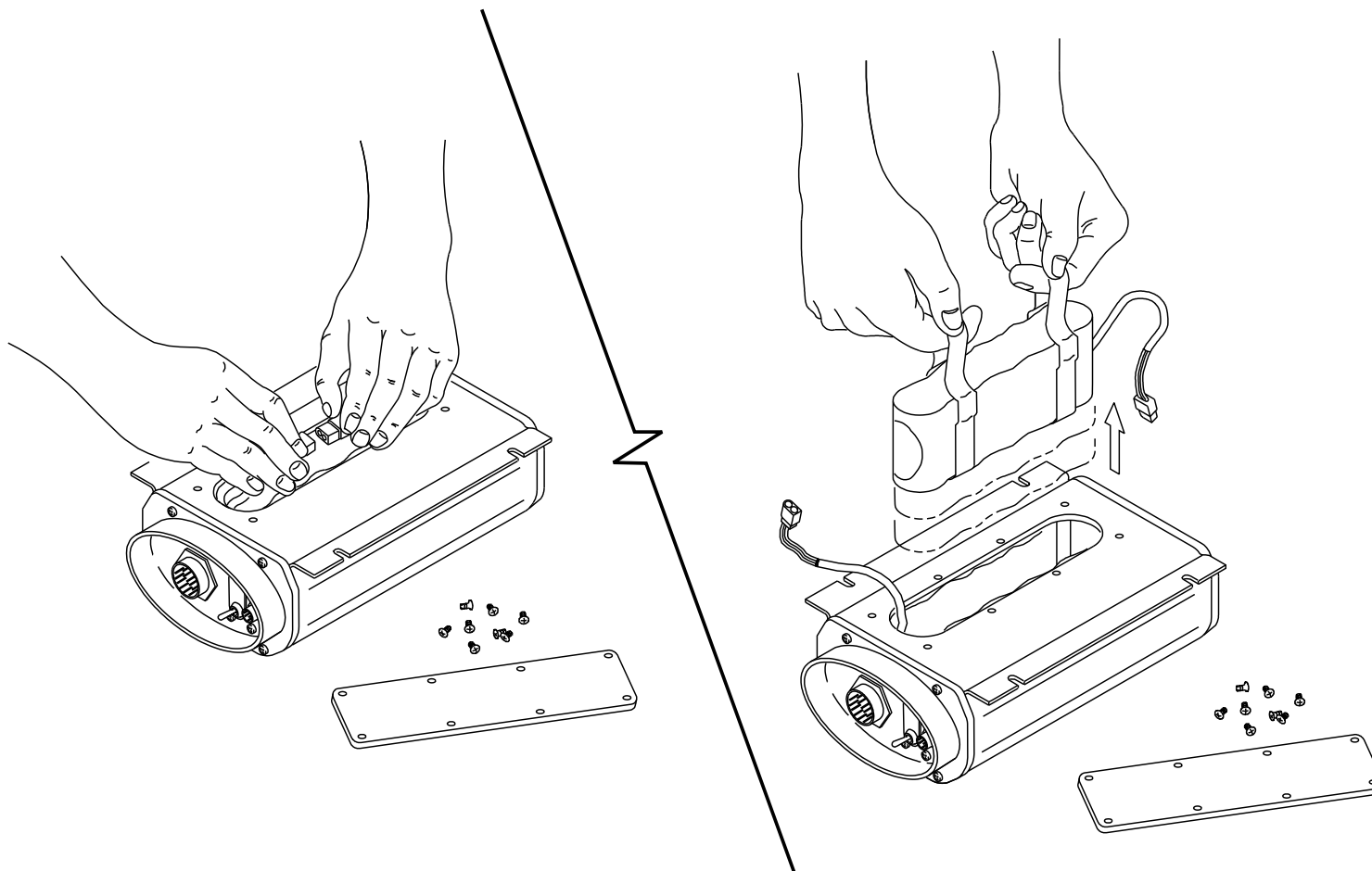
The internal battery pack for the emergency locator transmitter (ELT) has five D size lithium manganese dioxide cells. The battery pack is in the bottom of the ELT. You must hold the two ends of the battery connector and pull it to disconnect.

Replace the battery pack for one of these reasons:

- After use in an emergency
- After the ELT starts for an unknown amount of time
- If the ELT operates for more than 1 hour total use since battery replacement
- On or before the replacement date on the battery pack
- Visual inspection shows leakage, corrosion, or loose battery leads.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINTS - BATTERY



M79874 S0004623380_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINTS - BATTERY

23-24-00

23-24-00-008

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINTS - SYSTEM TEST****General**

To make sure the emergency locator transmitter (ELT) system operates properly, inspect and operate the system at the required intervals. Also operate and do a test of the system when you replace the ELT or the ELT transmitter battery pack.

Your regulatory agency controls the requirements for these inspections and tests.

Transmitter Test

In general, follow these precautions:

- Tell the control tower of your plan to test the ELT
- Do the tests only within the first five minutes after the hour
- Turn on the ELT for less than 10 seconds.

To do a test of the 121.5/243.0 MHz transmitter, use the VHF transceiver whose antenna is farthest away from the ELT antenna to listen to the ELT transmission. This is usually VHF-2.

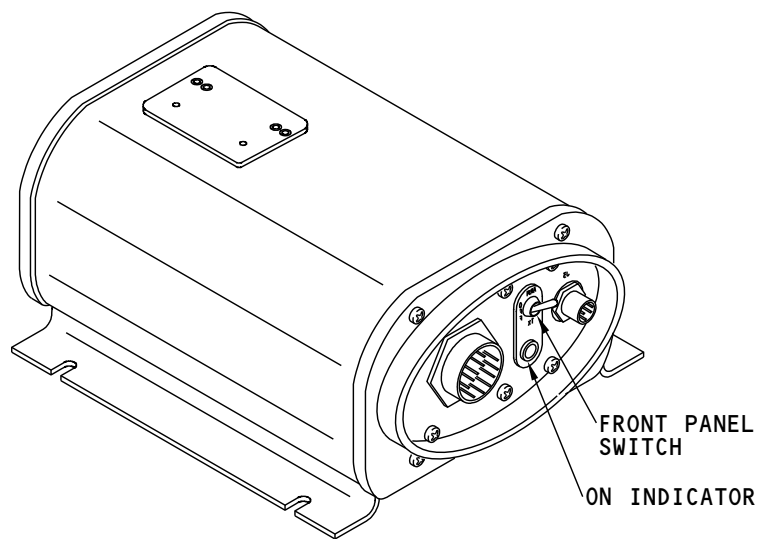
When you put the ELT control switch to ON, you hear three sweeps of the emergency audio.

The ELT light on the control panel and the master caution lights come on immediately when you put the switch to ON. The ELT light goes off when you put the switch back to ARM.

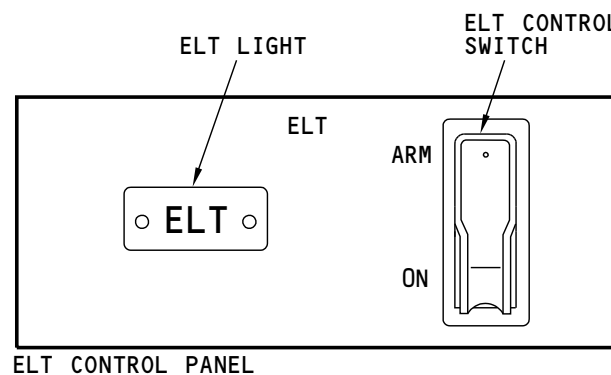
You use special test equipment to test the 406 MHz transmitter. The test equipment shows the digital data that the ELT sends.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINTS - SYSTEM TEST



ELT TRANSMITTER



ELT CONTROL PANEL

M79881 S0004623384_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINTS - SYSTEM TEST

23-24-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

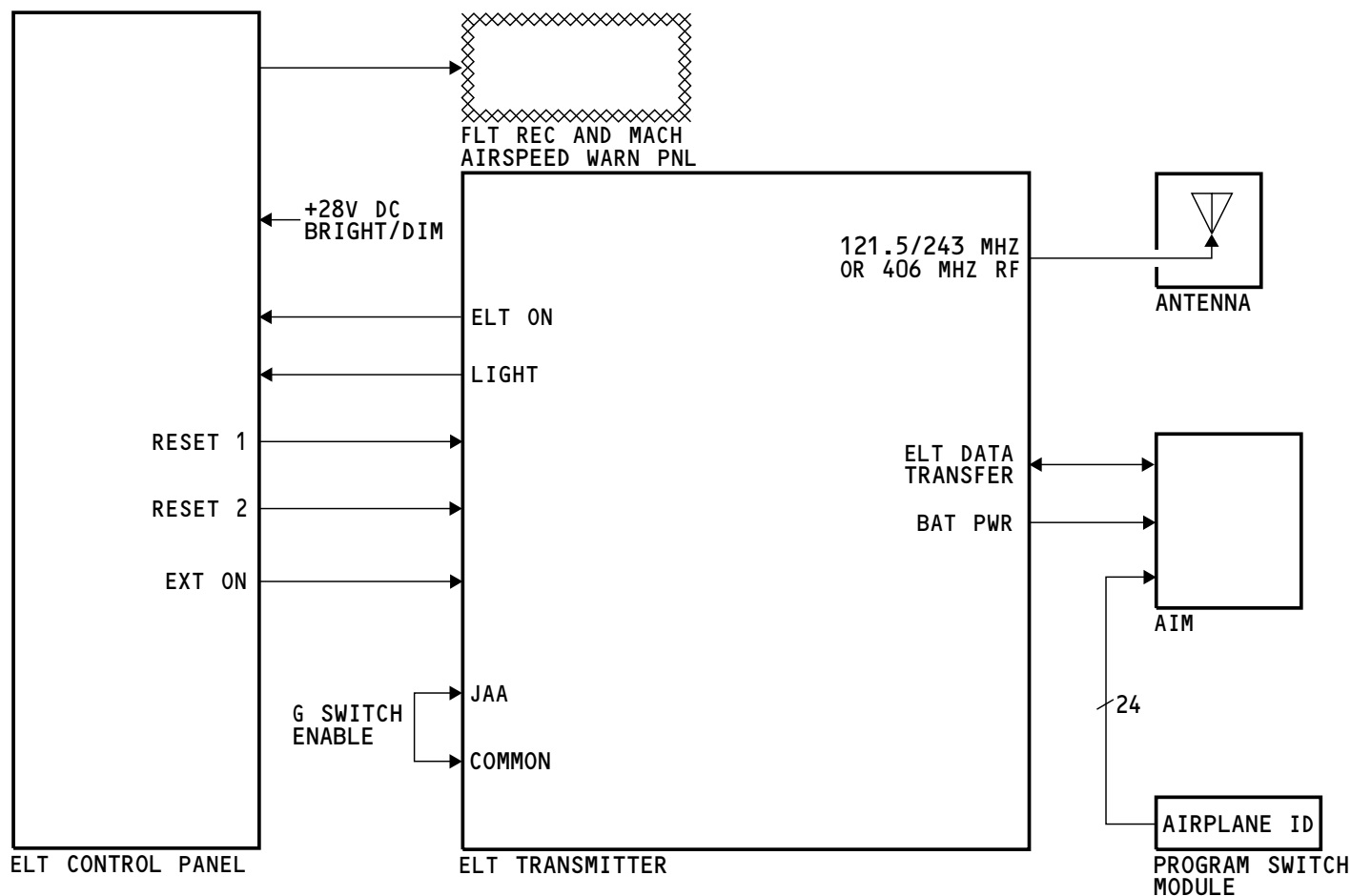
General

This page is for reference.

For more details on the Emergency Locator Transmitter System, refer to the wiring diagram and functional schematic manuals.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY



M79883 S0004623389_V1

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

23-24-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-24-01

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



LOW FREQUENCY UNDERWATER LOCATOR - INTRODUCTION

Purpose

The Low-Frequency Underwater Locator Device (LF-ULD) is a standalone device that transmits an 8.8 kHz infrasonic pulse signal when activated by water. In the event an airplane installed with the LF-ULD becomes submerged underwater, search and rescue teams can search for the LF-ULD signal in order to locate the airplane. The ULD serves a similar function as the Underwater Locator Beacon (ULB) that is part of the Cockpit Voice Recorder (CVR), but the range of the signal from the ULD is greater. It is enabled when submerged in freshwater or saltwater and is powered by a non-rechargeable lithium battery.

Characteristics

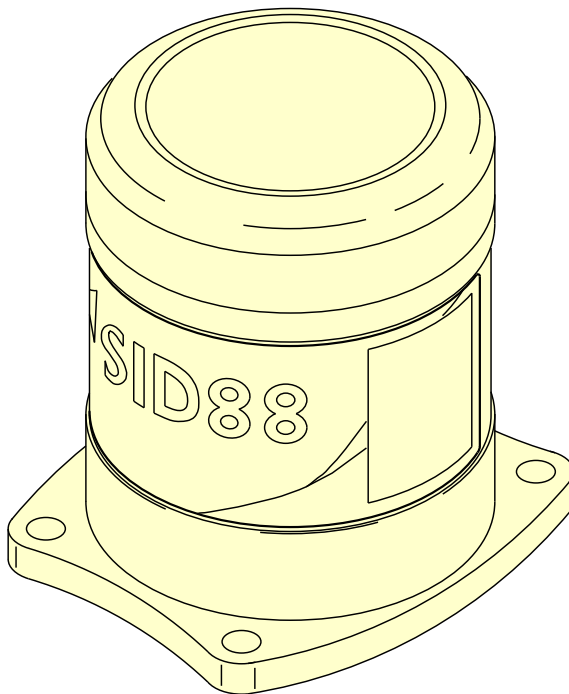
The LF-ULD consists of the housing, electronic unit, insulation, a battery, and cover. The housing and cover are made out of aluminum. The housing has a water activated sensor for activating the LF-ULD when it submerged in water.

Location

The LF-ULD is located in the radome below the glidescope antenna.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

LOW FREQUENCY UNDERWATER LOCATOR - INTRODUCTION



LOW FREQUENCY UNDERWATER LOCATOR DEVICE

2791271 S0000635011_V1

23-24-01

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**LOW FREQUENCY UNDERWATER LOCATOR - GENERAL DESCRIPTION****Purpose**

The Low-Frequency Underwater Locator Device (LF-ULD) is a standalone device that is activated by water and will help find the aircraft if it is under water.

Physical Description

The LF-ULD is a line replaceable unit that is 3.55 in. (90.17 mm) in diameter and 3.77 in. (95.76 mm). It weighs 31.4 oz (0.9 kg).

Functional Description

The ULD has these operation characteristics:

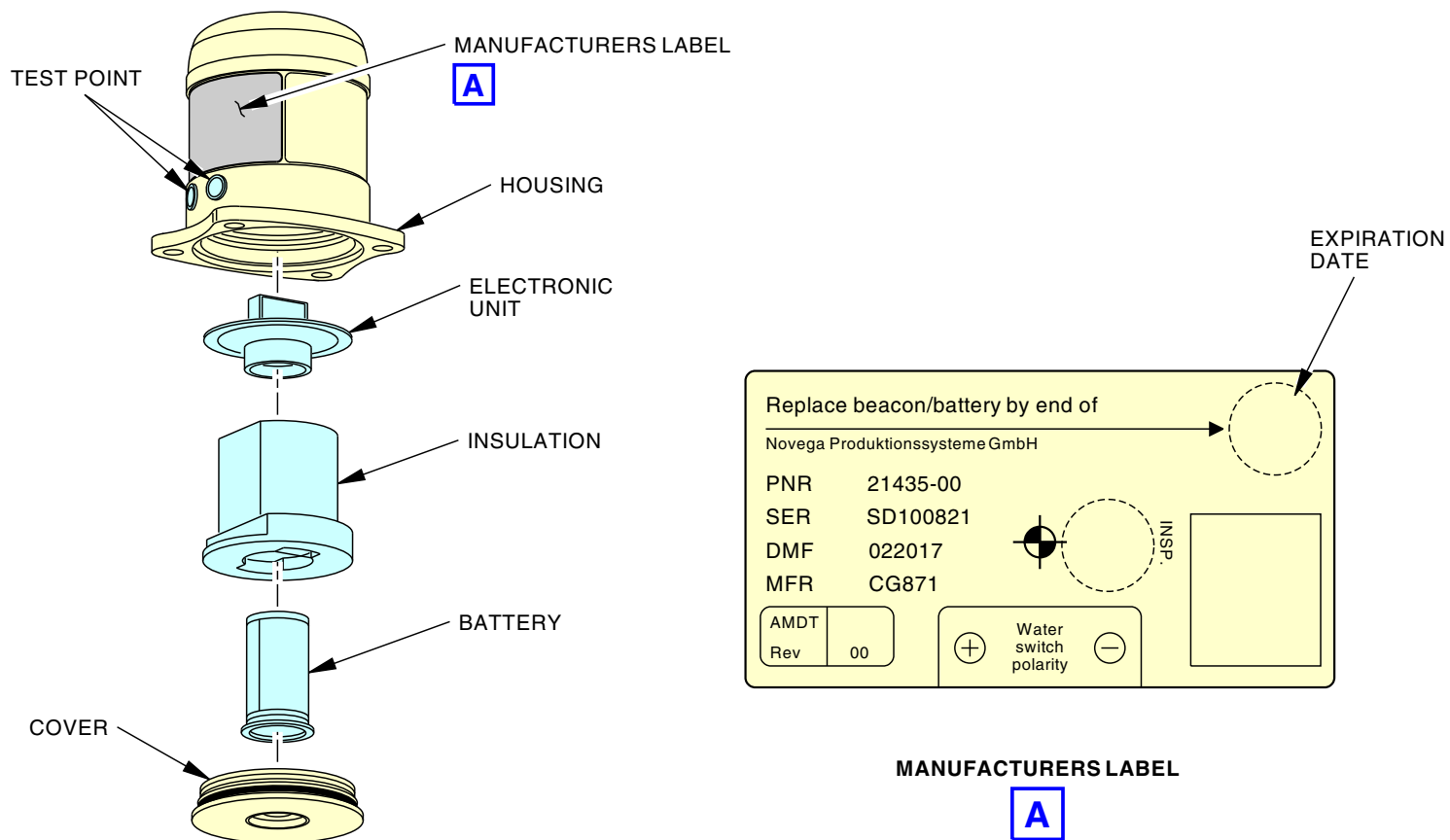
- Operates when it is put into water
- Operates to a maximum depth of 20,000 ft (6096 m)
- Has a detection range of 12 nmi (22 km)
- Sends out an acoustic pulse tone of 8.8 khz +/- 1 khz at a rate of one pulse every 10 seconds.
- Has an operational life of 90 days

Training Information Point

You replace the underwater locator device on or before the date shown on the label.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

LOW FREQUENCY UNDERWATER LOCATOR - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



LOW FREQUENCY UNDERWATER LOCATOR DEVICE

2791306 S0000635005_V1

23-24-01

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



AIRCRAFT COMMUNICATIONS ADDRESSING AND REPORTING SYSTEM (ACARS) - INTRODUCTION

Purpose

The aircraft communications addressing and reporting system (ACARS) is a datalink communication system. It lets you transmit messages and reports between an airplane and an airline ground base.

A message or report from the airplane to the airline ground base is called a downlink. A message or report from the airline ground base to the airplane is called an uplink.

ACARS automatically sends reports when necessary and at scheduled times of the flight to reduce crew workload.

These are typical ACARS reports:

- Crew identification
- Out, off, on, in (OOOI) times
- Engine performance
- Flight status
- Maintenance items.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- A - amber
- ACARS - aircraft communications addressing and reporting system
- A/C - aircraft
- ac - alternating current
- ACMS - aircraft condition monitoring system
- act - active
- ADL - airborne data loader
- AOC - airline operations control
- APM - airplane personality module
- appl - application
- ARINC - Aeronautical Radio Incorporated
- ATC - air traffic control
- ATE - automatic test equipment

- ATS - air traffic services
- bc - broadcast
- BITE - built-in test equipment
- capt - captain
- CDU - control display unit
- CMU - communications management unit
- comm - communication
- curr - current
- D - day
- dc - direct current
- DEU - display electronics unit
- DB - database
- DFDAU - digital flight data acquisition unit
- DIP - dual inline package
- disc - discrete
- EE - electronic equipment
- ETA - estimated time of arrival
- FDAU - flight data acquisition unit
- FMC - flight management computer
- FMCS - flight management computer system
- F/O - first officer
- freq - frequency
- FTX - fast transmit
- GMT - Greenwich mean time
- GPS - global positioning system
- GND - ground
- H - hour
- H/W - hardware
- ID - identification
- ident - identification

23-27-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



AIRCRAFT COMMUNICATIONS ADDRESSING AND REPORTING SYSTEM (ACARS) - INTRODUCTION

- LCD - liquid crystal display
- LED - light emitting diode
- LRU - line replaceable unit
- M - month, minute
- maint - maintenance
- MCDU - multi-function control display unit
- min - minute
- misc - miscellaneous
- msg - message
- MU - management unit
- NOTAMS - notice to airmen
- NVM - non-volatile memory
- OOOI - OUT, OFF, ON, IN
- PARAMS - parameters
- PCMCIA - personal computer memory card international association
- PGM - program
- P/N - part number
- PREFLT - preflight
- PROG - program
- RAM - random access memory
- RCP - radio communications panel
- rcv - receiver
- rec - receive
- req - request
- REU - remote electronics unit
- S - second
- sat - satellite
- SDU - satellite data unit
- SELCAL - selective calling
- SENS - sensor
- SW - software
- S/W - software
- tx - transmit
- V - volts
- VHF - very high frequency
- xcvr - transceiver
- xfr - transfer
- Y - year

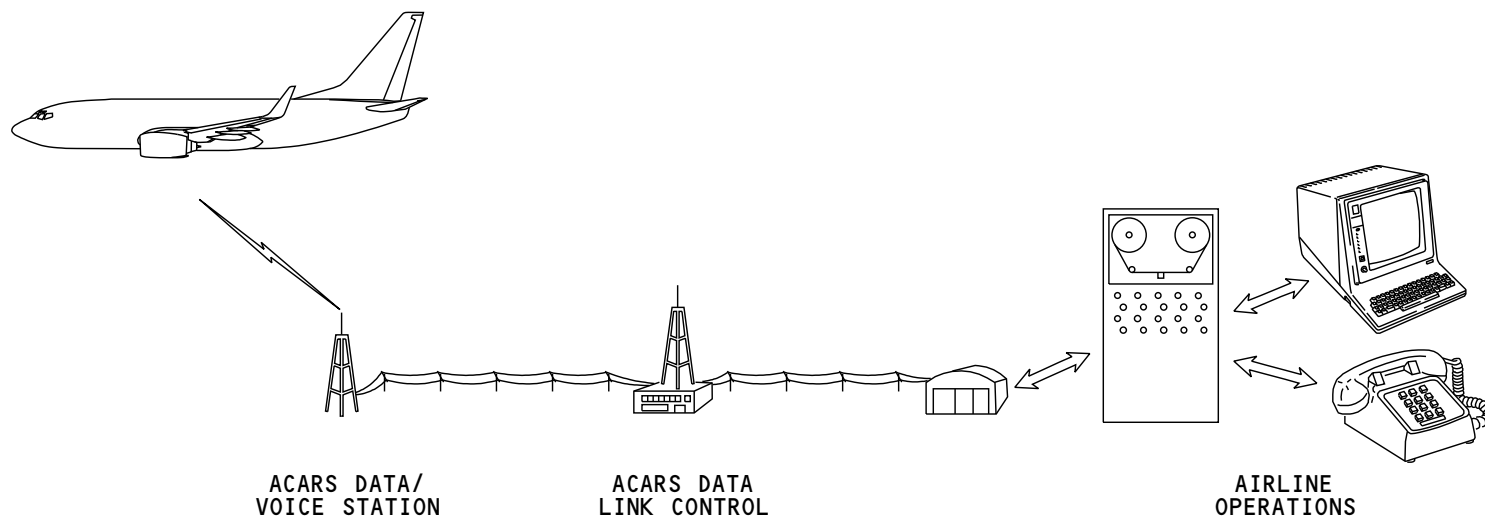
23-27-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

AIRCRAFT COMMUNICATIONS ADDRESSING AND REPORTING SYSTEM (ACARS) - INTRODUCTION



M79889 S0004623396_V1

AIRCRAFT COMMUNICATIONS ADDRESSING AND REPORTING SYSTEM (ACARS) - INTRODUCTION

23-27-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



ACARS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The Aircraft Communications Addressing And Reporting System (ACARS) is a voice and data communication system to manage flight plan data and maintenance data between the airplane and the airline.

These are the components of the ACARS:

- Airplane Personality Module (APM)
- Communications Management Unit (CMU)
- Control Display Unit (CDU)
- Multipurpose Interactive Display Unit (MIDU).

You use the MIDU to control the operation of the ACARS.

You use the CDU to control the operation of the ACARS and to show ACARS messages.

The ACARS APM provides logic tailoring, airplane identification code and airplane registration number code.

The ACARS CMU receives the ground-to-air digital messages (uplink) and controls the transmission of the air-to-ground digital messages (downlink).

ACARS connects to these components of other systems:

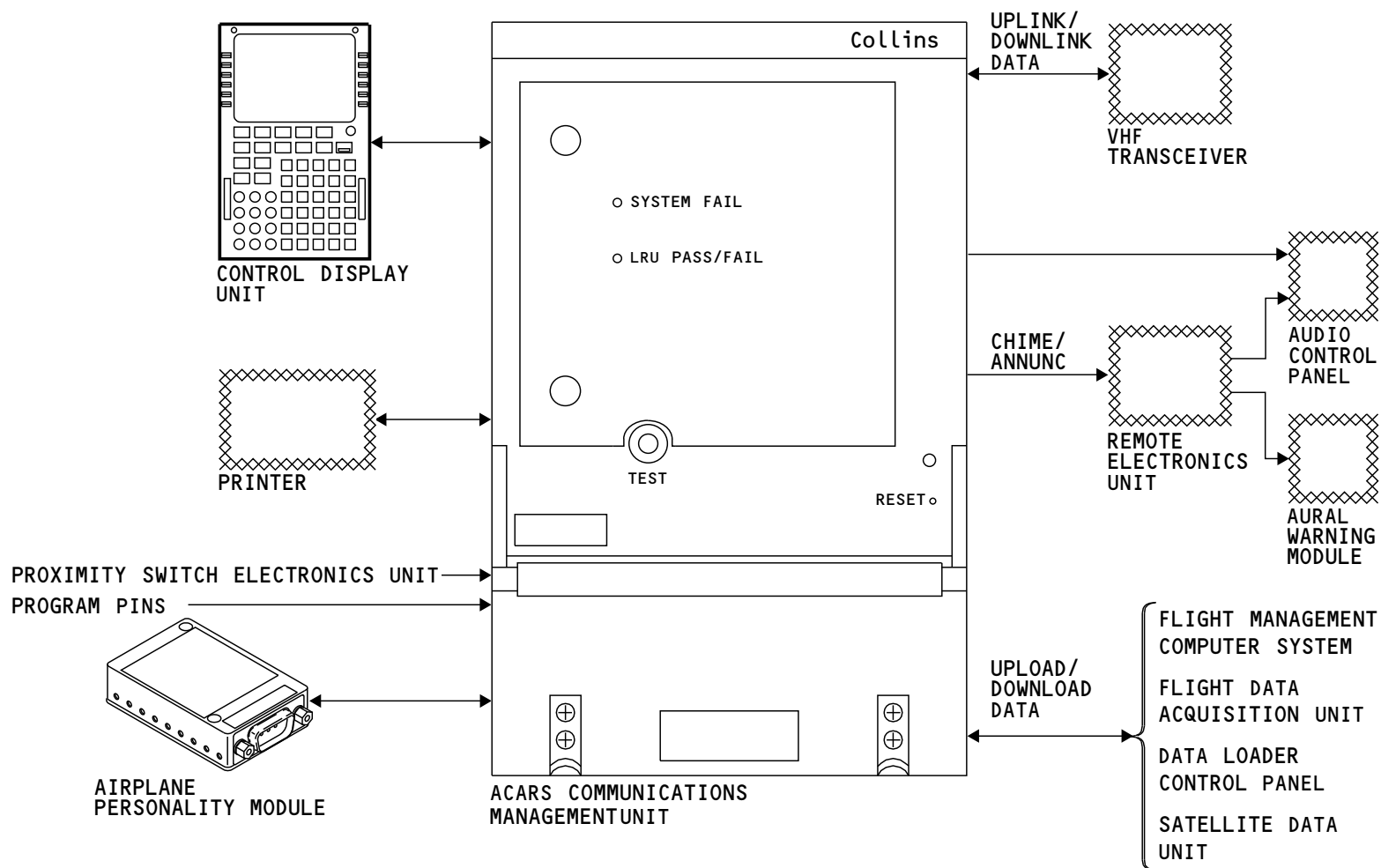
- Audio control panel to signal the flight crew of incoming ACARS messages requiring flight crew attention.
- Printer to print ACARS reports and messages.
- Proximity Switch Electronic Unit (PSEU) to send discrete signals for out, off, on and in (OOOI) events.
- Remote Electronics Unit (REU) to distribute the chime annunciation and/or light annunciation signals.
- Satellite Data Unit (SDU) to transmit to and receive data from the ground.
- Very High Frequency (VHF) transceiver to transmit to and receive data from the ground.

ACARS also connects to these systems to upload information from airline operations or download information to airline operations:

- Data loader control panel
- Flight management computers

The datalink activation occurs when the CMU connects to the CVR by ARINC 429 data buses. This lets the CVR record the datalink messages from the CMU.

ACARS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



M79893 S0004623444_V2

ACARS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-27-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



ACARS - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

Flight Compartment

The radio communication panels interface with the ACARS system.

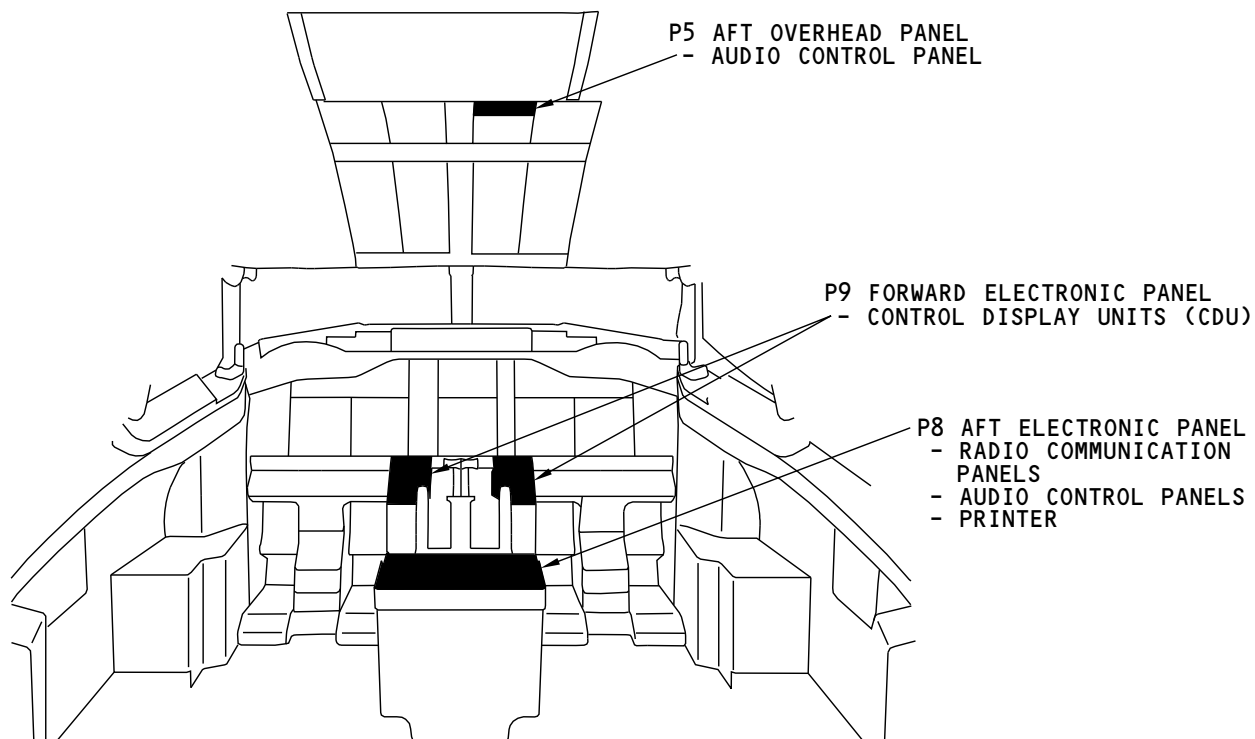
The control display unit (CDU) interfaces with the ACARS system.

The audio control panels are on the P8 aft electronic panel and the P5 aft overhead panel.

The printer interfaces with the ACARS system.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ACARS - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION



M79948 S0004623462_V1

ACARS - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

23-27-00

23-27-00-003

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



ACARS - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Electronic Equipment Compartment

The ACARS CMU is on the E4-1 shelf.

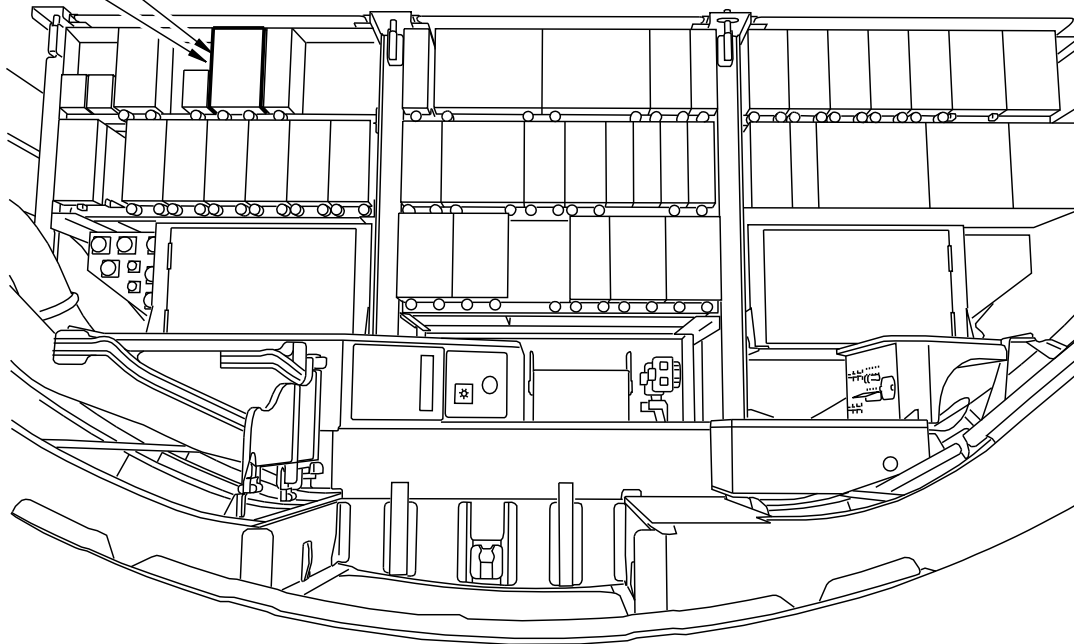
The ACARS airplane personality module (APM) is on the E4-1 shelf behind the ACARS CMU.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

ACARS - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

E4-1 SHELF

- ACARS CMU
- APM
(BEHIND CMU)



ELECTRICAL AND ELECTRONICS COMPARTMENT
(VIEW IN THE AFT DIRECTION)

ACARS - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

1307759 S0000197490_V1

23-27-00-004

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-27-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



ACARS - POWER, CALL, AND COMMUNICATION INTERFACES

General

The ACARS CMU receives this data:

- Uplink data from ground stations
- Digital data from system components
- Discretes from sensors.

After the CMU processes the received data, the CMU sends this data:

- Downlink data to ground stations
- Digital data to user systems.

Power

The ACARS CMU receives 115v ac from transfer (XFR) bus 1.

| The ACARS CMU also receives 28v dc from bus 1 section 2.

Call Interface

An uplink message tells the flight crew there is an ACARS message. When a message comes, the ACARS CMU gives these indications:

- Chime from the aural warning module
- VHF 3 call light on the audio control panels.

Communications Interfaces

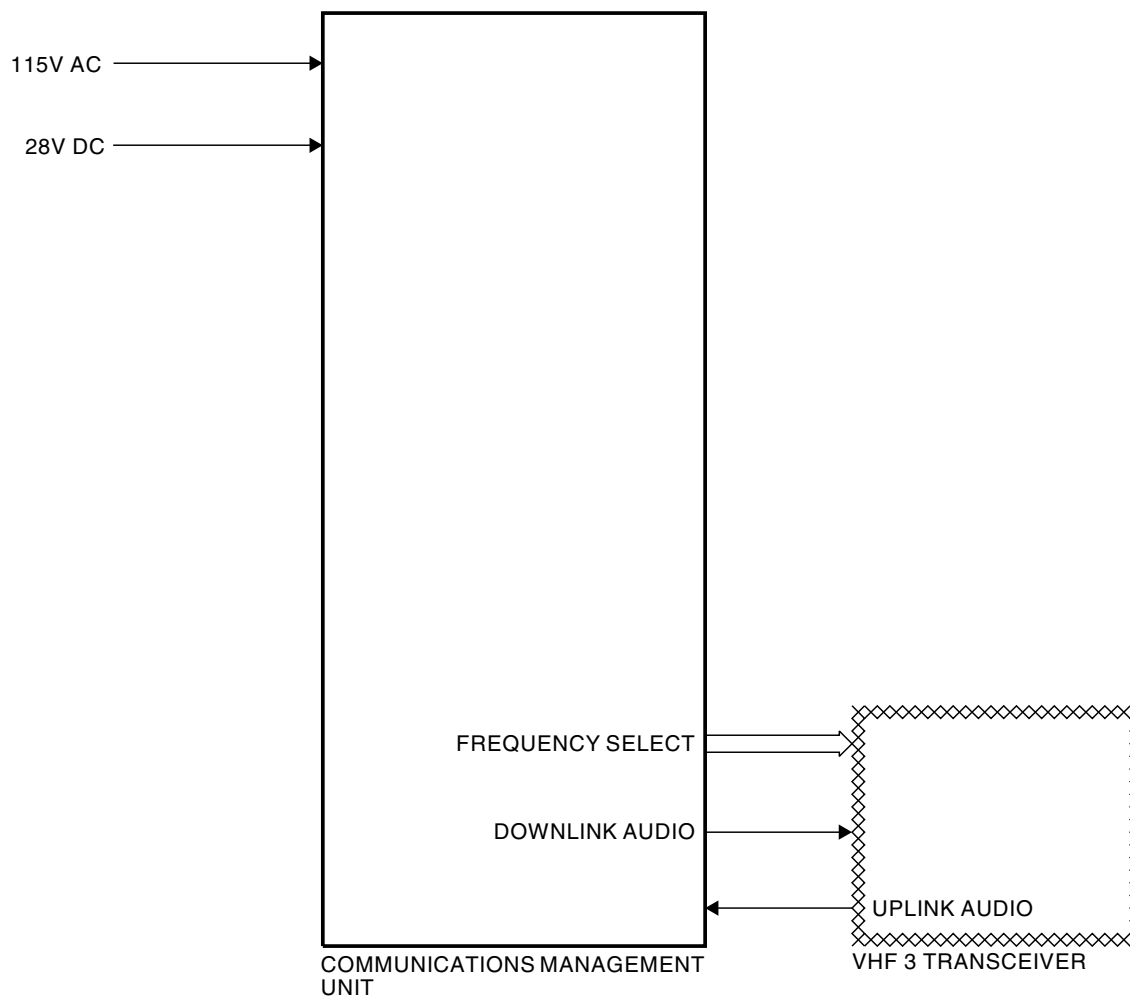
All datalink operation is controlled by ARINC 429 messages that the CMU transmits to, and receives from, the VHF-3 transceiver.

The ACARS CMU sends and receives this data from the VHF transceiver:

- Frequency to tune the VHF transceiver
- Downlink messages to the VHF transceiver
- Uplinked messages from the VHF transceiver.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

ACARS - POWER, CALL, AND COMMUNICATION INTERFACES



N38556 S0000107089_V4

ACARS - POWER, CALL, AND COMMUNICATION INTERFACES

23-27-00-029

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-27-00

**ACARS - DISCRETE INTERFACES****Proximity Switch Electronics Unit**

The ACARS CMU receives analog discretes from the proximity switch electronics unit (PSEU). These discretes determine the out, off, on, and in (OOOI) times. The ACARS sends standard reports at the OOOI times. These discretes supply the status for these components:

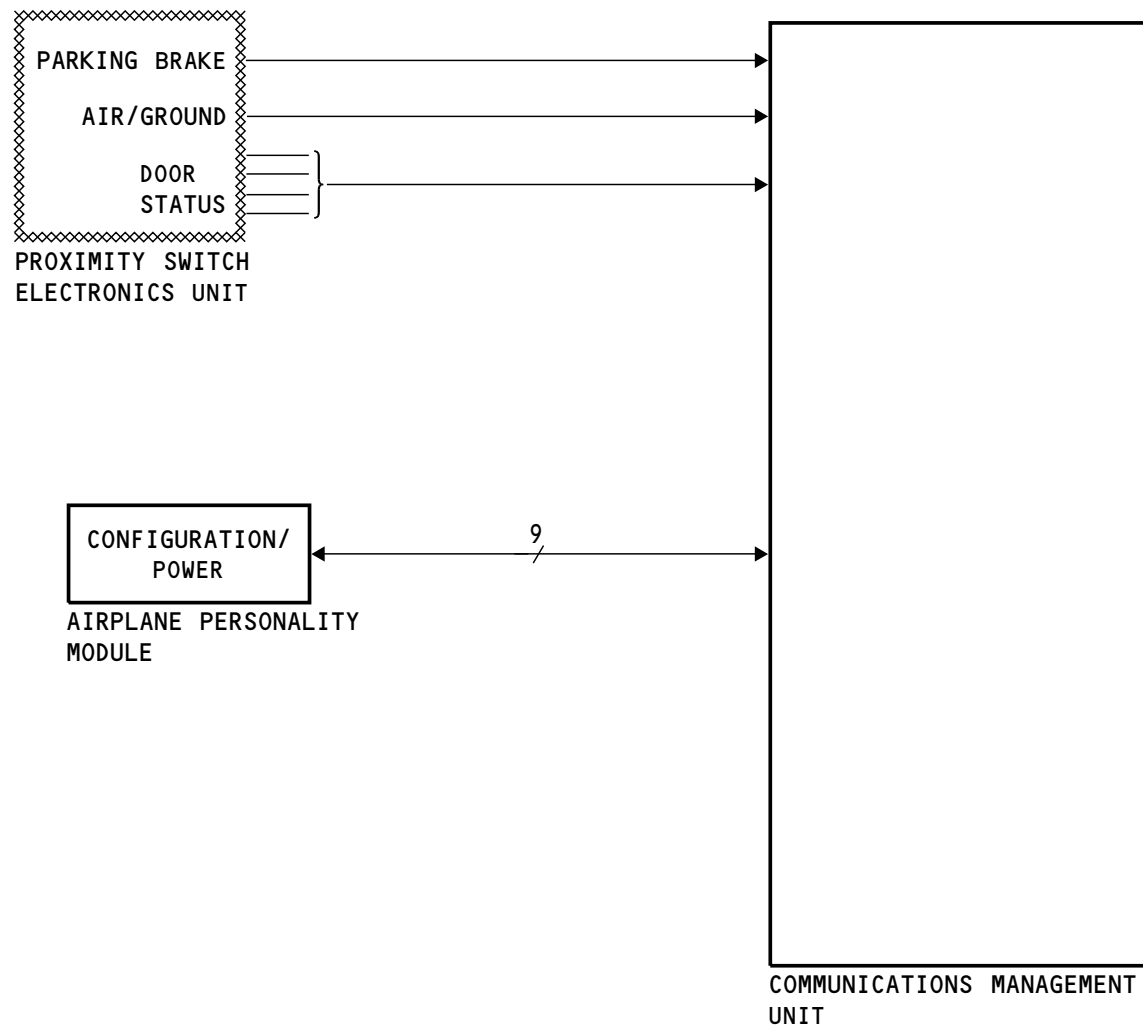
- Air/ground sensor
- Parking brake
- Electronics equipment compartment door
- Forward and aft cargo doors
- Forward and aft service doors
- Forward and aft entry doors.

Airplane Personality Module

The APM receives power from the ACARS CMU. The APM sends the registration code and airplane identification code to the CMU.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ACARS - DISCRETE INTERFACES



N39282 S0000107462_V2

ACARS - DISCRETE INTERFACES

23-27-00



ACARS - DIGITAL INTERFACES

Digital Inputs

The ACARS CMU gets these digital inputs:

- Data entries and menu selections from the CDUs
- Status data from the printer
- Route and airplane flight data from the FMCS

| SIA 702-704

- Report data for downlink from the FDAU

SIA ALL

- Software loads from the data loader control panel.

Digital Outputs

The ACARS CMU supplies this digital data:

- Data and menus to the CDUs and alert messages for the scratch pad
- Report data to the printer
- Route and flight data uplink to the FMC

| SIA 702-704

- Report request uplink to the FDAU

SIA ALL

- Status to the data loader control panel.
- Datalink messages to the CVR.

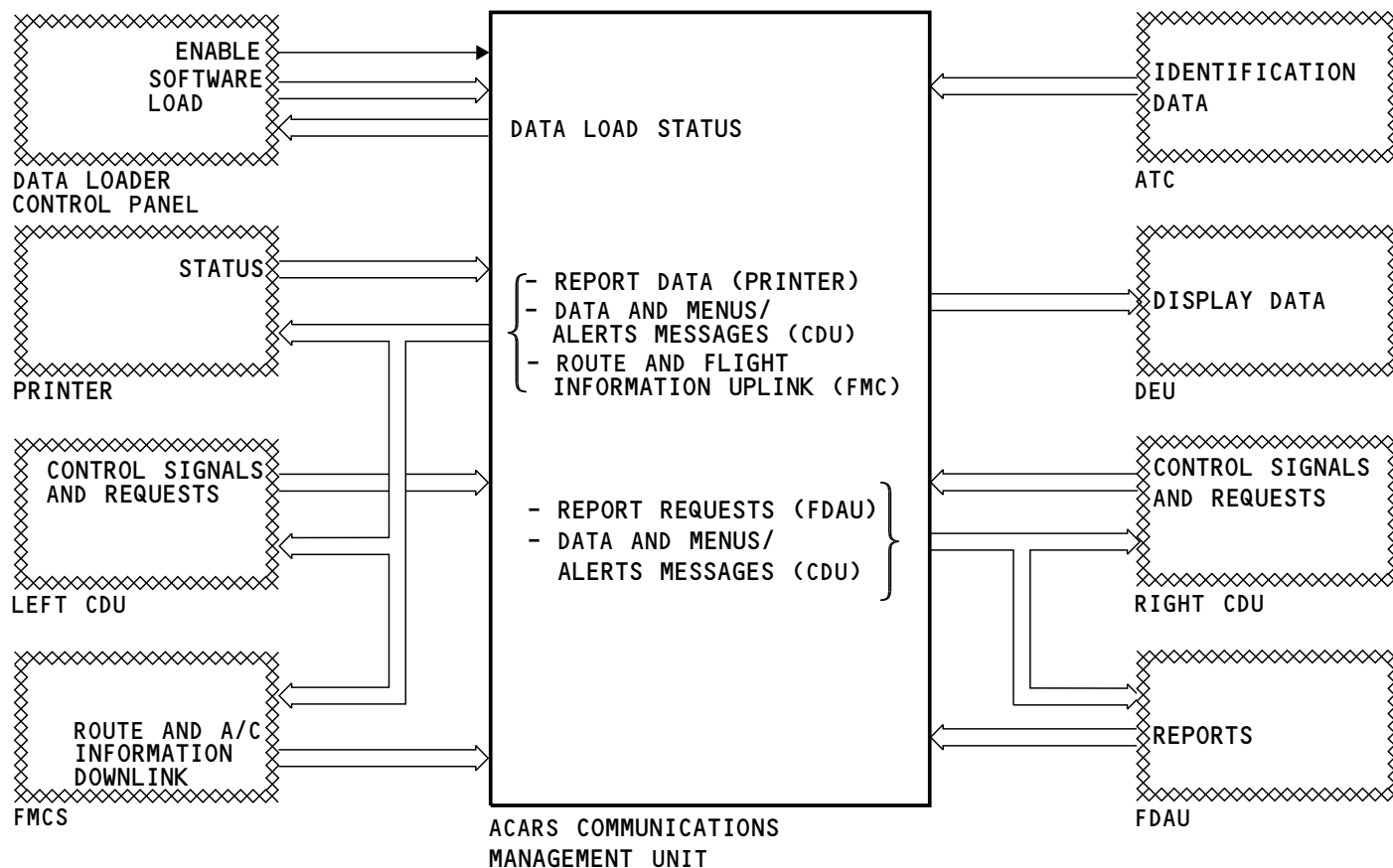
23-27-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

ACARS - DIGITAL INTERFACES



U86173 S0000220933_V1

ACARS - DIGITAL INTERFACES

23-27-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**ACARS - COMMUNICATIONS MANAGEMENT UNIT****Purpose**

The ACARS communications management unit (CMU) receives the uplink data and controls the transmission of downlink data to and from the VHF transceiver.

General

The CMU does these tasks:

- Monitors input signals
- Formats downlink messages
- Monitors downlink data to make sure it is correct
- Monitors uplink messages to make sure they are correct
- Decodes uplink messages
- Controls the mode of operation
- Controls data transmission
- Gives acknowledged/not acknowledged response
- Tunes and controls a VHF radio
- Sends data to printer when commanded
- Monitors system operation.
- Lets the CVR record the datalink messages that the CMU sends.

The CMU processes only uplink messages that come with the airplane registration code. This same code also goes on all downlink messages to identify the airplane.

Front Panel Control and BITE Indications

BITE operates continuously. The TEST switch causes the CMU to do a BITE test.

The SYSTEM FAIL LED comes on if the ACARS system fails.

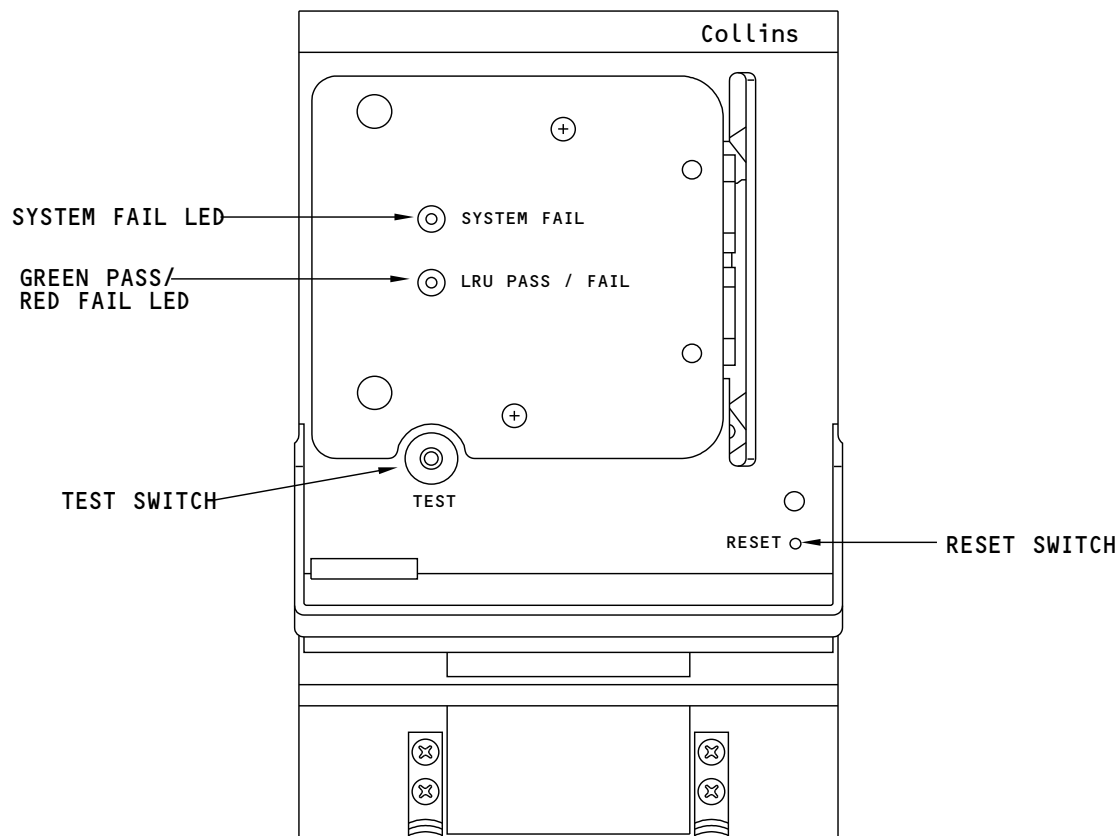
You push a small rod through the RESET hole to push the reset switch. This causes the CMU to do a power up test.

23-27-00**SIA ALL** **EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

ACARS - COMMUNICATIONS MANAGEMENT UNIT



M79991 S0004623535_V1

ACARS - COMMUNICATIONS MANAGEMENT UNIT

23-27-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



ACARS - AIRPLANE PERSONALITY MODULE

Purpose

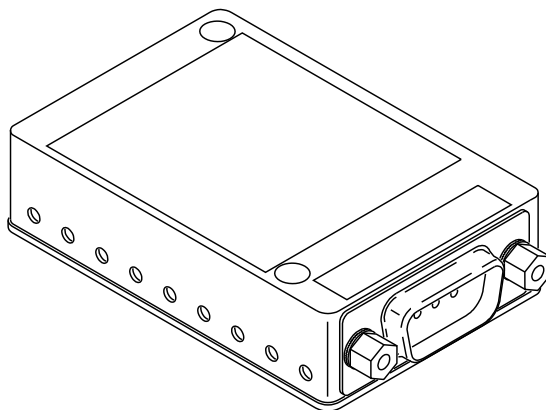
The ACARS APM has the airplane's identification and registration codes in memory.

General

The APM sends the unique identification to the ACARS communication management unit when the CMU gets power. You load the airplane identification and registry into the APM with the control display unit.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ACARS - AIRPLANE PERSONALITY MODULE



M79994 S0004623537_V3

ACARS - AIRPLANE PERSONALITY MODULE

23-27-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

**ACARS - OPERATION - 1****Purpose**

The flight management computer system control display unit (CDU) gives you an interface with the ACARS system. It lets you enter, send, and review downlink/uplink data. The CDU shows ACARS messages in the scratch pad.

Features

The CDU has a MENU key that selects the menu. From the menu page, you can select the flight management computer system (FMC), ACARS, or the flight data acquisition unit (DFDAU). To make the system active on the CDU, push the line select key (LSK) adjacent to the system prompt.

If the ACARS is in control of the CDU or if the FMC receives an ACARS message, the MSG annunciation comes on when the CDU receives an ACARS message. The message shows in the scratch pad.

These are the ACARS messages:

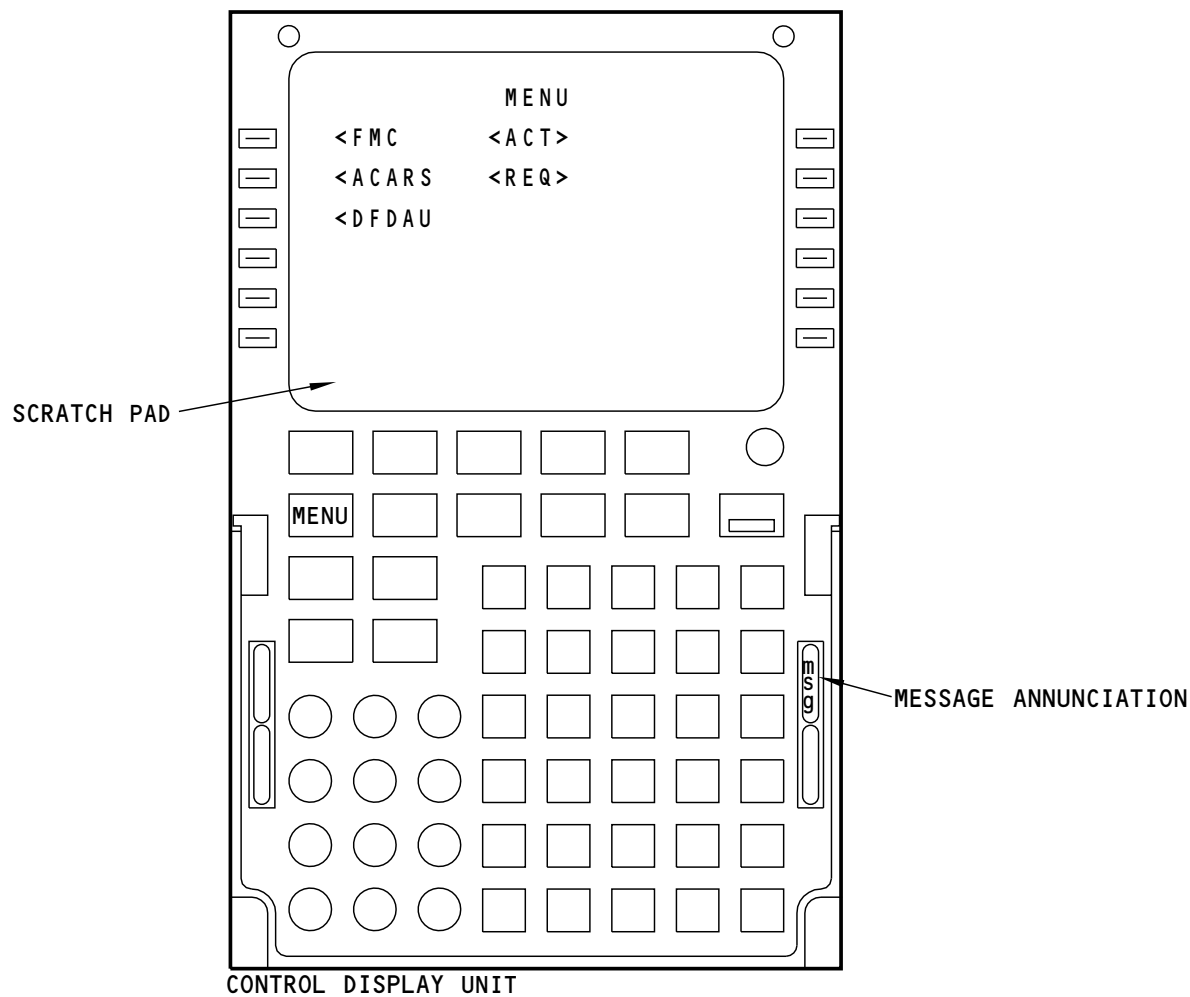
- ACARS UPLINK - ACARS has received an uplink message
- ACARS NO COMM - no ACARS link available
- ACARS VOICE - ACARS VHF radio set to voice
- ACARS CALL - ground station requests voice-go-ahead
- ACARS VOICE BUSY - ACARS VHF radio voice circuits are busy
- ACARS MU FAIL - ACARS management unit failure
- PRINTER UPLINK - uplink message for printer
- PRINTER FAIL - ACARS reports printer failure
- ACARS ALERT - ACARS requires flight crew action.

23-27-00**SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

ACARS - OPERATION - 1



M80024 S0004623556_V1

ACARS - OPERATION - 1

23-27-00

23-27-00-017

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-27-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



ACARS - OPERATION - 2

MAIN MENU

NOTE: The ACARS menus and prompts described are examples. Airline specific ACARS database software may change or remove the prompts described.

Push the line select key (LSK) next to ACARS to connect the CDU to ACARS. These pages are available for maintenance:

- ACARS MENU
- TECHNICAL MENU.

To exit from ACARS, push the CDU MENU key.

ACARS MENU

The ACARS menu shows when you push the ACARS LSK on the MENU page.

Use the ACARS menu to get access to other ACARS pages.

The flight crew use the air traffic services (ATS) and airline operations control (AOC) selections to operate ACARS.

ACARS TECHNICAL MENU

You use the technical menu page to get access to the maintenance functions. The flight crew can use the technical menu to change the VHF radio to voice or data and to tune the radio.

System Configuration

When you select LSK 1L <SYSTEM CONFIG, the CDU page shows this information on three pages:

- Hardware and software part numbers (page 1)
- Software module part numbers (page 2)
- Database module part numbers (page 3).

Link Status

When you select LSK 2L <LINK STATUS, the CDU shows the ACARS link status page. From this page you can perform the link tests on VHF, SATCOM (if installed) or HF (if HF is installed and HF datalink is enabled).

The VHF line shows the state and status of the VHF radio. You can do the link test when you select the LSK adjacent to the *TEST prompt under the VHF line.

The SATCOM line shows the state and status of the SATCOM data link. You can do the link test when you select the LSK adjacent to the *TEST prompt under the SATCOM line.

The HF line shows the state and status of the HF data link. You can do the link test when you select the LSK adjacent to the *TEST prompt under the HF line.

The STATE area shows:

- VOICE - the VHF radio is in the voice mode
- SCAN - the MU is searching for a data link
- IN COMM - the system is in the data link mode
- AUTOTUNE - the system is automatically tuned to an alternate frequency.
- LOGD OFF - The airplane is not logged on to the SATCOM or HF networks.

The STATUS area shows:

- IDLE - no data link is available
- UP MSG - processing uplink message
- DOWN MSG - transmitting downlink message.

When you push the LSK adjacent to the *TEST prompt under the VHF, SATCOM or HF line, the link test starts. If the link test is good, you will see the VHF-C CALL lamp come on and a chime sound for the VHF link test. For the SATCOM and HF link tests, there may be a chime sound, but no lamp will come on.

23-27-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



ACARS - OPERATION - 2

When you select VHF DATA CNTRL, the CDU shows the radio control page. If the VHF radio is in the voice mode, the prompt shows as <VHF VOICE CNTRL.

Radio Control

You use the radio control page to change the VHF radio from the voice mode to the data mode or from the data mode to the voice mode. Use LSK 1R to change the mode. In the voice mode, use LSK 2R to tune the radio.

In the data mode, data link service providers (DSP) give the frequencies for ACARS coverage. The flight crew can select the DSP from this page or from the AOC pages. Line 2L shows the current data frequency.

Select LSK 4L to start the link test.

Select LSK 5L to select a data link service provider.

Technical Menu

You also use the technical menu to do a check of the status of LRUs connected to ACARS. The PERIPHERALS selection (LSK 3L) selects this check. There is a list of the LRUs and whether they are PRESENT (connected) or ABSENT (not connected) and the LRU status (OK or FAIL).

The CLOCK SET menu lets you set the ACARS clock. These are the page displays and the selections:

- Present ACARS time and date (line 1)
- SET TIME - SET DATE - put the time/date in the scratch pad and line select to the proper position
- GROUND REQ - requests an uplink message from the ground station with the time
- SHIP - updates the ACARS clock with the airplane clock time and date (if connected)
- GPS - updates the ACARS clock with the global positioning system clock time and date (if installed).

The RELAYS test menu lets you do a test of two relays in the ACARS MU. These are the relays:

- Relay 1 (LSK 3L) does a test of the chime signal from the aural warning module
- Relay 2 (LSK 3R) does a test of the call light on the SELCAL control panel.

The PGM PINS menu shows the program pins connected to the ACARS MU. The program pins selections come from the program switch module.

DISC IN (LSK 3R) and DISC OUT (LSK 4R) show the status of discretes coming in to ACARS and going out of ACARS.

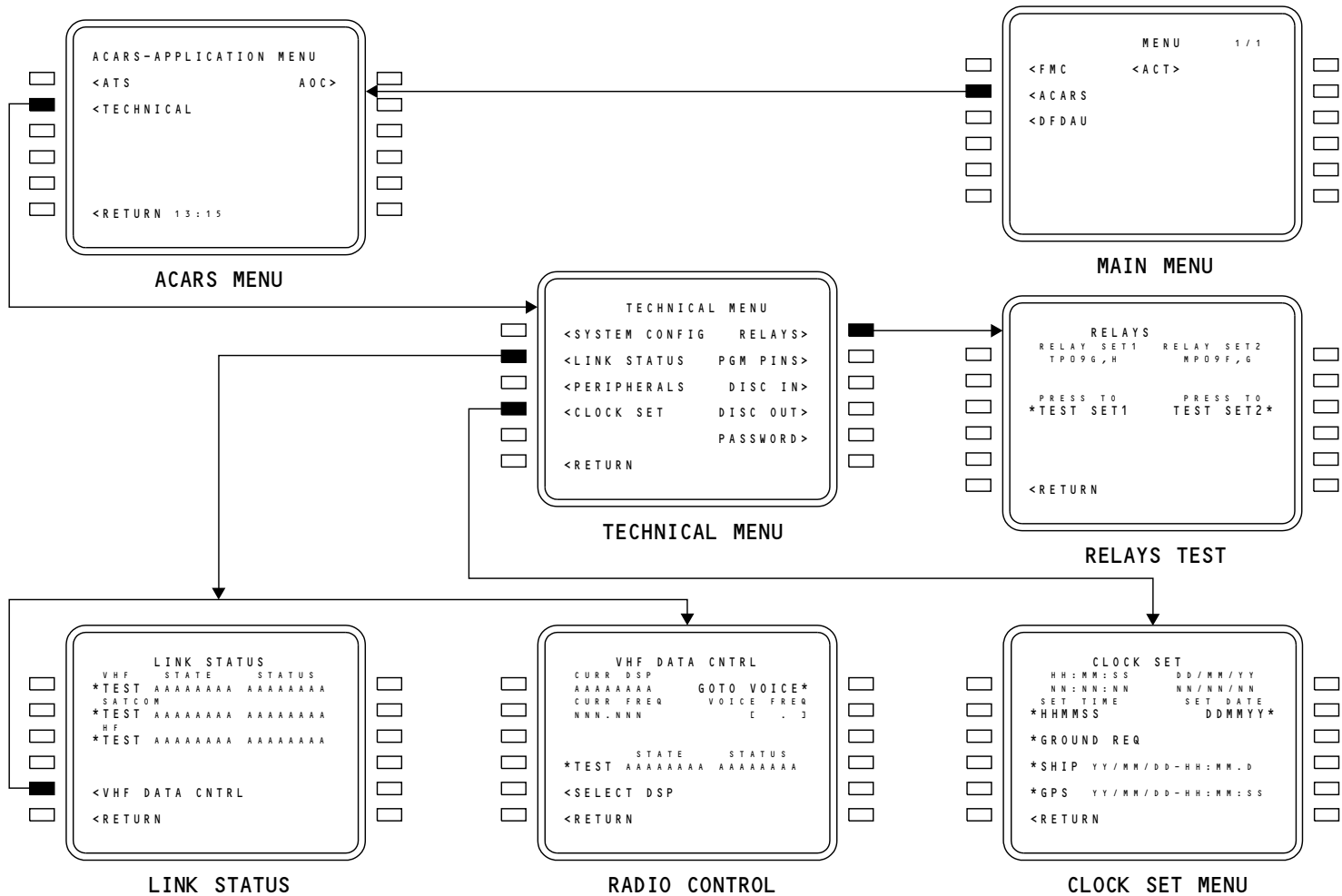
Select PASSWORD to enter a password and to change/view protected menus. These are the protected menus:

- OVERRIDES - changes the registration number, airline and airline identification. This information comes from the program switch module.
- MSG TRACE - message trace - lets the user trace messages internal to the MU. This menu is used by shop maintenance personnel.
- VHF SCAN - lets the user change the data link service providers that the MU will use for ACARS.

Return

When you select RETURN from any menu, you go to the previous, higher level menu.

ACARS - OPERATION - 2



M80032 S0004623565_V1

ACARS - OPERATION - 2

**ACARS - OPERATION - DOWNLINK REPORTS****General**

There are many ACARS reports. Generally, these reports use short codes to decrease the cost of satellite or ground station use.

All ACARS reports have header information followed by the report data.

Report Header

Typically, the header includes this information:

- Report type
- Flight number
- Flight origin and destination
- Registration number
- Date and time sent.

Report Data

An example is the IN report. The ACARS MU automatically sends this report when the airplane gets to the gate.

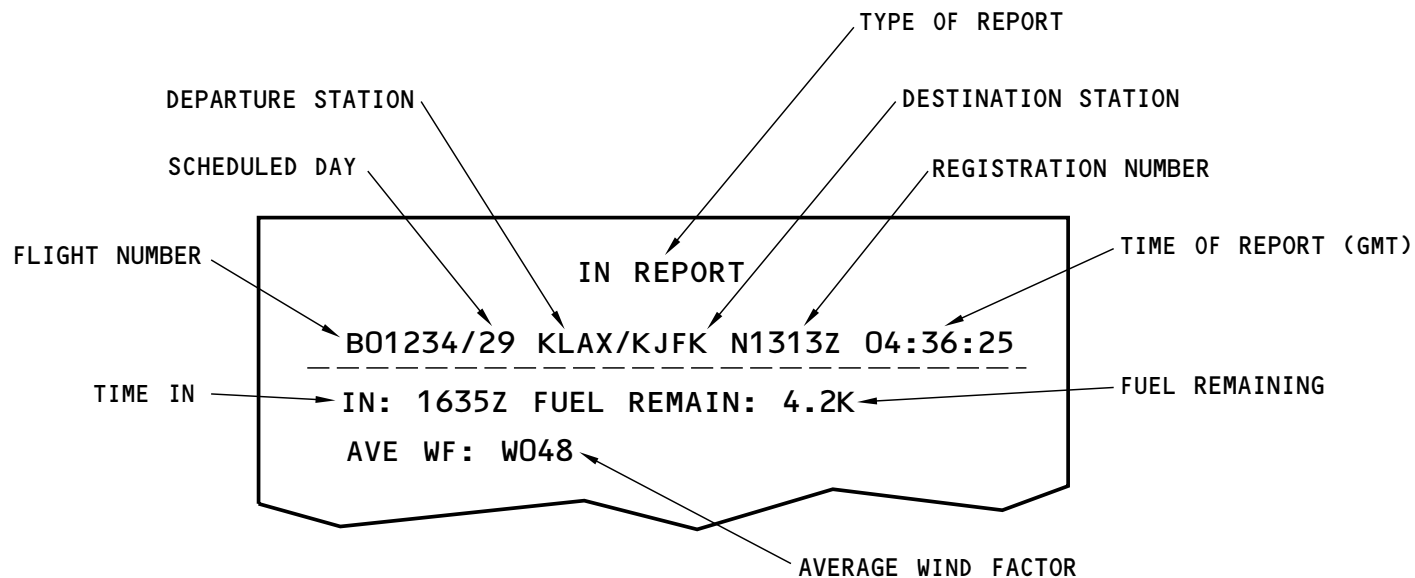
The IN report typically includes:

- IN event time
- Remaining fuel
- Average wind factor
- Optional scratchpad text.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



ACARS - OPERATION - DOWNLINK REPORTS



M80004 S0004623569_V1

ACARS - OPERATION - DOWNLINK REPORTS

23-27-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

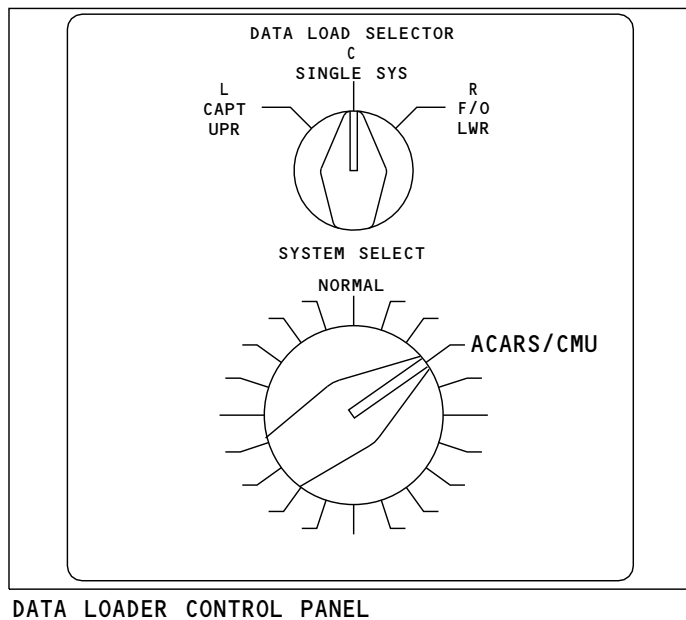
**ACARS - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SOFTWARE LOADING****ACARS Software**

You can load software and data base information into ACARS with an airborne data loader, enhanced airborne data loader, or a portable data loader. To load the software, do these tasks:

- Make sure the ACARS system has power
- Set the SYSTEM SELECT switch to ACARS/CMU
- If the ACARS management unit or communications management unit is in the left position, set the top switch to L
- If the ACARS management unit or communications management unit is in the right position, set the top switch to R

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ACARS - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SOFTWARE LOADING



ACARS - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - SOFTWARE LOADING

M80027 S0004623572_V1

23-27-00-019

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-27-00



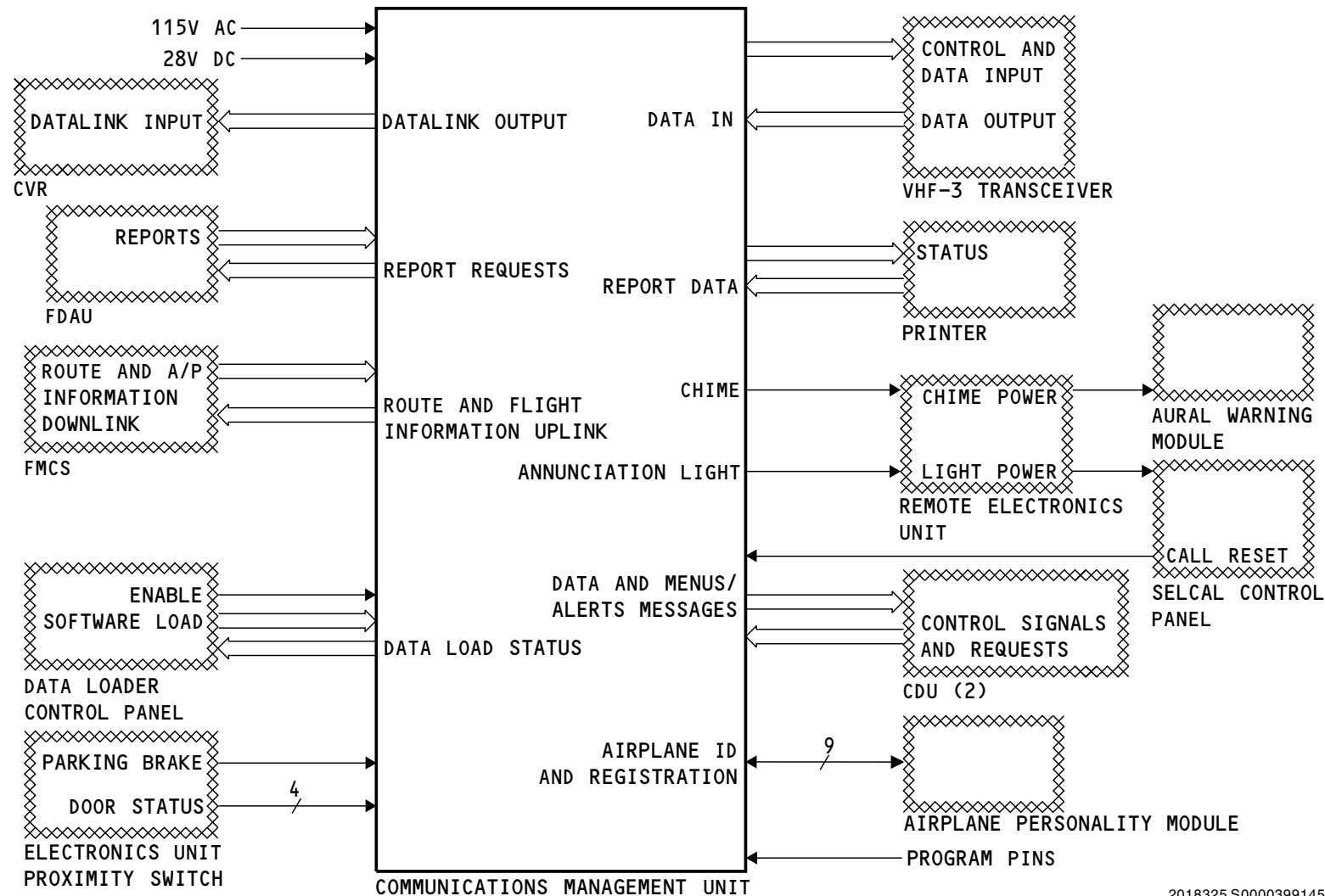
ACARS - SYSTEM SUMMARY

General

This page is for reference purposes.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ACARS - SYSTEM SUMMARY



2018325 S0000399145_V1

ACARS - SYSTEM SUMMARY

23-27-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-28-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SELECTIVE CALLING SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

Purpose

The selective calling (SELCAL) system supplies the flight crew with indications of calls that come in from the airline ground stations. It is not necessary for the pilots to continuously monitor company communications channels.

Airline radio networks supply communication between ground stations and airplanes. For SELCAL operation each airplane has a different four-letter code. Each letter in the code equals a different audio tone. The ground stations send the applicable tones to call an airplane.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- ACP - audio control panel
- comm - communication
- HF - high frequency
- REU - remote electronics unit
- SELCAL - selective calling
- VHF - very high frequency

23-28-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SELECTIVE CALLING SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



M80073 S0004623613_V1

SELECTIVE CALLING SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-28-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

SELCAL SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

Each airplane has a different SELCAL code. A ground station transmits this code to communicate with an airplane. When the airplane receives its SELCAL code, flight compartment indications come on to tell the flight crew.

System Components

The selective calling system has these components:

- SELCAL decoder
- SELCAL program switch module
- SELCAL aural warning relay.

The SELCAL decoder unit monitors the radio systems for audio tones. If the tones are the same as the code from the program switch module, the decoder sends a signal to the control panel to turn on the alert light. The decoder also sends a ground to energize the SELCAL aural warning relay.

The SELCAL decoder unit also sends a ground to energize the aural warning relay. The energized relay sends 28V dc to the aural warning module through the REU. This tells the module to make the single high/low chime for the aural alert.

The SELCAL program switch module gives the airplane its SELCAL code. When power is applied to the airplane, the program switch module sends the SELCAL code to the SELCAL decoder.

External Interface

The selective calling system connects with these components:

- VHF transceiver
- HF transceiver
- Audio control panel
- Remote electronics unit
- Aural warning module.

The HF and VHF transceivers receive the SELCAL audio tones from the ground station. The transceivers send the received audio to the SELCAL decoder.

When the SELCAL decoder unit receives a call, it sends ground signals to the audio control panels (ACPs). The ground signals turn on the call light for the transceiver that receives the call. Push the control wheel mic switch or the ACP RT/IC switch to send a reset signal from the REU to turn off the call light.

The SELCAL aural warning relay sends the REU 28V dc. The REU sends the 28V dc to the aural warning module. The aural warning module makes a high/low chime signal for the aural alert.

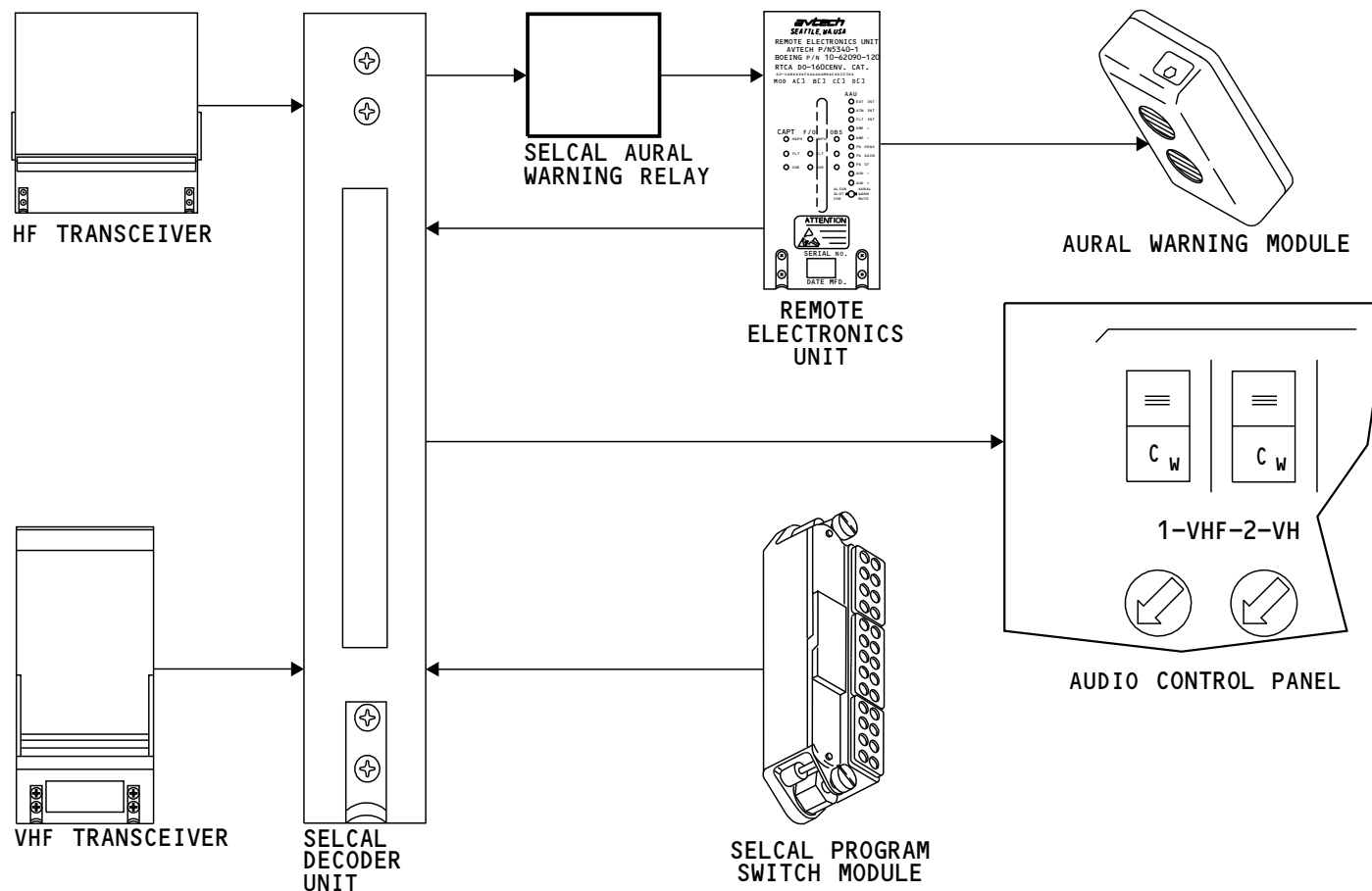
23-28-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SELCAL SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



M80084 S0004623627_V1

SELCAL SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-28-00

23-28-00-002

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



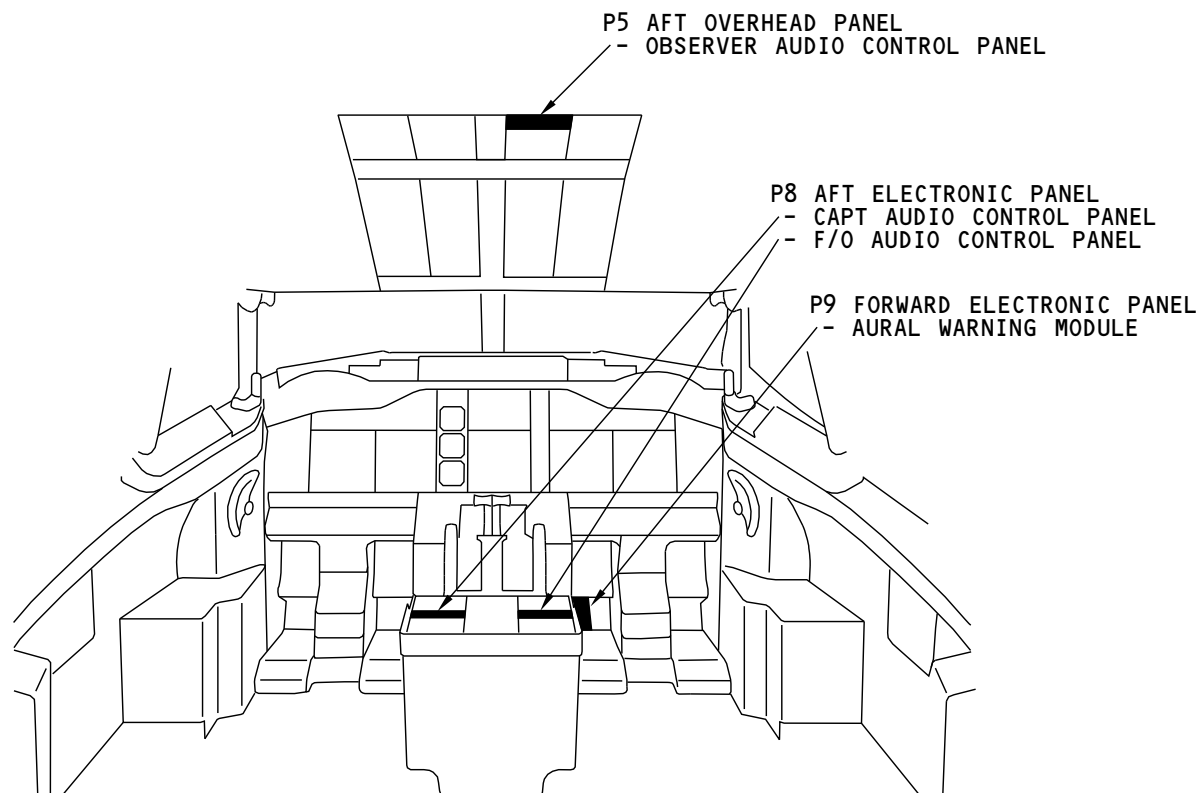
SELCAL SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Audio Control Panel

The Audio Control Panel (ACP)s are part of the flight interphone system. The captain and first officer ACPs are on the P8 aft electronic panel. The observer ACP is on the P5 aft overhead panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

SELCAL SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M80094 S0004623636_V1

SELCAL SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-28-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



SELCAL SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

SELCAL Decoder

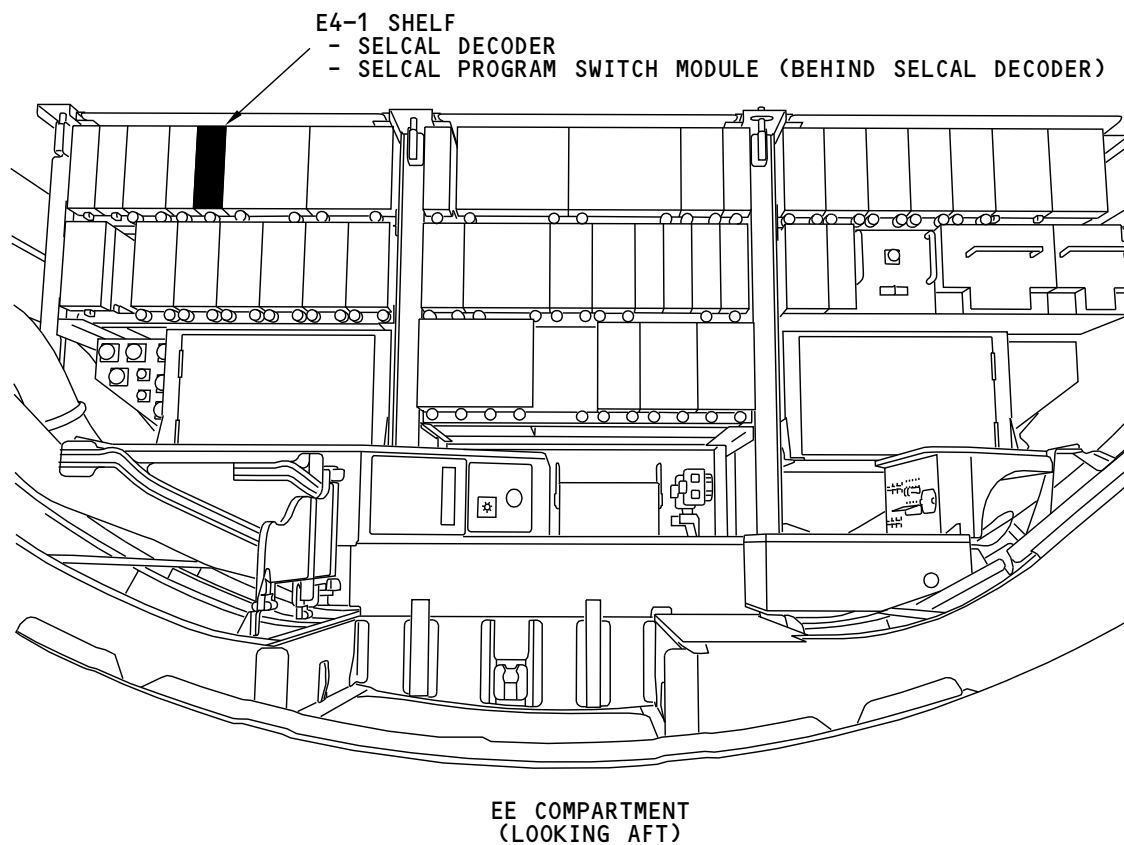
The SELCAL decoder is on the E-4 rack in the electronic equipment compartment.

SELCAL Program Switch Module

The SELCAL program switch module is behind the SELCAL decoder on the E-4 rack.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

SELCAL SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M80097 S0004623643_V1

SELCAL SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-28-00-004

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-28-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



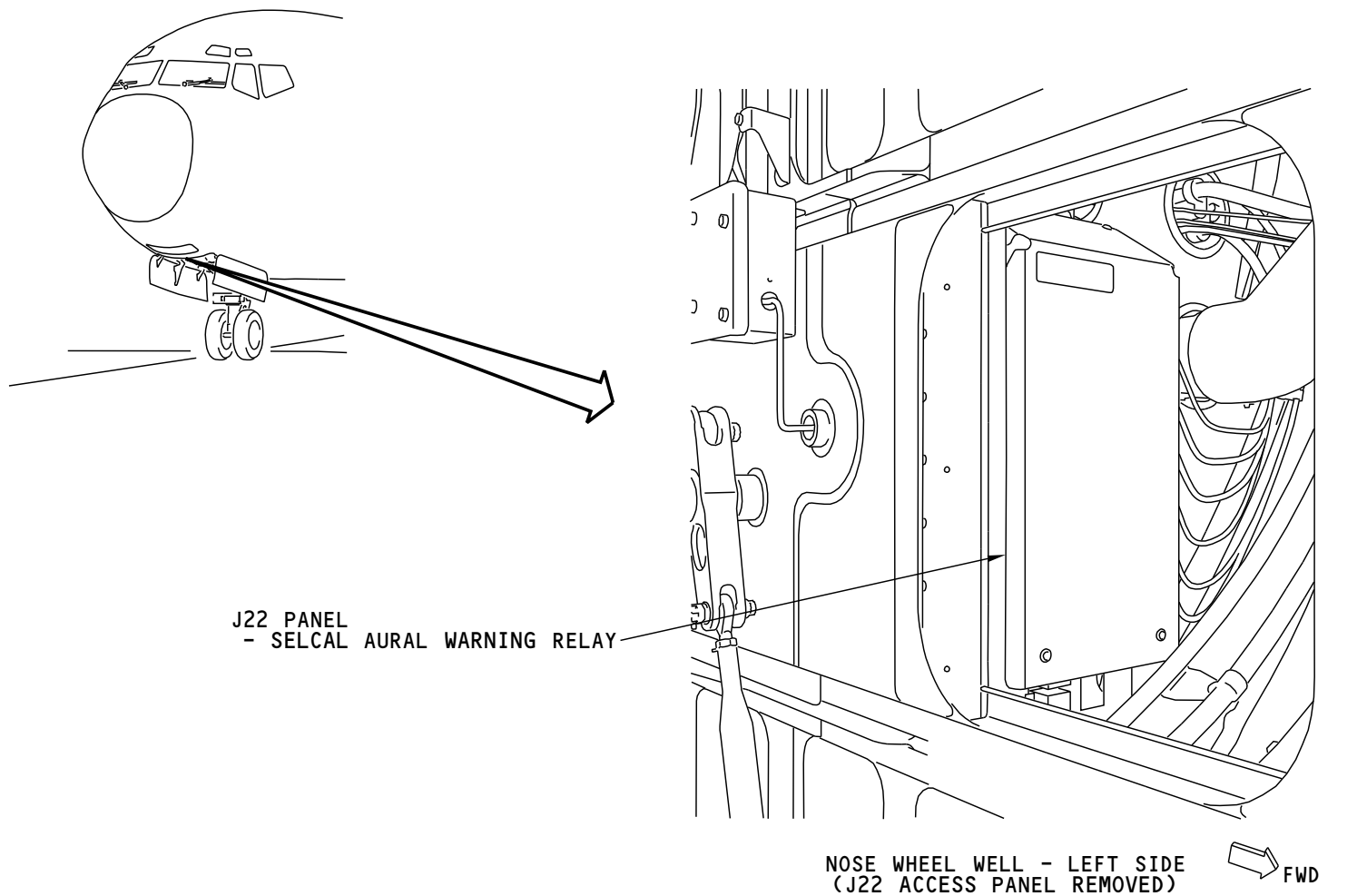
SELCAL SYSTEM - NOSE WHEEL WELL COMPONENT LOCATION

SELCAL AURAL WARNING Relay

The SELCAL aural warning relay is on the left side of the nose wheel well on the J22 panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

SELCAL SYSTEM - NOSE WHEEL WELL COMPONENT LOCATION



M80127 S0004623645_V1

SELCAL SYSTEM - NOSE WHEEL WELL COMPONENT LOCATION

23-28-00

23-28-00-010

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SELCAL SYSTEM - INTERFACES

Power

The 28v dc bus 1 supplies power to the SELCAL decoder.

SELCAL Decoder Unit

The VHF and HF transceivers send received audio to the SELCAL decoder.

The SELCAL decoder unit tries to match the audio tones sent from the transceiver with the program switch module SELCAL code. If there is a match, then the decoder sends a call set discrete to the audio control panels (ACP). The call set discrete is a ground signal that turns on the call light. There is a different call set discrete for each transceiver.

The REU sends a ground signal to the SELCAL decoder unit to reset the decoder channel. This ground signal is a call reset discrete. There is a different call reset discrete for each transceiver.

The SELCAL decoder unit supplies a ground signal to make a high/low chime in the flight compartment. The ground signal goes to the SELCAL aural warning relay. The energized relay sends a 28v dc signal through the REU to the aural warning module. The aural warning module makes a single high/low chime in the flight compartment.

SELCAL Program Switch Module

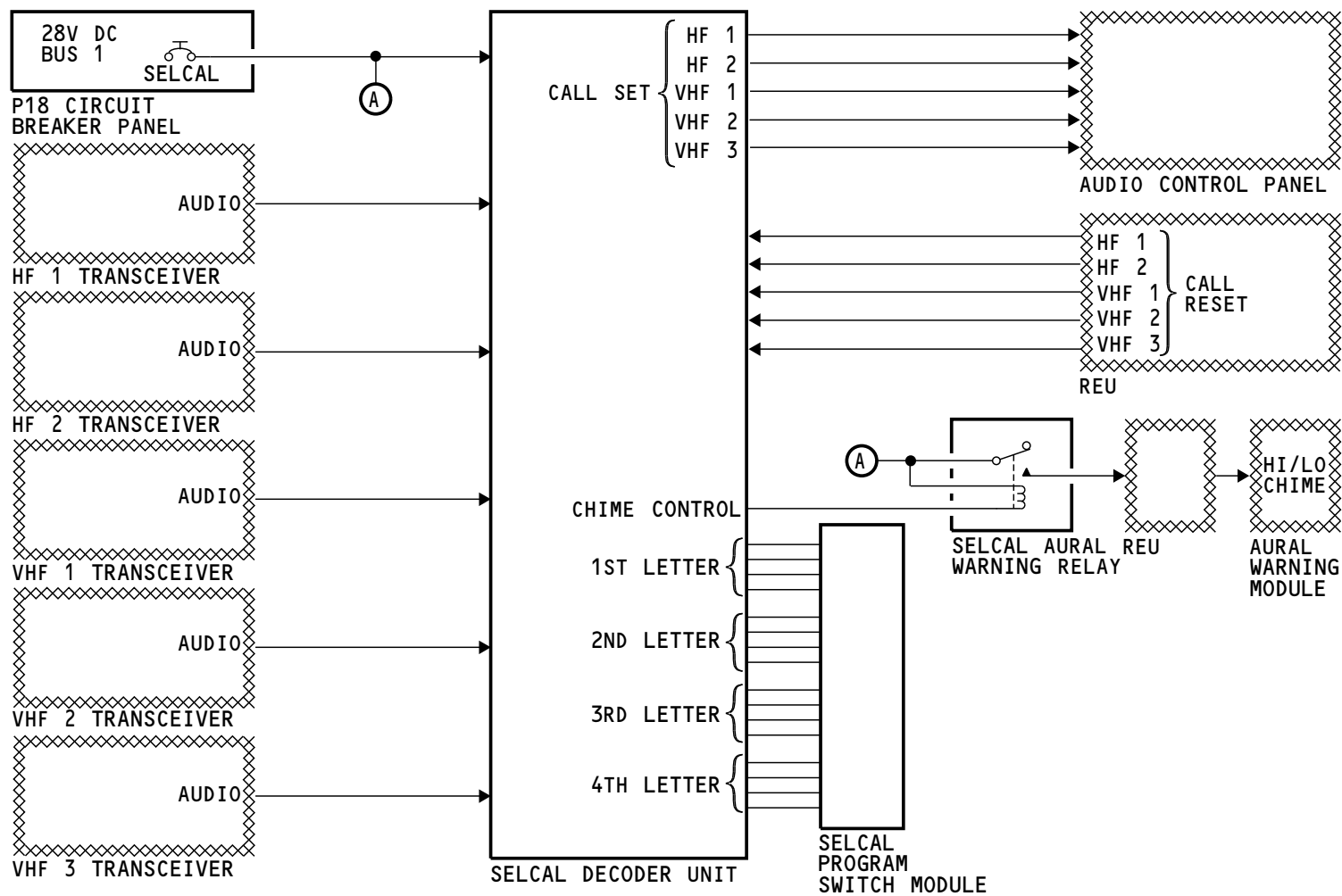
The SELCAL program switch module has 24 (16 active) switches. The switches are in groups of four. There are four letters in the SELCAL code. The position of the switches in each group identify one of the four SELCAL code letters. A switch in the ON position sends a ground signal to the decoder. A switch in the OFF position sends an open signal to the decoder.

23-28-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

SELCAL SYSTEM - INTERFACES



M80105 S0004623649_V1

SELCAL SYSTEM - INTERFACES

23-28-00

23-28-00-005

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SELCAL SYSTEM - SELCAL DECODER UNIT

Purpose

The SELCAL decoder unit does these functions:

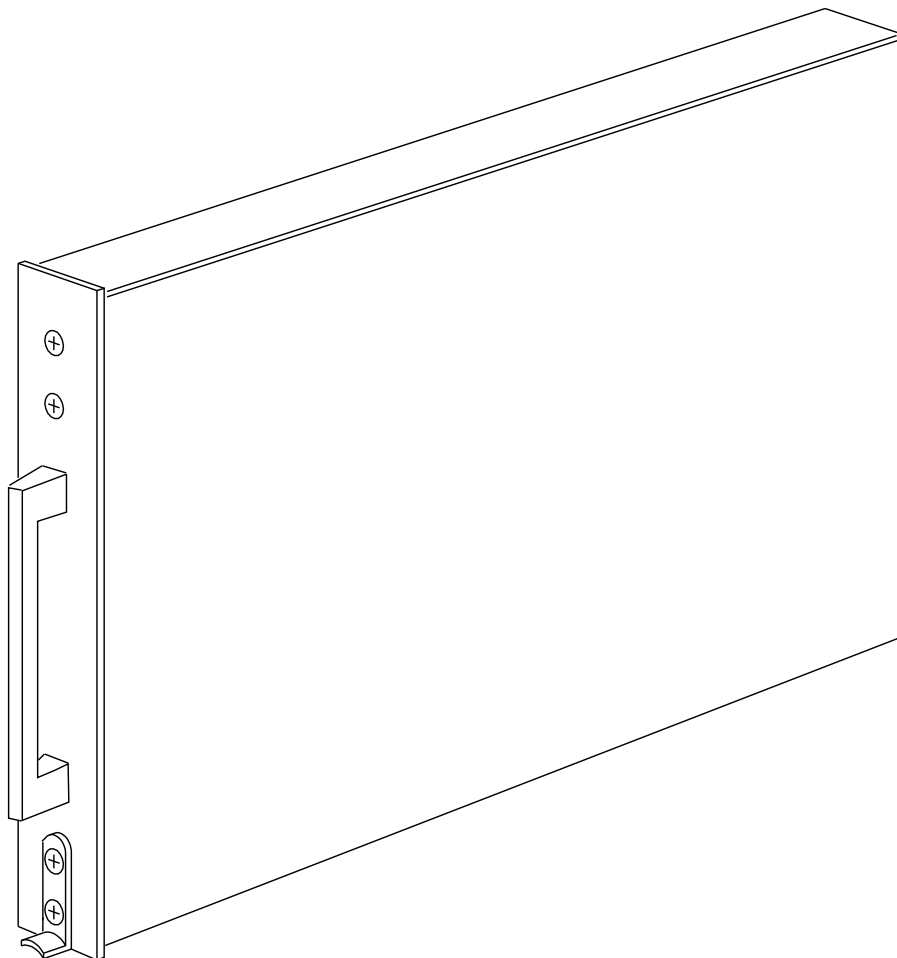
- Monitors audio from the VHF and HF communication transceivers
- Identifies the SELCAL signal that is the same as its code
- Causes flight compartment visual and aural indications when calls come in.

Controls

There are no lights or switches on the SELCAL decoder front panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

SELCAL SYSTEM - SELCAL DECODER UNIT



SELCAL SYSTEM - SELCAL DECODER UNIT

M80121 S0004623673_V1

23-28-00-007

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-28-00

**SELCAL SYSTEM - SELCAL PROGRAM SWITCH MODULE****Purpose**

The SELCAL program switch module sets the airplane identification code.

Each dip switch that is up is in the ON position and sends a ground to the SELCAL decoder. Each dip switch that is down is in the OFF position and sends an open to the SELCAL decoder.

Each group of 4 dip switches sets one SELCAL letter. Four letters identify the airplane SELCAL code.

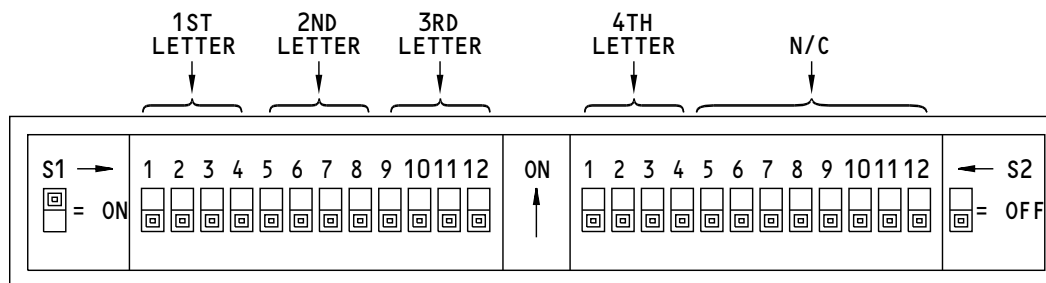
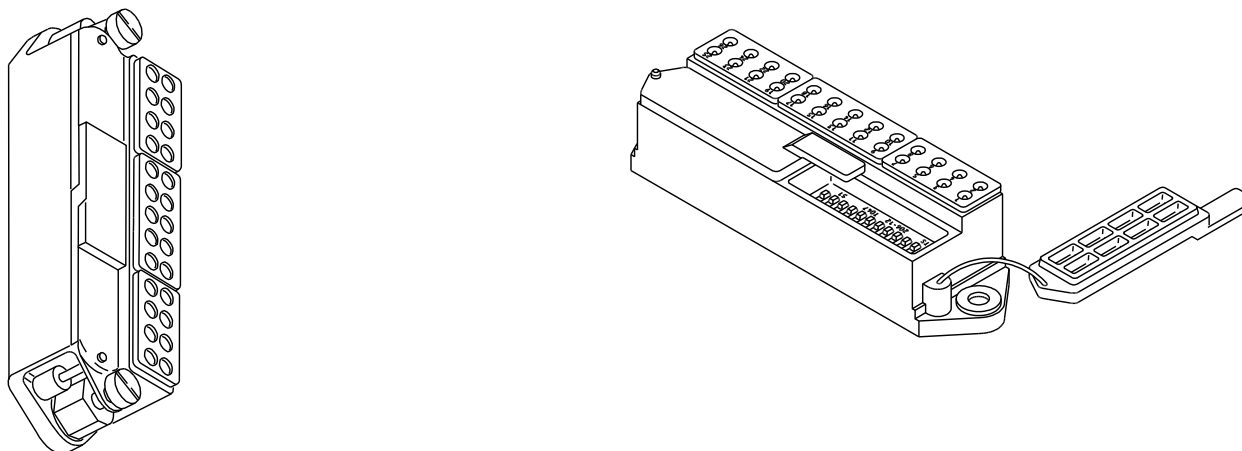
23-28-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SELCAL SYSTEM - SELCAL PROGRAM SWITCH MODULE



M80122 S0004623675_V1

SELCAL SYSTEM - SELCAL PROGRAM SWITCH MODULE

23-28-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SELCAL SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The SELCAL decoder unit has these components:

- Audio compressors
- Filter units
- Analog-to-digital converter
- Microprocessor
- Reset buffer
- Output driver.

Power-Up

At power-up, the SELCAL program switch module sends the microprocessor the airplane SELCAL code. The microprocessor controls the SELCAL decoder.

Call Set

Each VHF and HF transceiver sends audio signals to the related audio compressor. The audio has a SELCAL tone signal. The SELCAL signal is a group of four tones. Each tone represents a letter in the SELCAL code. The audio compressor amplifies or limits the audio signal input to get a constant level. The audio compressor then sends the signal to the related filter unit.

In the filter unit, the signal goes to 16 different filters. Each filter passes only the audio signal that identifies one SELCAL tone or letter.

The filter outputs go to the analog-to-digital converter. The converter changes the analog audio signal to a digital signal and sends it to the microprocessor.

The microprocessor receives the SELCAL tone digital signals and compares them with the airplane SELCAL code from the program switch module. If the digital signals are the same as the airplane's code, then the microprocessor sends a command to the output driver.

The output driver energizes the output relay. When the relay energizes, the control panel receives a ground signal to turn on the call light.

Call Reset

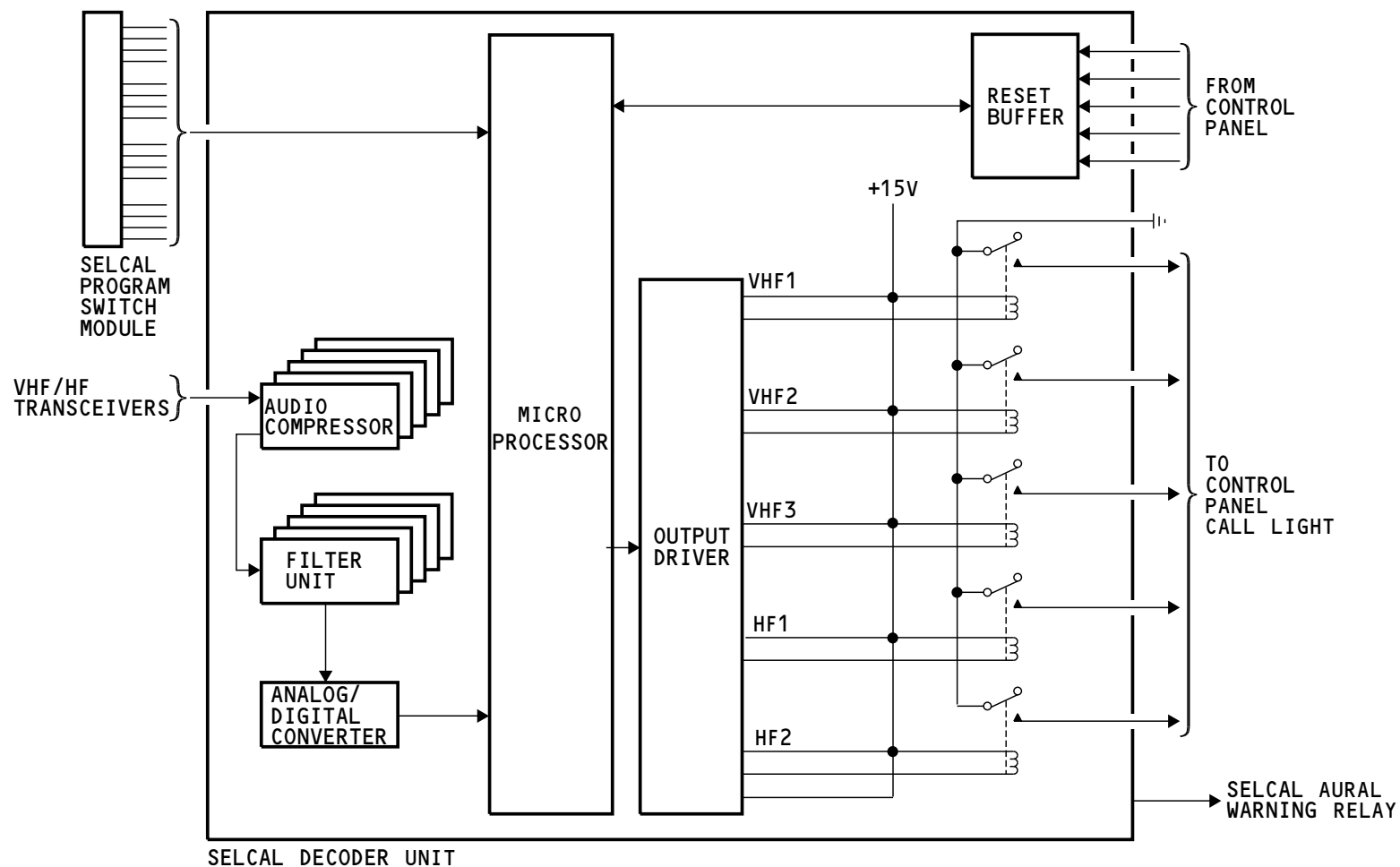
The REU sends a ground to the reset buffer in the SELCAL decoder. When the reset buffer receives the ground, it supplies a signal to the microprocessor to reset the command to the output driver. When the output driver is reset, all indications go off.

Aural Warning

The SELCAL decoder unit supplies a ground discrete to the SELCAL aural warning relay. The energized relay sends 28V dc to the aural warning system through the REU. The aural warning system makes a single high/low chime that tells the flight crew when a call comes in.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

SELCAL SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M80124 S0004623680_V1

SELCAL SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-28-00-009

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-28-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



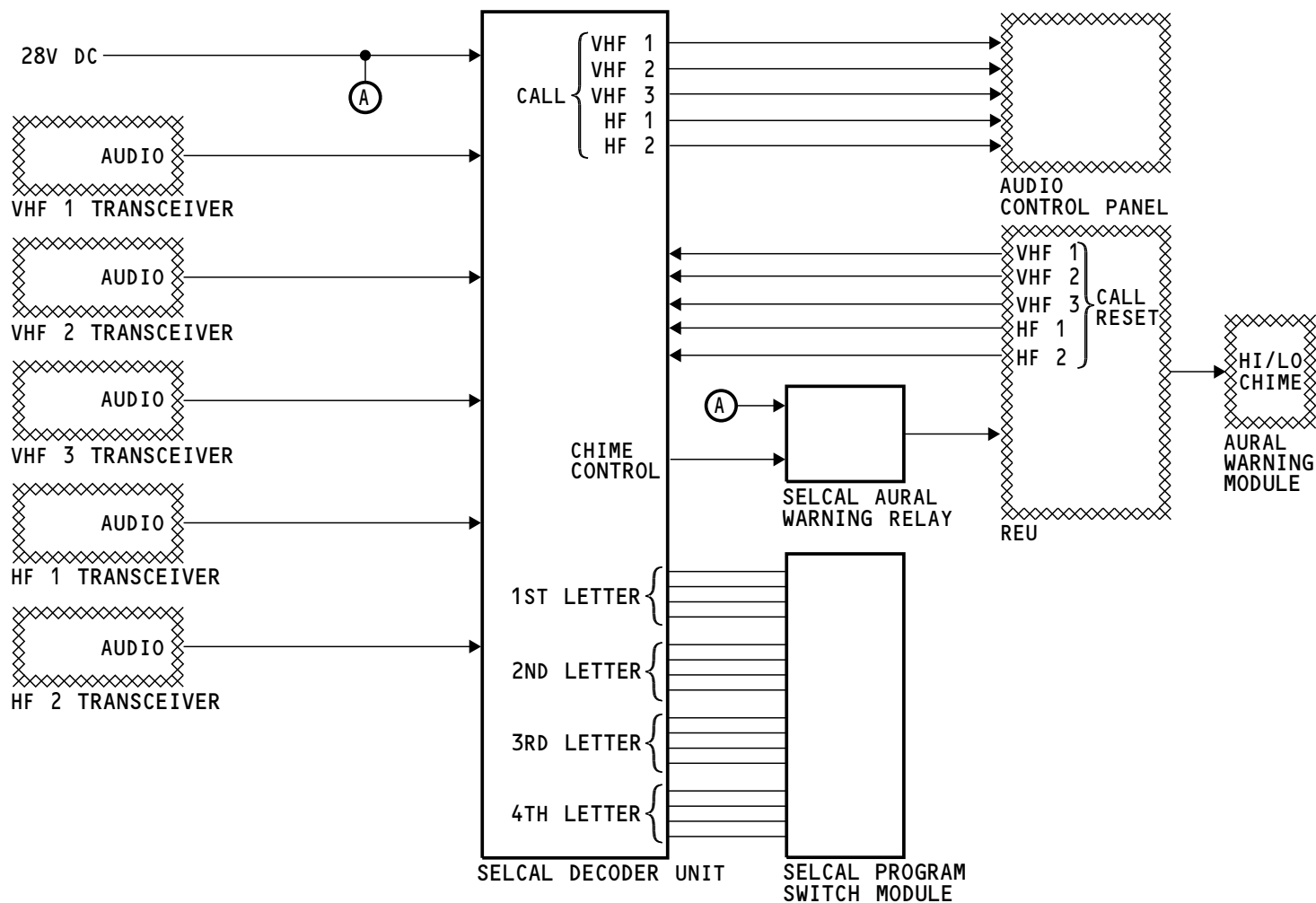
SELCAL SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

General

This graphic is for reference purposes only.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

SELCAL SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY



M80137 S0004623685_V1

SELCAL SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

23-28-00

23-28-00-011

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-31-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**PASSENGER ADDRESS SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION****Purpose**

The passenger address (PA) system supplies these to the passenger cabin:

- Passenger address announcements
- Chimes.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- ACP - audio control panel
- amp - amplifier
- annc - announcement
- att - attendant
- BGM - boarding music
- BITE - built-in test equipment
- CDS - common display system
- ckts - circuit
- db - decibel
- DIP - dual-in-line package
- DEU - display electronics unit
- EEC - electronic equipment compartment
- eng - engine
- ent - entertainment
- fwd - forward
- ind - indication
- LCD - liquid crystal display
- LED - light emitting diode
- MCU - modular concept unit
- mic - microphone
- oxy - oxygen
- PA - passenger address
- PES - passenger entertainment system

- PSU - passenger service unit
- PTT - push to talk
- rly - relay
- repr - reproducer
- REU - remote electronics unit
- RV - rated voltage
- SSSV - solid state stored voice
- sw - switch
- typ - type; typical
- VRMS - voltage root mean square
- VSCU - video system control unit
- xfr - transfer

23-31-00**SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

PASSENGER ADDRESS SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



M80150 S0004623715_V1

PASSENGER ADDRESS SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-31-00

23-31-00-001

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-31-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PA SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The Passenger Address (PA) system supplies this audio to the passenger cabin and flight compartment:

- Flight crew announcements
- Pre-recorded/stored announcements
- Boarding music
- Chimes.

The PA amplifier sets the priority for the audio inputs. Only one audio input signal at a time is processed. The audio inputs come from these sources:

- Pilots
- Attendants.

The PA amplifier sends the audio input that has the highest priority to these components/systems:

- Passenger cabin and lavatory speakers
- Remote Electronics Unit (REU).

System Components

The PA system has these components:

- PA amplifier
- Passenger signs panel
- Attendant handset
- Cabin and lavatory speakers.

The PA amplifier amplifies the audio input that has the highest priority. The PA amplifier also supplies the chime signals with the other PA audio.

The passenger signs panel has a light that gives the ATTEND call indication. The passenger signs panel has these switches to turn on annunciations and give chimes:

- FASTEN BELTS

- ATTEND
- GRD CALL.

The attendants use the attendant handset to make PA announcements from the forward and aft attendant stations.

The cabin and lavatory speakers change the PA amplifier output signals to audio.

External Interface

The PA system connects with these components:

- REU
- Lavatory speakers
- Passenger service unit speakers
- Pilot PA hand microphone.

System Operation

The PA system audio inputs come from these sources:

- Flight compartment microphone
- Attendant handsets.

The PA amplifier selects the highest priority input. The amplifier amplifies the audio signal and sends it to these Line Replaceable Unit (LRU) and systems:

- REU
- Cabin speakers
- Lavatory speakers.

The amplified audio goes from the PA amplifier to the cabin and lavatory speakers. The audio also goes through muting circuits in the REU to the FWD and AFT attendant speakers. The on-side attendant speakers are muted during attendant announcements to prevent feedback.

The PA audio goes through the REU to the flight crew headsets as sidetone. It also goes to the flight compartment speakers.

23-31-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PA SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

The PA amplifier sets the priority of the input signal. These are the PA system audio priorities:

- Priority 1 - announcement from the flight compartment
- Priority 2 - announcement from an attendant
- Priority 3 - pre-recorded announcement
- Priority 4 - boarding music.

Flight Compartment announcements done through the handset will not override Flight Attendant announcements.

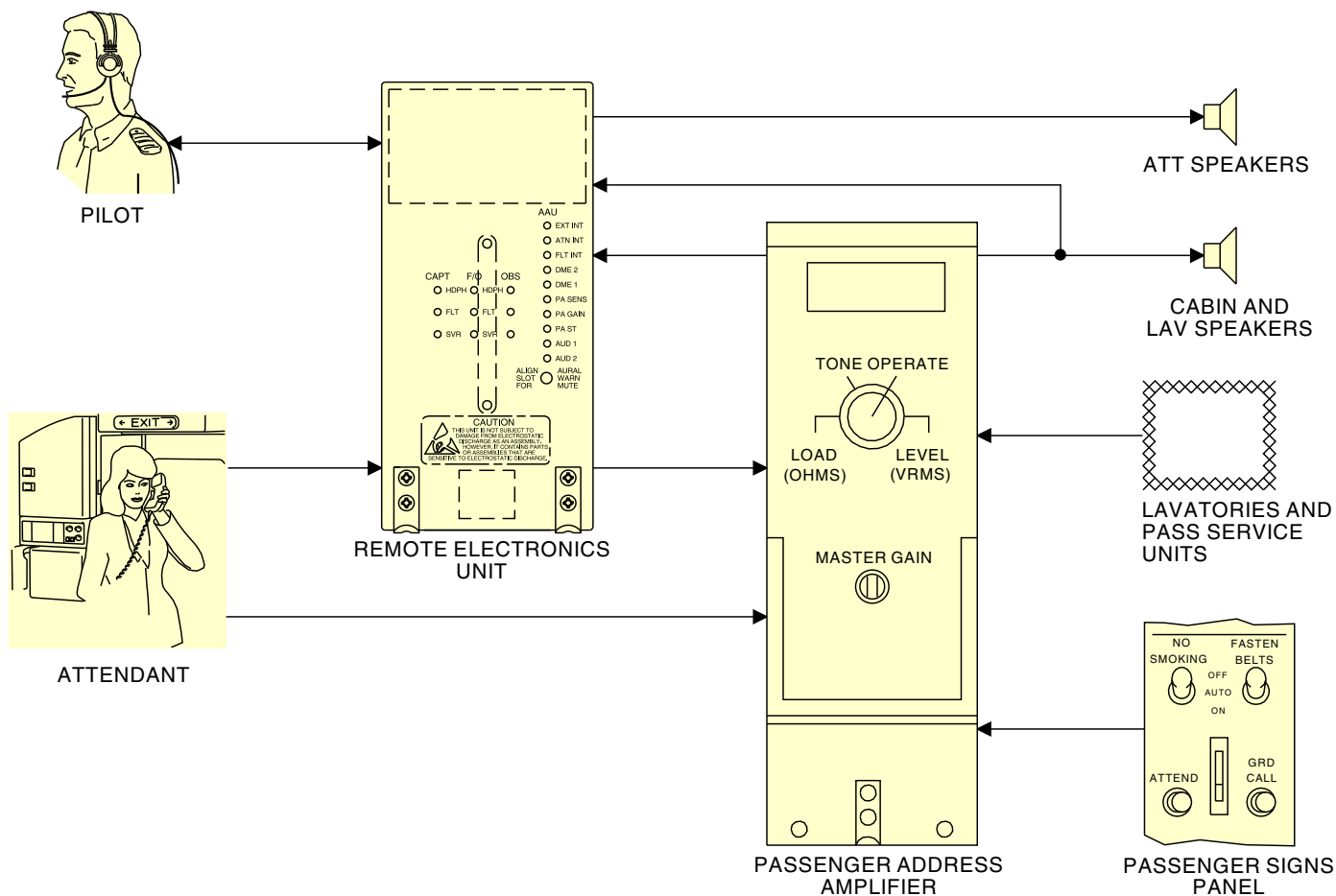
The lavatories and passenger service units send discrete signals to the PA amplifier to make chime signals.

The PA amplifier supplies a chime signal when the flight crew puts the passenger sign panel FASTEN BELTS switch in the ON position or pushes the ATTEND switch.

The chime signals are superimposed on the other PA audio in the amplifier.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

PA SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



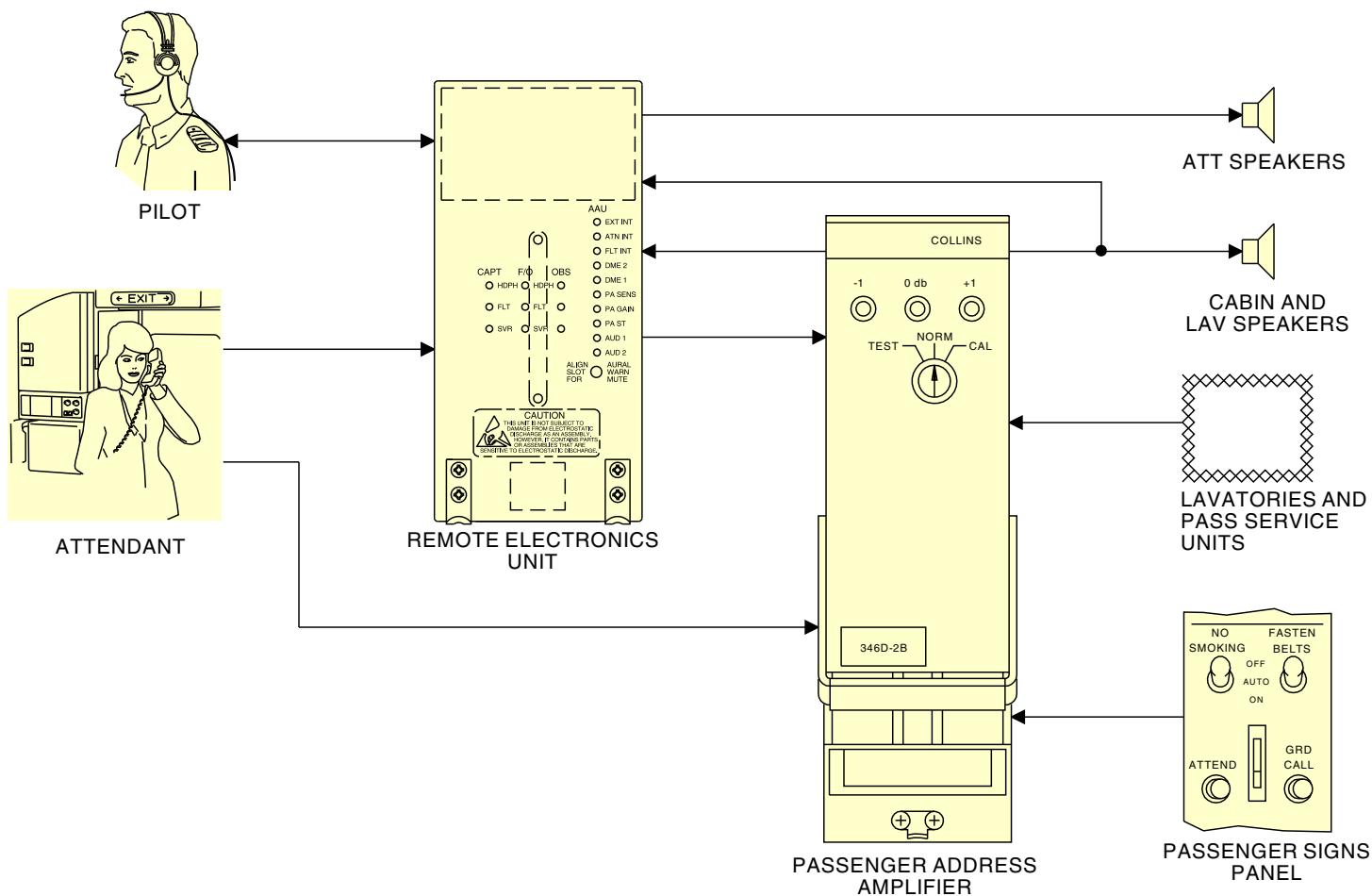
2982822 S0000759902_V1

PA SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-31-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

PA SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



2983124 S0000759928_V1

PA SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-31-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-31-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**PA SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION****Audio Control Panels**

The audio control panels have an interface with the PA system.

The captain and first officer ACPs are on the P8 aft electronics panel.

The first observer ACP is on the P5 aft overhead panel.

Passenger Signs Panel

The passenger signs panel has an interface with the PA system. The panel is on the P5 forward overhead panel.

PA Mic Connector

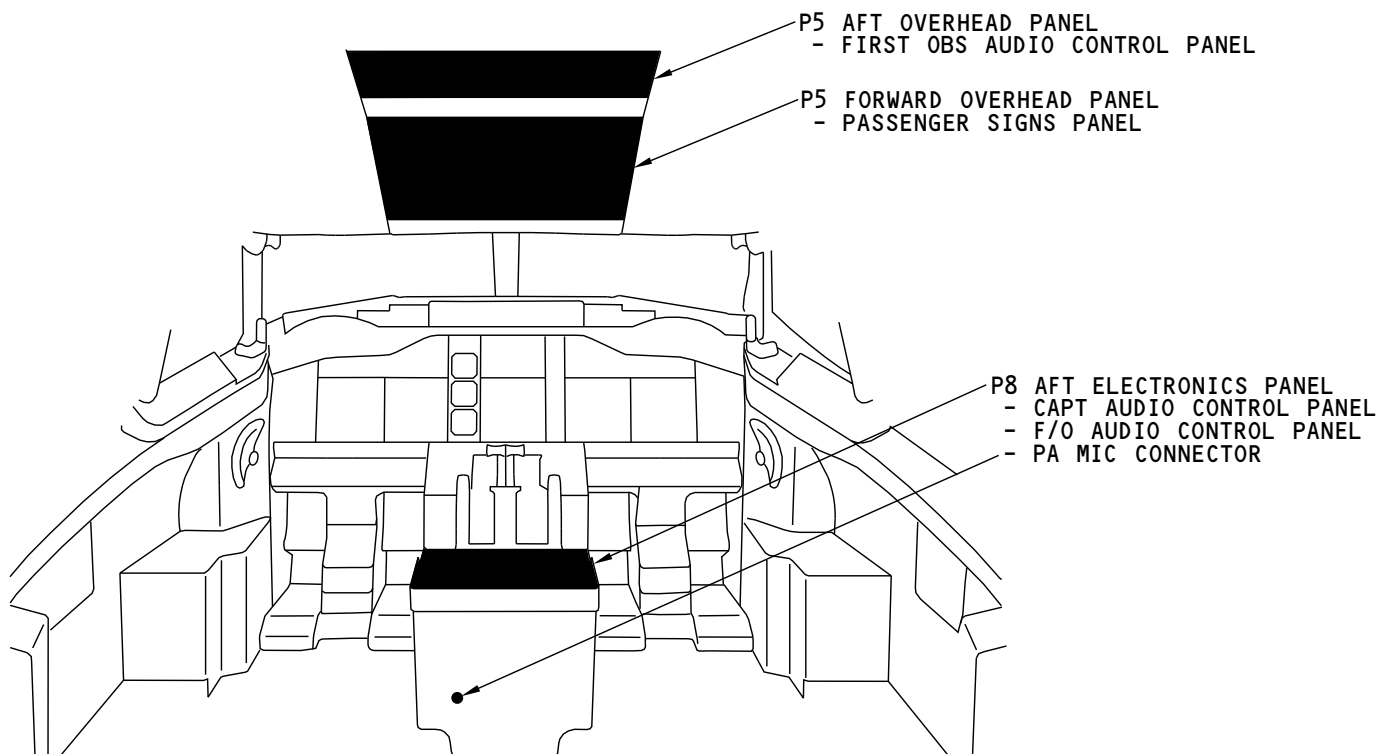
The PA mic connector is on the aft face of the P8 aft electronics panel.

PA Hand Mic

The PA hand mic is on the P8 aft electronics panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

PA SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION



M80184 S0004623748_V1

PA SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

23-31-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



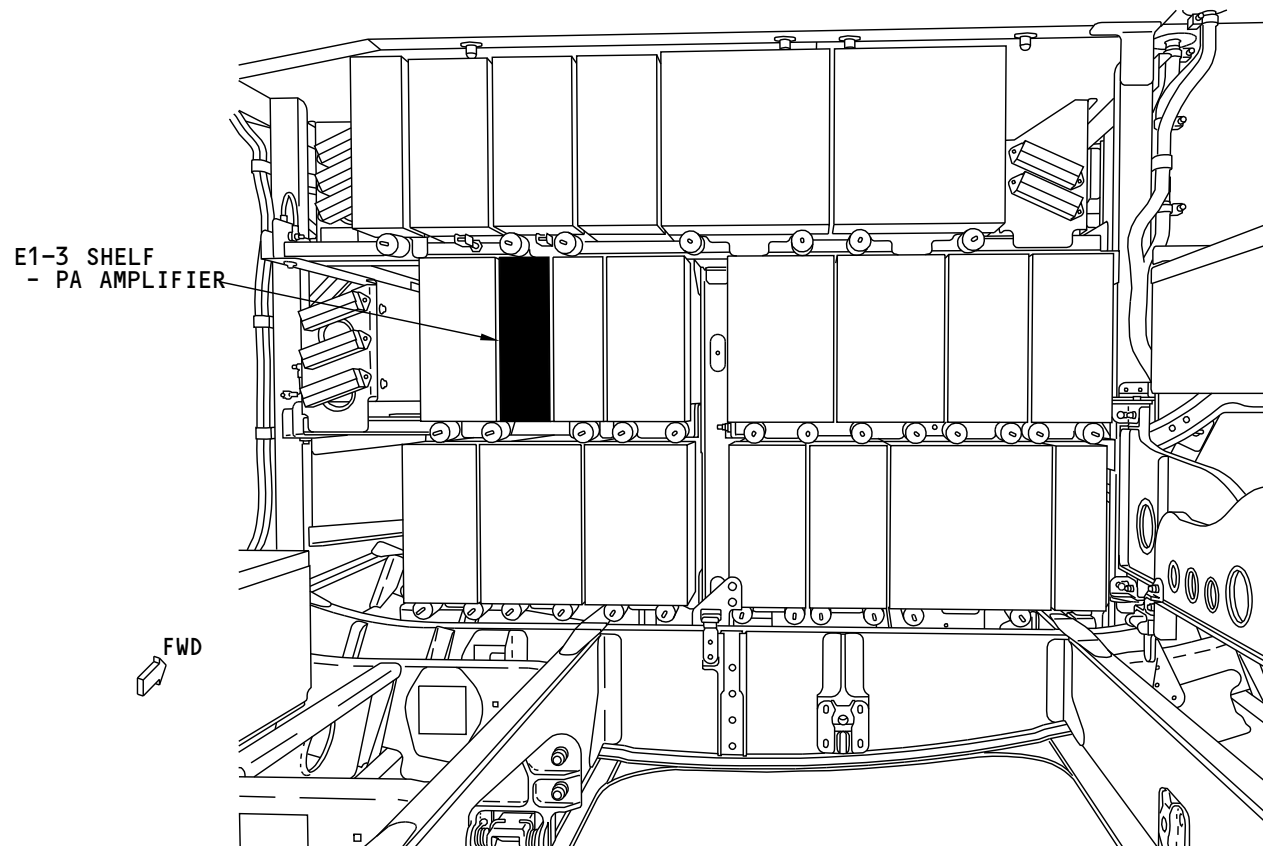
PA SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Electronic Equipment Compartment

The PA amplifier is on the E1-3 shelf.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

PA SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M80198 S0004623762_V1

PA SYSTEM - ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-31-00-004

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-31-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

Speakers

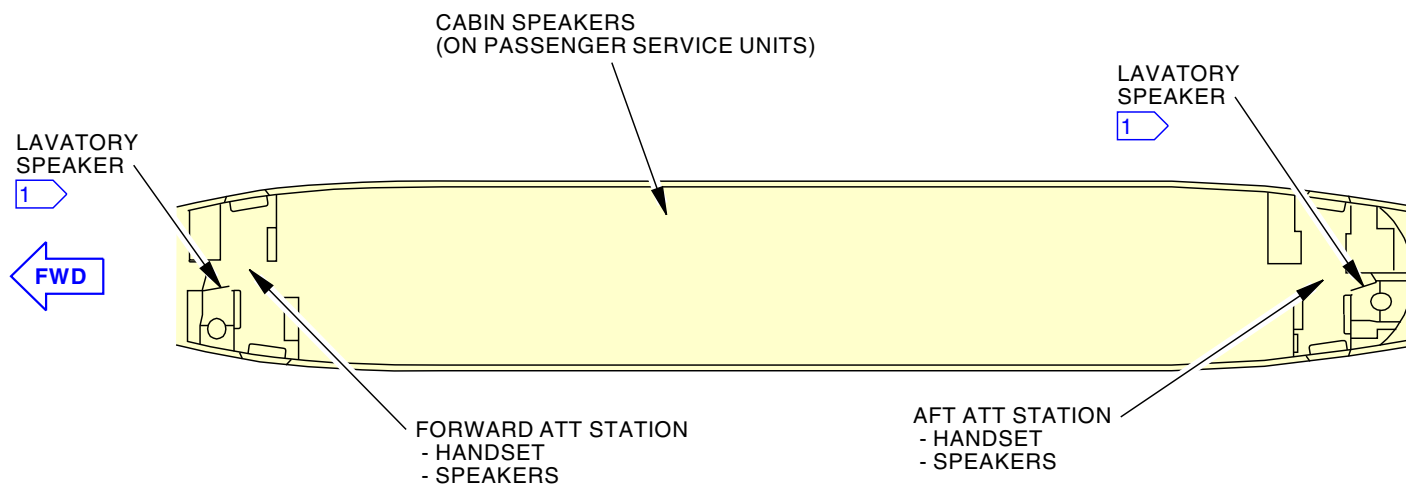
The attendant speakers are at each of the attendant stations and at the galleys. The cabin speakers are in the passenger service units.

Handsets

The handsets are on the cabin attendant panels at each attendant station.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION



1 WHEN LAVATORY INSTALLED

M80210 S0004623767_V2

PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

23-31-00

23-31-00-005

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PA SYSTEM - INTERFACES

Power

The Passenger Address (PA) amplifier gets 28v dc from the 28v dc battery bus.

Audio

The PA system receives audio from these sources:

- Flight compartment microphones
- Attendant microphones.

Flight compartment audio has the first priority. The second priority is from the attendant microphones.

Priority circuits in the PA amplifier receive the audio inputs and set their priority. The audio with the highest priority is amplified and goes to the speakers.

The PA amplifier supplies the side tone to the Remote Electronics Unit (REU). The REU supplies the side tone to the flight crew headsets.

The PA amplifier supplies audio to these components:

- REU mute relays.
- Passenger and lavatory speakers.

The REU supplies audio to the attendant speakers.

Chimes

The PA amplifier supplies chimes for these conditions:

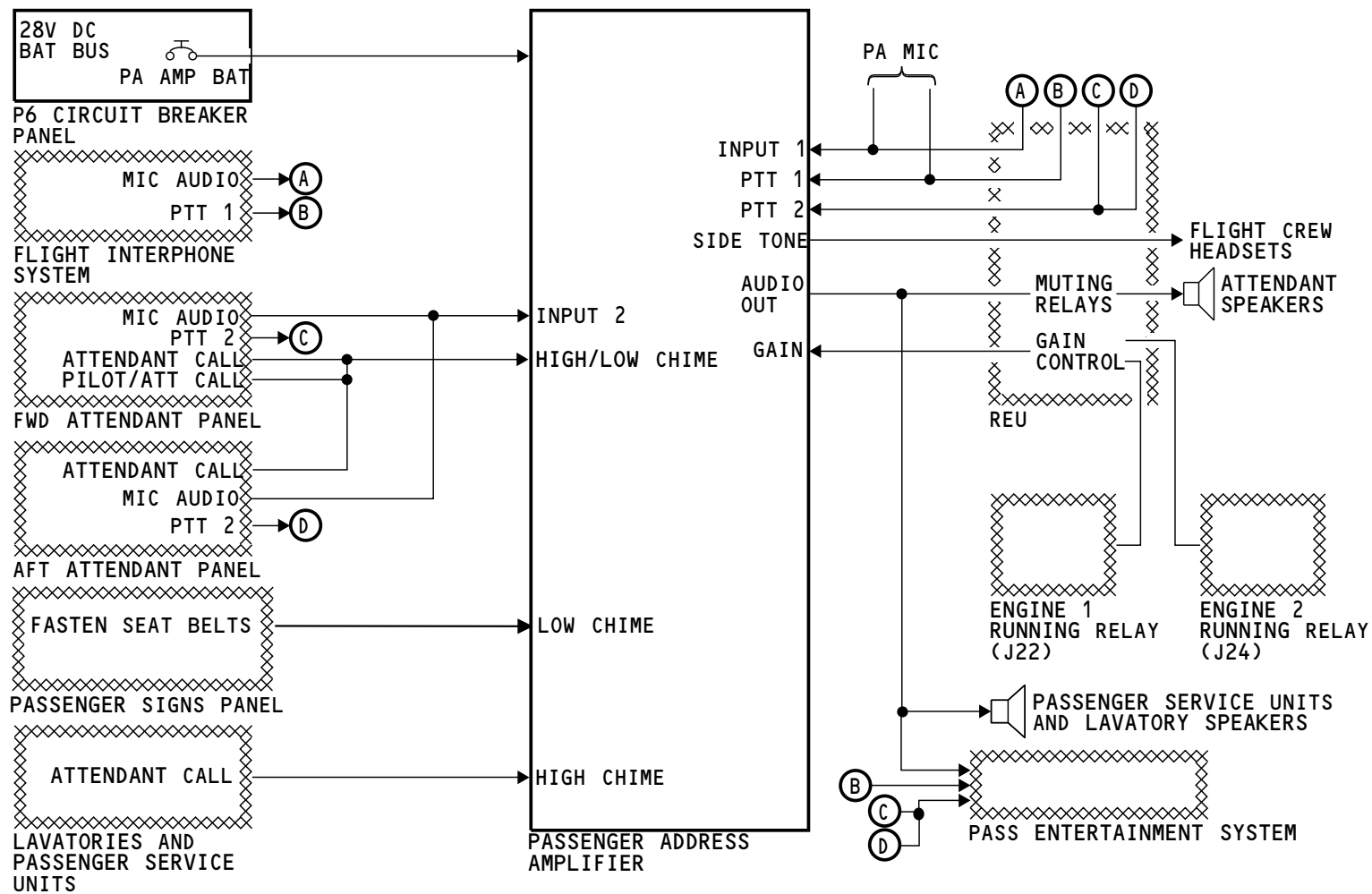
- Lavatory smoke - high chime
- FASTEN SEAT BELTS signs operate - low chime
- Attendant call switch operates - high chime from passenger service units and lavatories, high/low chime from the flight compartment and attendant stations.

Gain Control

The PA amplifier receives gain signals from the REU. The REU receives inputs from the engine running relays. When the engines operate, the PA amplifier gain increases to compensate for the increase in the ambient noise level.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

PA SYSTEM - INTERFACES



LAVATORIES AND

U69378 S0000214062_V2

PA SYSTEM - INTERFACES

23-31-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

**PA SYSTEM - CREW ANNOUNCEMENT INTERFACE****Power**

The PA amplifier gets 28v dc from the battery bus.

Audio

For flight crew and attendant announcements, the PA system receives audio from these sources:

- Flight compartment microphones
- Attendant microphones.

Priority circuits in the PA amplifier receive the audio and PTT inputs and set the priority. The PA amplifier amplifies the audio with the highest priority and sends the audio to the passenger service units and lavatory speakers.

The PA amplifier supplies a side tone through the remote electronics unit (REU) to the flight crew headsets.

Amplified audio goes through the REU mute relays to the attendant speakers.

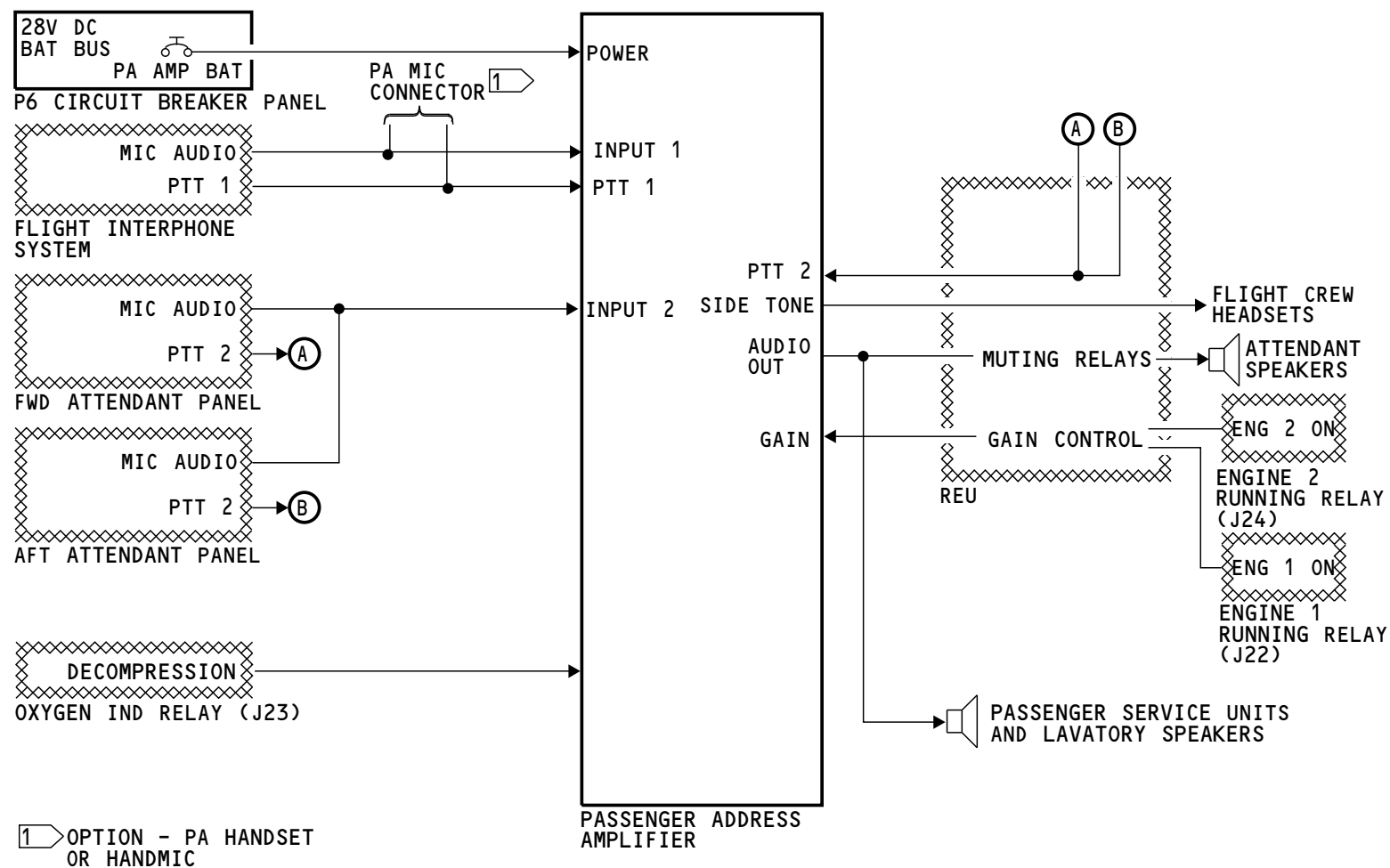
Gain Control

The PA amplifier receives gain signals from the REU. The REU receives inputs from the engine running relays. When engine number 1 or 2 operates, the PA amplifier gain increases by 6 db to compensate for the increase in the ambient noise level.

The oxygen indicator relay sends a signal to the PA amplifier when the cabin loses cabin pressure. This increases the amplifier gain by 3 db to adjust for the increase in cabin noise level.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

PA SYSTEM - CREW ANNOUNCEMENT INTERFACE



M80355 S0004623823_V1

PA SYSTEM - CREW ANNOUNCEMENT INTERFACE

23-31-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PA SYSTEM - INDICATION INTERFACE

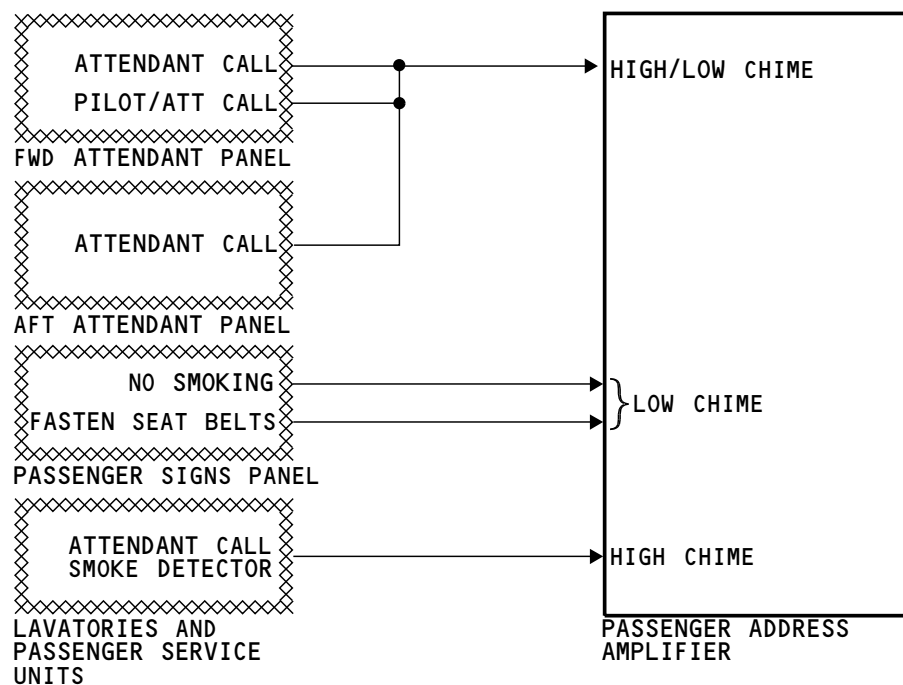
Chimes

The PA amplifier supplies chimes for these conditions:

- Lavatory smoke - high chime
- NO SMOKING/FASTEN SEAT BELTS switches - low chime
- Attendant call switch from lavatories or passenger service units - high chime
- Attendant call switch from attendant panels or flight compartment - high/low chime.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

PA SYSTEM - INDICATION INTERFACE



PA SYSTEM - INDICATION INTERFACE

M80364 S0004623827_V1

23-31-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER ADDRESS AMPLIFIER

Purpose

The PA amplifier prioritizes, amplifies, and sends audio signals to airplane speakers and systems. It also supplies chimes to the attendants and passengers.

SIA ALL; AIRPLANES WITH PA P/N 256-5

Controls and Indications

The function select switch has these positions:

- SPKR TEST
- NORM
- AMP TEST.

The SPKR TEST position applies a reduced level calibrated tone to the main and auxiliary amplifiers.

NORM is the normal switch position of the PA amplifier and connects the main amplifier to the cabin speakers.

The AMP TEST position (momentary) disconnects the main output and connects a dummy load across the main output. A calibrated signal goes to the main amplifier and performance shows on the light emitting diode display at the zero decibel level.

Master Level Control

Turn this potentiometer to increase or decrease the gain of the PA amplifier. Normally, you will turn the potentiometer until the display shows 0 dB while the function select switch is in the AMP TEST position.

SIA ALL

Characteristics

The PA amplifier is 2.3 inches (5.7 cm) wide, 7.6 inches (19.3 cm) high, and 12.8 inches (32.4 cm) long. It weighs 6.5 pounds (3 kilograms).

Chimes

The chime circuits in the PA amplifier make two frequencies for the chimes.

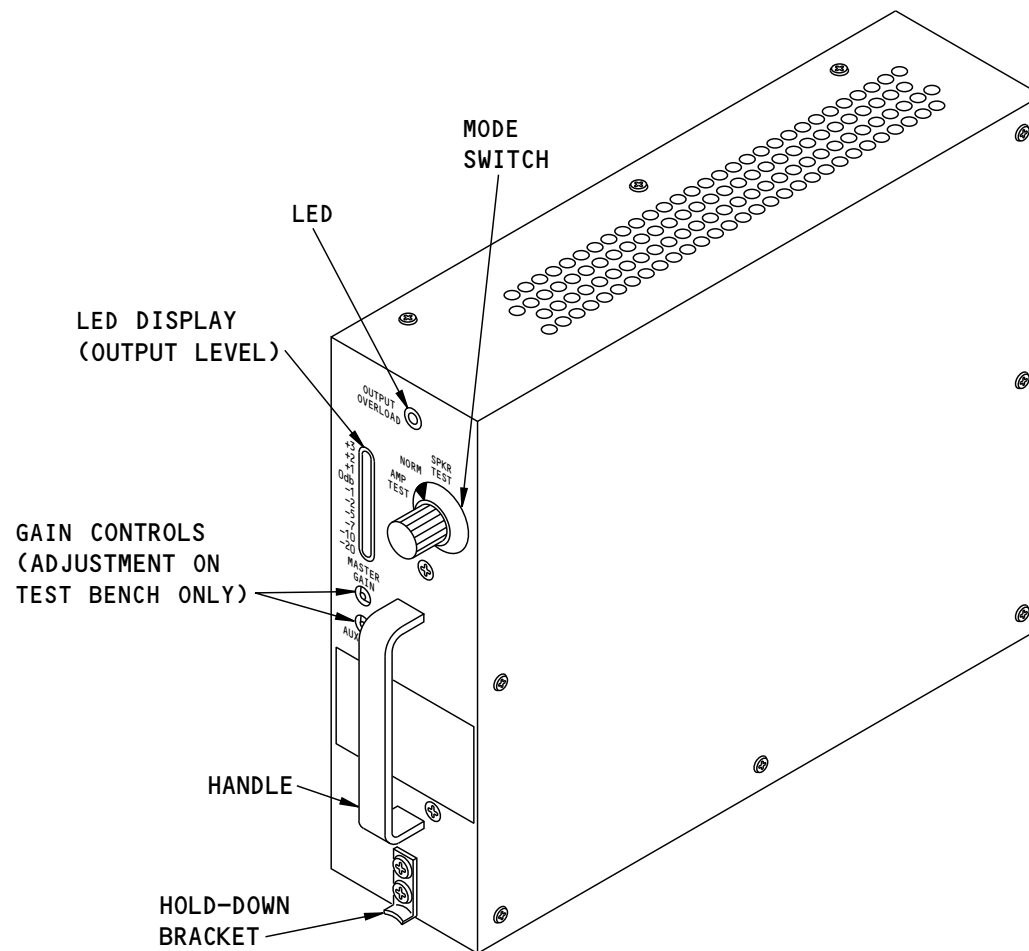
23-31-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER ADDRESS AMPLIFIER



PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER ADDRESS AMPLIFIER

1375297 S0000248758_V1

23-31-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL; AIRPLANES WITH PA P/N 256-5

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER SERVICE UNIT SPEAKERS****Purpose**

The PA system passenger service unit (PSU) speakers supply audio to the passenger cabin.

Features

Spring clips hold the PSU assembly closed. To open the assembly, push a small rod in the access holes. Hold the PSU panel and push the rod against the spring clips to open the assembly.

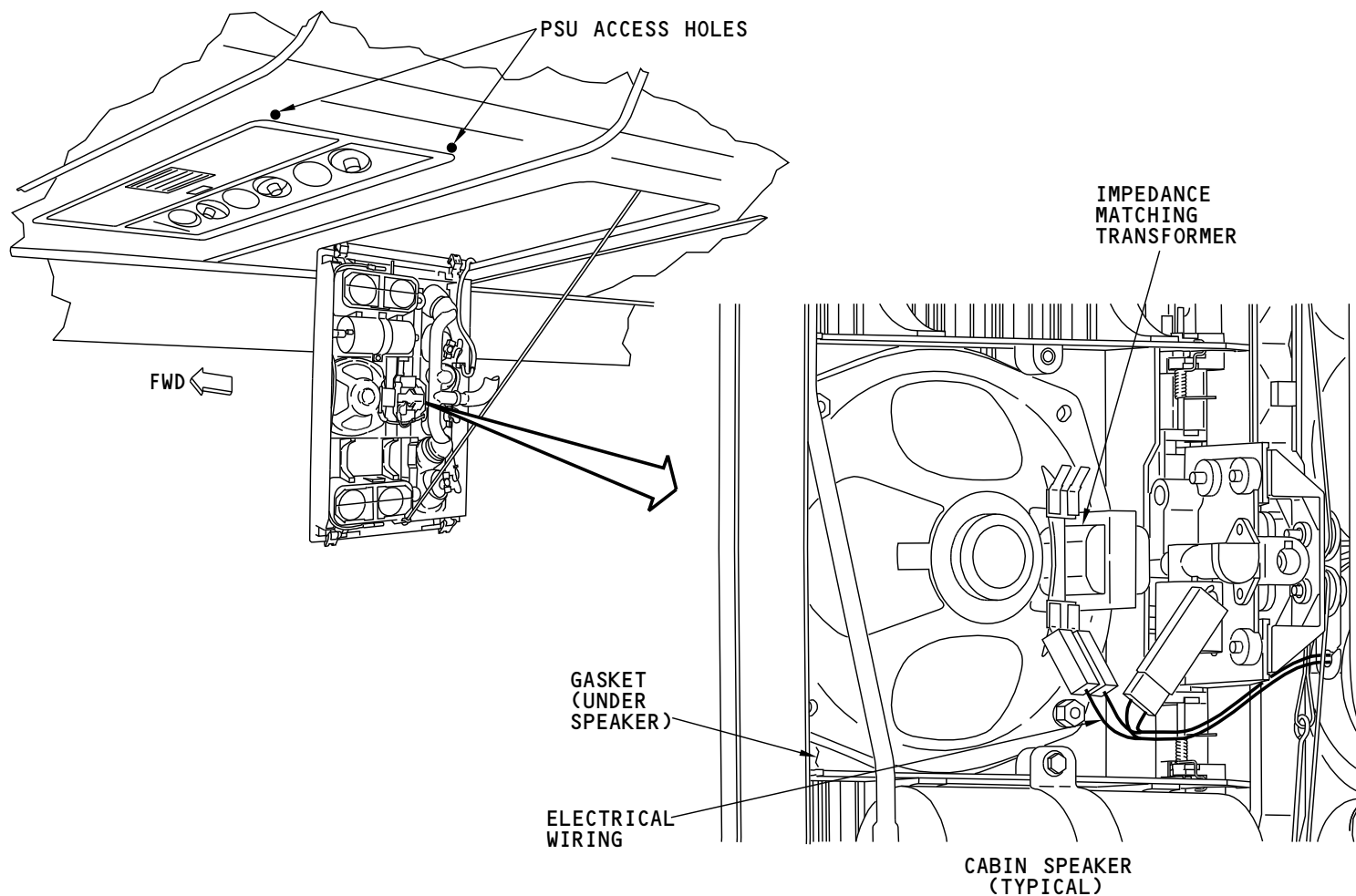
Each speaker has a transformer. The transformer matches the speaker impedance to the line impedance. Two electrical wires connect the speaker transformer terminals to the PA amplifier. Install and remove the speaker and transformer as one assembly.

Training Information Point

When you remove the electrical wires from the speaker transformer terminals, make sure to record the terminal connections. When you replace the speakers, put the electrical wires to the same terminals.

When you remove the speaker from the PSU assembly, make sure you do not damage the speaker gasket. This gasket is between the speaker and the PSU assembly.

PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER SERVICE UNIT SPEAKERS



M80262 S0004623867_V1

PA SYSTEM - PASSENGER SERVICE UNIT SPEAKERS

23-31-00

23-31-00-009

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**PA SYSTEM - LAVATORY SPEAKERS****Purpose**

The PA system lavatory speaker supplies audio to the lavatories.

Features

Each Lavatory Service Unit (LSU) has a 5-inch speaker.

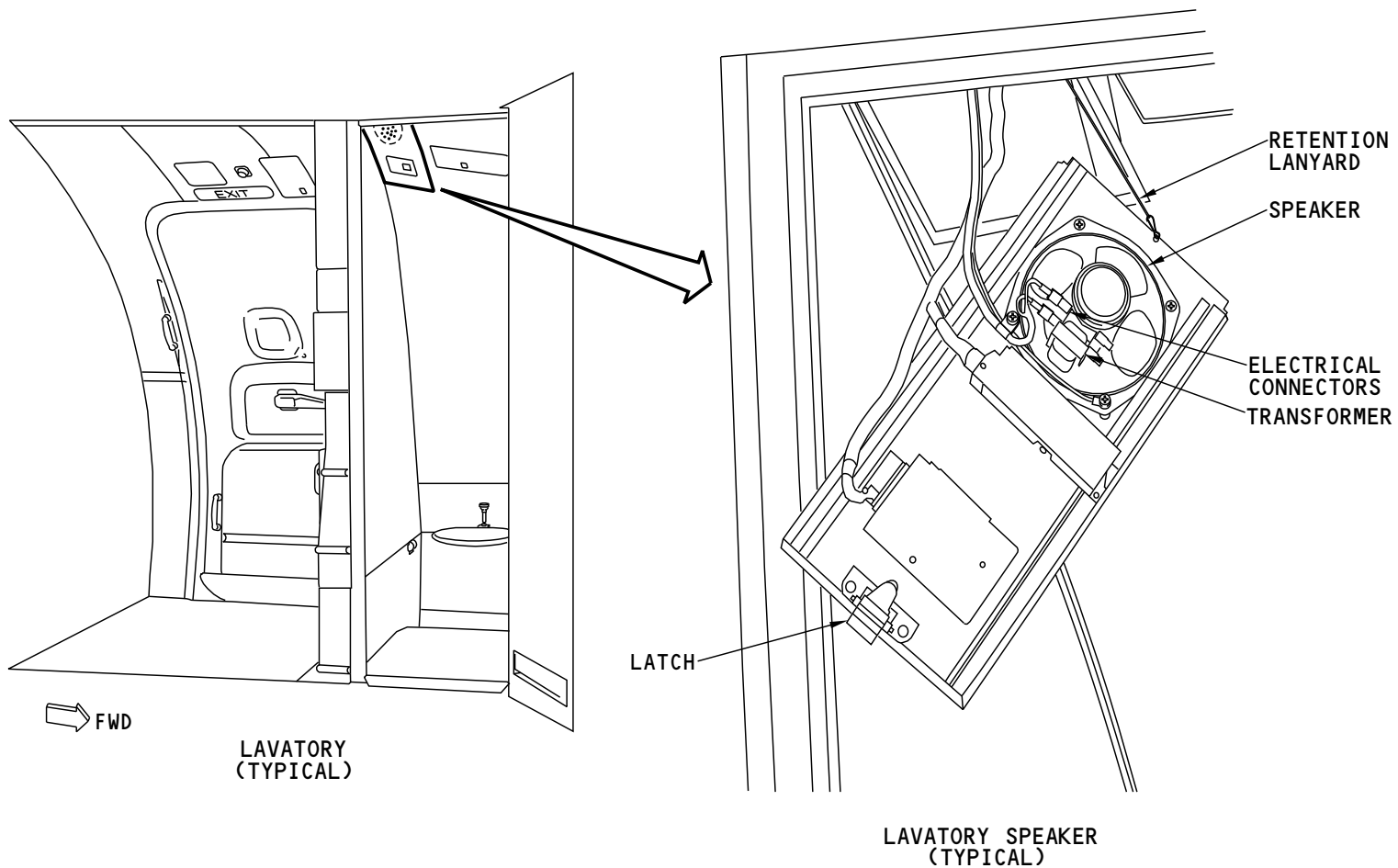
A latch holds the LSU assembly closed. To open the assembly, put a small rod in the access hole. Hold the LSU panel, and push the rod against the spring clip to release the latch. Lower the LSU panel assembly until the lanyard holds the LSU.

Each speaker has a transformer. The transformer matches the speaker impedance to the line impedance. Two electrical wires connect the speaker transformer terminals to the PA amplifier. Install and remove the speaker and transformer as one assembly.

Training Information Point

When you remove the electrical wires from the speaker transformer terminals, make sure to record the terminal connections. When you replace the speaker, put the electrical wires to the same terminals.

PA SYSTEM - LAVATORY SPEAKERS



M80304 S0004623870_V1

PA SYSTEM - LAVATORY SPEAKERS

23-31-00

23-31-00-017

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PA SYSTEM - ATTENDANT SPEAKERS

Purpose

The PA system attendant speakers supply audio to the attendant stations and galleys.

Features

There is a 5-inch speaker in each attendant station and galley. The audio signal for the attendant speakers goes through mute relays in the remote electronics unit. The mute relays stop the attendant speaker from operating during PA announcements. This prevents feedback through the speakers.

The attendant speaker is in the doorway header panel. To replace the speaker, first remove the doorway header panel. This panel is held by screws and bolts. Plug buttons and a seal depressor cover these retainers.

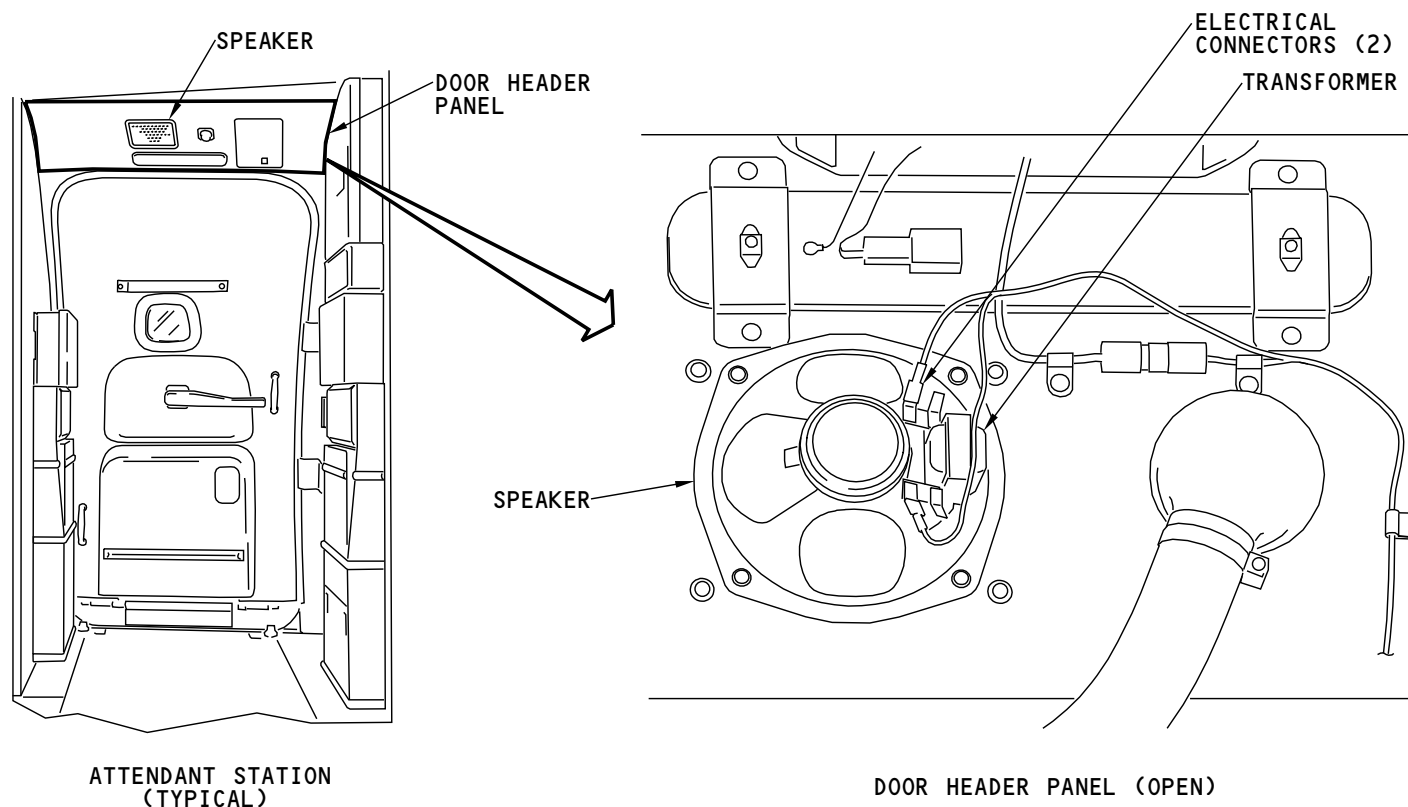
Each speaker has a transformer. The transformer matches the speaker impedance to the line impedance. Two electrical wires connect the speaker transformer terminals to the PA amplifier. Install and remove the speaker and transformer as one assembly.

Four screws hold the speaker to the doorway header panel.

Training Information Point

When you remove the electrical wires from the speaker transformer terminals, make sure to record the terminal connections. When you replace the speakers, put the electrical wires to the same terminals.

PA SYSTEM - ATTENDANT SPEAKERS



M80305 S0004623872_V1

PA SYSTEM - ATTENDANT SPEAKERS

23-31-00

23-31-00-018

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-31-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

PA SYSTEM - AMPLIFIER FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

Power

The Passenger Address (PA) amplifier receives 28v dc for power.

General

The PA system supplies these outputs:

- Voice audio
- Chimes.

Each audio output has this order of priority:

- Flight compartment announcements
- Flight attendant announcements

The chime audio operates at the same time as other audio. It has no effect on the priority logic.

The input circuits receive the input audio. The amplifier priority logic circuits get the Push-To-Talk (PTT) signals.

The priority logic circuits supply a signal to the input circuits. The signal lets the audio with the highest priority go out.

The amplifier and control circuits get the audio from the input circuits. The amplifier circuits amplify the audio and supply it through the Remote Electronics Unit (REU) to the attendant speakers. The audio also goes directly to the Passenger Service Unit (PSU) speakers and the lavatory speakers.

Gain Control

The gain control circuit increases the amplifier gain by 6 db when an engine is on. The engine 2 running relay controls the REU gain control relay and the engine 1 running relay controls the signal on the relay contact. With the engines off, the engine running relays send grounds to the REU. This energizes the REU gain control relay. The energized relay contact sends a ground from the engine 1 running relay to the PA amplifier.

The Common Display System (CDS)' Display Electronic Unit (DEU)s control the engine running relays. An engine running relay energizes when one of these occurs:

- The engine $N2 \geq 50\%$
- The engine start lever is in idle, the fire switch is reset, and $N2 \geq 50\%$
- The airplane is on the ground, and the start lever is in the idle position for five minutes.

When either engine running relay energizes, the gain control relay removes the ground to the PA amplifier. This increases the amplifier gain by 6 db.

If decompression occurs, the oxygen indication relay energizes. At that time, the relay sends a ground to the amplifier and control circuits in the PA amplifier to increase the amplifier gain by an additional 3 db.

Speaker Mute

The forward and aft muting relays, in the REU, receive audio signals from the PA amplifier. If the audio is from the flight compartment, the mute control relay energizes. This prevents operation of the forward and aft mute relays.

An announcement from an attendant station stops the operation of the speakers at that station. The PTT signal causes the forward or aft mute relay to energize. This stops the audio output to the speakers at that station.

Chimes

The chime circuits supply these chime signals:

- High chime
- Low chime
- High/low chime.

High chimes operate when there is an attendant call signal from a PSU or Lavatory Service Unit (LSU).

Low chimes operate when the no smoking or fasten seat belts signs come on.

23-31-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PA SYSTEM - AMPLIFIER FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

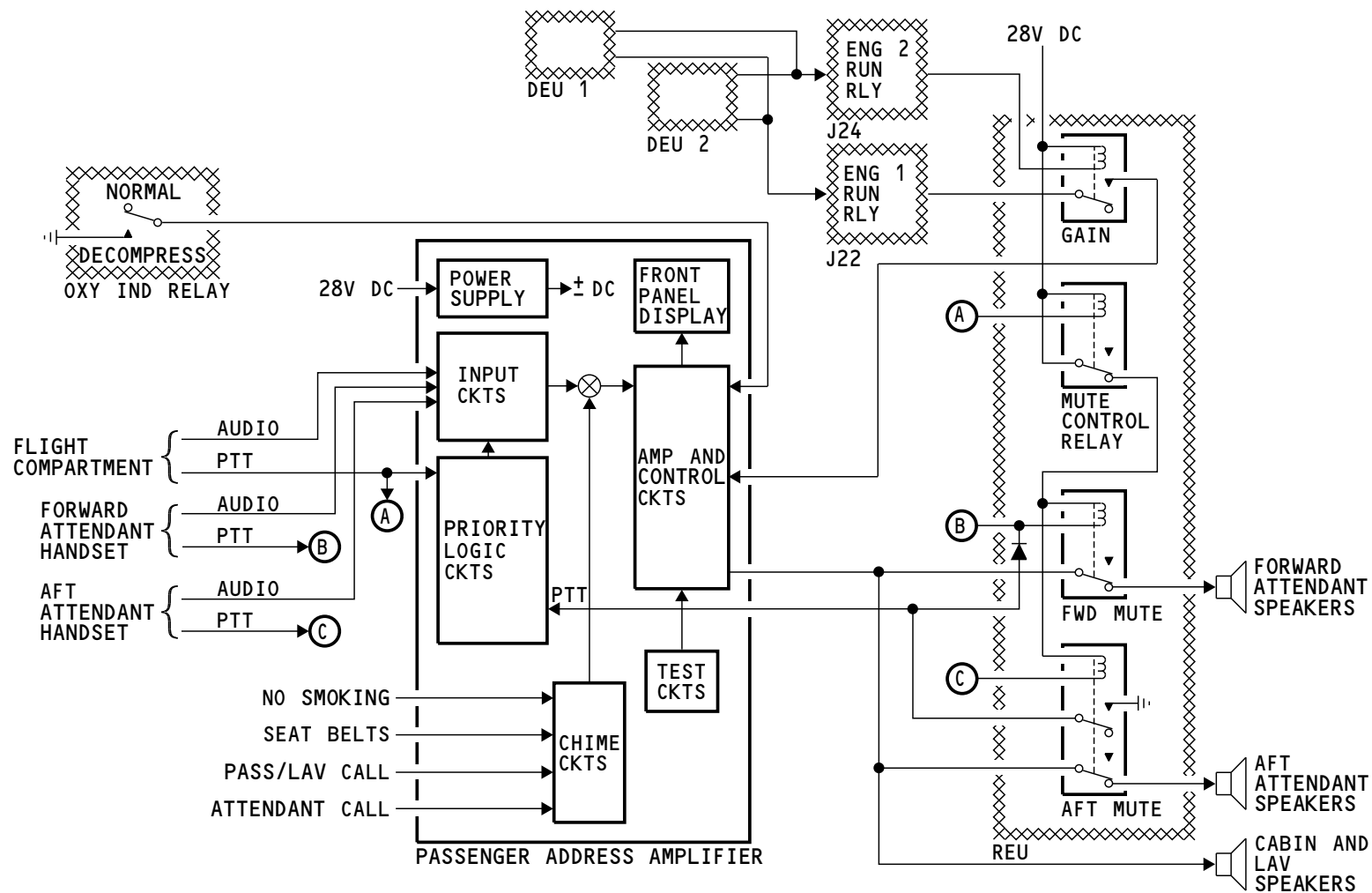
High/low chimes operate when there is an attendant call from the flight compartment or another attendant station.

The high/low chime operates three times for alert calls from the pilots or attendants.

Chime signals operate at the same time as other audio signals.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

PA SYSTEM - AMPLIFIER FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M80267 S0004623874_V1

PA SYSTEM - AMPLIFIER FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-31-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**PA SYSTEM - OPERATION - ANNOUNCEMENTS****Crew Announcements**

Crew announcements are made from these locations:

- Flight compartment
- Forward attendant stations.

Flight Compartment

The pilot can make PA announcements with these:

- Boom microphone (mic)
- Oxygen mask mic
- PA hand mic
- Flight interphone hand mic.

To make an announcement with the boom mic or oxygen mask mic, you must first set the audio control panel. You select the microphone source (boom or mask), and set the microphone selector switch (PA). You adjust for received PA volume with the PA receiver volume control. To key the microphone, you use either the audio control panel PTT switch or the control wheel MIC switch.

With the audio control panel microphone selector switch set, you can also make an announcement with the flight interphone hand mic. Push the hand mic push to talk switch and speak through the microphone.

The audio control panel does not have to be set to make an announcement with the PA hand mic. To quickly make an announcement, push the PA hand mic push to talk switch and speak through the microphone.

Flight Attendant Stations

Flight attendant PA announcements come from the forward and the aft attendant PA handsets.

Do these steps to make a PA handset announcement:

- Push the PA switch (8) on the handset
- Push and hold the PASSENGER ADDRESS PUSH TO TALK switch

- Speak through the handset mouth piece.

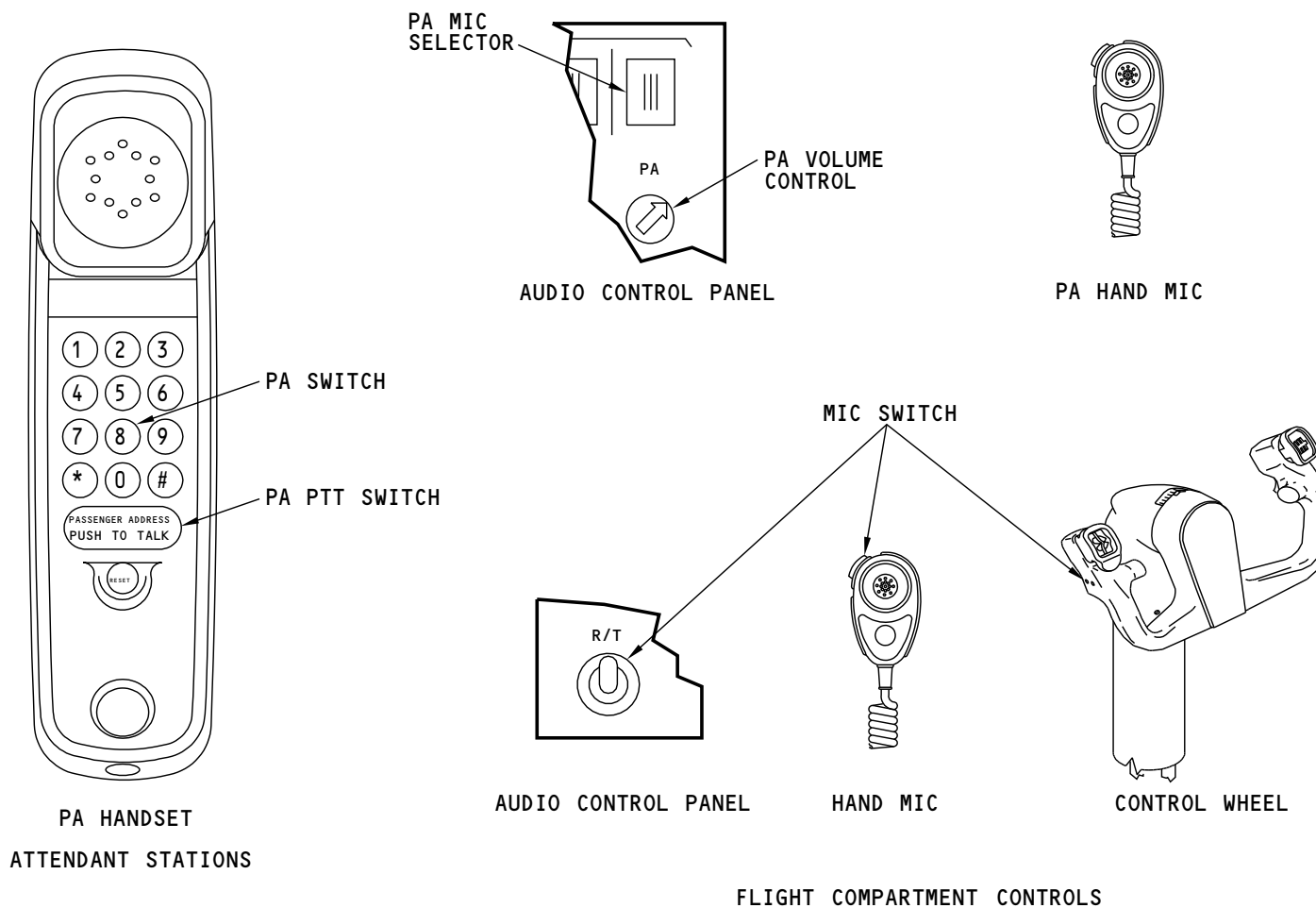
23-31-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

PA SYSTEM - OPERATION - ANNOUNCEMENTS



M80289 S0004623896_V1

PA SYSTEM - OPERATION - ANNOUNCEMENTS

23-31-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**PA SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - AMPLIFIER TEST****General**

The PA system tests help you to find a system fault. You use the PA amplifier function select switch to test the amplifier and the speakers.

SIA ALL; AIRPLANES WITH PA P/N 256-5**Controls and Indications**

The function select switch has these positions:

- SPKR TEST
- NORM
- AMP TEST

The SPKR TEST position applies a reduced level calibrated tone to the main and auxiliary amplifiers. If you do not hear this tone, there may be a problem with either the PA amplifier, the speaker, or the interface wiring.

NORM is the normal switch position of the PA amplifier and connects the main amplifier to the cabin speakers.

In the AMP TEST position, the output decibel level shows on the LED display. This decibel reading is normally 0 dB. If you do not see the correct decibel reading, there may be a problem with either the PA amplifier or the output level adjustment.

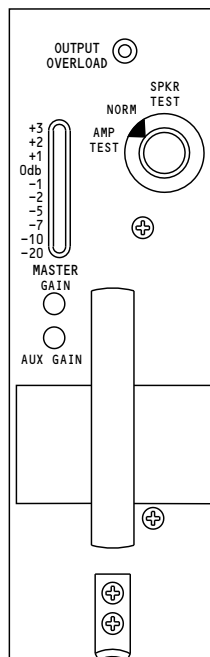
Use the master gain adjustment to change the output level.

SIA ALL**23-31-00**

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

PA SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - AMPLIFIER TEST



1375332 S0000248767_V1

PA SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - AMPLIFIER TEST

23-31-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL; AIRPLANES WITH PA P/N 256-5

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



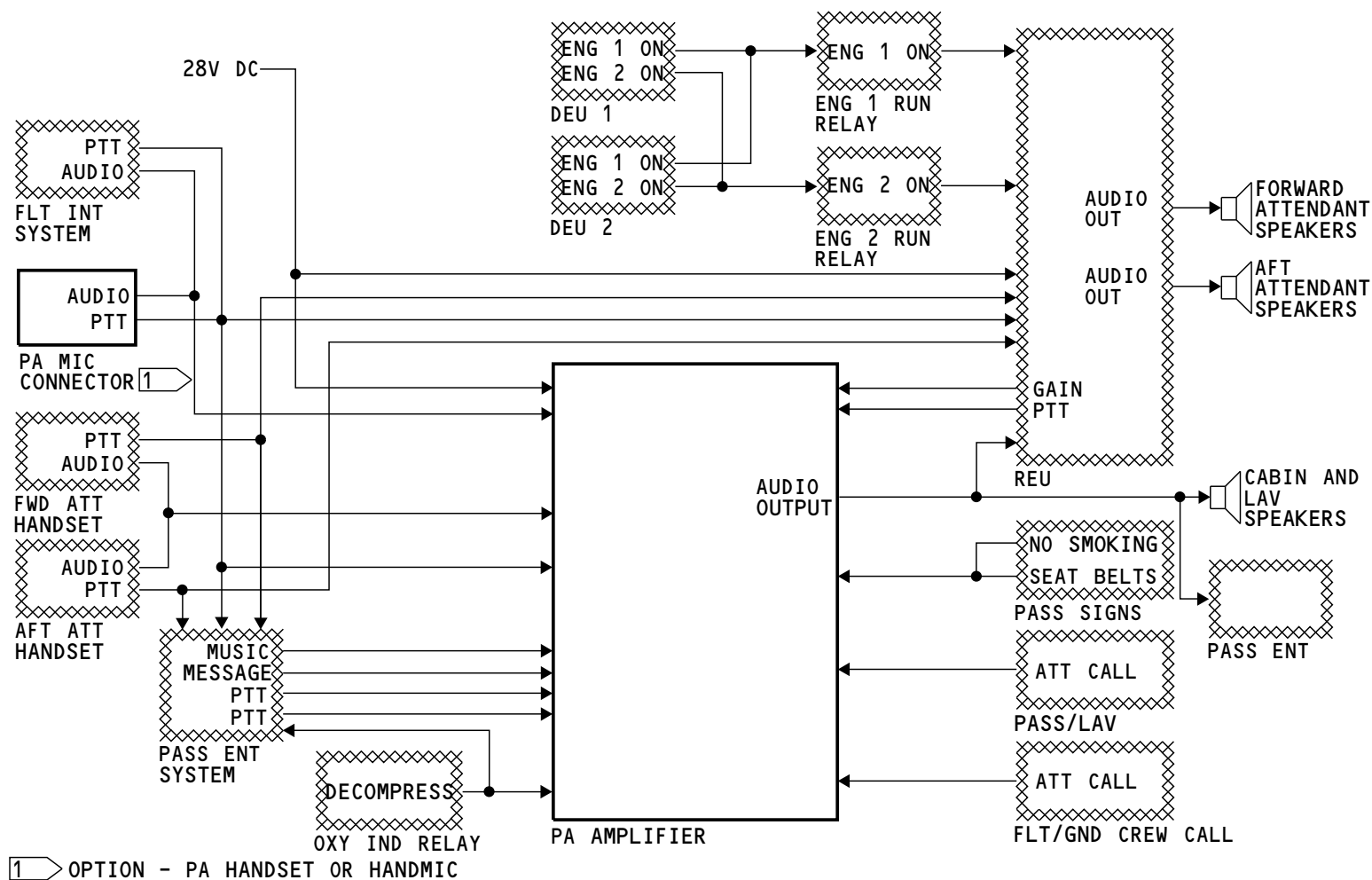
PA SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

General

This graphic is for reference purposes only.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

PA SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY



M80350 S0004623970_V1

PA SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

23-31-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-41-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

General

The ground crew uses the service interphone system to talk to each other and to the flight crew. Service interphone jacks are at different locations on the airplane.

The flight attendants use the service interphone system to speak with each other and the pilots.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- AAU - audio accessory unit
- ACP - audio control panel
- ampl - amplifier
- APU - auxiliary power unit
- att - attendant
- bat - battery
- capt - captain
- dc - direct current
- flt - flight
- fwd - forward
- inph - interphone
- lts - lights
- mic - microphone
- PA - passenger address
- PTT - push-to-talk
- REU - remote electronics unit
- v - volt
- warn - warning

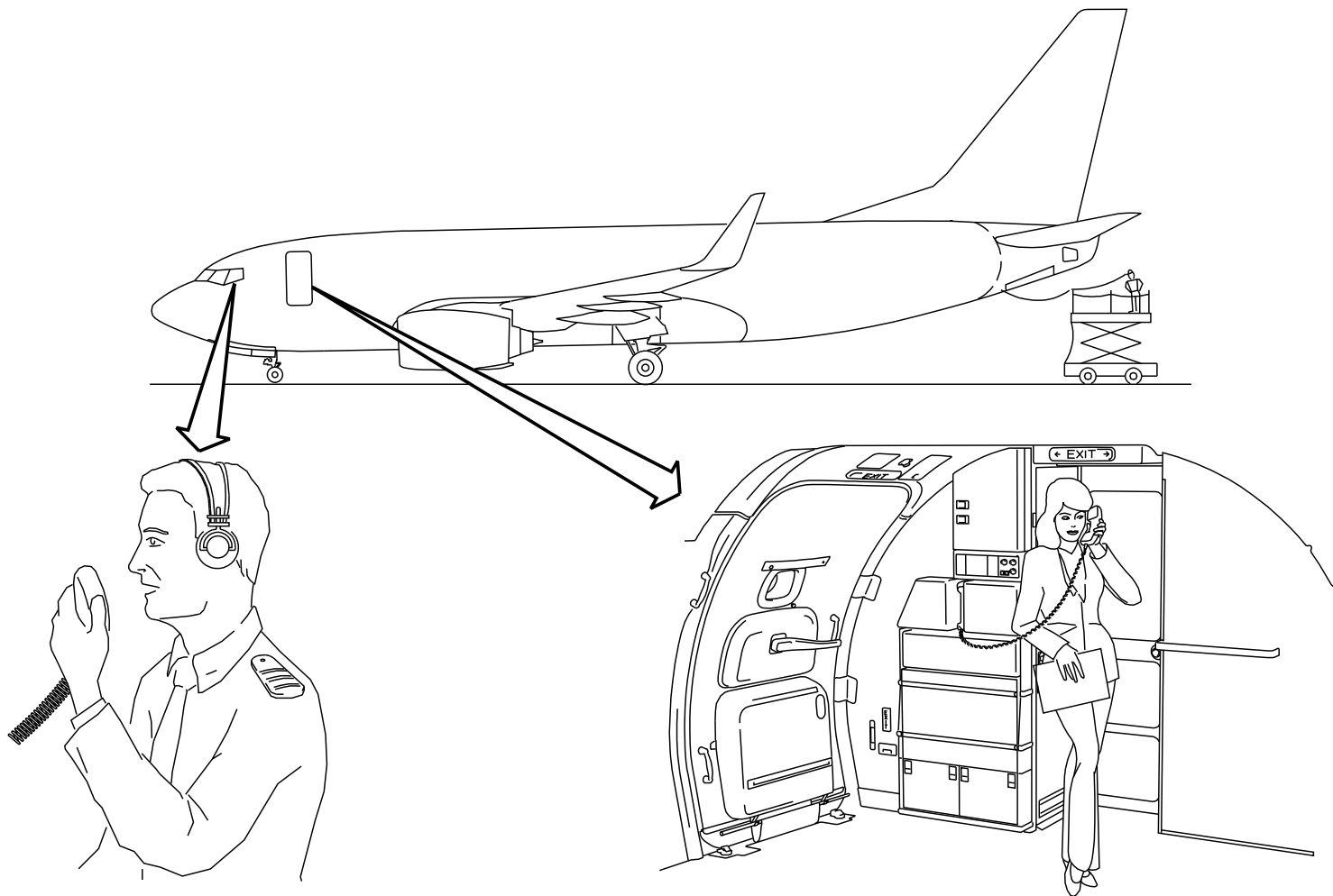
23-41-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



M80676 S0004624294_V1

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-41-00-001

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-41-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION****General**

The service interphone system is for these personnel:

- Flight crew
- Attendants
- Ground crew.

The flight crew selects the service interphone function from the Audio Control Panel (ACP). Flight interphone microphones send audio to the Remote Electronics Unit (REU). Flight interphone headsets and speakers get audio from the REU.

The flight crew can also use a handset to talk on the service interphone system. The interphone jack connects to the system without ACP control.

The attendants operate a handset to connect into the system. An attendant panel connects the handset to the REU.

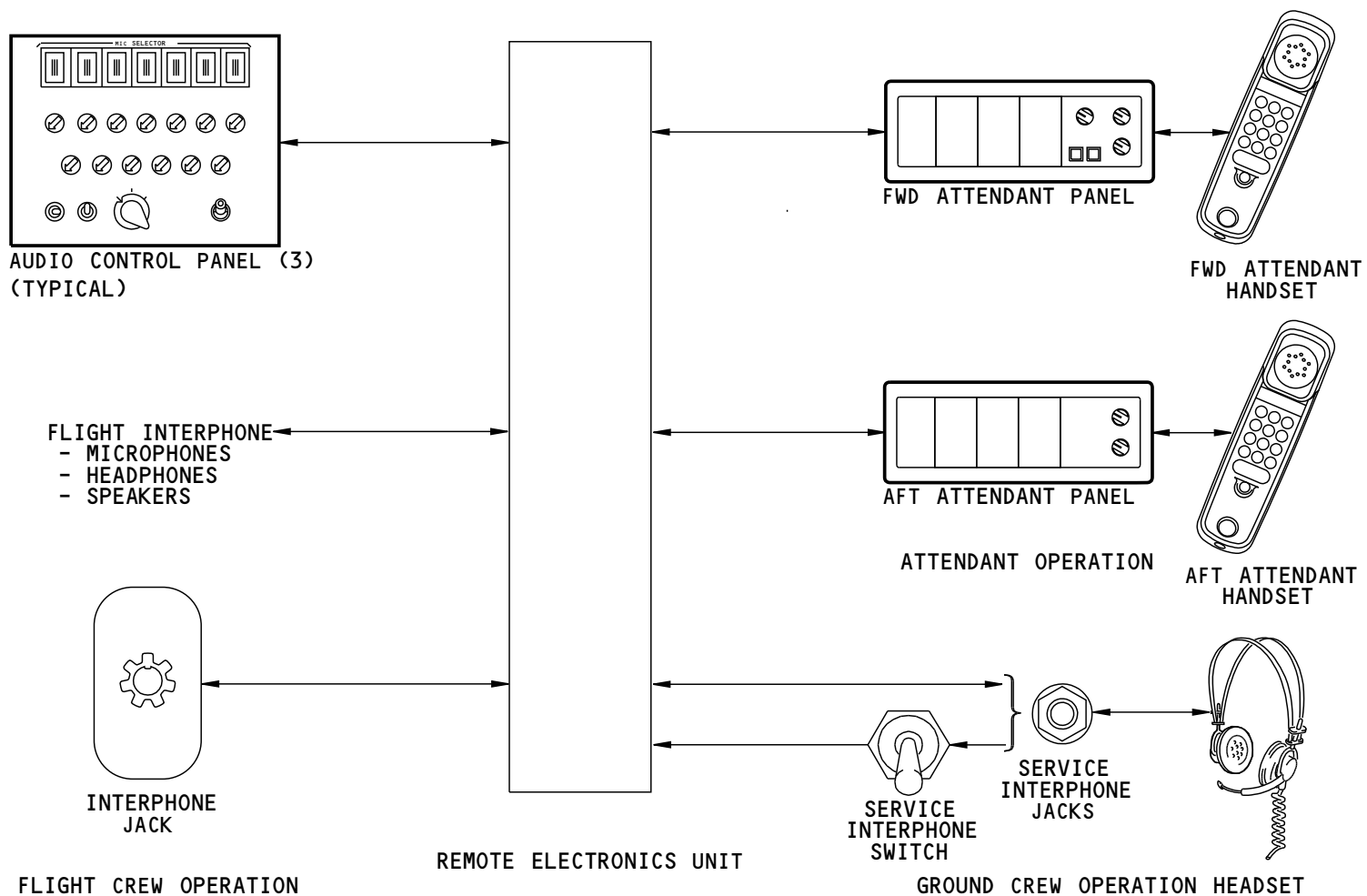
The ground crew microphones connect into the system through the service interphone switch. You must turn on the service interphone switch to operate the system from the service station jacks. The headset gets audio from the REU.

The REU does these functions:

- Combines audio from the microphones
- Amplifies the audio signal
- Sends audio to handsets, headsets, and speakers.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



M80684 S0004624296_V2

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-41-00

23-41-00-002

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS

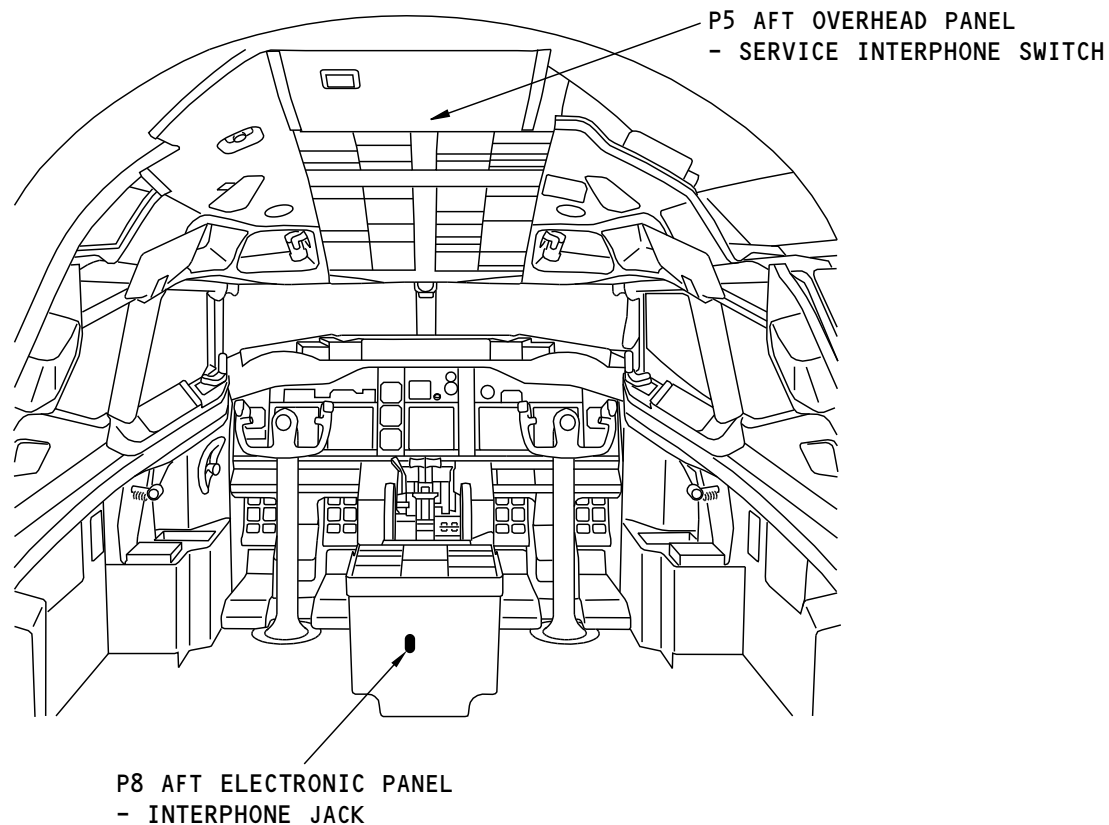
Service Interphone Component Locations

The service interphone switch is on the P5 aft overhead panel.

The interphone jack for the handset is on the aft face of the P8 aft electronic panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M80695 S0004624315_V2

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-41-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - HANDSET LOCATIONS

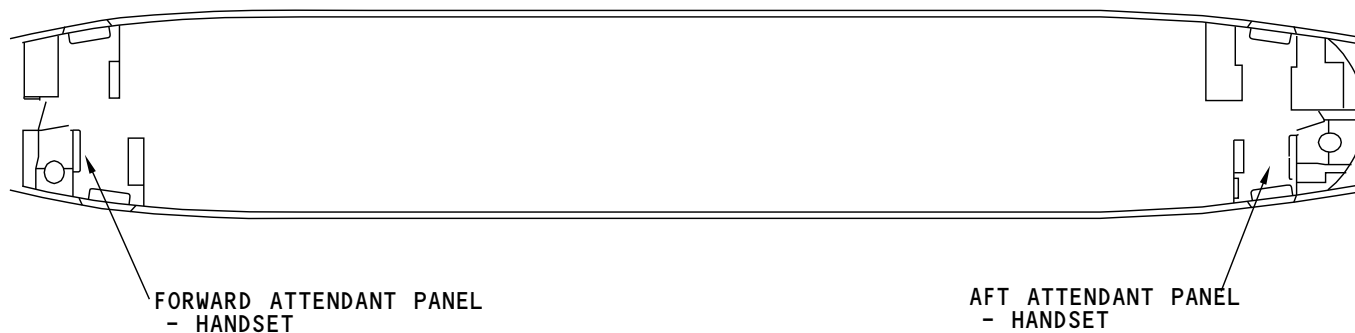
Handset Locations

These locations have handsets:

- The forward attendant station - below the attendant panel, near the forward entry door.
- The aft attendant station - below the attendant panel, near the aft entry door.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - HANDSET LOCATIONS



M80697 S0004624318_V1

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - HANDSET LOCATIONS

23-41-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - JACK LOCATIONS

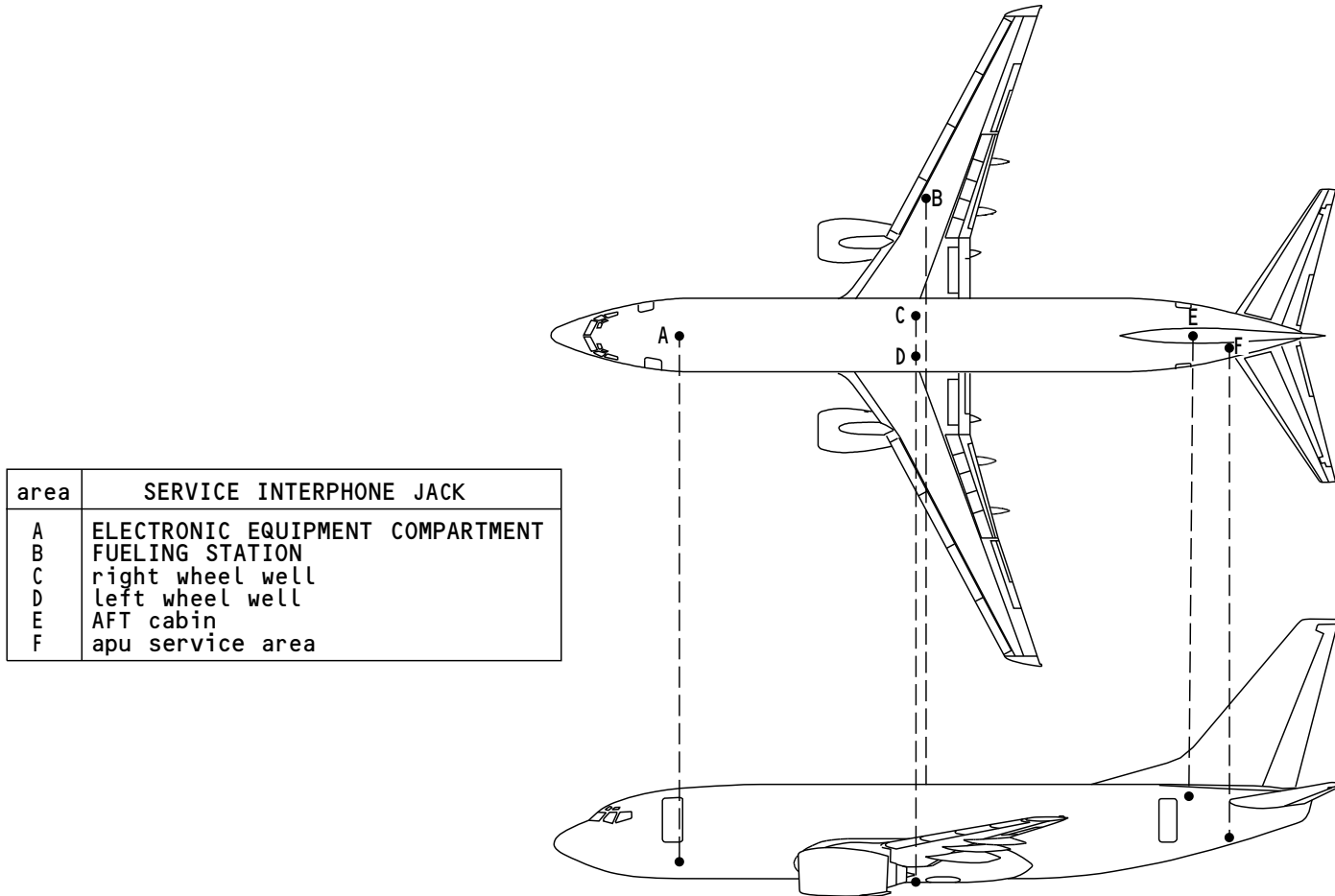
Jack Locations

These locations have service interphone jacks:

- Electronic equipment compartment
- Fueling station, behind the access door on the right wing
- Right wheel well, on the forward wheel well fairing exterior
- Left wheel well, on the forward wheel well fairing exterior
- Aft cabin, on the ceiling above the attendant station
- Auxiliary Power Unit (APU) service area, adjacent to the 48 section access door.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - JACK LOCATIONS



M80699 S0004624321_V1

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - JACK LOCATIONS

23-41-00

23-41-00-005

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTERFACES****Flight Crew Interface**

The flight crew uses microphones and headsets with audio control panel Audio Control Panel (ACP) control. When the ACP transmitter selector is set to service interphone, the flight crew can use a Push-To-Talk (PTT) switch to speak with the attendants and the service personnel. The ACP sends the transmitter selection data to the Remote Electronics Unit (REU) on the control input. The ACP sends the PTT signal (R/T-PTT) to the REU.

There is an interphone jack on the aft face of the P8 aft electronic panel. The flight crew can use a handset at this jack to talk on the service interphone.

Attendant Interface

The attendants use a handset at their station. Attendants speak with each other, the flight crew, and the service personnel.

Service Interface

Service personnel use headsets at service interphone jacks locations. When the service interphone switch is ON, they can speak with each other, the flight crew, and the attendants.

The service interphone switch disconnects microphone inputs from the external service interphone jacks. The service interphone audio to the headsets does not go through the switch.

Remote Electronics Unit

The REU has an Audio Accessory Unit (AAU) card that gets microphone inputs from attendant, service, and flight crew interfaces. The AAU card mixes them together, amplifies, and sends the audio signal to these places:

- Forward and aft attendant panel
- Interphone jack on the aft face of P8
- External service interphone jacks
- Captain, first officer, and observer station card.

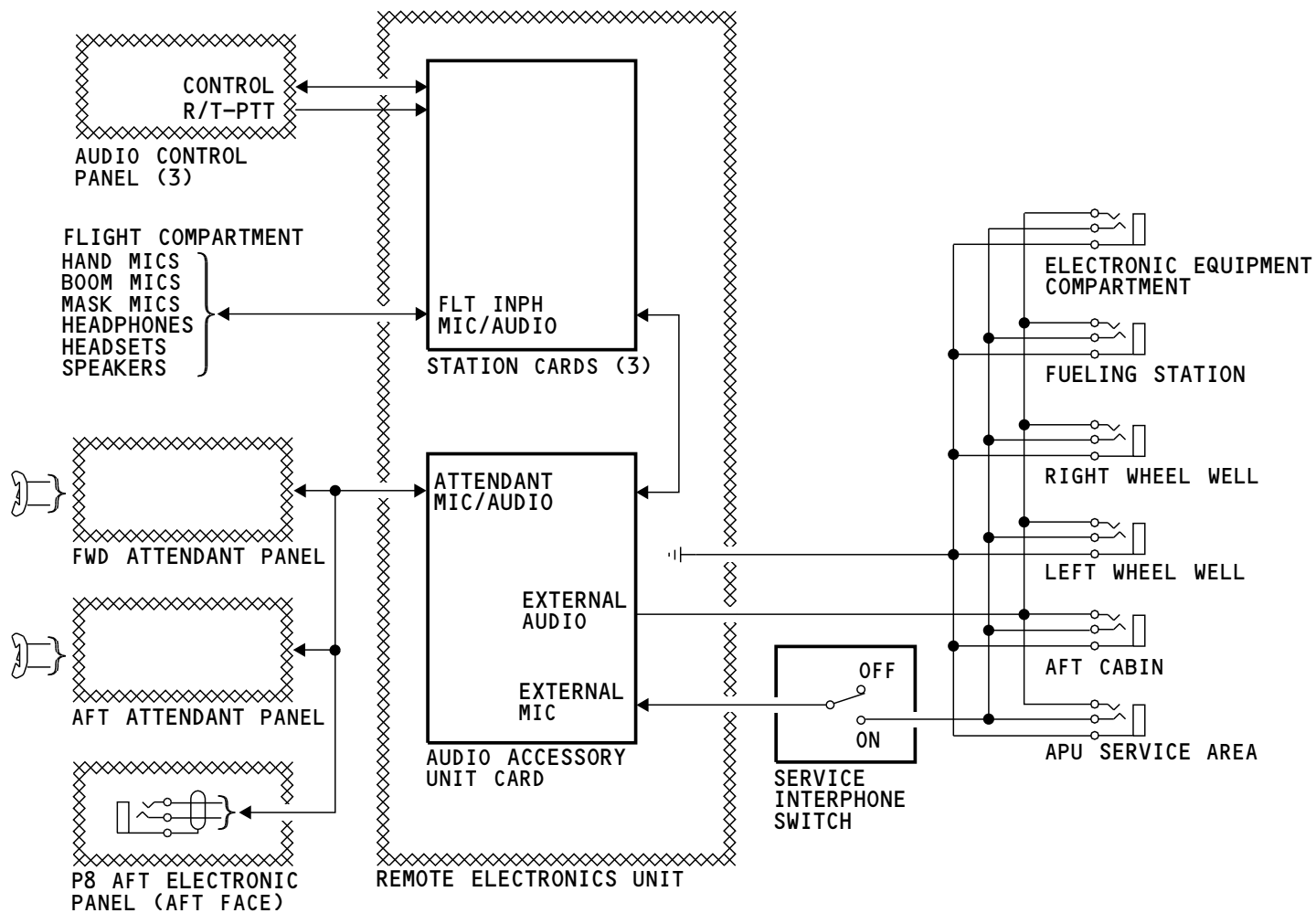
23-41-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTERFACES



M80702 S0004624325_V1

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTERFACES

23-41-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The Remote Electronics Unit (REU) processes service interphone audio signals. The Audio Accessory Unit (AAU) circuit card in the REU contains service interphone circuits.

The service interphone circuits have an audio mixer. The audio mixer combines the microphone audio from the flight crew station cards, the attendant stations, and the service interphone jacks. The service interphone circuits increase the level of the audio signal. The audio goes to the flight crew station cards, the attendant stations, and the service interphone jacks.

Operation

The AAU card mixes these service interphone inputs:

- Flight compartment microphones
- Flight compartment handset microphone
- Attendant handset microphones.
- Service interphone microphones when the service interphone switch is on.

Audio from the mixer goes to three audio amplifiers. The amplifier outputs go to:

- Flight compartment speakers and headsets
- Service interphone headsets
- Attendant handsets.

The gain controls are on the REU front panel. They change the amplifier gain. You do these adjustments in the shop. Use the calibration procedures in the maintenance manual.

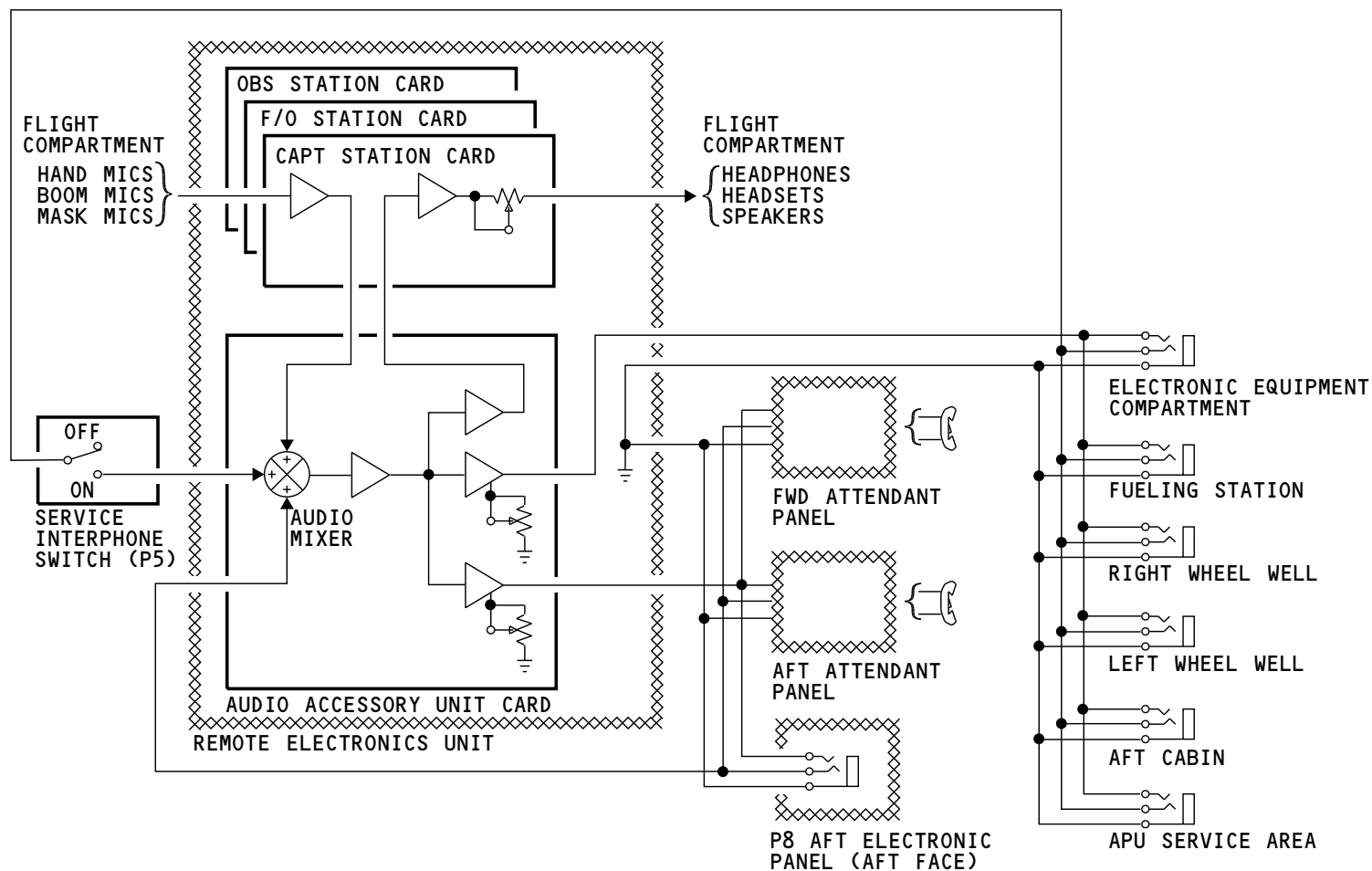
23-41-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M80705 S0004624329_V1

SERVICE INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-41-00



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-42-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTRODUCTION

Purpose

The flight crew call system tells:

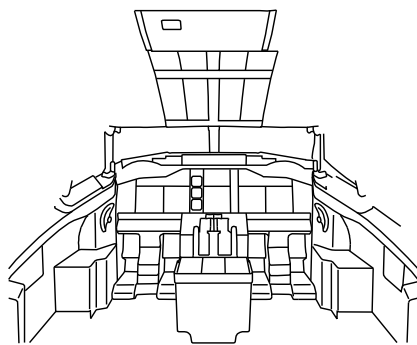
- Flight compartment personnel that there is a call from the cabin attendants
- Attendants there is a call from the flight compartment or another attendant panel.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

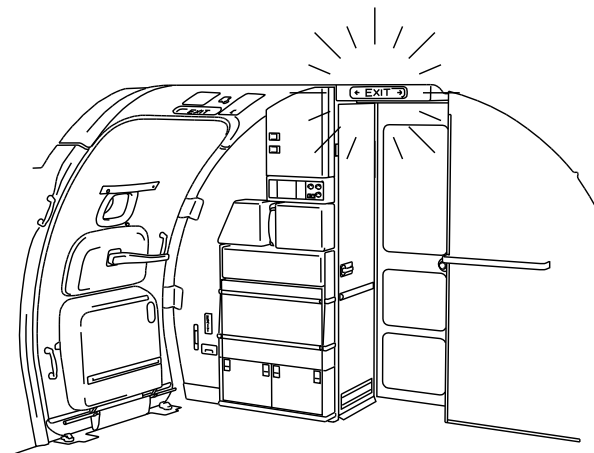
- ADIRS - air data inertial reference system
- attend - attendant
- flt - flight
- grd - ground
- IHC - integrated handset controller
- PA - passenger address
- PTT - push-to-talk
- v dc - volts direct current

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTRODUCTION



FLIGHT COMPARTMENT



CABIN

M80707 S0004624336_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTRODUCTION

23-42-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM/CABIN INTERPHONE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The flight crew call system lets the flight crew and attendants call each other. These are the calls that can be made:

- Cabin Alert system
- Flight compartment to attendant stations
- Attendant station to flight compartment
- Attendant station to attendant station.

Aural and visual indications from the system tell the flight and cabin crew to use the cabin interphone.

Cabin Alert System

The Cabin Alert System provides aural and visual indications in the flight compartment and the passenger compartment when it is activated.

This system consists of three push button switches located near the attendant seats in the passenger cabin and a switch on the PRIORITY COMM (P5) overhead panel in the flight compartment.

To activate the system, the attendant pushes any of the three switches in the cabin. When the system is activated, these are the indications:

- Aural Warning module makes a chime in the flight compartment.
- Aural Warning module makes a chime in the passenger compartment over PA speakers.
- Blue indicator light on PRIORITY COMM (P5) overhead panel comes on.
- Call lights on the forward and aft EXIT locator signs in the passenger cabin come on.

To deactivate the system, the flight crew pushes the switch on the PRIORITY (P5) panel. When deactivated, the lights in the flight compartment turns off.

If the system is not deactivated by the flight crew, it stays on for 40 seconds and becomes deactivated.

Flight Compartment to Attendant Stations

You push the ATTEND switch on the passenger signs panel to call the attendant stations from the flight compartment. When you make this call, these are the indications in the passenger cabin:

- Pink light on the forward and the aft exit locator signs comes on
- Passenger address system sends a HI/LO chime to the cabin speakers.

Attendant Station to Flight Compartment

You use the handset to call the flight compartment from an attendant station. When you make this call, these are the indications in the flight compartment:

- Cabin call light on the audio control panel comes on
- Aural warning module makes a HI chime.

Attendant Station to Attendant Station

You use the handset to call one attendant station from another attendant station. When you make this call, these are the indications in the passenger cabin:

- Pink light on the exit locator sign comes on at the other attendant station
- Passenger address system sends a HI/LO chime to the cabin speakers.

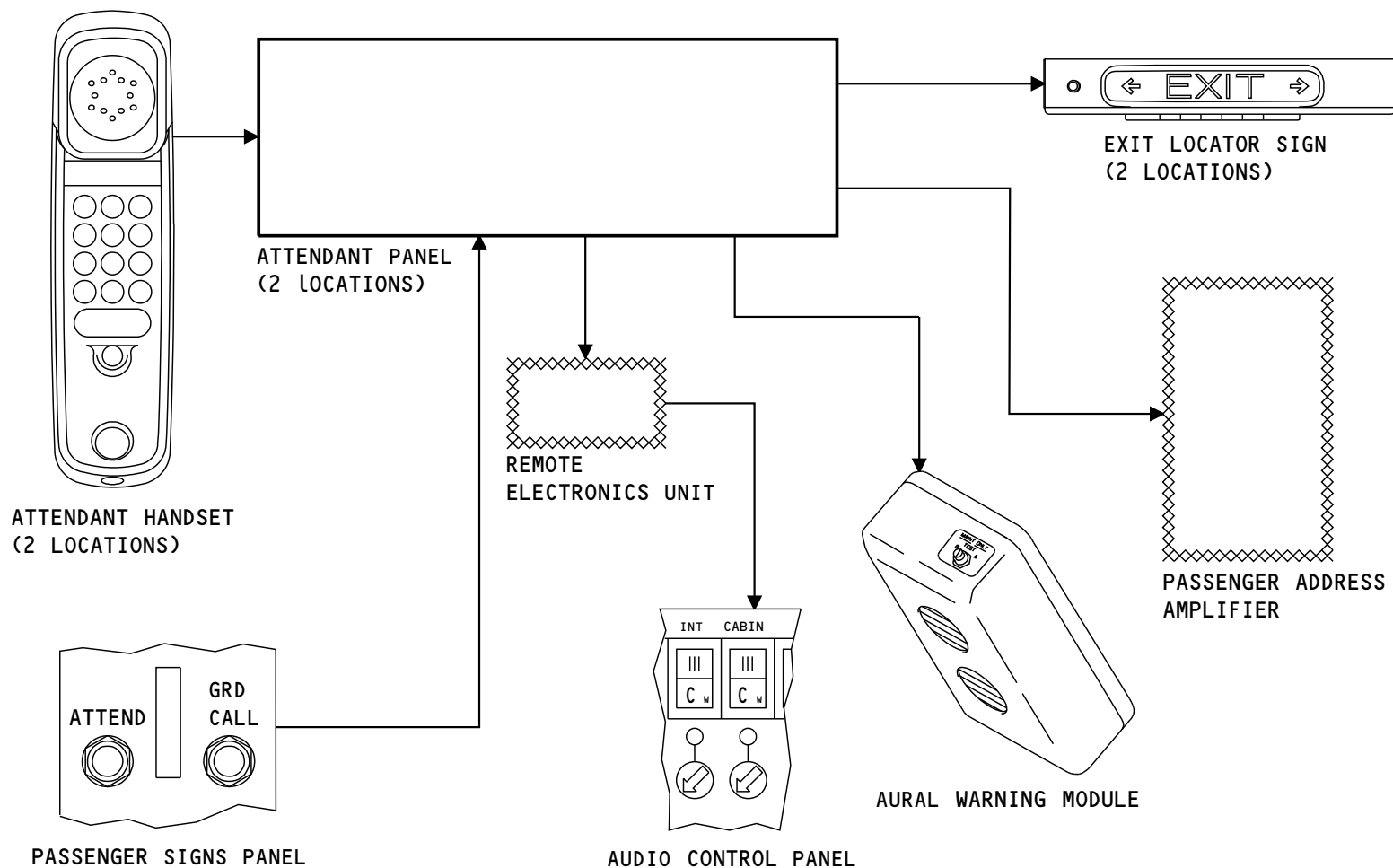
23-42-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM/CABIN INTERPHONE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



M80709 S0004624340_V2

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM/CABIN INTERPHONE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

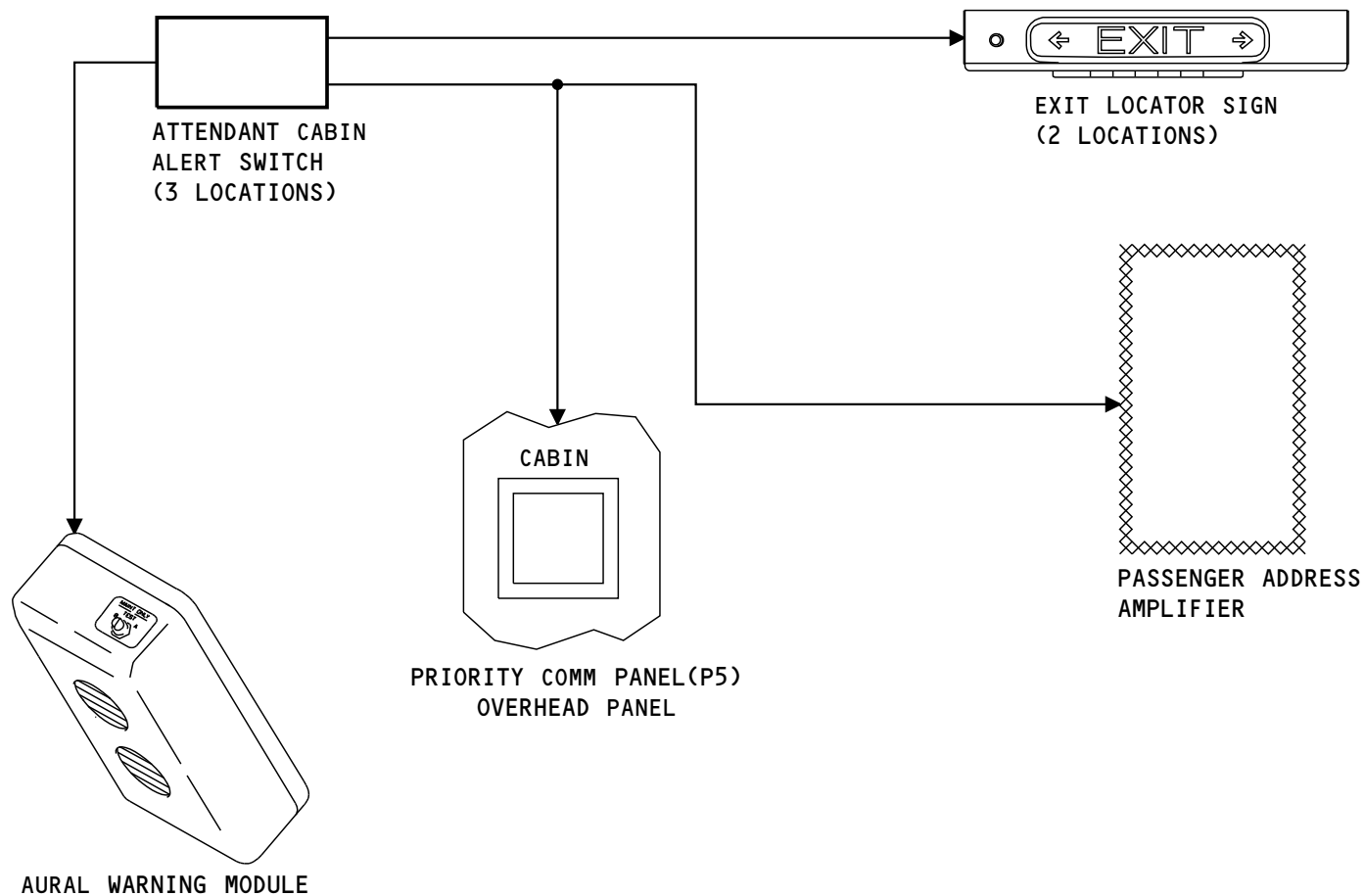
23-42-00

23-42-00-002

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM/CABIN INTERPHONE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



2280452 S0000514994_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM/CABIN INTERPHONE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-42-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - PASSENGER COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Handsets

The handsets are below the cabin attendant panels at each attendant station.

Attendant Call Lights

The attendant call lights are on the forward and aft exit locator signs. These are on the ceiling at the forward and aft sections of the passenger compartment.

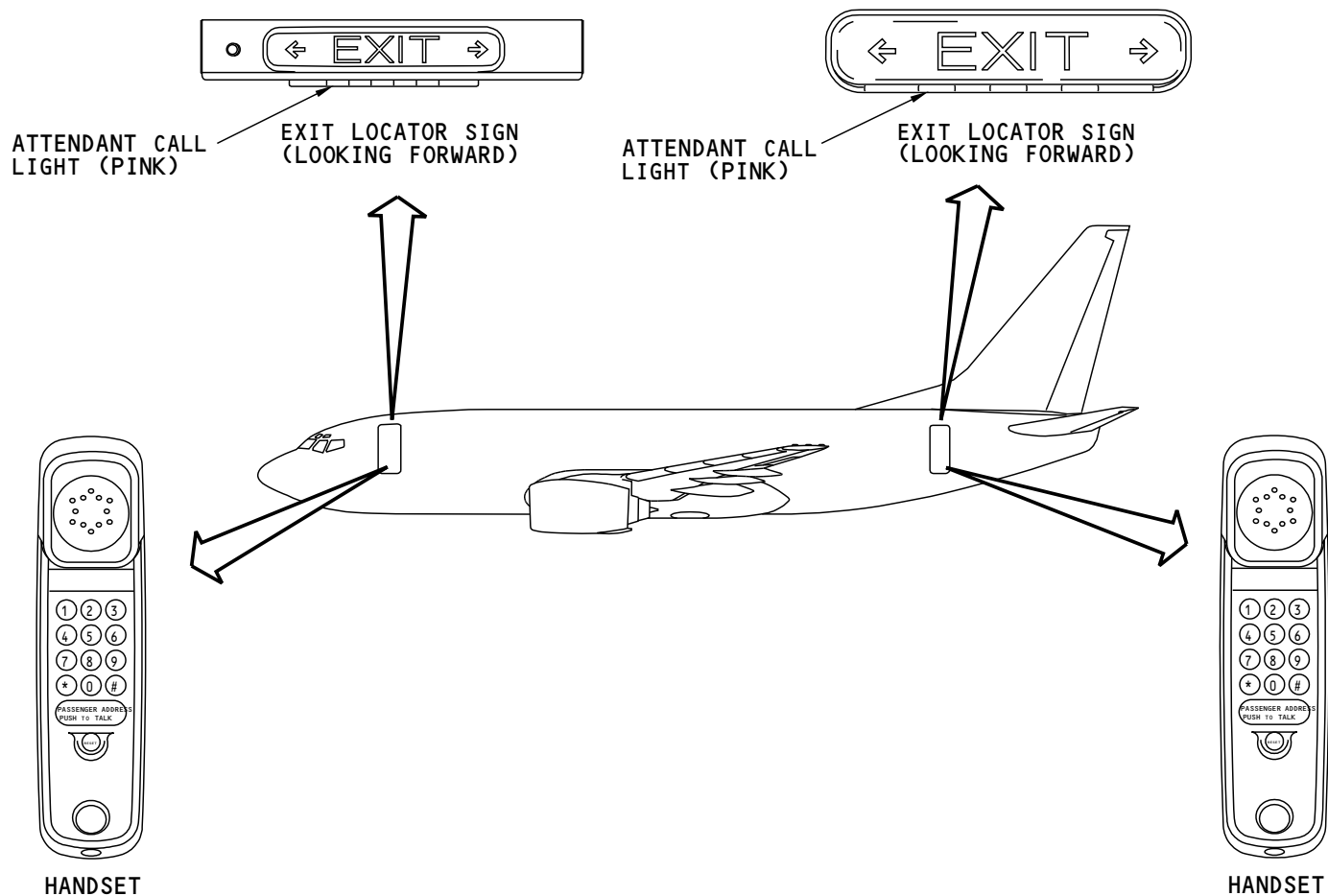
23-42-00-003

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-42-00

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - PASSENGER COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M80717 S0004624347_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - PASSENGER COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-42-00-003

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-42-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

Flight Compartment Component Location

The passenger signs panel is on the P5 forward overhead panel.

The aural warning module is on the F/O side of the P9 forward electronic panel.

The audio control panels are on the P5 aft overhead panel and on the P8 aft electronic panel.

The blue CABIN indicator light and reset switch are on the PRIORITY COMM (P5) overhead panel.

23-42-00-004

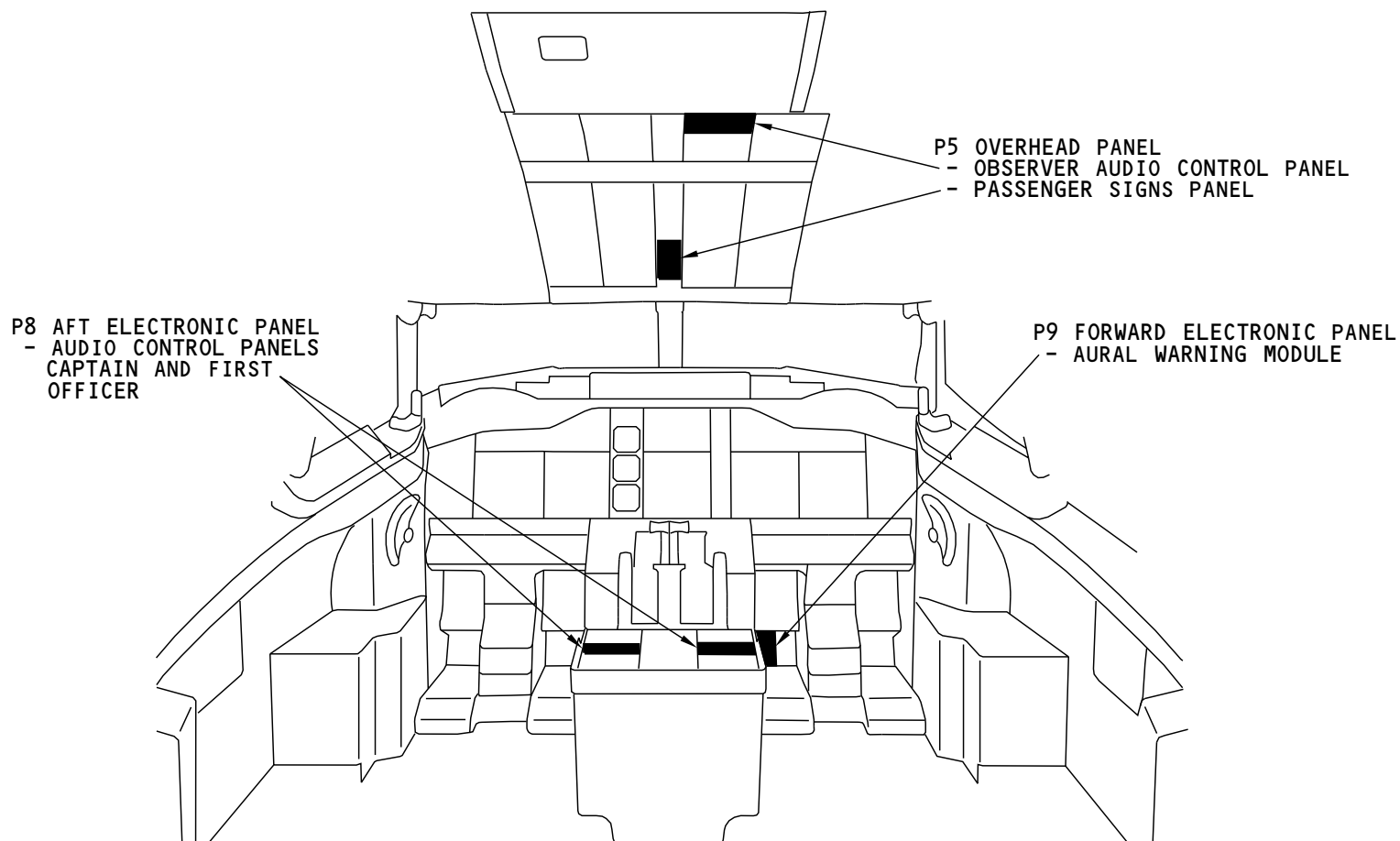
SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
---------	-------------

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-42-00

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION



M80718 S0004624351_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

23-42-00-004

SIA ALL

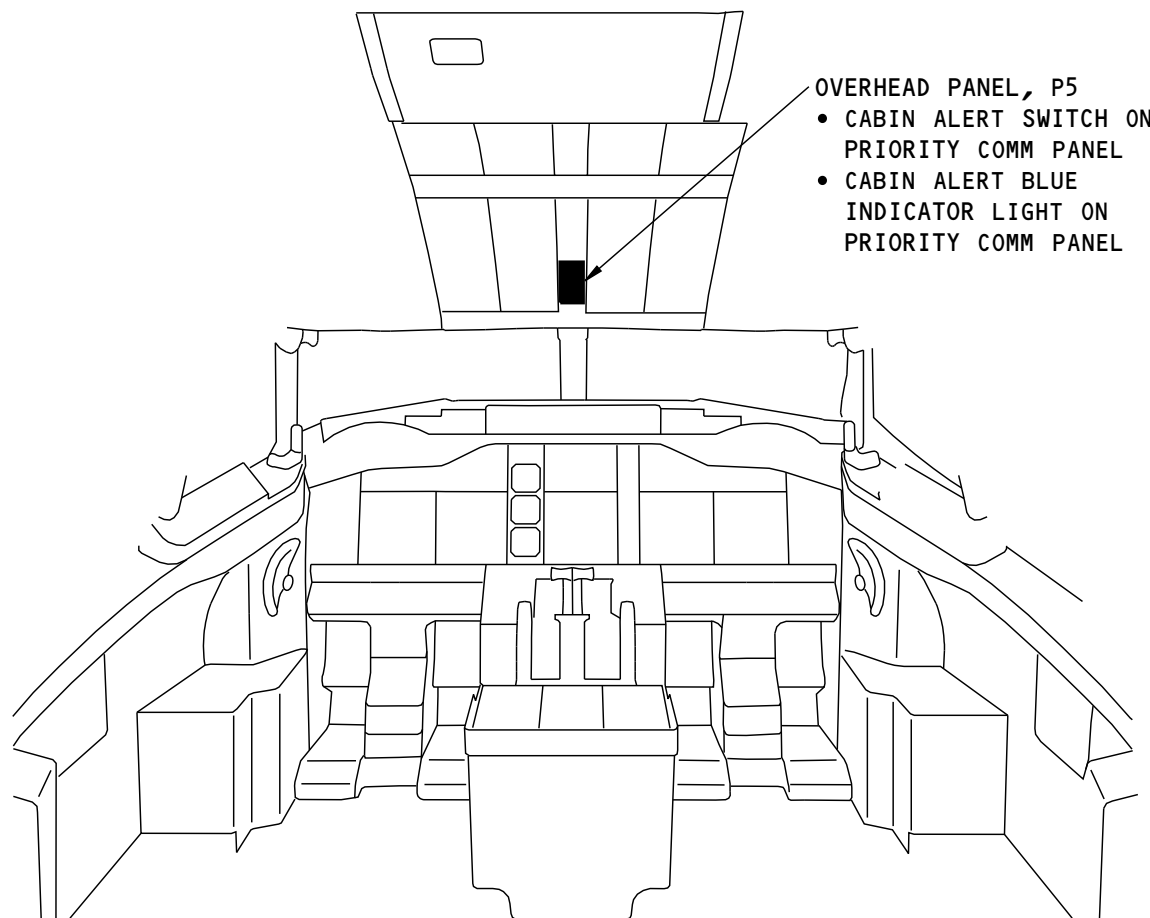
EFFECTIVITY

23-42-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION



FLIGHT COMPARTMENT

2280390 S0000515206_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-42-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTERFACES

Power

The flight crew call system/cabin interphone gets power from the following sources.

The CREW CALL circuit breaker on the P18 panel supplies 28v dc to:

- The attendant call switch
- The cabin alert system components in the flight compartment and passenger compartment
- The Integrated Handset Controller (IHC) in the forward and aft attendant control panels

The INPH AND WARN and ENTERTAINMENT PA SYS BAT circuit breakers on the P6 panel supply 28v dc to the IHC's in the forward and aft attendant control panels.

The ATTENDANT PANEL circuit breaker on P6 panel supplies 28v dc to the LCD touchscreen of the attendant control panels.

Passenger Signs Panel

The passenger signs panel has an attendant call switch that sends a call signal to the forward attendant control panel. The attendant control panel turns on the attendant call lights at the two attendant stations, and sends a discrete signal to the passenger address amplifier to make a high/low chime.

Attendant Handsets

An attendant handset connects to the forward and aft attendant control panels. The handset can send call signals to the flight compartment or the other attendant station.

For calls to the flight compartment, the attendant control panel sends two discrete signals. One discrete signal goes to the REU. The REU turns on the call light in the audio control panels. The other discrete signal goes to the aural warning module to make a high chime.

For calls to the other attendant station, the attendant control panel turns on the attendant call light at that station and sends a discrete signal to the passenger address amplifier to make a high/low chime.

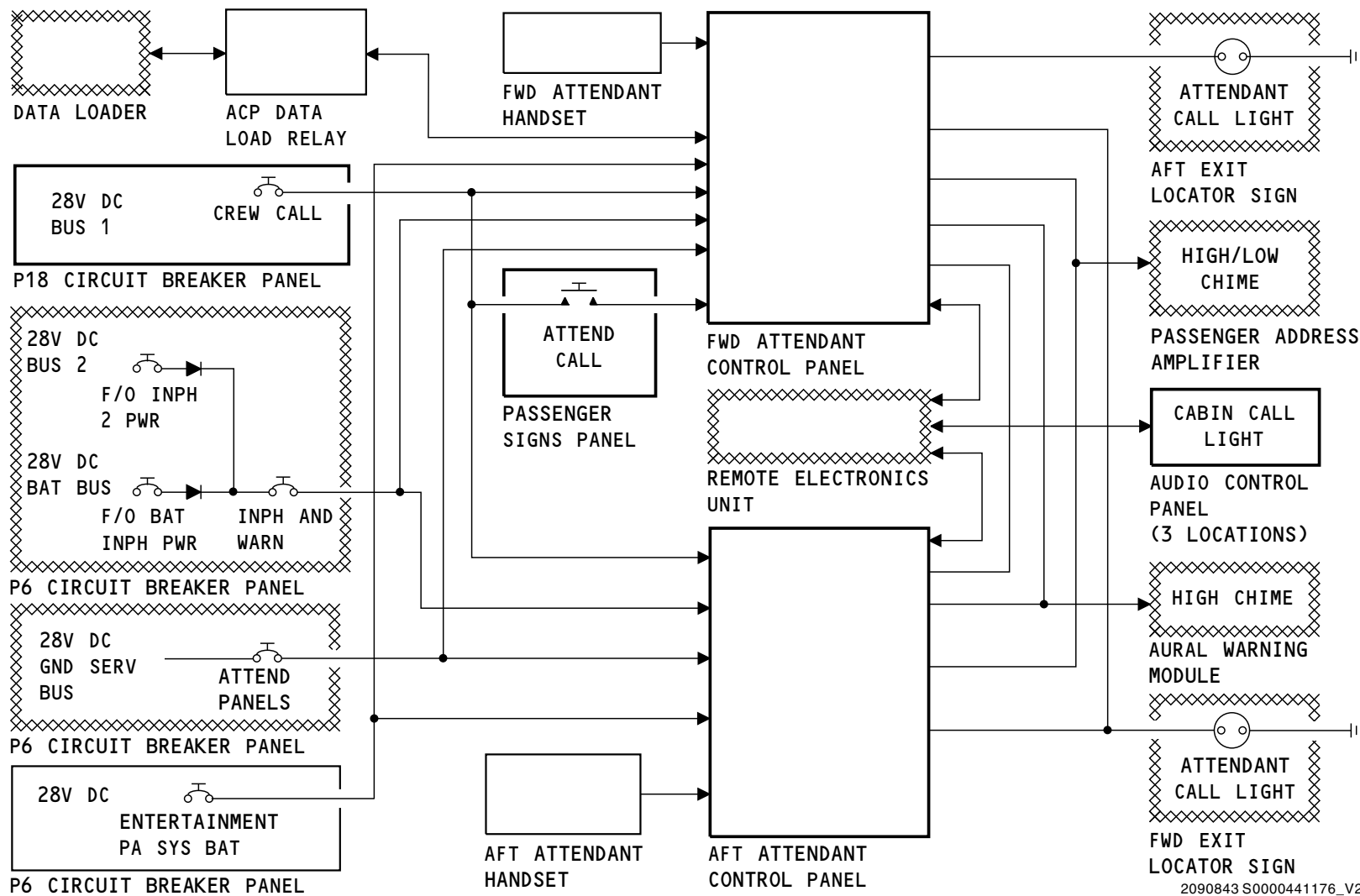
Cabin Alert System

To activate the system, the attendants can push any of the three Cabin Alert switches adjacent to their seats. This will send signals to turn on the blue CABIN light on the PRIORITY COMM overhead panel and a hi tone chime on the aural warning module in the flight compartment. In the passenger compartment, this turns on the white call lights on the forward and aft EXIT locator signs and a hi chime on the passenger address amplifier.

To deactivate the system, the flight crew push the reset switch on the PRIORITY COMM panel. This will turn off the lights on the overhead panel and the lights in the passenger compartment.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTERFACES



FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTERFACES

23-42-00

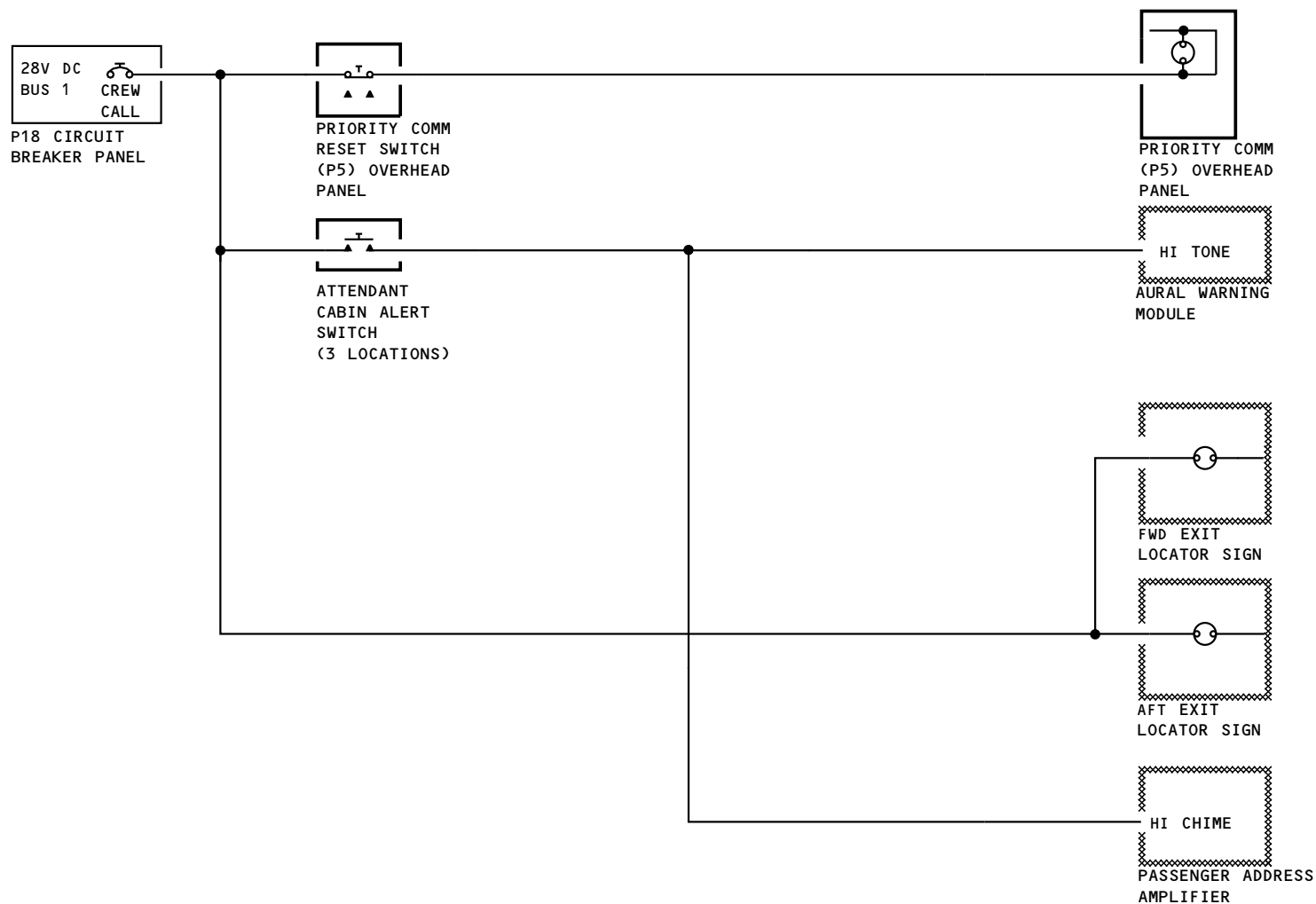
SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTERFACES



2280594 S0000515447_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - INTERFACES

23-42-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-42-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - HANDSET

Purpose

The attendants use handsets to speak with each other. They also use them to make announcements on the passenger address (PA) system.

Physical Description

The interphone handset is like a telephone handset. It has these features:

- Earpiece speaker
- Microphone
- Push-button switches.

A handset cradle holds the interphone handset. The cradle has a magnetic strip. The handset uses a magnetically operated reed switch to detect an on-hook or off-hook condition of the handset.

Location

There is a handset at the forward attendant panel and at the aft attendant panel in the passenger compartment.

Operation

Lift the handset off the hook. This connects the handset microphone and speaker to the service interphone system.

The handset push-buttons have these functions:

- Push 2 to call the pilot. This turns on the cabin call light on the audio control panel and makes a high chime in the flight compartment
- Push 5 to call the other attendant station. This turns on the attendant call light at that station and makes a high/low chime in the passenger compartment
- Push 8 to connect the handset to the passenger address system
- Push the push-to-talk button to make PA announcements
- Push the reset button to disconnect the handset from the passenger address system or to cancel the call

- Push 2 more than one time to alert the pilot of an emergency condition. The number of times to push to alert the pilot is shown on the placard of the handset.

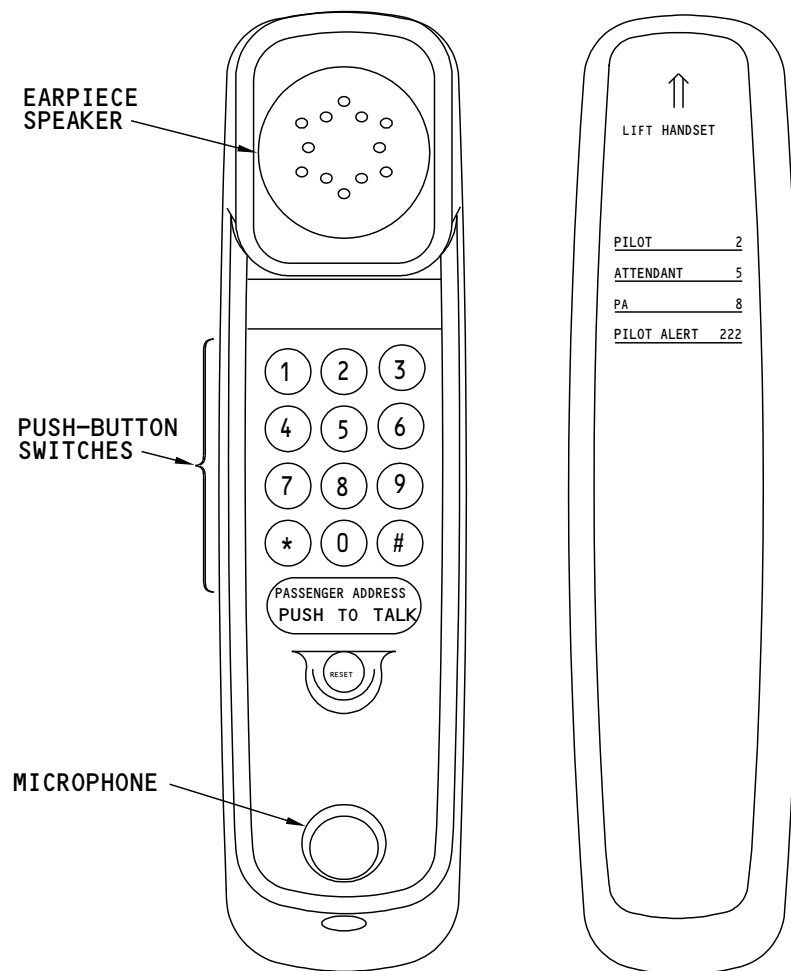
23-42-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - HANDSET



M80726 S0004624361_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - HANDSET

23-42-00-006

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-42-00



FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

You use the flight crew call system to make these calls:

- Pilot to attendant
- Attendant to pilot
- Attendant to attendant
- Cabin Alert system

Pilot to Attendant Call

When you push the ATTEND switch on the passenger signs panel, 28v dc goes to the forward attendant control panel. The panel turns on the attendant call lights at the two attendant stations. The panel also sends a discrete signal to the passenger address (PA) amplifier. The PA amplifier sends a high/low chime to the cabin speakers.

The attendant call lights stay on until you lift one of the handsets from the cradle. If the handset is already out, you can push the handset RESET button to turn off the attendant call lights.

Attendant to Pilot Call

When you push 2 on the attendant handset, an encoded signal goes to the attendant control panel.

NOTE: If the attendant handset is set for PA, then you must push RESET on the handset to make a pilot call.

The attendant control panel sends a discrete signal to the aural warning module to make a high chime in the flight compartment. It also sends a latched 28v dc discrete to the REU to energize a relay. The REU sends a ground discrete to make the CABIN call light on the audio control panel come on.

The light stays on until you push the RESET button on the handset, or put the handset back in the cradle.

Attendant to Attendant Call

When you push 5 on the attendant handset, an encoded signal goes to the attendant control panel.

NOTE: If the attendant handset is set for PA, then you must push RESET on the handset to make an attendant call.

The attendant control panel turns on the attendant call light at the other attendant station. It also sends a discrete signal to the PA amplifier. The PA amplifier sends a high/low chime to the cabin speakers.

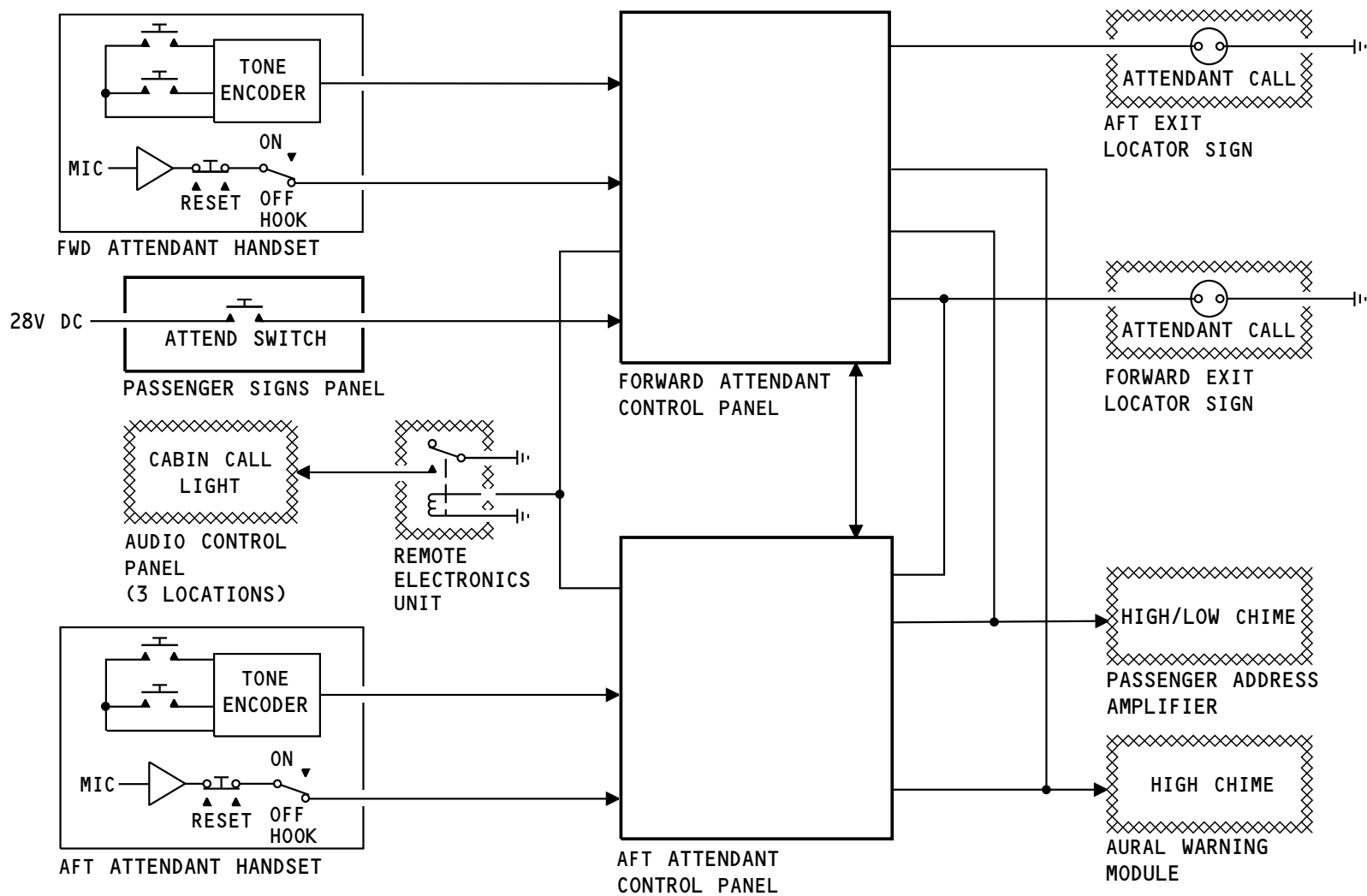
When you lift the handset from the cradle at the other attendant station, the call light goes off. If the handset is already out, you can push the handset RESET button to make the attendant call light go off.

Cabin Alert System

When you activate any of the three Cabin Alert switches in the passenger cabin, the blue CABIN light on the PRIORITY COMM panel on the P5 overhead panel and the white attendant call lights in the passenger cabin come on. This also generate a chime in the flight compartment and a chime in the passenger cabin. If no action takes place, the system will stay on for 40 seconds.

To deactivate the system, the flight crew pushes the switch on the PRIORITY COMM panel. This will make the light in the flight compartment and passenger cabin go off.

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



2091063 S0000441235_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-42-00

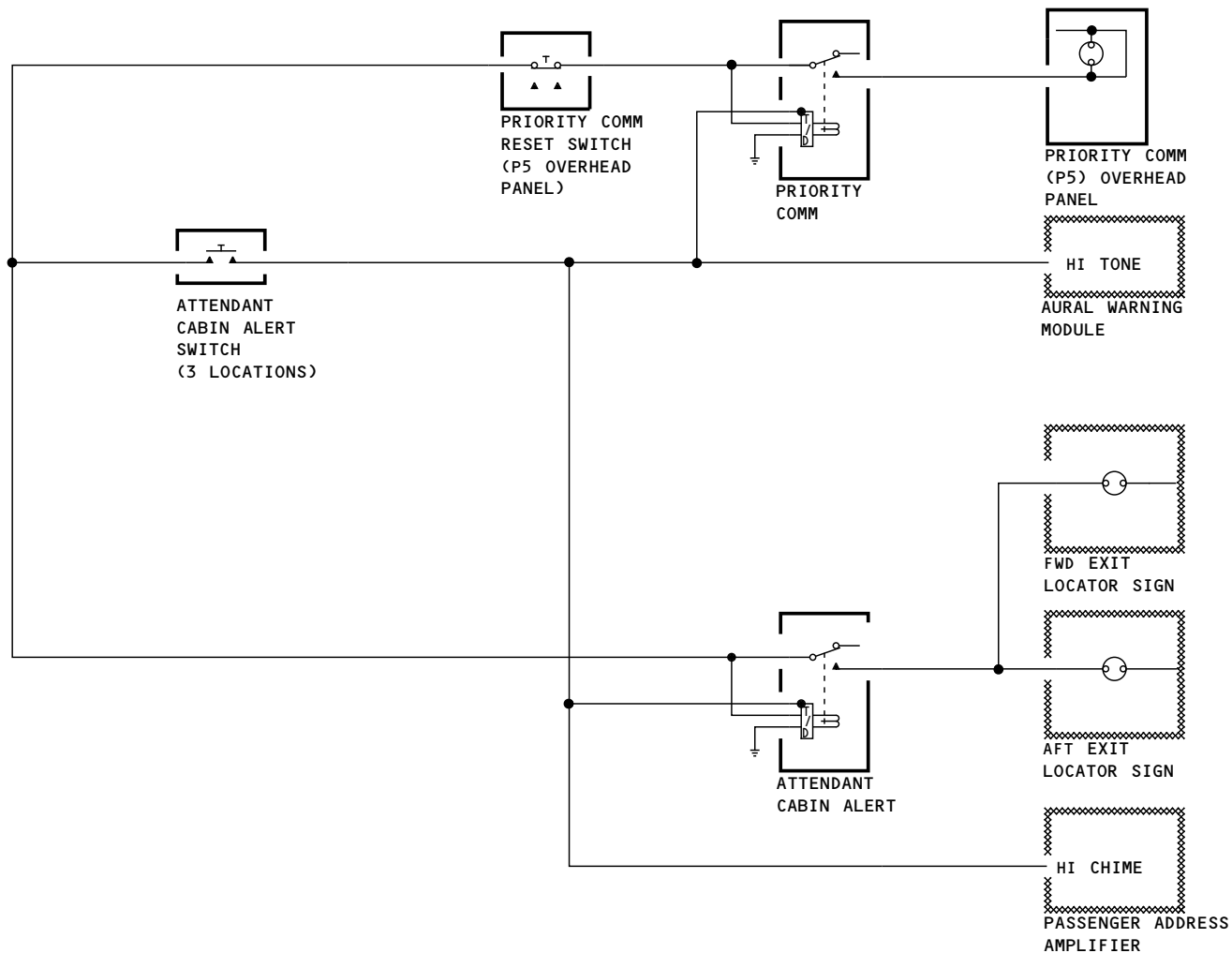
SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



2280287 S0000515235_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-42-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL

Purpose

The Attendant Control Panel (ACP) is used by the flight attendant to monitor and control several cabin features and functions such as lighting, entertainment, PC Power, lavatory smoke detectors, cell phones, air stairs, ground service bus, emergency exit lights, emergency evacuation, cabin ready and cabin temperature.

The ACP functions as the Integrated Handset Controller (IHC) for the Flight Crew Call / Cabin Interphone system.

General Description

The ACP is located at the attendant station. It is mounted on the wall, above the attendant seat headrest.

The ACP panel is 16 " wide, 9" high and 4.5 " deep. A shroud covers the ACP unit.

The ACP panel has an Integrated Switch Assembly (ISA), a Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) touch screen and an Integrated Handset Controller (IHC).

The LCD touchscreen includes a Graphical User Interface (GUI) menu. The controls for the GUI menu are defined by configuration database. The database can be modified with the software tool Configuration Database Generator (CDG). The forward and aft ACP's have different menus. Users can activate the touchscreen by touching two opposite corners of the screen sequentially. If the touchscreen is inoperative, users will not be able to provide inputs to systems on the related ACP. In this case, the Cabin light will be converted to white light (default state). The Flight Crew Call / Cabin Interphone system will remain operative.

The ISA contains hard mounted switches located next to LCD touchscreen. The amber LED at the upper left corner of the ISA will turn on when the ACP is not operative. The LED will stay on when there is an over temperature condition in the ACP. The LED will flash when there is an internal fault with the ACP. At power-up the LED will turn on for 2 seconds and then turn off.

The IHC, with the use of the attendant handset, provides Cabin Interphone functionality. The IHC is embedded in the circuit assembly inside the ACP.

Functional Description

The ACP has ability to monitor and control various systems. The basic functions of the ACP are:

- Integrated Handset Controller (IHC) for Cabin Interphone: The ACP interfaces with the flight deck and cabin handsets and provides the capability to switch each handset between Cabin Interphone and Passenger Address modes. The IHC provides a hardwired party line network for the Cabin Interphone system when the handsets are in Cabin Interphone mode. The IHC also controls the illumination of call lights and chime commands for calls from the flight deck or cabin.
- Cabin Lighting Control: The ACP controls lighting in the cabin work areas, the entry ways and the passenger seating area. The flight attendant can select lighting scenes for the passenger seating area through the ACP lighting menu. Standard and custom lighting scenes can be selected from the lighting menu. In case of decompression, the ACP will display the White Bright scene to the passenger seating area, the entry ways and turn on several discrete lights in the attendant work areas. More information on lighting can be found in CHAPTER 33.
- Potable Water Level Monitoring: The ACP displays the potable water level using a color bar graph.
- Vacuum Waste Monitoring: The ACP displays the airplane's waste tank levels and status of the waste tank sensors. This function provides an indication of LAV INOP status when the waste tank is full.
- Ground Service Bus: The ACP allows the flight crew to control ground service power bus.
- Emergency Exit Lights: The ACP allows the flight crew to control the emergency exit light via a hard switch located on the Integrated Switch Assembly.

If selected, the ACP can be used in the following systems:

- In Flight Entertainment: The ACP provides the flight crew the ability to turn system power on and off via a soft button on the touch screen.
- PC Power: The ACP provides the flight crew the ability to turn the system power on and off via a soft button on the touch screen.

23-42-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL**

- Lavatory Smoke Detector: The ACP will monitor the smoke detector status inside the lavatories and display a pop-up screen when smoke is detected. The flight attendant must reset the smoke detector for the warning to disappear.
- Cell Phone: The ACP allows the flight crew to control the cell phone service via a soft button on the touch screen.
- Air Stairs: The ACP allows the flight crew to control the extension and retraction of the air stairs via a hard switch located on the Integrated Switch Assembly (ISA).
- Emergency Evacuation: The ACP allows the flight crew ability to initiate alerts and shut off warnings during emergency evacuation.
- Cabin Temperature: The ACP allows the flight crew to control the cabin temperature.
- Special Function: The ACP is able to receive up to 3 additional functionalities in the future without engineering modification.

Configuration Check

The ACP Configuration Check can be accomplished at the forward ACP under the Maintenance menu.

The Configuration Check provides hardware and software part number information for the ACP's and each light LRU.

When the system is in Configuration Check mode, all other maintenance soft buttons on the forward ACP are desensitized and the aft ACP displays a message indicating that a maintenance action is in progress.

Lamps Test

The Lamps test turns ON all LEDs (30% bright) to allow mechanic to determine if any LEDs are not working properly.

The Lamps Test is accomplished under the Maintenance menu at the forward ACP. When the system is in Lamps Test mode, all other maintenance soft buttons on the forward ACP are desensitized and the aft ACP displays a message indicating that a maintenance action is in progress.

BITE Test

The Attendant Control Panel can perform BITE (Built-In-Test Equipment) test. The BITE test is achieved at power-on, startup and at specified intervals while the software is running.

Depending on the ACP software version, user can do the BITE test alone or as part of the system test. The system test includes of BITE test and test for the lighting LRU's.

At the end of the test, the ACP will provide the status of the BITE or system test results. The ACP will show the faults (if applicable) with recommended maintenance actions.

The ACP will lock out all commands during the BITE or system test. The test is only available when the airplane is on the ground.

When the ACP detects critical faults or in case of memory failure, the ACP will store a fault code, shut down and illuminate the amber LED on the Integrated Switch Assembly (ISA). When the ACP experiences a critical failure, it will shut down while the IHC function will remain operative.

Data Loading

Data loading for the Operational Software (OPS), Configuration Database (CDB) and Lighting Database (LDB) can be accomplished at the forward ACP under the Data Load section of the Maintenance menu.

AIRPLANES WITH V4 SOFTWARE AND EARLIER;

- The soft button "ADL to ACP" allows data loading from the data loader to the forward ACP.
- The soft button "ACP to ACP" allows data loading from the forward ACP to the aft ACP.
- The soft button "ACP to LRUs" allows data loading from the forward ACP to the Light LRU's. This process give Light LRU its address, zone information, standard and custom scene definition.

AIRPLANES WITH V5 SOFTWARE AND SUBSEQUENT;

- Phase 1 Data Load allows data loading from data loader to the forward ACP.

23-42-00**EFFECTIVITY**
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL

- Phase 2 Data Load allows data loading from the forward ACP to the aft ACP and Light LRU's. User can select software from a selection table. This process give Light LRU its address, zone information, standard and custom scene definition.

Touchscreen Menu Pages

The ACP touchscreen's main menu consists of the following pages:

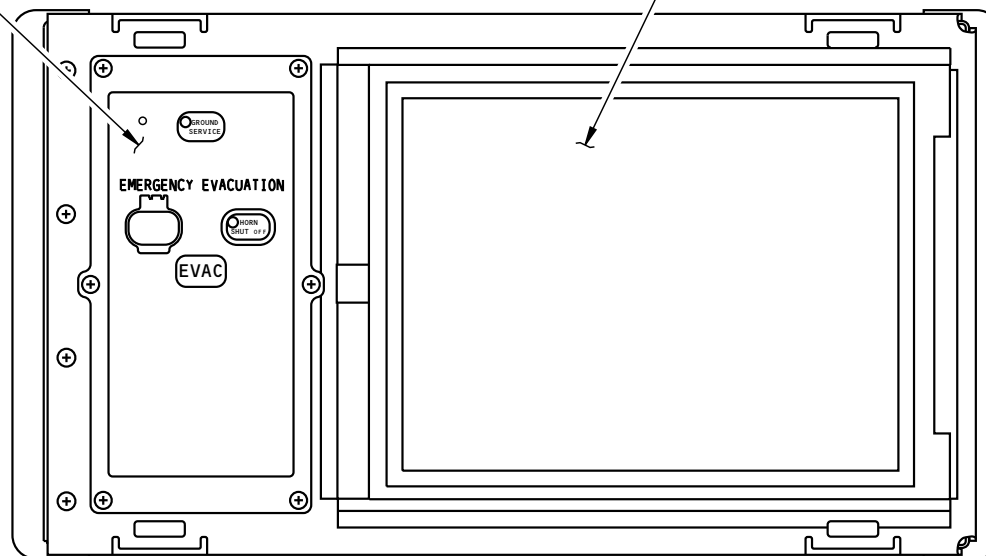
- Lighting: This page displays available and selected lighting scenes for the passenger seating and entry areas.
- Passenger Services: This page consists of soft buttons controlling the following systems (if applicable) : In-flight Entertainment, PC Power, Cell Phone, Cabin Ready.
- Environment: This page controls Cabin Temperature and Smoke Detector systems (if applicable). The aft ACP also displays the Potable Water level, Vacuum waste level, LAV INOP and Clean Check Sensors status buttons.
- Maintenance: The forward ACP's Maintenance page provides ability to do BITE Test or System Test, Configuration Check, Clean Screen, Fault Data, Lighting Check, Data Load, and Vacuum Waste section (LAV INOP Test, LAV INOP, Clean Check Sensors, Waste quantity indicator). When the maintenance menu is selected, a maintenance password entry screen will pop up requiring the user to enter a password to access to the maintenance menu functions. If the password protection feature is disabled, no password entry screen will come up.
- Special Functions: This page provides Enable and Status buttons for future functions to be added.
- Display functions: The Display function menu is located on the bottom left hand of the LCD touchscreen and includes Clean screen, Screensaver lock, Brightness decrease and Brightness increase. The Clean screen locks the ACP for 30 seconds and ignores user input. The Screensaver locks the ACP by switching to screen saver mode. The user can exit screen saver mode by touching two different corners of the screen sequentially.

- System Test: The Maintenance System Tests provides the ability to run all BITE tests defined by the ACP's software and display system faults on the screen.
- Saved Data: The ACP has the ability to send data to a floppy disk on the ADL. There are two Maintenance functions that allow this, Save Config Data and Save All. Save Config Data will run Configuration Check and send the data presented on the Maintenance Screen to the ADL. Save All will run Configuration Check and System test and send Configuration Data, System Test data, and Fault Query Responses to the ADL.

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL

INTEGRATED SWITCH
ASSEMBLY (ISA)

LCD TOUCHSCREEN



ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL
(EXAMPLE)

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL

2057312 S0000421136_V3

23-42-00-009

SIA ALL

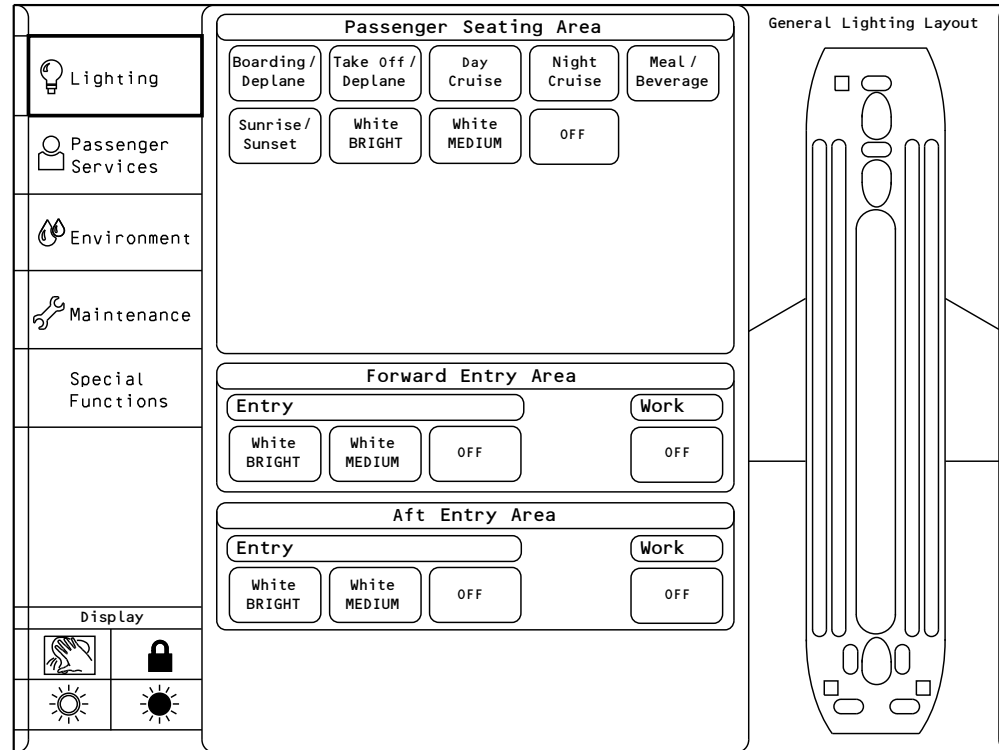
EFFECTIVITY

23-42-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL

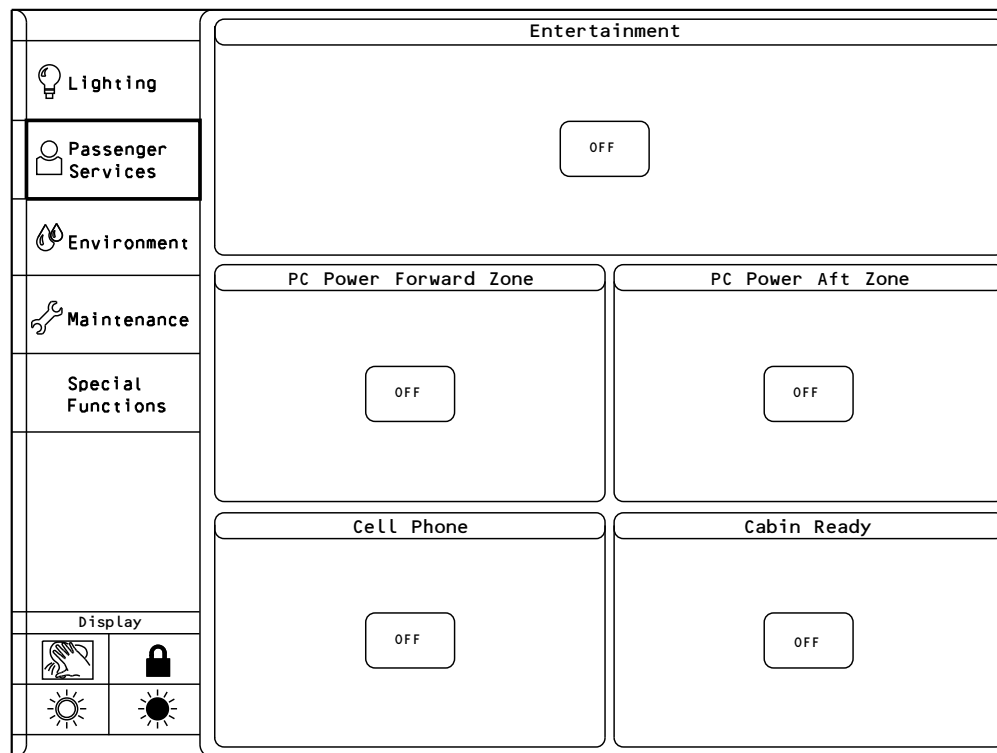


LIGHTING MENU
(EXAMPLE)

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL LIGHTING MENU

2086945 S0000440181_V1

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL



PASSENGER SERVICES MENU
(EXAMPLE)

2086968 S0000440188_V1

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL PASSENGER SERVICES MENU

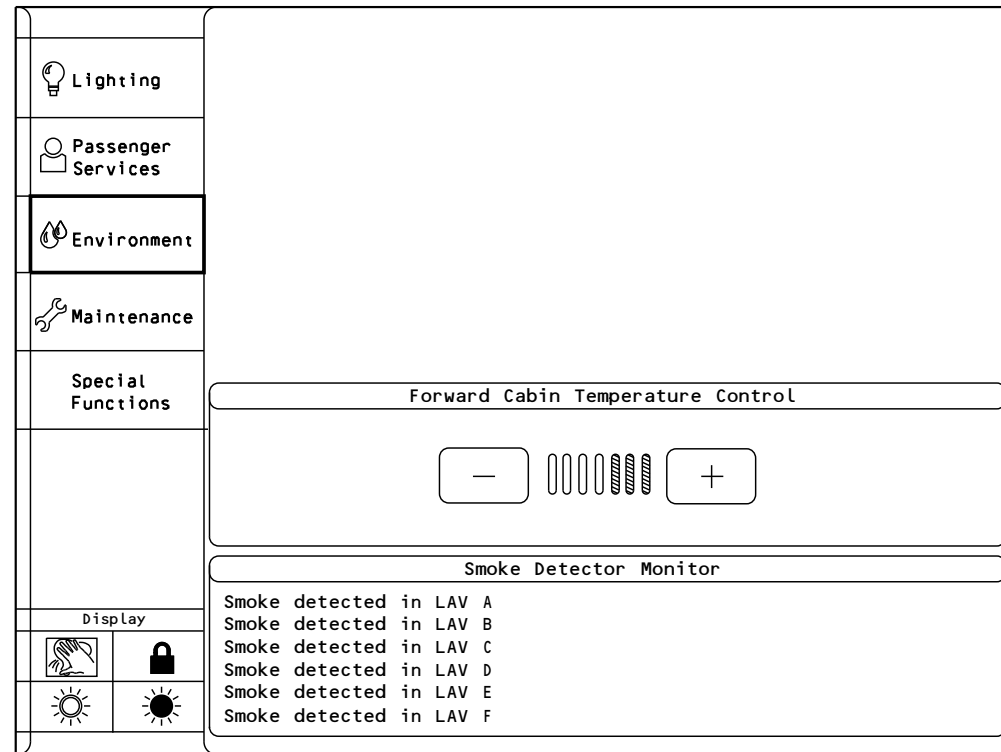
23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL



FORWARD PANEL ENVIRONMENT MENU
(EXAMPLE)

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL ENVIRONMENT MENU

2086990 S0000440189_V1

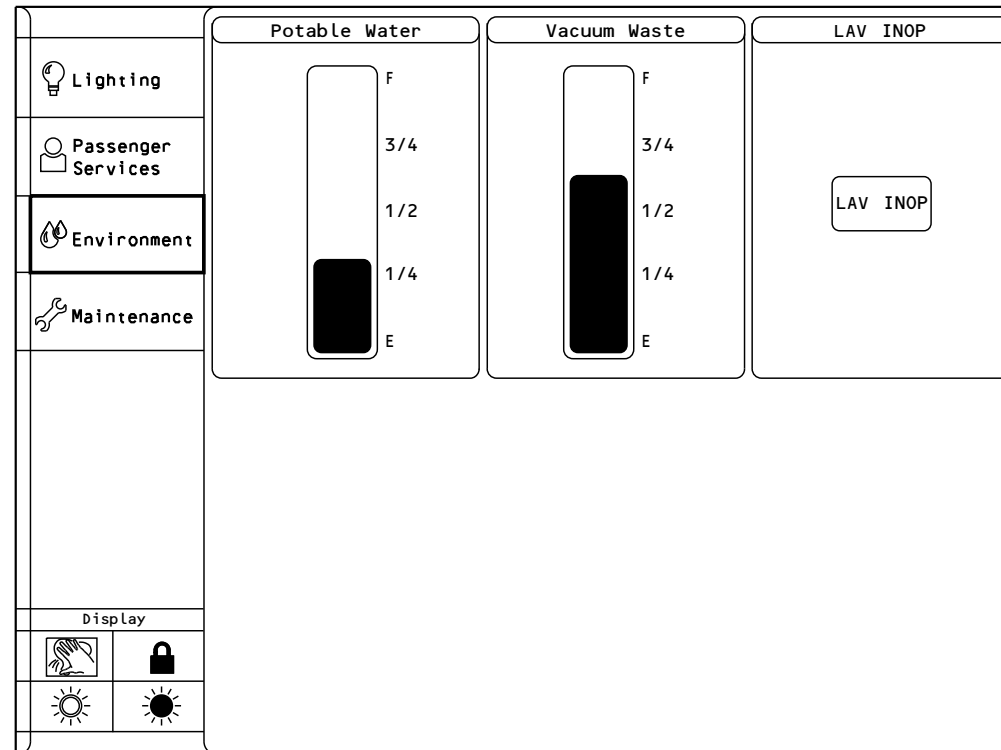
23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL



AFT PANEL ENVIRONMENT MENU
(EXAMPLE)

2087003 S0000440190_V1

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL ENVIRONMENT MENU - AIRPLANES WITH V4 SOFTWARE AND EARLIER

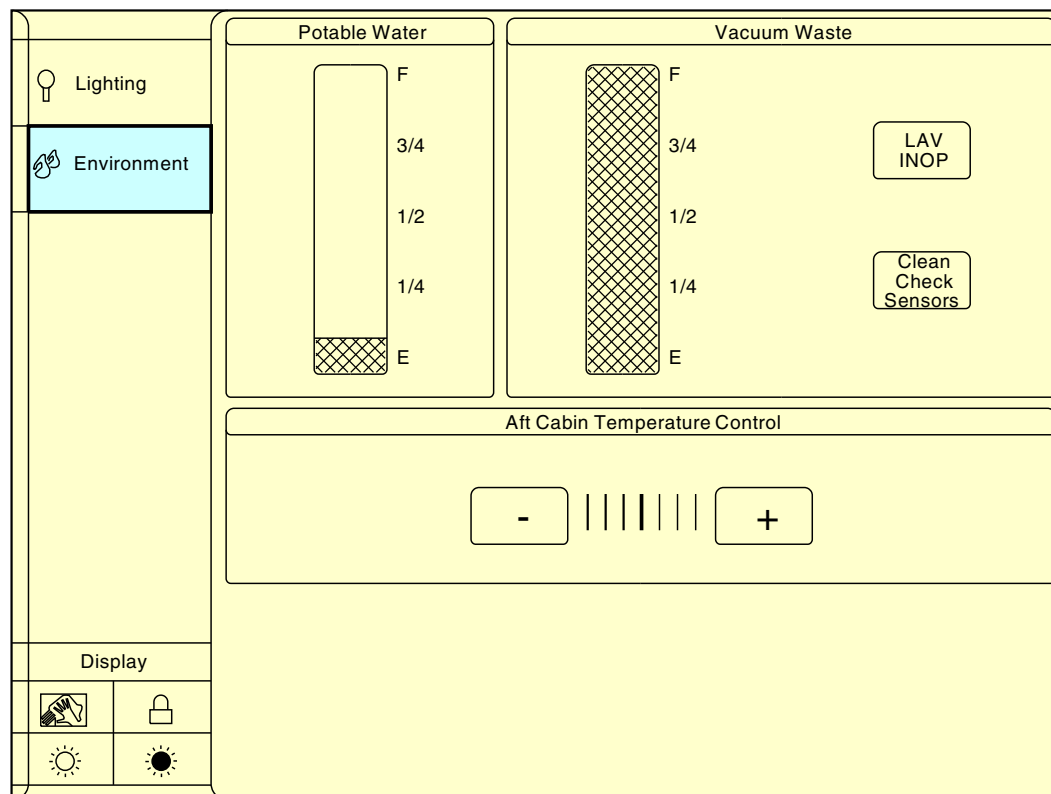
23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL


AFT PANEL ENVIRONMENT MENU
(EXAMPLE)

2863887 S0000674726_V1

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL ENVIRONMENT MENU - AIRPLANES WITH V5 SOFTWARE

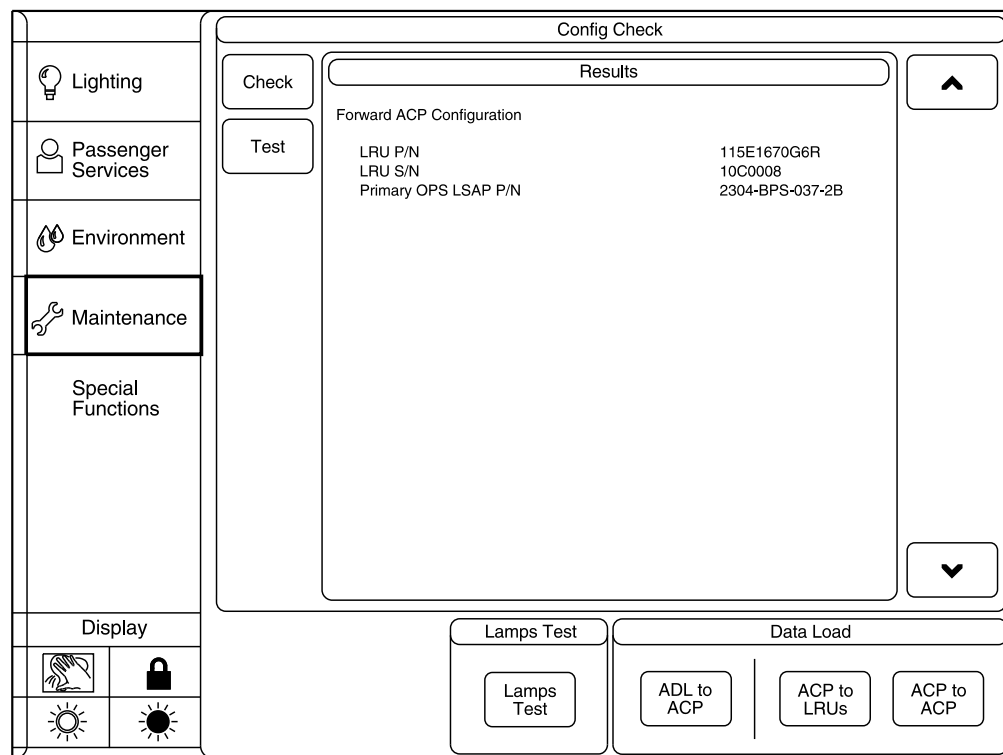
23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL



FORWARD PANEL MAINTENANCE MENU
(EXAMPLE)

2087161 S0000440191_V2

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL MAINTENANCE MENU - AIRPLANES WITH V4 SOFTWARE AND EARLIER

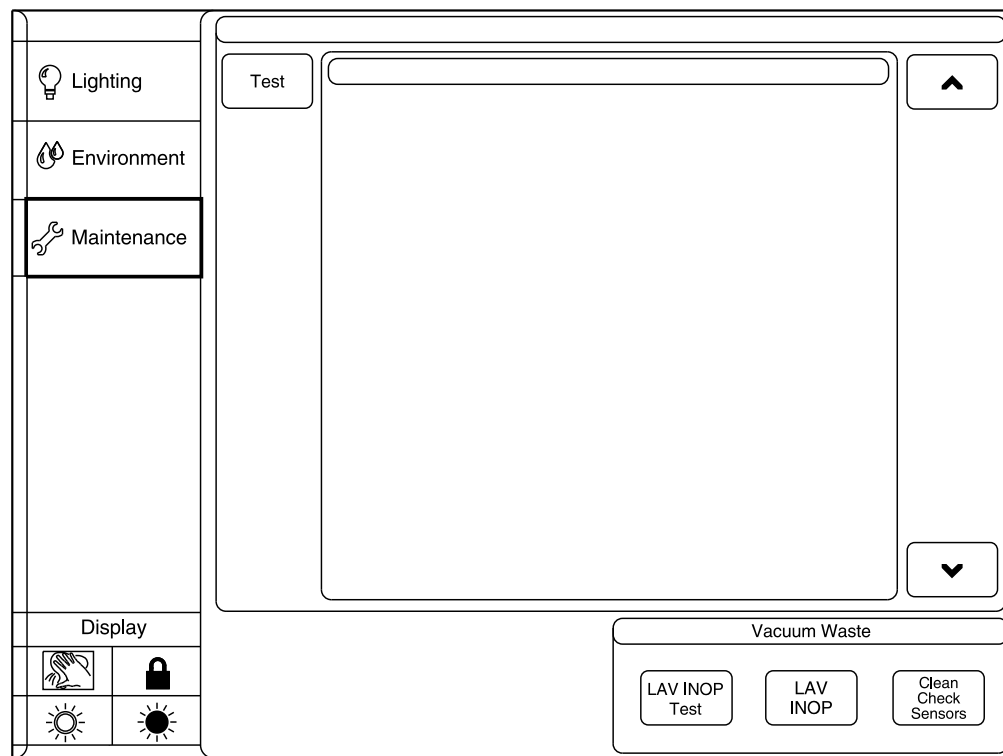
23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL



AFT PANEL MAINTENANCE MENU
(EXAMPLE)

2087202 S0000440192_V2

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL MAINTENANCE MENU - AIRPLANES WITH V4 SOFTWARE AND EARLIER

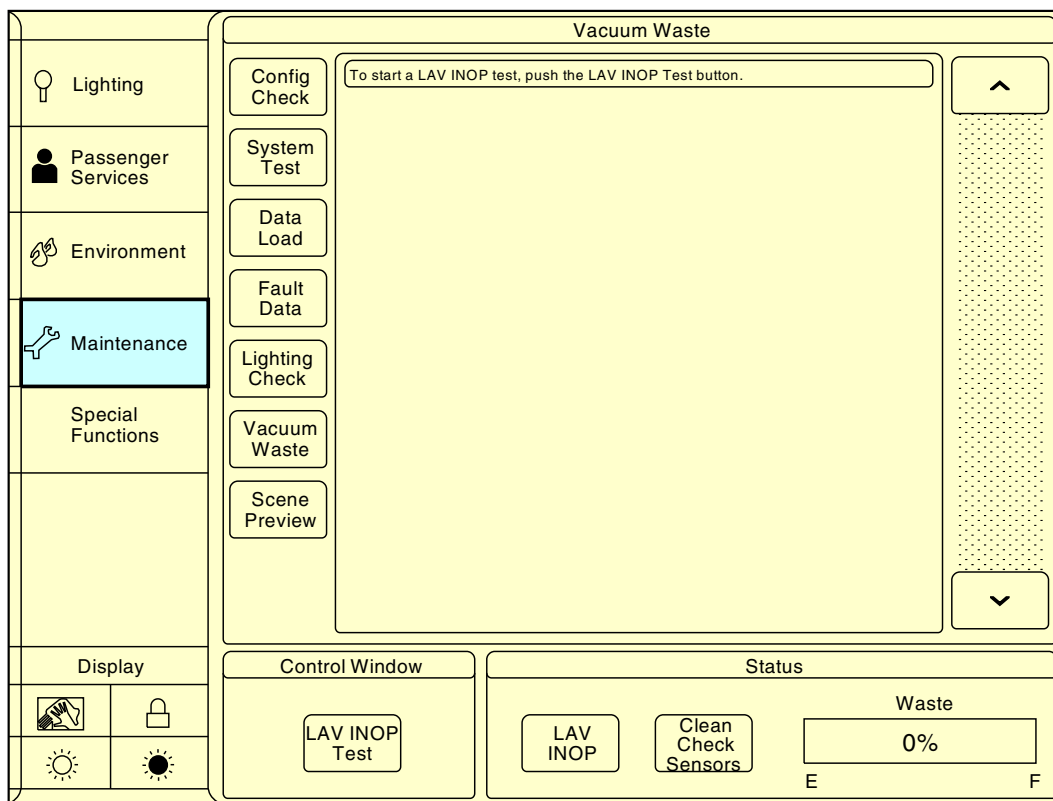
23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT CREW CALL SYSTEM / CABIN INTERPHONE - ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL



FORWARD PANEL MAINTENANCE MENU
(EXAMPLE)

2863888 S0000674727_V1

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL MAINTENANCE MENU - AIRPLANES WITH V5 SOFTWARE

23-42-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



Lighting	Special Function 1	OFF
Passenger Services	Special Function 2	2
Environment	Special Function 3	OFF
Maintenance		
Special Functions		
Display		

ATTENDANT CONTROL PANEL SPECIAL FUNCTION MENU

23-42-00



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-43-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

Purpose

The ground crew call system tells:

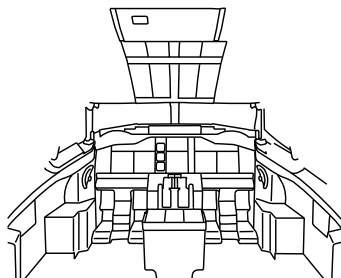
- Flight compartment personnel that there is a call from the ground personnel
- Ground personnel that there is a call from the flight compartment.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

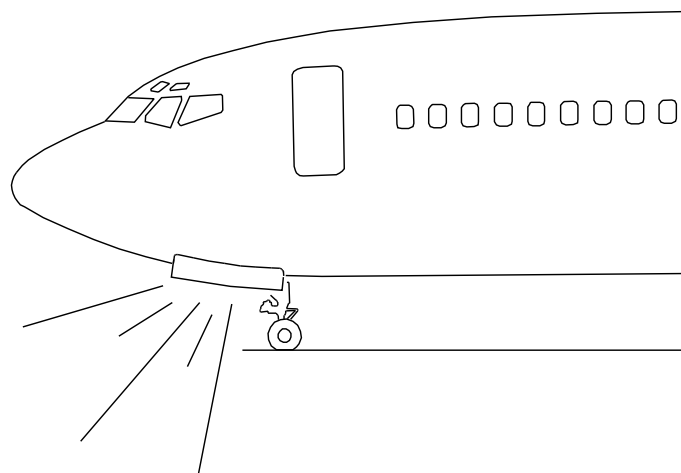
- ACP - audio control panel
- ADIRS - air data inertial reference system
- attend - attendant
- flt - flight
- grd - ground
- IHC - integrated handset controller
- PA - passenger address
- PTT - push-to-talk
- v dc - volts direct current

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



FLIGHT COMPARTMENT



M80738 S0004624380_V1

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-43-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The ground crew call system lets the flight crew and ground crew call each other. The system tells people in the flight compartment or outside of the airplane to use the flight interphone system.

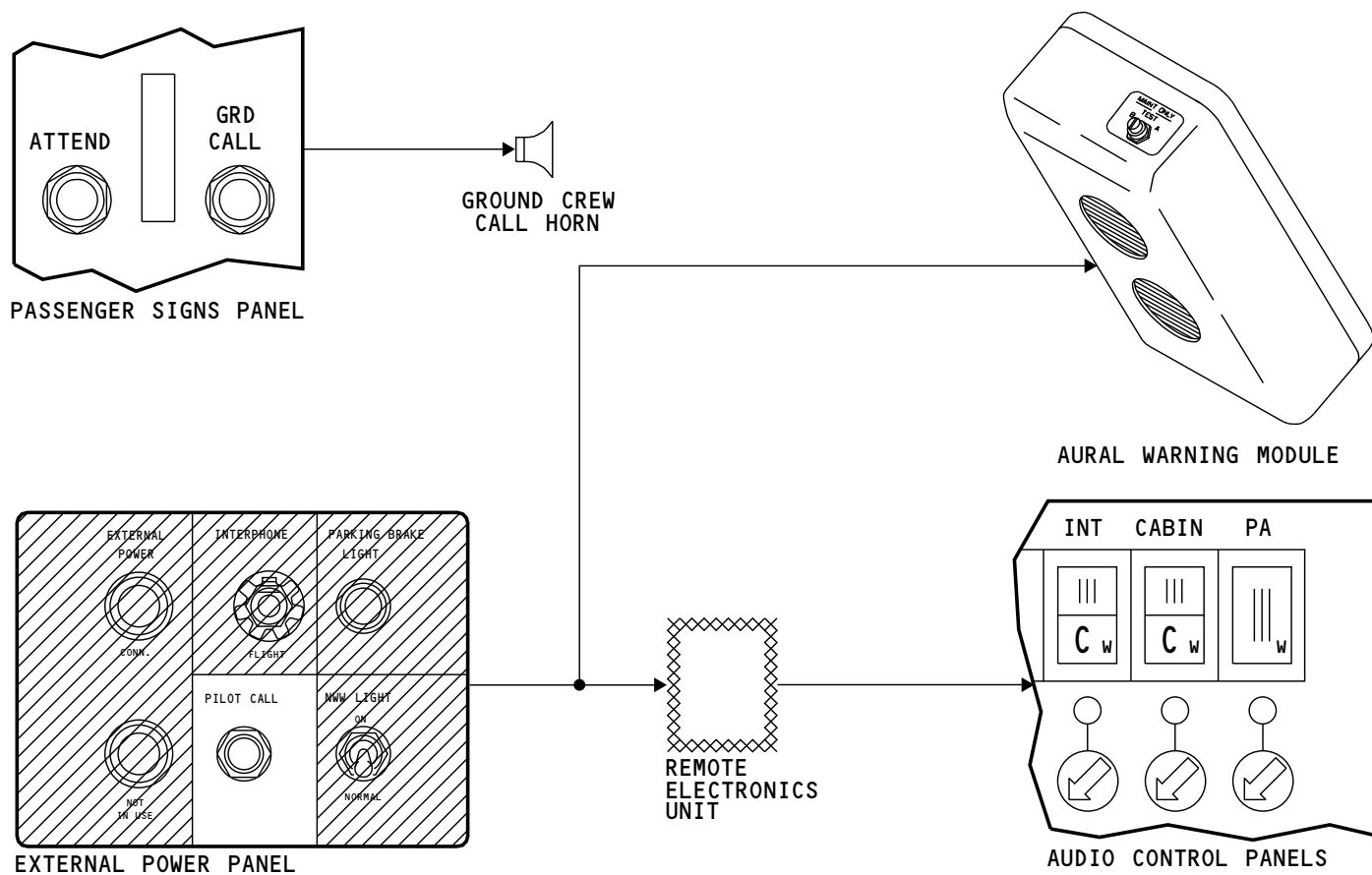
Between Flight Compartment and Ground Crew

A crew member pushes the GRD CALL switch in the flight compartment to call the ground crew. The switch is on the passenger signs panel on the P5 forward overhead panel. A horn in the nose wheel well makes a sound when the crew member pushes the switch.

The ground crew pushes the PILOT CALL switch on the external power panel to call the flight crew. That sends a signal to the remote electronics unit and to the aural warning module. The aural warning module makes a high chime. The remote electronics unit sends a signal to make the INT call light, on the audio control panel, come on. The call light is in the lower half of the INT microphone selector switch. When the ground crew releases the PILOT CALL switch, the INT call light goes off.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



M80746 S0004624391_V1

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-43-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - EXTERNAL COMPONENT LOCATION

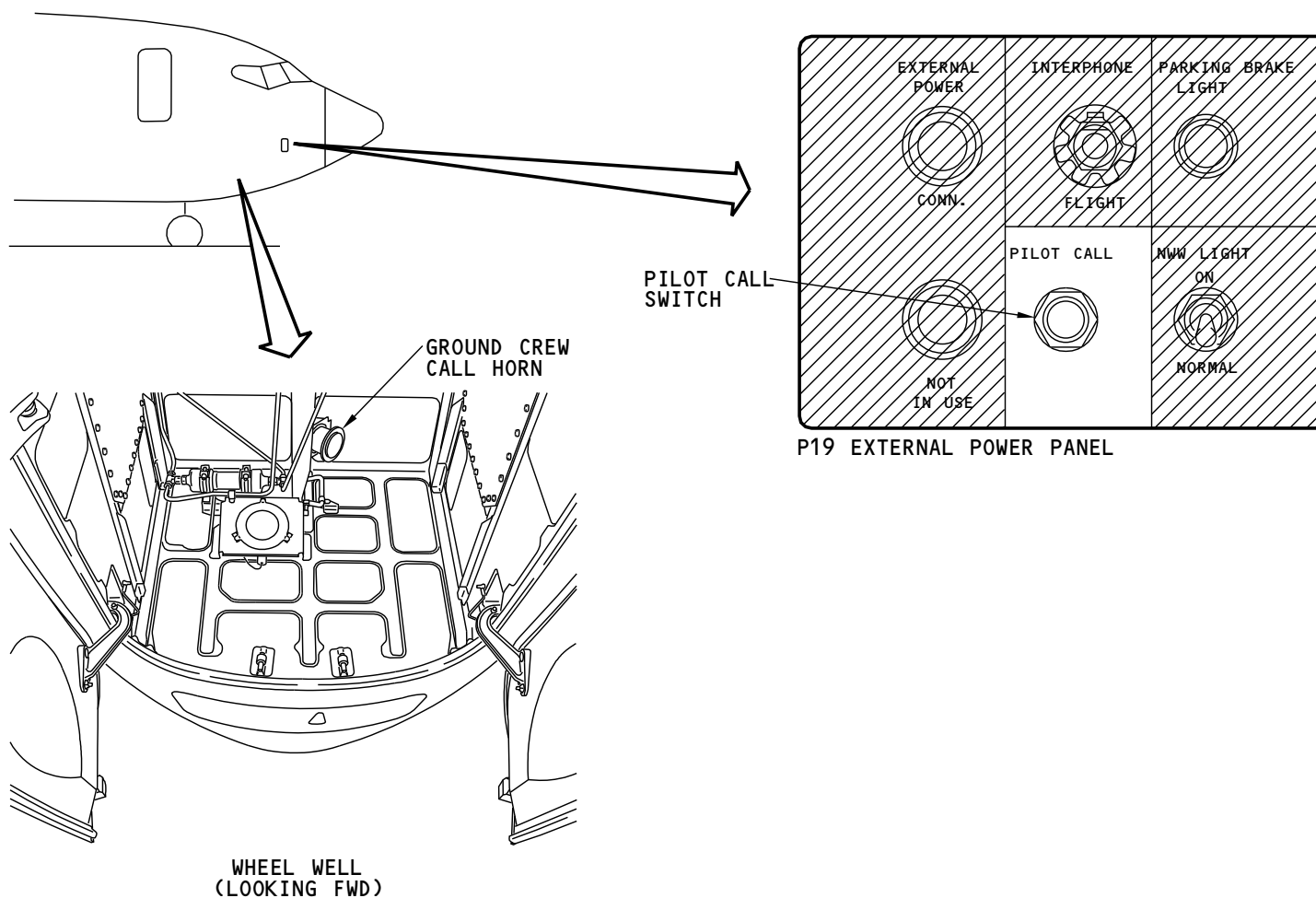
Ground Crew Call System Component Locations

The ground crew call horn is on the forward wall of the nose wheel well.

The PILOT CALL switch is on the P19 external power panel. This panel is forward of the nose wheel well on the right side of the airplane.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - EXTERNAL COMPONENT LOCATION



M80753 S0004624396_V1

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - EXTERNAL COMPONENT LOCATION

23-43-00



GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Flight Compartment Component Locations

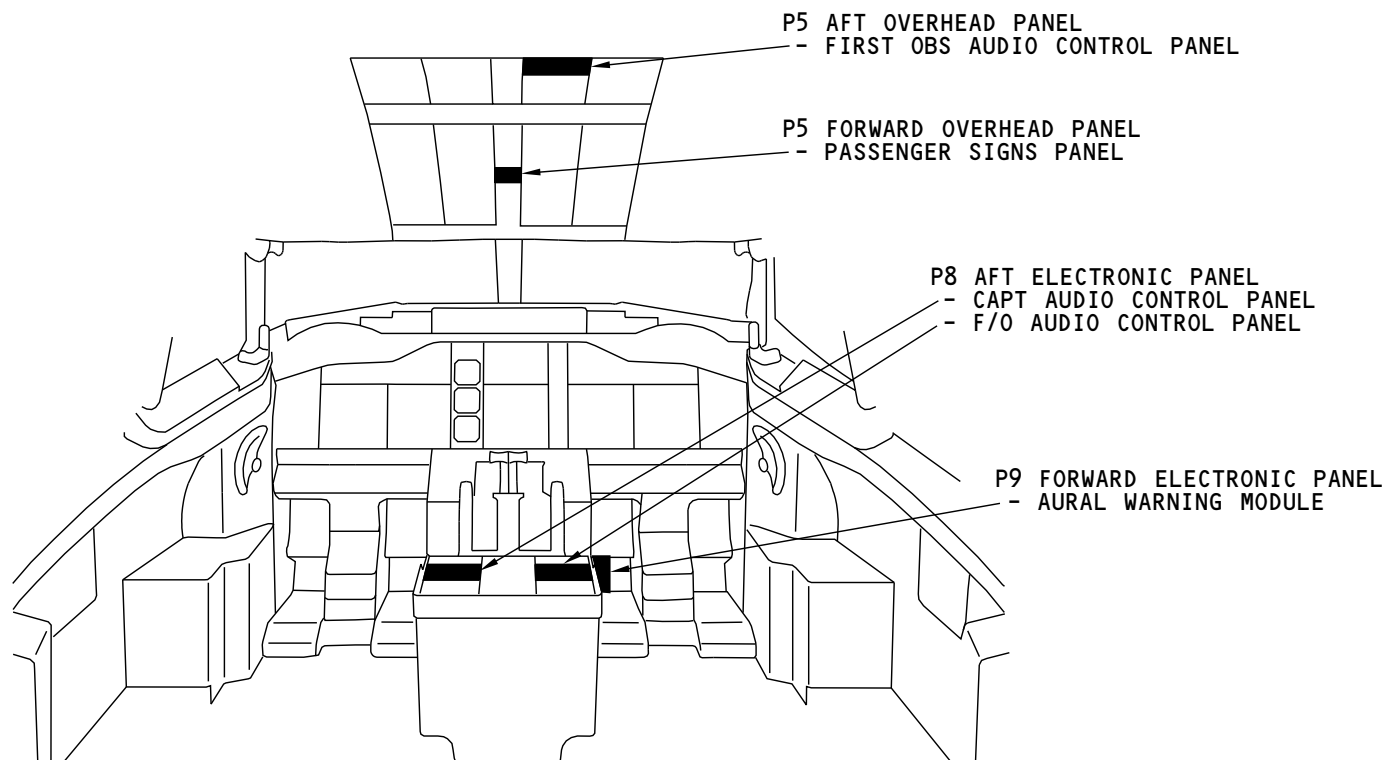
The passenger signs panel is on the P5 forward overhead panel.

The aural warning module is on the F/O side of the P9 forward electronic panel.

The captain and first officer audio control panels (ACP) are on the P8 aft electronic panel. The observer ACP is on the P5 aft overhead panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M80755 S0004624402_V1

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-43-00

23-43-00-004

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - INTERFACES

Power

The P18 circuit breaker panel sends 28v dc to these components:

- PILOT CALL switch
- GRD CALL switch.

P19 External Power Panel

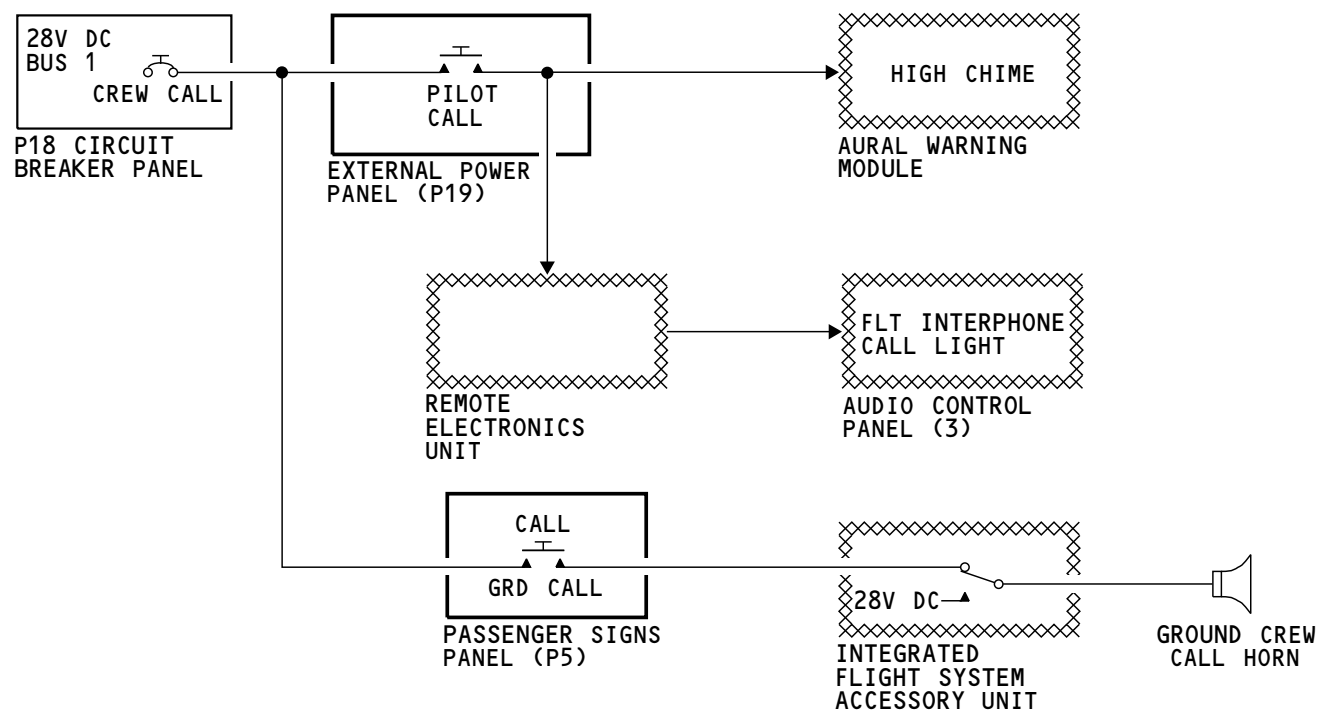
When you push the PILOT CALL switch, the pilot call signal goes to the remote electronics unit (REU) and to the aural warning module. The REU sends a discrete to the audio control panel.

Passenger Signs Panel

When you push the GRD CALL switch, the ground crew call signal goes through a relay in the integrated flight system accessory unit and then to the ground crew call horn.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - INTERFACES



M80759 S0004624407_V1

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - INTERFACES

23-43-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - CALL HORN

Purpose

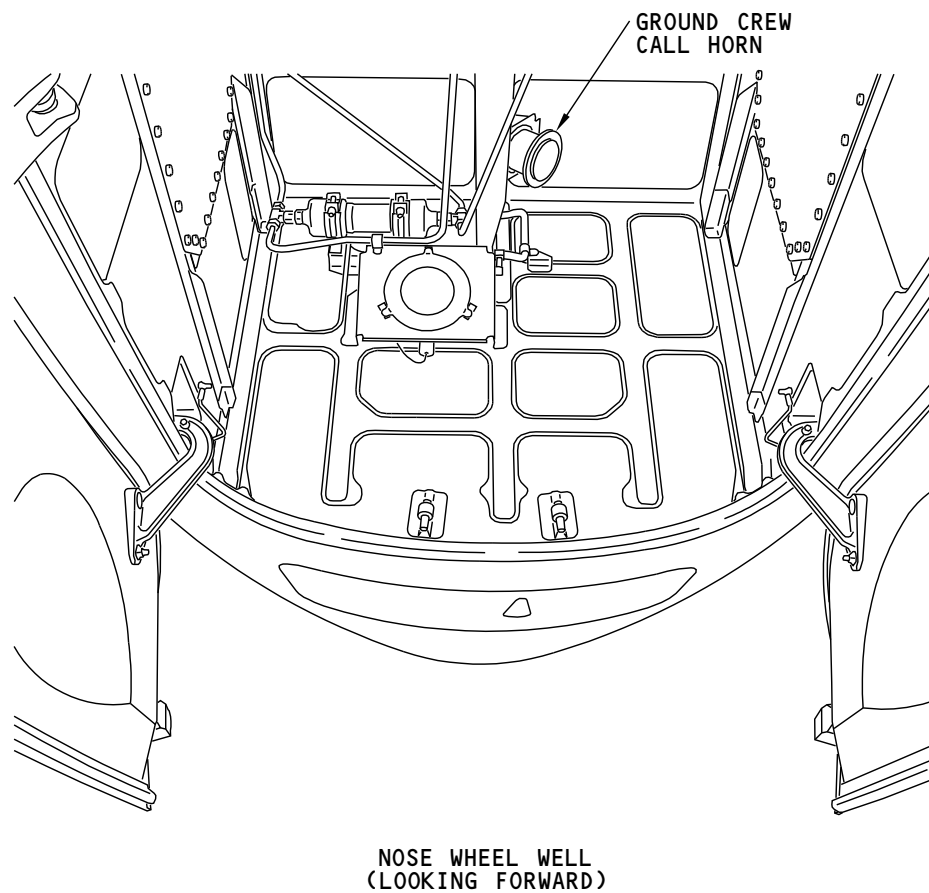
When you push the GRD CALL switch, the call horn makes a sound. When you release the switch, the sound stops.

The horn makes a continuous sound when the ADIRS battery warning circuit is active or ADIRS cooling is not sufficient.

The horn makes a sound when the electrical battery is discharging. This happens when the battery charger power is off and the battery switch is on.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - CALL HORN



M80761 S0004624410_V1

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - CALL HORN

23-43-00-006

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-43-00



GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The ground crew calls the flight crew with the PILOT CALL switch. The flight crew uses the GRD CALL switch to call the ground crew.

PILOT CALL Switch

You push the PILOT CALL switch to call the pilot. This switch connects 28v dc to the REU call relay. The call relay energizes and sends a ground discrete to the ACP to set the flight interphone call light. When you release the switch, the REU call relay de-energizes and the CALL light goes off. The 28v dc also goes to the aural warning module to make a high tone chime in the flight compartment.

GRD CALL Switch

The pilot pushes the GRD CALL switch to make the ground crew call horn operate. The switch connects 28v dc to the ground crew call horn. The horn stops when you release the switch.

Ground Crew Call Horn

These are the conditions which cause the ground crew call horn to operate:

- Push the GRD CALL switch
- The inertial reference system cooling is not sufficient on the ground
- The inertial reference system (IRS) battery warning circuit is on.
- The electrical system battery is discharging (battery charger is powered off and battery switch is on).

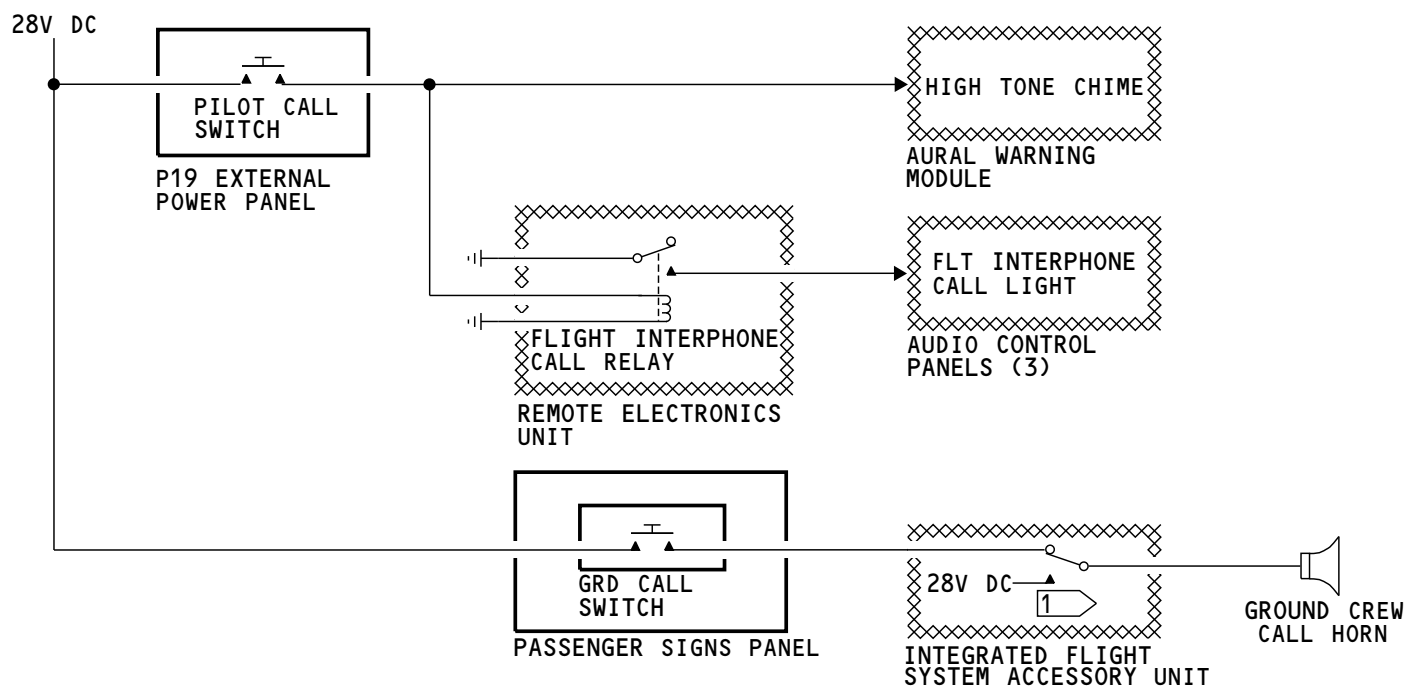
23-43-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



1 ENERGIZED WHEN THE ADIRS OPERATES FROM HOT BATTERY BUS OR WHEN THE ADIRS IS ON AND THE EQUIPMENT COOLING FAN DOES NOT OPERATE.

M80763 S0004624413_V1

GROUND CREW CALL SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-43-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-51-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

Purpose

The flight crew uses the flight interphone system to speak with each other and the ground crew.

Flight and maintenance crews use the flight interphone system to get access to the communication systems. You can also use the flight interphone system to monitor the navigation receivers.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- AAU - audio accessory unit
- ACP - audio control panel
- ADF - automatic direction finder
- ALT - alternate
- CAPT - captain
- COMM - communication
- DFCS - digital flight control system
- DME - distance measuring equipment
- FCC - flight control computer
- F/O - first officer
- GPWC - ground proximity warning computer
- HF - high frequency
- I/C - intercommunication
- ILS - instrument landing system
- INT - interphone
- MD&T - master dim and test
- MEDCOM - medical communications
- MIC - microphone
- MKR - marker
- NORM - normal
- OBS - observer
- PA - passenger address

- PLA - programmed logic array
- PTT - push to talk
- REU - remote electronics unit
- R/T - receive/transmit
- SATCOM - satellite communication
- STA - station
- TCAS - traffic alert and collision avoidance system
- VHF - very high frequency
- VOR - very high frequency omni-range system
- XCVR - transceiver

23-51-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



M80766 S0004624420_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-51-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The Remote Electronics Unit (REU) and Audio Control Panel (ACP) control the audio signals to and from the flight crew. The REU also controls the communication with the service interphone and related electronics equipment. During a system failure, emergency operation bypasses all active system circuitry and keeps airplane-to-ground station communication.

The REU also controls the communication with the service interphone and related electronics equipment. During a system failure, emergency operation bypasses all active system circuitry and keeps airplane-to-ground station communication.

Flight Crew Interfaces

This system description shows the captain system. Interfaces and components for other flight crew stations are similar.

The flight crew uses microphone (mic) switches on these components to send audio to the REU:

- Remote mic switch
- Control wheel
- ACP
- Hand microphone.

A microphone on these components lets the flight crew speak on the flight interphone system:

- Oxygen mask
- Headset boom mic
- Hand mic.

The flight crew uses the audio control panels for these functions:

- Listen to the communication and navigation receivers
- Adjust the volume of the received audio
- Select a transmitter and microphone
- Monitor SELCAL

- Monitor Crew Call
- Key the microphone.

The REU sends audio signals to the headsets and to the flight interphone speakers.

Other Component and System Interfaces

The REU connects to these other components:

- Communications radios - the REU sends Push-To-Talk (PTT) and microphone audio to the transceivers and receives audio back from them
- Navigation receivers - the REU receives voice and Morse code identification tones.

The flight interphone system also has an interface with these other systems:

- Passenger address system - lets the flight crew make announcements to passengers
- Service interphone system - lets the flight crew speak with attendants and service personnel
- Voice recorder - records the flight crew microphone and receive audio
- Flight crew call - gives discrete for call light
- Ground crew call - gives discrete for call light
- Ground Proximity Warning Computer (GPWC) - lets flight crew monitor warning signals
- Traffic Alert and Collision Avoidance System (TCAS) - lets the flight crew monitor TCAS signals
- Flight Control Computer (FCC) - gives discrete signals to the REU. This signal activates an altitude alert tone generator.

Aural alerts for TCAS, ground proximity, and altitude are heard at the captain, first officer, or observer headphones and at the flight interphone speakers.

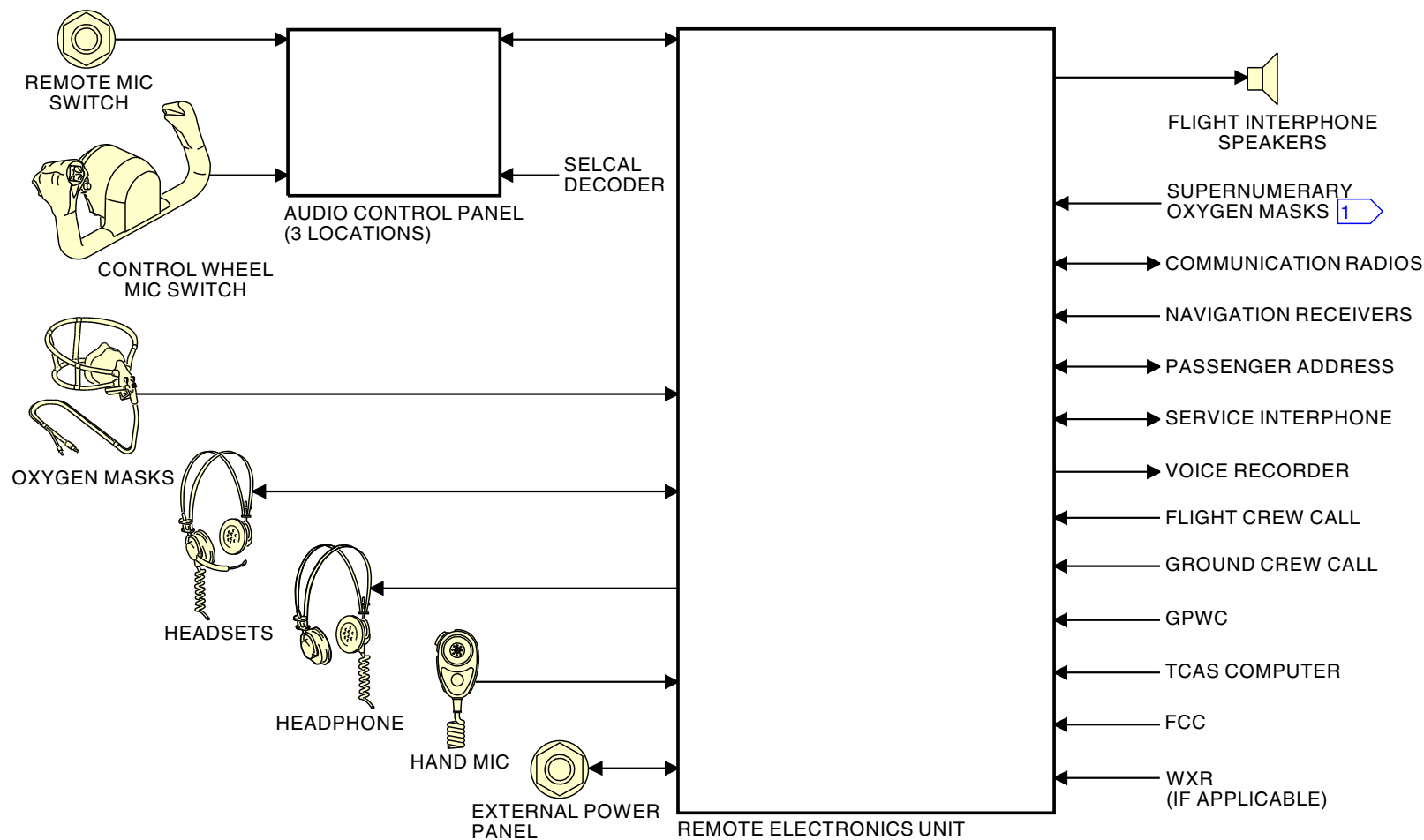
23-51-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



1 IF IT IS INSTALLED

1532377 S0000279270_V3

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-51-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

Flight Compartment Component Locations

These are the captain and first officer flight interphone system components:

- Remote mic switch
- Control wheel mic switch
- Flight interphone speaker
- Hand mic jack
- Oxygen mask mic jack
- Boom mic jack
- Headphone jack
- Audio control panel.

The observer has these flight interphone components:

- Hand mic jack
- Oxygen mask mic jack
- Headphone jack
- Audio control panel.

| SIA 702

The second observer has a headphone jack only.

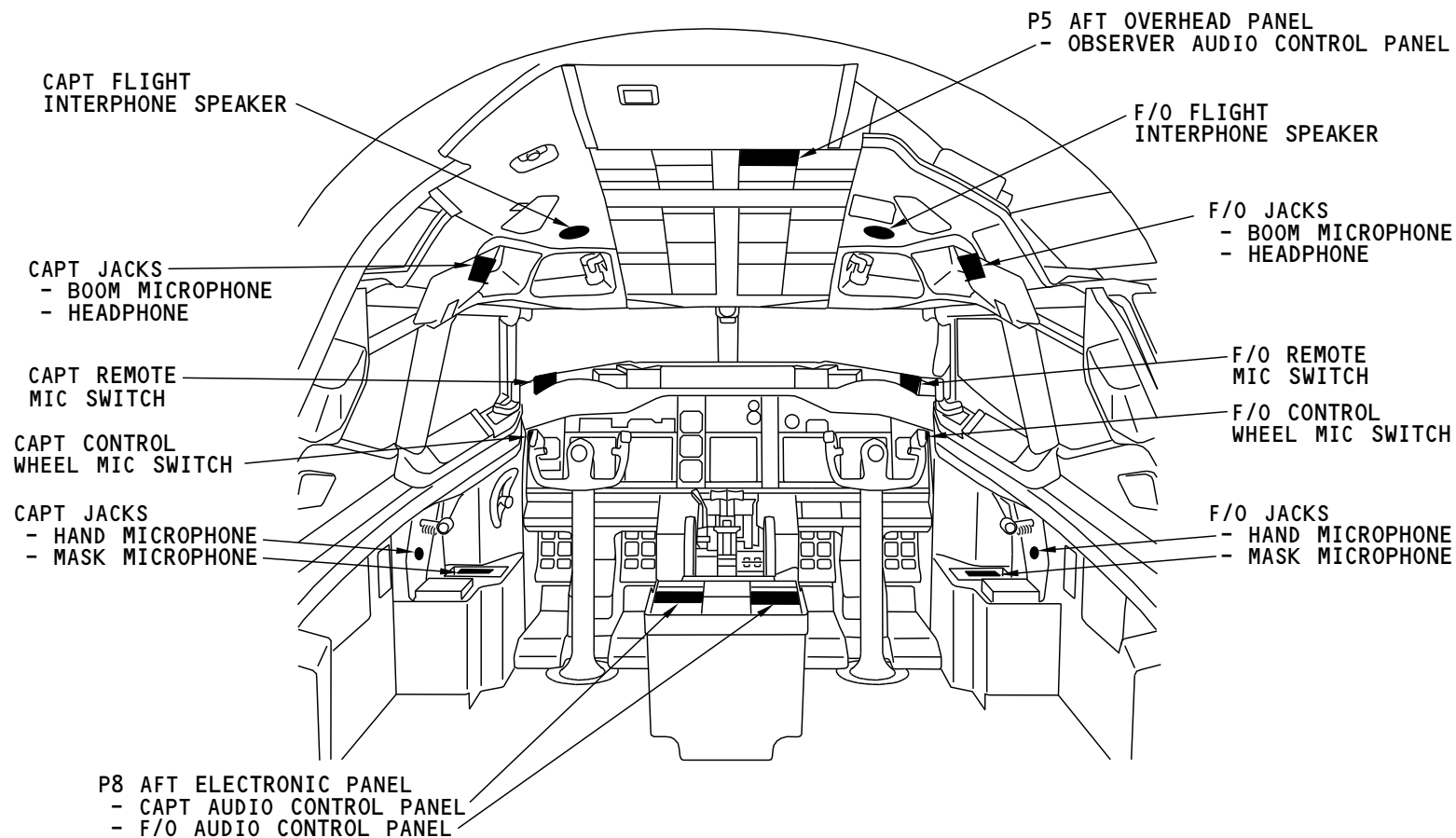
SIA ALL**23-51-00**

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M80842 S0004624500_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-51-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS****Flight Interphone Component Locations**

There are flight interphone system components in these locations:

- Electronic equipment compartment
- Flight compartment.

Electronic Equipment Compartment

The REU is on the E4-1 rack.

Flight Compartment

These are the flight interphone system components in the aft portion of the flight compartment:

| SIA 702

- Second observer headphone jack

SIA ALL

- Observer headphone jack
- Observer mask microphone
- Observer hand microphone.

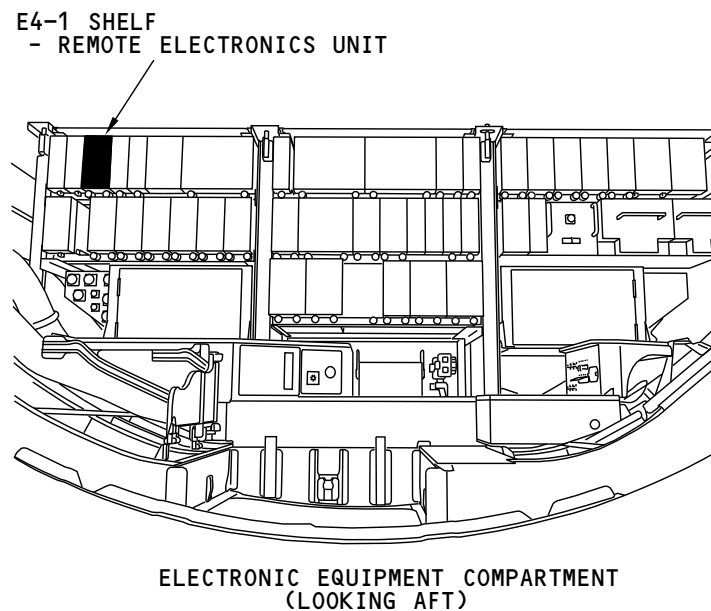
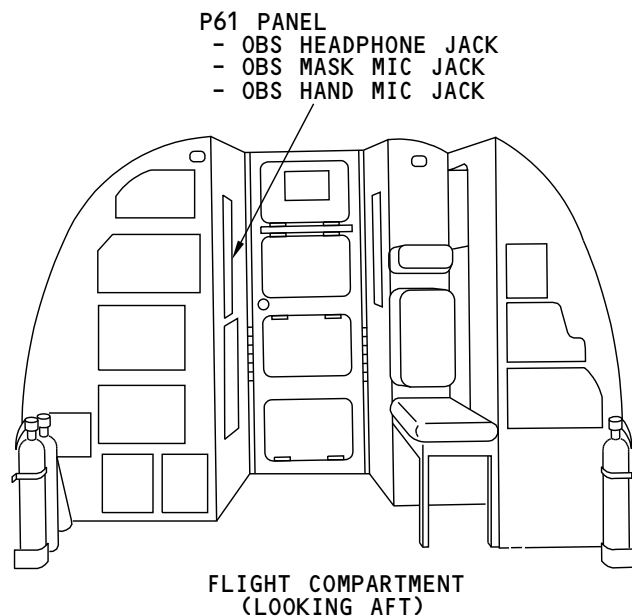
23-51-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M80855 S0004624516_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS

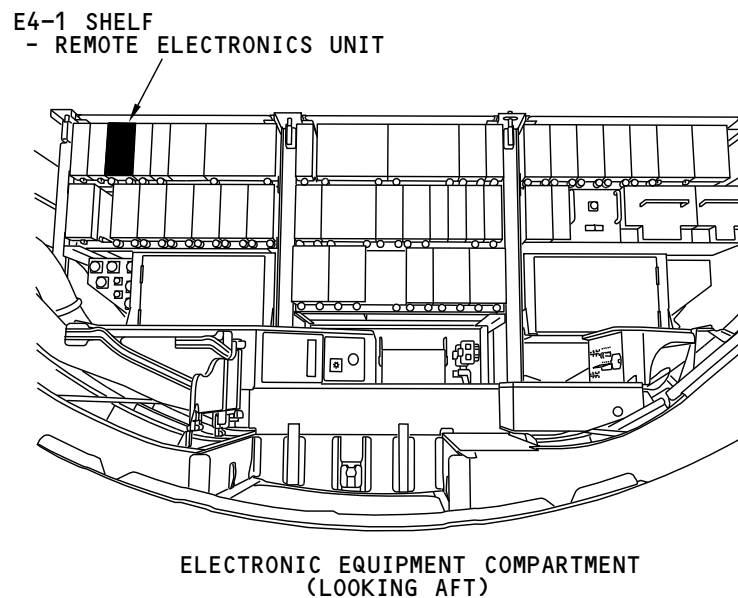
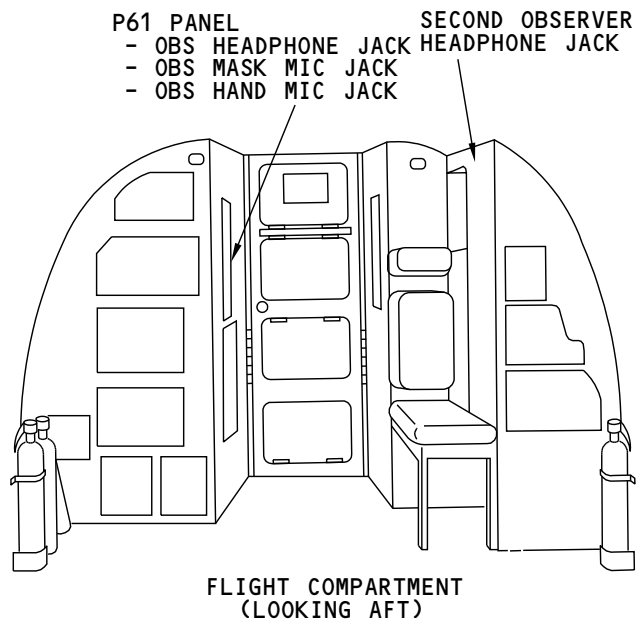
23-51-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA 703-714, 716-999

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS



M80854 S0004624517_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS

23-51-00

SIA 702

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-51-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



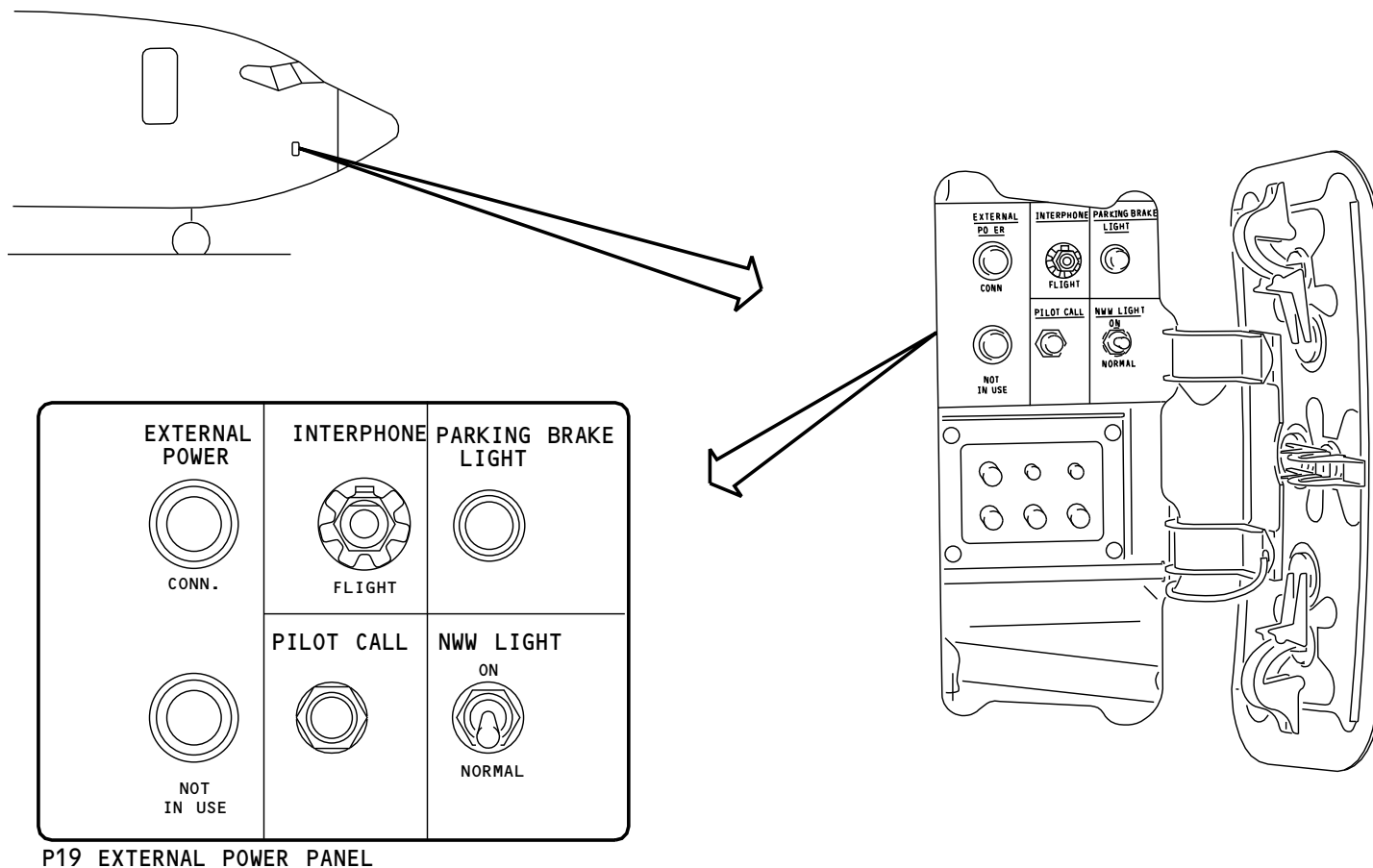
FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - EXTERNAL FLIGHT INTERPHONE JACK LOCATION

Flight Interphone Jack

There is a flight interphone jack on the P19 external power panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - EXTERNAL FLIGHT INTERPHONE JACK LOCATION



M80857 S0004624522_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - EXTERNAL FLIGHT INTERPHONE JACK LOCATION

23-51-00

23-51-00-005

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - POWER INTERFACE

General

Power for the flight interphone system comes through circuit breakers in the P6-2 circuit breaker panel.

The REU has three station cards and an audio accessory unit (AAU) card. Each card has a power supply for internal operation. The station cards supply 15v dc to the audio control panels (ACP).

CAPT AUDIO Circuit Breaker

The CAPT AUDIO circuit breaker supplies 28v dc to the captain station card in the remote electronics unit. The captain station card supplies 15v dc to the captain ACP.

F/O AUDIO Circuit Breaker

The F/O AUDIO circuit breaker supplies 28v dc to the first officer station card in the remote electronics unit. The F/O station card supplies 15v dc to the first officer ACP.

OBS AUDIO Circuit Breaker

The OBS AUDIO circuit breaker supplies 28v dc to the observer station card in the remote electronics unit. The observer station card supplies 15v dc to the observer ACP.

INPH AND WARN Circuit Breaker

The INPH AND WARN circuit breaker supplies power to the audio accessory unit card in the remote electronics unit.

Master Dim and Test

Each ACP gets 28v dc from the master dim and test (MD&T) system when the BRT/DIM/TEST switch on the captains main instrument panel is in the BRT position, and 16v dc when the switch is in the DIM position. This voltage supplies power for the lamps in the mic selector switches.

The MD&T system also supplies power to the call lamps in the mic selector switches.

Panel Lighting

Each ACP gets 5v ac from the airplane electrical system to supply power for the edgelit panel lighting.

23-51-00-006

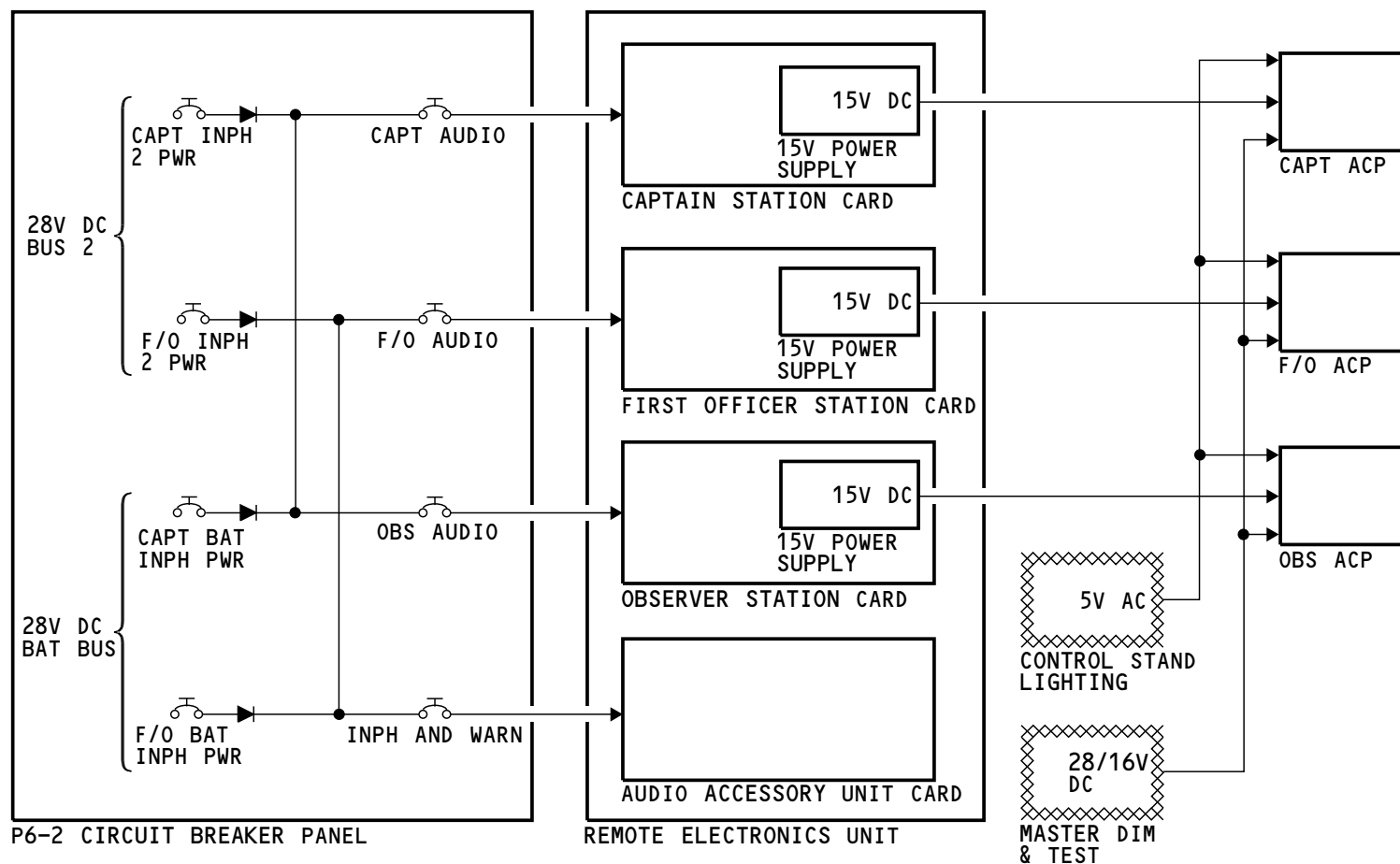
EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-51-00

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - POWER INTERFACE



M80859 S0004624526_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - POWER INTERFACE

23-51-00

23-51-00-006

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-51-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT INTERFACES

General

The flight interphone system has these flight compartment stations:

- Captain
- First officer
- Observer.

The REU gets control and PTT signals from the audio control panels (ACPs). The REU sends a clock signal to the ACPs to control the data multiplexing.

The remote electronics unit (REU) has three station cards that supply an interface to each station. Each station card:

- Receives control inputs from the audio control panel (ACP)
- Supplies push-to-talk (PTT) and microphone audio signals to communication systems
- Supplies audio from communication and navigation receivers to the stations.

Captain and First Officer Stations

The captain and the first officer station cards have an interface to these components:

- Control wheel PTT switch
- Remote mic switch
- Audio control panel
- Hand microphone
- Oxygen mask stowage panel
- Headset
- Headphone
- Flight interphone speaker.

The control wheel PTT switch connects in parallel with the ACP RADIO - INT (or R/T - I/C) switch. The remote mic switch is in parallel with the control wheel MIC switch.

When you select MIC on the control wheel switch, push the remote mic switch or select RADIO (or R/T) on the ACP, the ACP sends the R/T-PTT discrete signal to the REU.

When you select INT on the control wheel switch or INT (or I/C) on the ACP, the ACP multiplexes the interphone-PTT signal with other control signals and sends the control signal to the REU.

The PTT discrete signal from the hand mic goes directly to the REU.

The microphone audio can come from these sources:

- Hand microphone
- Oxygen mask microphone
- Headset boom microphone.

The oxygen mask stowage panel sends a door discrete, MASK MIC ON/OFF signal, to the audio control panel. An open discrete, mask mic off, is door closed and a ground discrete, mask mic on, is door open.

The REU sends audio to the headset, the headphone, and the flight compartment speaker at each station.

SIA 702, 704, 705, 707-714, 716-999; SIA 703, 706 POST SB 737-23-1536

When you use the hand microphone or the boom microphone, the REU decreases the volume to the flight compartment speaker at that station. The volume to the other speaker does not change.

SIA 703, 706 PRE SB 737-23-1536

When you use the hand microphone or the boom microphone, the REU decreases the volume to the flight compartment speakers.

SIA ALL**Observer Station**

The observer station card has an interface to these components:

- Audio control panel
- Hand microphone

23-51-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT INTERFACES**

- Oxygen mask microphone
- Headphone.

When you select RADIO (or R/T) on the ACP, the ACP sends a R/T-PTT discrete signal to the REU.

When you select INT (or I/C) on the ACP, the ACP multiplexes the interphone-PTT signal with other control signals and sends the control signal to the REU.

The microphone audio can come from the hand microphone or the oxygen mask microphone.

When you use the hand microphone, the REU decreases the volume to the flight compartment speakers. The PTT discrete signal from the hand mic goes directly to the REU.

The REU sends audio to the headphone.

Medical Communications System

The observer station card also has an interface with the medical communications jacks.

The medical communications hand microphone jacks are wired in parallel to the First Observer's hand microphone input to the REU. The medical communication headphone jacks are wired in parallel to the First Observer's headphone output from the REU.

The flight crew controls access to the medical communications system through select switches on the First Observer's ACP.

| SIA 702**Second Observer Station**

The observer station card has an interface to a headphone jack for a second observer. The second observer hears the same audio as the first observer.

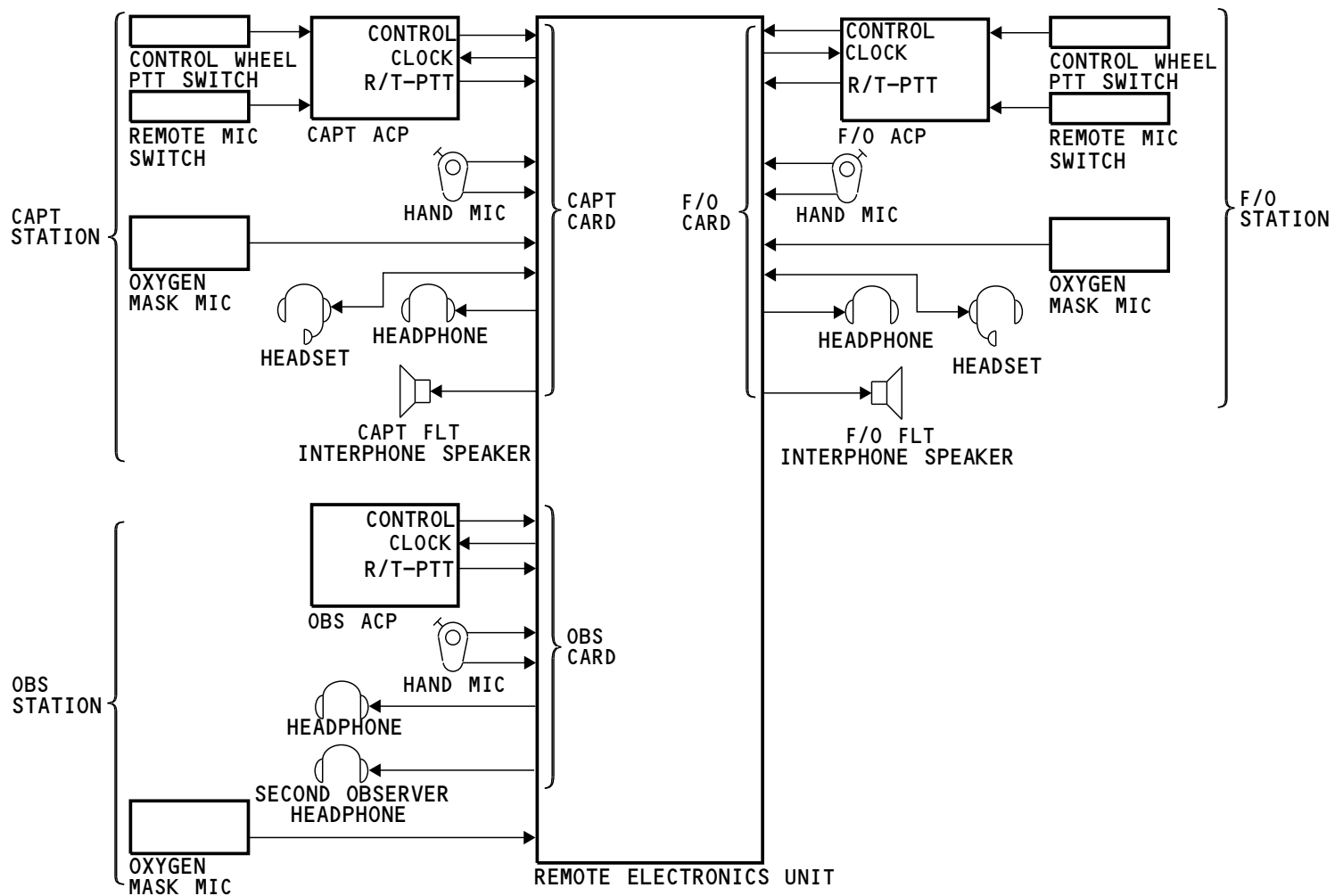
SIA ALL**23-51-00**

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT INTERFACES



M80866 S0004624533_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT INTERFACES

23-51-00

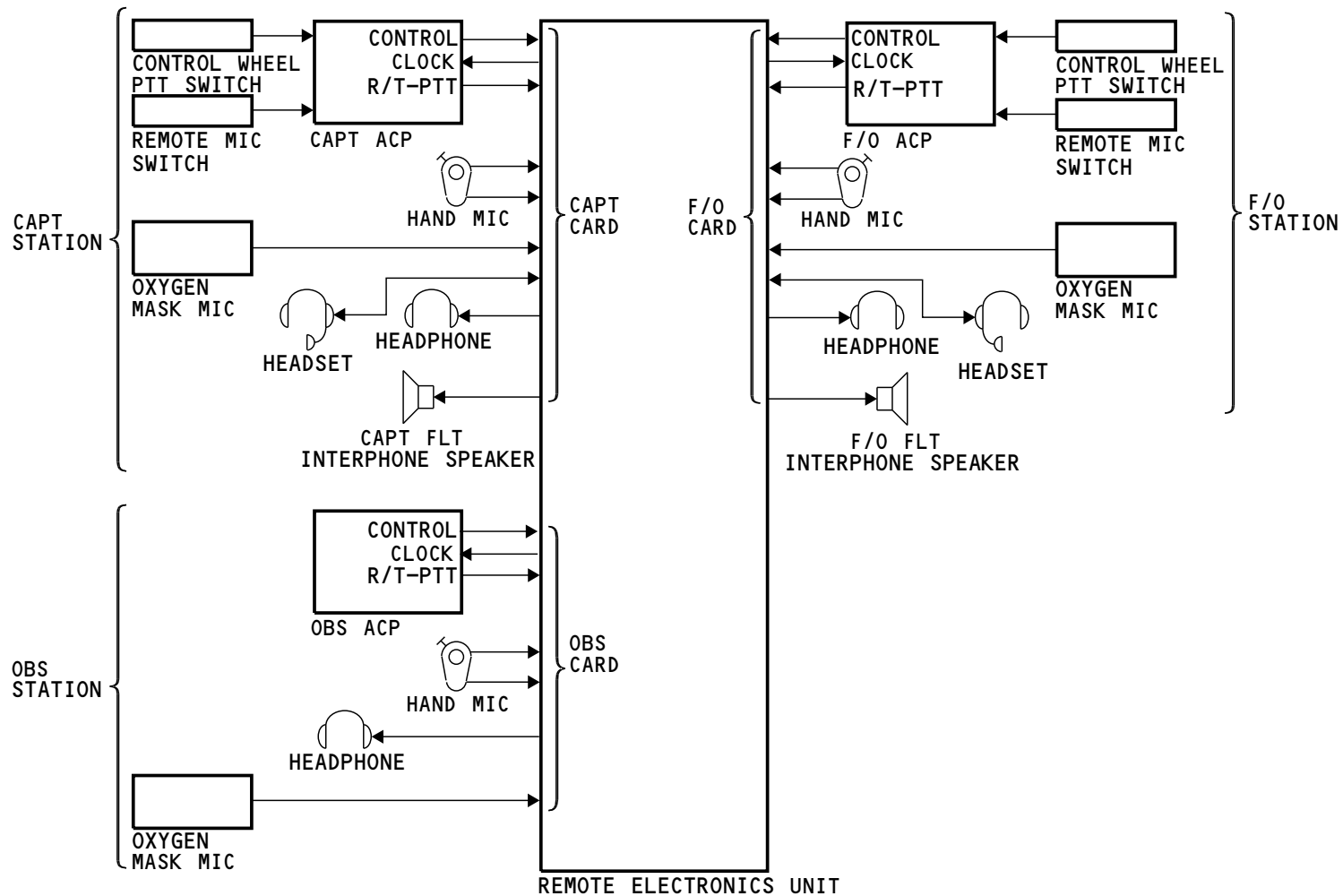
SIA 702

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT INTERFACES



M80867 S0004624534_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT INTERFACES

23-51-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA 703-714, 716-999

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-51-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMMUNICATION SYSTEM INTERFACES

Remote Electronics Unit

The Remote Electronics Unit (REU) controls the audio in the flight interphone system.

The REU gets control and PTT signals from the audio control panels (ACPs). The REU sends timing signals to the ACPs to control the data multiplexing.

Communication Transceivers

The communication transceivers get microphone audio and PTT discretes from the REU. The transceivers send audio outputs to the REU. The REU uses these transceivers:

- Very high frequency (VHF)
- High frequency (HF).

Passenger Address Amplifier

The REU sends audio and PTT signals to the passenger address (PA) amplifier. The REU receives sidetone audio from the PA amplifier.

REU front panel potentiometers, PA SENSE and PA GAIN, connect to the PA amplifier. The PA SENSE sets the PA amplifier microphone input level. The PA GAIN sets the PA amplifier main power amplifier output level.

Voice Recorder

The REU sends audio from the captain, first officer, and observer to the voice recorder.

Service Interphone System

The REU sends audio to the service interphone system when you select service interphone on the ACP. Service interphone audio is available at all service interphone stations and attendant handsets.

Flight Interphone Jack

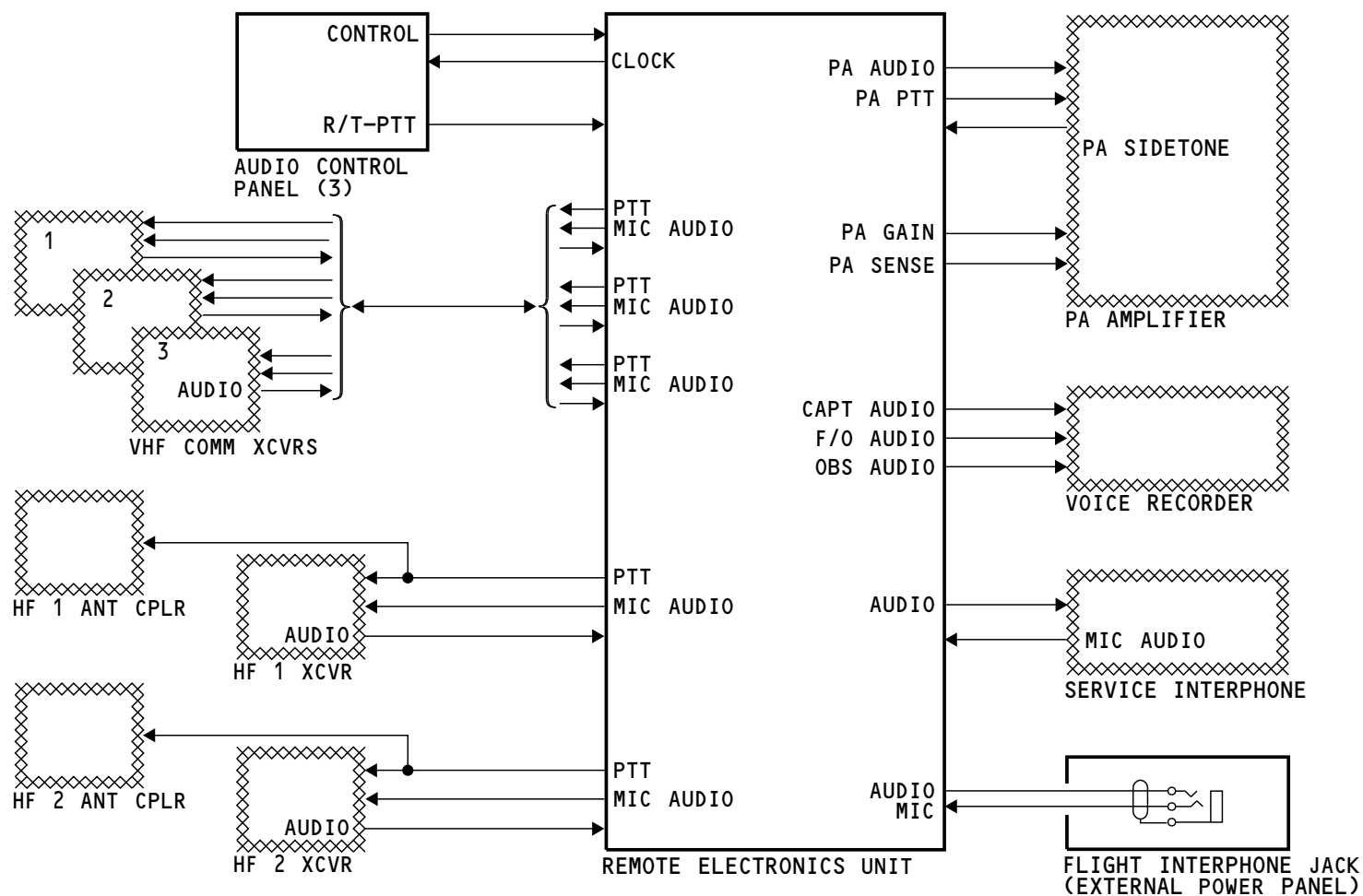
The ground crew uses the flight interphone jack at the P19 external power panel to talk to the flight crew.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

23-51-00

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMMUNICATION SYSTEM INTERFACES



M80873 S0004624546_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - COMMUNICATION SYSTEM INTERFACES

23-51-00-008

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-51-00



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - NAVIGATION INTERFACE

Navigation Interfaces

These navigation radio systems send audio signals to the REU:

- Multi-mode receiver (MMR)
- VHF omnidirectional range (VOR)/marker beacon system
- Automatic direction finder (ADF) system
- Distance measuring equipment (DME) system.

The REU pairs the DME with either the MMR or VOR audio. The REU sets the DME audio level at a lower level than the MMR or VOR audio.

Audio Alerts

These systems send audio alert signals to the REU:

- Flight control computer (FCC) - altitude alert
- Traffic alert and collision avoidance system (TCAS)
- WXR receiver transmitter
- Ground proximity warning computer (GPWC).

The FCC sends a ground discrete to start the altitude alert signal. The REU supplies a C-chord aural with each ground discrete. The REU sums and amplifies TCAS, GPWC, WXR, and C-chord audio alert signals.

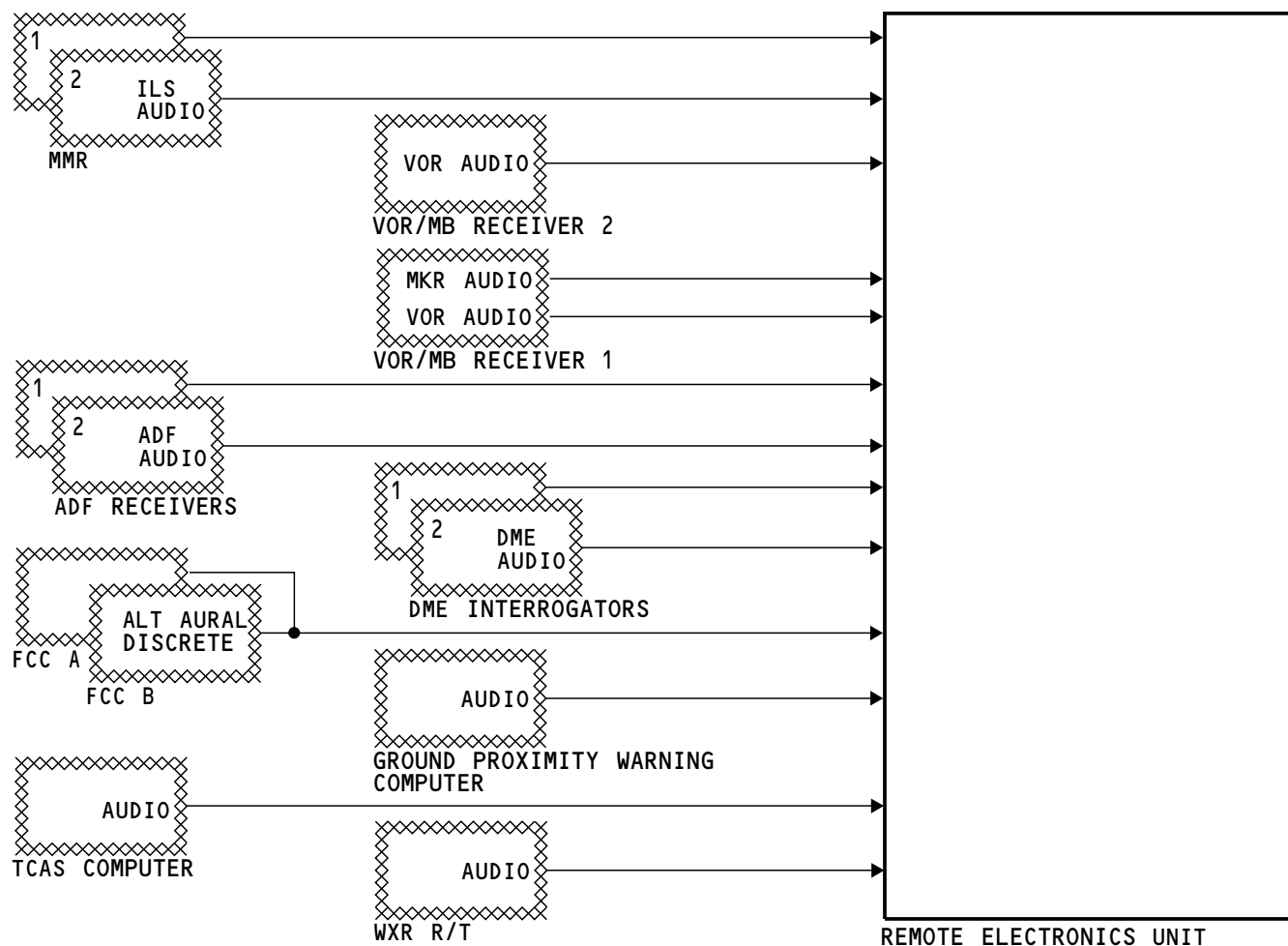
You can hear alert signals on the flight components below:

- Interphone headsets
- Headphones
- Speakers.

You can not turn off or adjust the volume of the alerts.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - NAVIGATION INTERFACE



M80898 S0004624571_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - NAVIGATION INTERFACE

23-51-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-51-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL

Purpose

The flight crew uses the audio control panels (ACPs) to control audio for the communication and navigation systems. Each ACP controls one station.

Controls

These are the controls on the ACP:

- Transmitter selectors
- Receiver switches
- Radio-Intercom PTT switch
- Filter switch
- SATCOM end call switches
- ALT-NORM switch.

Microphone Selector Switches

The flight interphone system gets audio from these microphones:

- Boom
- Oxygen mask
- Hand-held.

You push a transmitter selector to select a communication transmitter or system. You can select only one system at a time.

When you push a transmitter selector, this happens:

- The selector switch light comes on
- The lamps in the selector switch are field replaceable.
- The received audio comes on at the volume set by the receiver volume control
- The microphone audio and PTT signals are enabled for that system.

The transmitter selectors (except PA) have call lights in the switch. The call lights come on when the flight crew get any one of these calls:

- SELCAL on a VHF or HF radio

- Ground crew call (INT light)
- SATCOM call
- Flight crew call (CABIN light).

To turn off the call light, the flight crew selects the system and sends a PTT to that system.

When you push a PTT switch, the microphone audio and PTT signals go to the system set by the selector switches.

When the ACP initially gets power, the flight interphone system is active.

Receiver Switches

Push the receiver switch (push-on, push-off) to listen to communication or navigation system audio. Turn it to adjust the volume. You can monitor any combination of systems at any time.



CAUTION

DO NOT PULL THE RECEIVER SWITCH KNOBS. THE RECEIVER SWITCHES ARE PUSH-ON/PUSH-OFF TYPE. THE KNOB IS IN WHEN THE CONTROL IS ON, AND OUT WHEN OFF. IF YOU PULL THEM, YOU MAY DAMAGE THEM.

Radio-Intercom PTT Switch

The radio-intercom PTT switch is a three-position switch with a momentary contact in the RADIO position and a latching contact in the INT position. In the RADIO position, the microphone audio and PTT signals go to the communication system set by the transmitter selectors. In the INT position, the boom or mask microphone jacks connect to the flight interphone system. The radio-intercom PTT switch is in parallel with the PTT switch on the control wheel.

Filter Switch

The filter switch controls the filter that processes the navigation audio you receive. This switch has these positions:

- V (voice) position passes only voice frequencies through the filter and blocks the 1020 hz range frequency.

23-51-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL

- B (both) position passes voice and range (coded station identification) frequencies through the filter to the audio output.
- R (range) position passes only range frequencies through the filter and blocks voice frequencies.

ALT-NORM Switch

You use the ALT-NORM switch to select either normal or emergency operation of the flight interphone system. Each station operates independently.

When you select NORM, the flight interphone system operates as usual.

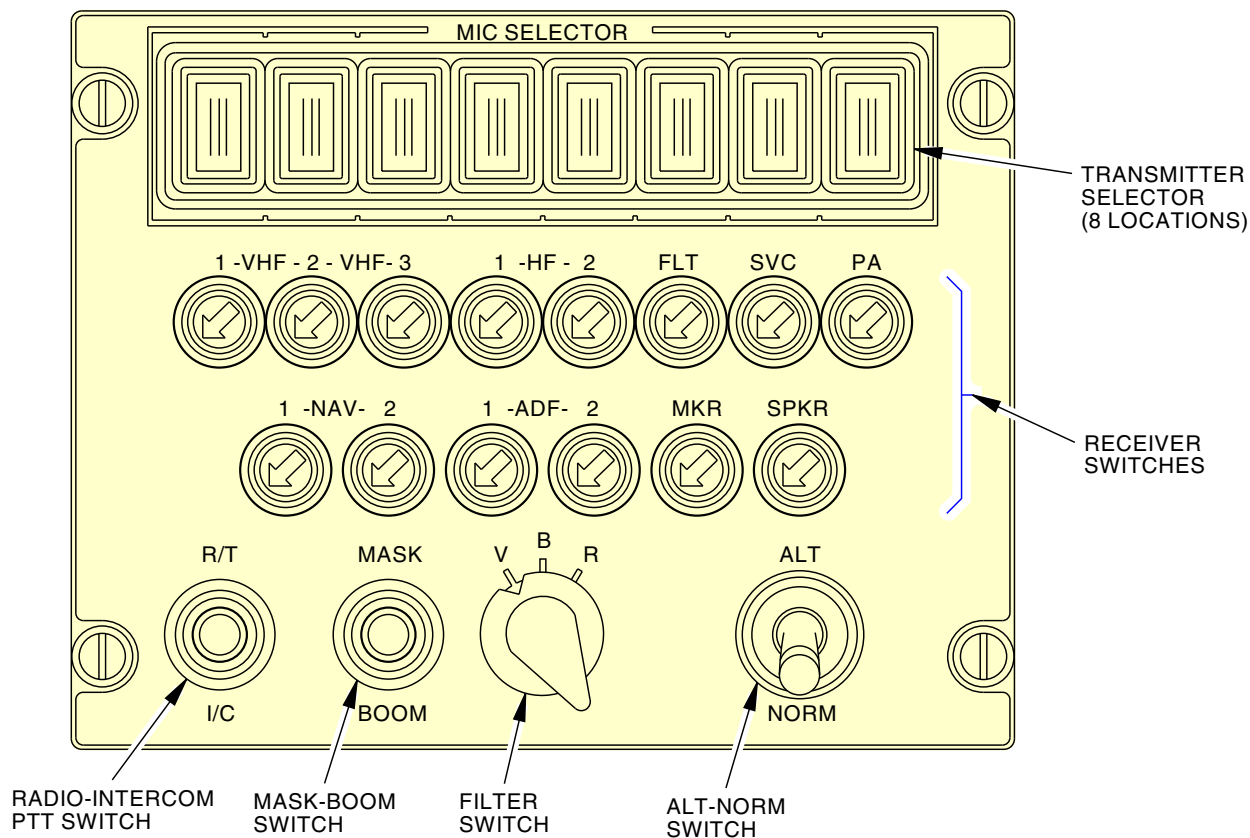
When you select ALT, the flight interphone system operates in the emergency mode. The only ACP control that operates is the R/T position of the PTT switch. The hand-mic does not operate.

When you select ALT on the captain or observer ACP, you hear receiver audio from the VHF-1 transceiver at the headphone and headset jacks. When you key the MIC, the audio and PTT signals go to the VHF-1 transceiver.

When you select ALT on the first officer ACP, you hear receiver audio from the VHF-2 transceiver at the headphone and headset jacks. When you key the MIC, the audio and PTT signals go to the VHF-2 transceiver.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL



AUDIO CONTROL PANEL (EXAMPLE)

INOP

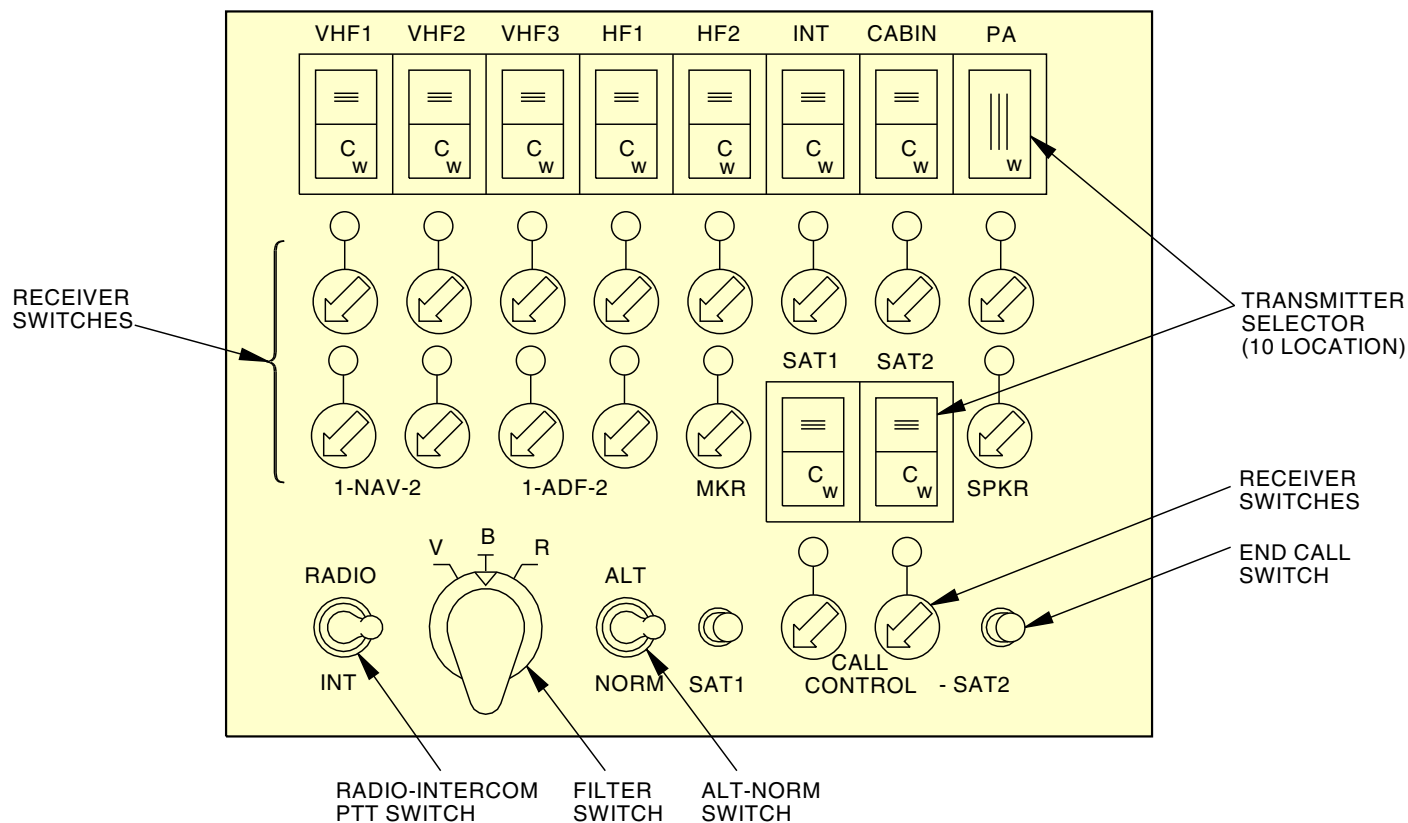
1 INOP PLACARDS ARE OVER THE LEGEND OF ANY TRANSMITTER SELECTOR OR RECEIVER SWITCH THAT IS NOT CONNECTED.

2441922 S0000566683_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL

23-51-00

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL



INOP

AUDIO CONTROL PANEL (EXAMPLE)

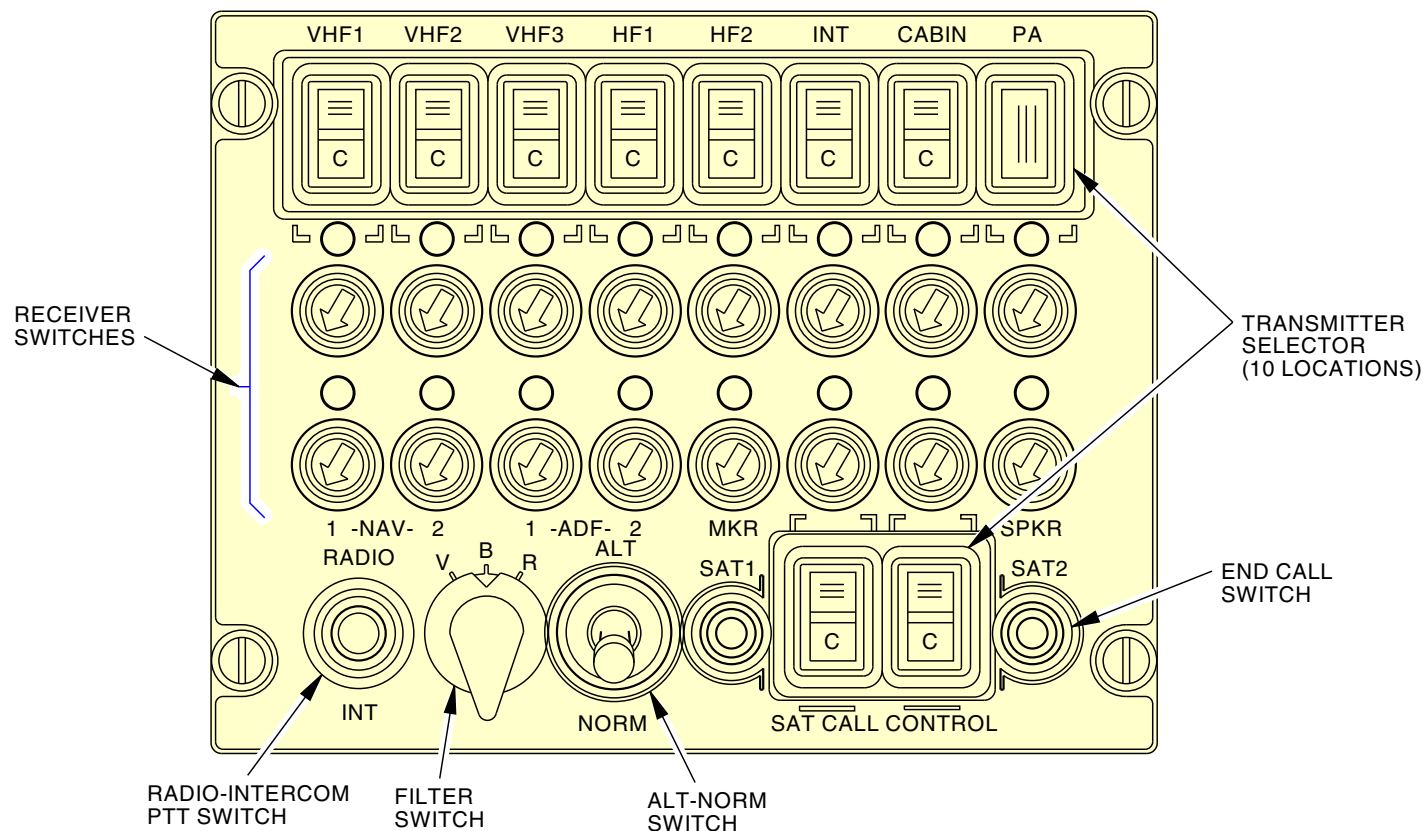
1 INOP PLACARDS ARE OVER THE LEGEND OF ANY TRANSMITTER SELECTOR OR RECEIVE SWITCH THAT IS NOT CONNECTED.

M80916 S0004624590_V2

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL

23-51-00

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL



AUDIO CONTROL PANEL (EXAMPLE)

INOP

1 INOP PLACARDS ARE OVER THE LEGEND OF ANY TRANSMITTER SELECTOR OR RECEIVER SWITCH THAT IS NOT CONNECTED.

2441950 S0000566684_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL

23-51-00



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT

Purpose

The Remote Electronics Unit (REU) controls audio signals in the flight interphone system.

Physical Description

The REU has these physical properties:

- Length is 17.6 in. (447.0 mm)
- Height is 7.62 in. (193.55 mm)
- Width is 3.58 in. (90.93 mm)
- Weight is 7.75 lb (3.52 kg).

Functions

The REU uses the Audio Control Panel (ACP) selections to connect these signals:

- Communication transceiver audio
- Navigation receiver audio
- Passenger address audio
- Service interphone audio
- Flight interphone.

The AURAL WARN MUTE switch on the front panel of the REU activates the muting of the aural warning signal in the headphones. The switch is a ten position rotary switch. The switch is in the active muting position when it is horizontal to the bottom edge of the front panel.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT


 SEATTLE, WA. USA

REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT
 AVTECH P/N5340-1
 BOEING P/N 10-62090-120
 RTCA DO-160C ENV. CAT.
 A2-CABXXXXFAXAAAARRACXXZJXX
 MOD AC] BC] CC] DC]

CAPT ☐ HDPH ☐ FLT ☐ SVR

F/O

☐ HDPH ☐ FLT ☐ SVR

OBS ☐ ALIGN
SLOT
FOR

AAU

☐ EXT INT
☐ ATN INT
☐ FLT INT
☐ DME 2
☐ DME 1
☐ PA SENS
☐ PA GAIN
☐ PA ST
☐ AUD 1
☐ AUD 2
☐ AURAL
☐ WARN
☐ MUTE

CAUTION

THIS UNIT IS NOT SUBJECT TO
DAMAGE FROM ELECTROSTATIC
DISCHARGE AS AN ASSEMBLY.
HOWEVER, IT CONTAINS PARTS
OR ASSEMBLIES THAT ARE
SENSITIVE TO ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE.

SERIAL NO.

DATE MFD.

M80922 S0004624599_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT

23-51-00

23-51-00-011

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - CONTROL WHEEL PTT SWITCH

Purpose

The control wheel PTT switch gives push-to-talk input for the boom or oxygen mask microphones.

Description and Controls

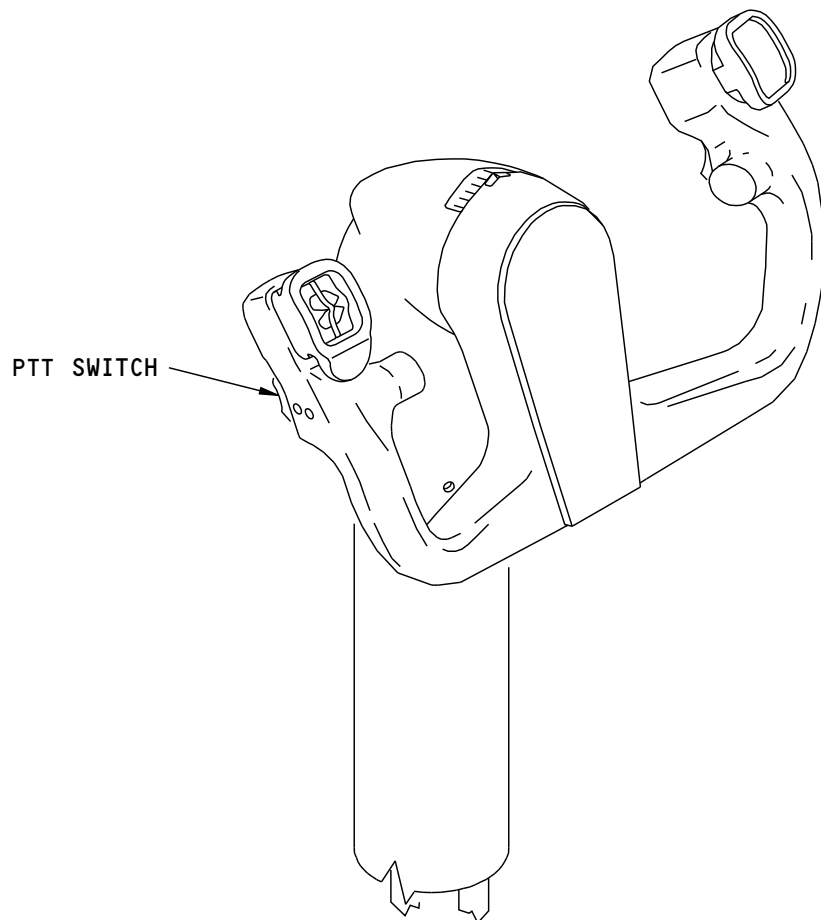
The control wheel PTT switch is a three position switch. It is on the outboard horn of the captain's and the first officer's control wheel. These are the switch positions:

- MIC - microphone audio and PTT signals go to the communication system you select
- OFF - The ACP PTT switch can key the microphone
- INT - microphone audio goes to the flight interphone system (ACP selection is not changed).

The switch is spring loaded to the middle OFF position from the MIC position. It is locked in the INT position until selected to either OFF or MIC.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - CONTROL WHEEL PTT SWITCH



CAPTAIN CONTROL WHEEL

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - CONTROL WHEEL PTT SWITCH

M80924 S0004624603_V2

23-51-00-012

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-51-00



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-51-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

You use the audio control panel (ACP) to select the audio for headsets and flight interphone speakers. ACPs also select a communication system.

ACPs show SELCAL and crew calls.

ACP Components

The ACP has these components:

- Power supply
- Front panel lights and switches
- Switching multiplexer
- Volume control multiplexer
- Select circuits
- Emergency circuit.

Power Supply

The ACP gets 15v dc from the REU. The ACP converts this voltage to 12v dc and 5v dc which gives power for electronic circuits.

Master dim and test (MD&T) sends 28v dc or 16v dc to the microphone selector lamps and the call lamps. The airplane electrical system sends 5v ac for panel lighting.

Front Panel Lights and Switches

The ACP has these front panel components:

- Microphone select switches with mic select lights and call lights
- Filter switches
- Receiver select switches and volume controls.

The mic select lights get 28v dc or 16v dc from the MD&T circuits. A mic select light turns on when it gets a ground from the electrical interlock programmed logic array (PLA) circuit.

The VHF or HF call lights turn on when SELCAL comes for that radio. To turn off these call lights, push the microphone select switch and key the mic. When you push the pilot call switch at the external power panel, the INT call light comes on. When you release the pilot call switch, the INT call light goes off. The CABIN call light comes on when the cabin crew makes a pilot call. When the cabin crew pushes reset on the handset or puts the handset into the cradle, the CABIN call light goes off.

When you push the microphone select switch, it sends 5v dc to the PLA. The PLA is an electrical interlock circuit. It makes a 4 bit binary code for the selected switch.

System selection is latched into the PLA. The PLA sends the applicable code to the switching multiplexer. The PLA also sends a signal to turn on a receiver volume control when you push the microphone select switch.

Push the receiver volume control to hear audio from the related system. The receiver volume control switch sends a dc voltage from a potentiometer (0 to 12v dc) to the multiplexer. The multiplexer sends this voltage to the REU to set the radio output volume level. When the audio volume control switch is off, 12v dc goes to the REU and you cannot hear the system audio.

Switching Multiplexer

The switching multiplexer gets these signals:

- Microphone select binary code from the PLA circuit
- DC voltages from filter switches
- DC voltages from the service interphone, PA, and speaker volume controls.

The switching multiplexer sequentially selects the inputs. The data output goes to the REU as a control system data word. This multiplexer operation stops when the volume control multiplexer operates.

Volume Control Multiplexer

The volume control multiplexer gets DC voltages from the remaining receiver volume controls.

23-51-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION**

The volume control multiplexer sequentially selects the inputs. The data output goes to the REU as a control system data word. This multiplexer operation stops when the switching multiplexer operates.

Select Circuits

A multiplexer selects each input in sequence for a given time. A clock in the REU increases the value of a counter. This counter provides the select address for the two analog multiplexers.

Two multiplexers combine the data from all the switches and the controls. The scan inhibit circuits prevent the operation of one multiplexer output while the other scans.

Emergency Circuits

The REU gives power for the ACP. You lose ACP power when for these conditions:

- REU has no power
- ACP has the ALT selection.

These conditions occur when you lose power in the ACP:

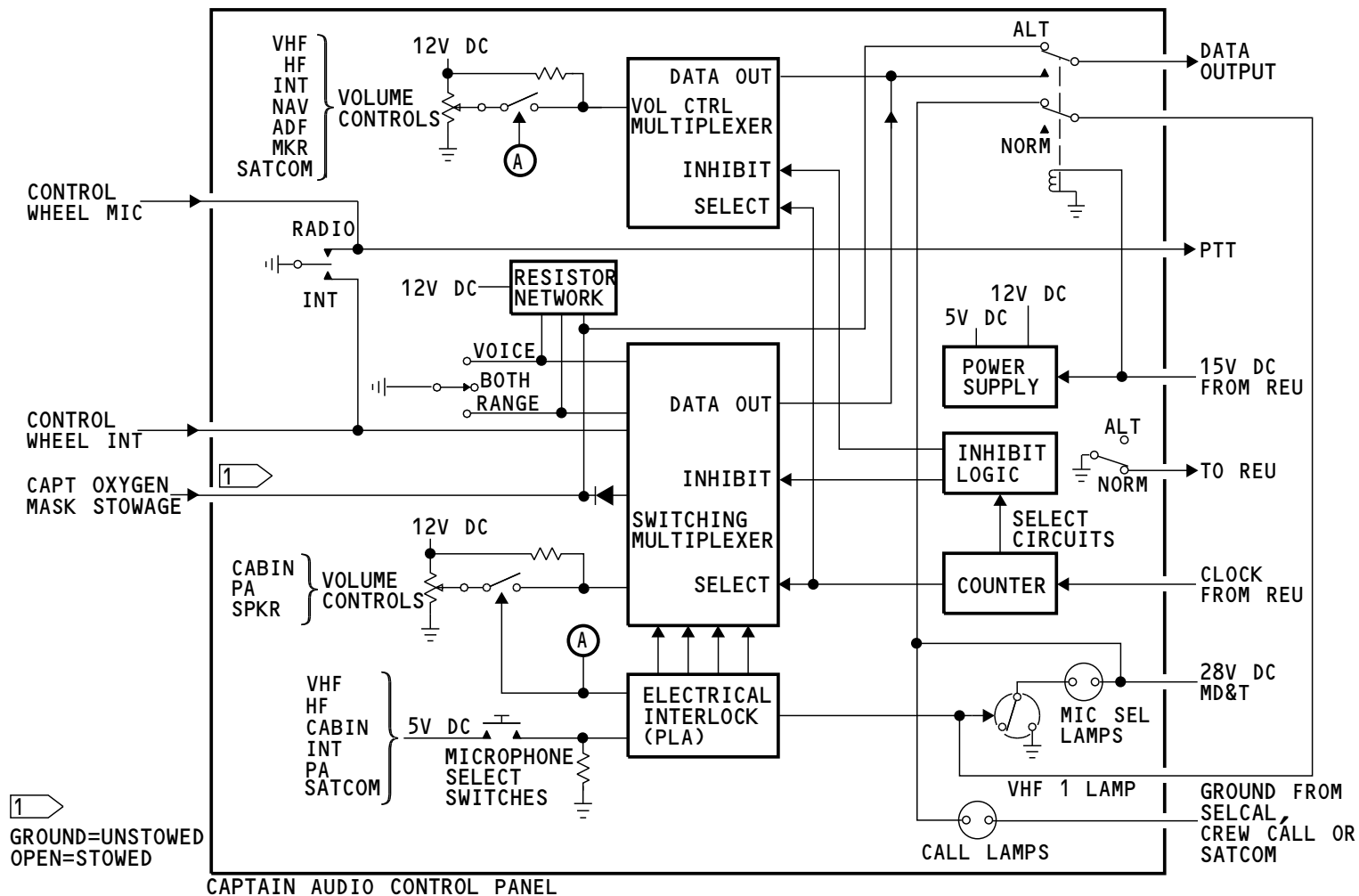
- The ALT/NORM relay has no power
- The data line to the REU identifies the mask storage compartment discrete status
- 28 volts from MD&T goes through the ALT/NORM relay contacts to the VHF 1 mic selector switch lamp for the captain and observer, and VHF 2 mic selector switch lamp for the first officer.

23-51-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M80927 S0004624609_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - AUDIO CONTROL PANEL FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-51-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - PTT FUNCTION

General

These components send a push-to-talk (PTT) signal to the remote electronics unit (REU):

- Audio control panel (ACP) radio-intercom PTT switches
- Control wheel PTT switches
- Remote mic switches
- Hand microphone PTT switches.

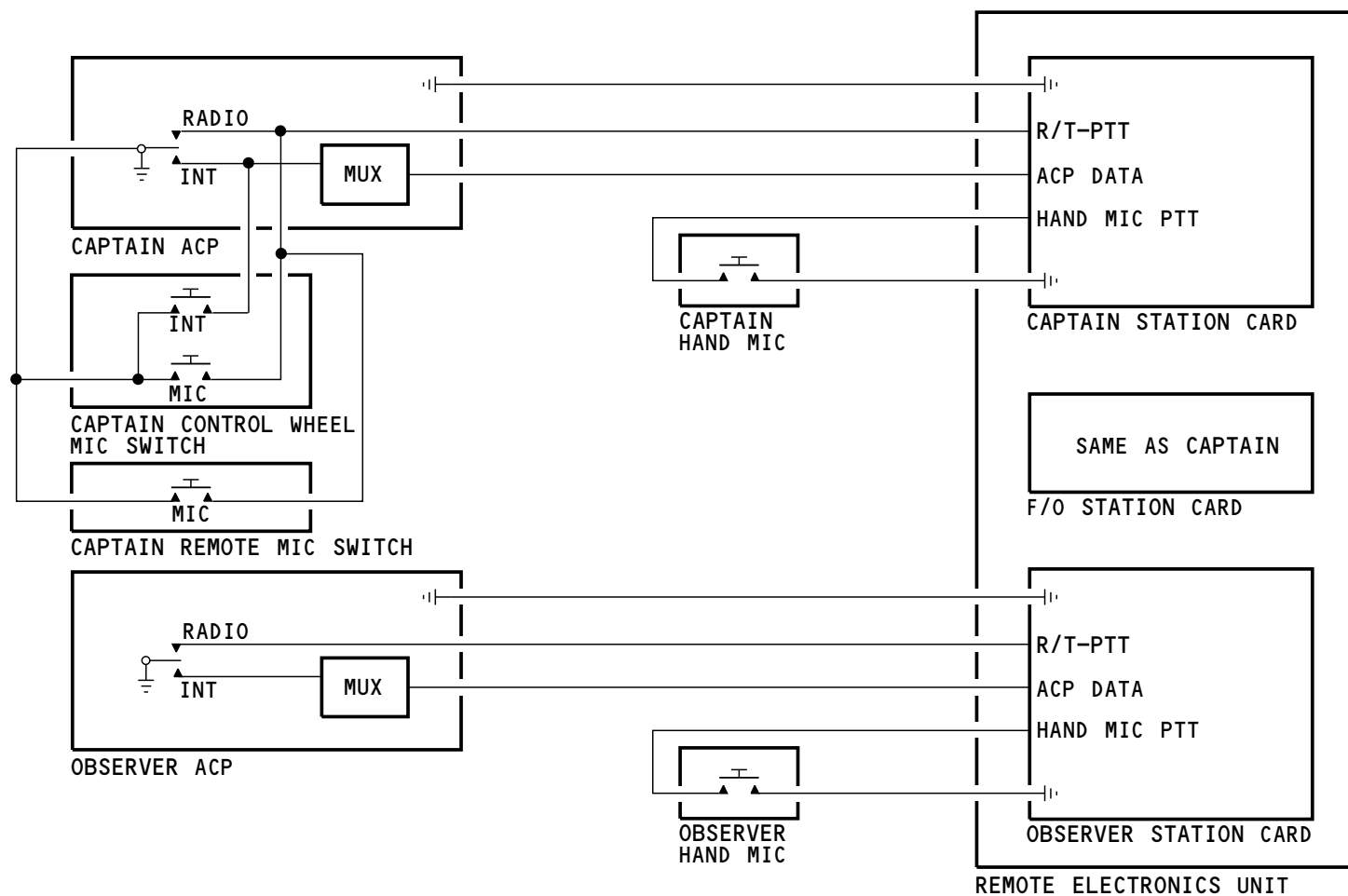
Set the radio-intercom PTT switch on the ACP to the RADIO position to send a PTT signal to a communications system. Set the switch to INT to talk on the flight interphone system.

Push the remote mic switch on the glareshield to send a PTT signal to a communication system.

Set the control wheel PTT switch to MIC to send a PTT signal to a communications system. Set the switch to INT to talk on the flight interphone system.

The observer can only send a PTT from the hand microphone or ACP.

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - PTT FUNCTION



M80939 S0004624620_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - PTT FUNCTION

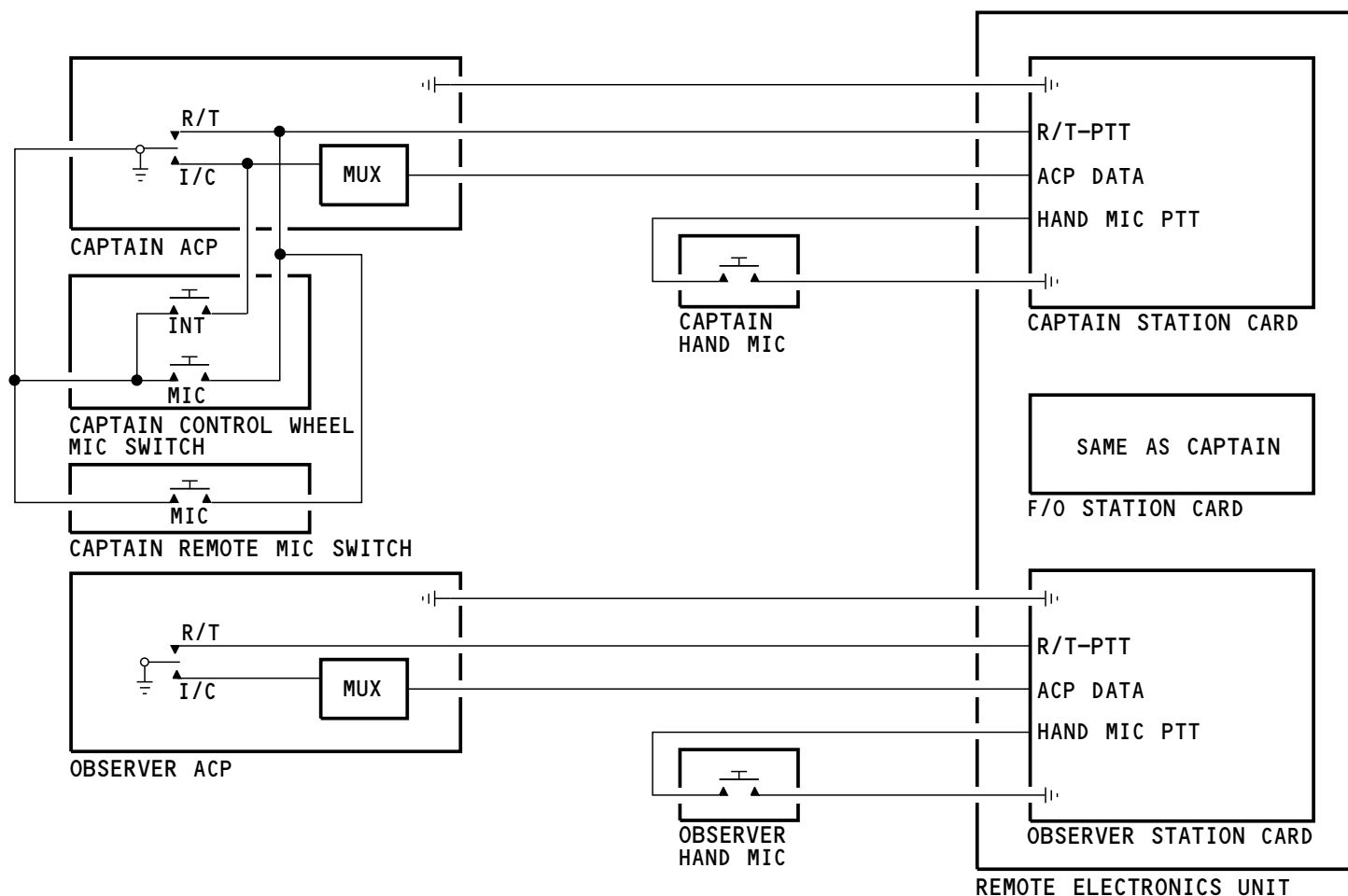
23-51-00-014

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-51-00

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - PTT FUNCTION



M80938 S0004624619_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - PTT FUNCTION

23-51-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA 716-999

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The remote electronics unit (REU) controls the communication between these:

- Three flight deck stations
- Service interphone
- Flight interphone
- All related electronics equipment.

The REU contains three identical station cards. The cards are for these crew members:

- Captain
- First officer
- Observer.

The REU also has an audio accessory unit (AAU) card. The card contains circuitry for flight and service interphone, alert tone generation and various audio accessory functions.

REU cards process these signals:

- REU inputs
- REU outputs
- AAU signals
- Emergency signals.

REU Inputs

Each station card in the REU receives audio from these sources:

- Flight compartment microphones
- Communication transceivers
- Navigation receivers
- Passenger address amplifier
- AAU card aural alerts.

The station cards get control inputs from the audio control panels (ACPs) and microphone push-to-talk (PTT) switches.

The mux receiver, in the REU, sends a data clock to the ACP. The ACP replies back with crew selected receiver audio, navigation signals, volume and particular transmitter.

The mux receiver responds to the crew inputs and sends control signals to the following circuits:

- Receiver circuits
- Mic/PTT select logic
- Transmitter circuits
- Speaker mute/volume logic.

The receiver circuits receive audio inputs from the communication and navigation systems, passenger address amplifier, service interphone and flight interphone. The circuits process the crew selected audio. The audio goes to summing amplifiers. The summing amplifiers send the audio to the speaker mute/volume logic circuits, CVR amplifier and headphone amplifier.

The mux receiver sends boom/mask and interphone PTT signals to the mic/PTT select logic. The mic/PTT select logic processes input microphone audio and PTT signals. It routes the selection to the transmitter circuits. The mic/PTT select logic circuits process speaker mute signals and hot mic audio.

The transmitter circuits route the microphone audio and/or PTT to the selected communication system.

The speaker mute/volume logic circuits process flight compartment speaker muting and set the speaker volume to the level as commanded from the mux receiver.

REU Outputs

Each station card sends audio to these:

- Headphones
- Headsets

23-51-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION**

- Voice recorder
- Flight compartment speakers from CAPT and F/O station cards
- Communication transceivers
- Passenger address amplifier.

The station cards also send PTT signals to the communication transceivers and the passenger address amplifier.

AAU Signals

The AAU uses these audio signals:

- Altitude alert
- Ground proximity alert
- Flight interphone
- Service interphone.

The flight control computers (FCCs) send an altitude alert discrete to the AAU card. This input starts a C-chord generator.

The ground proximity computer and the weather radar receiver transmitter send alert audio to the AAU card. The AAU card combines this audio with the output from the altitude alert tone generator and sends it to each station card summing amplifier. The summing amplifier combines the AAU alert audio with TCAS audio. Station cards amplify these signals and send them to the voice recorder and speakers.

The flight interphone amplifier amplifies microphone audio from station cards. Microphone audio goes to the flight interphone jack.

The AAU card amplifies audio from the external flight interphone jack and sends it to station cards.

The service interphone amplifier amplifies these inputs:

- Audio from attendant handsets
- Audio from service interphone jacks
- Microphone audio when service interphone is set on the ACP.

This audio goes to service interphone jacks and station cards.

Emergency Signals

Emergency operation bypasses all active circuitry in the system to maintain communications between the aircraft and ground stations.

Microphone audio and PTT signals from the CAPT and OBS stations go directly to the VHF 1 transceiver. Microphone audio and PTT signals from the F/O station goes to the VHF 2 transceiver.

Received audio from the VHF 1 transceiver goes to the CAPT and OBS station headsets. Received audio from the VHF 2 transceiver goes to the F/O station headset.

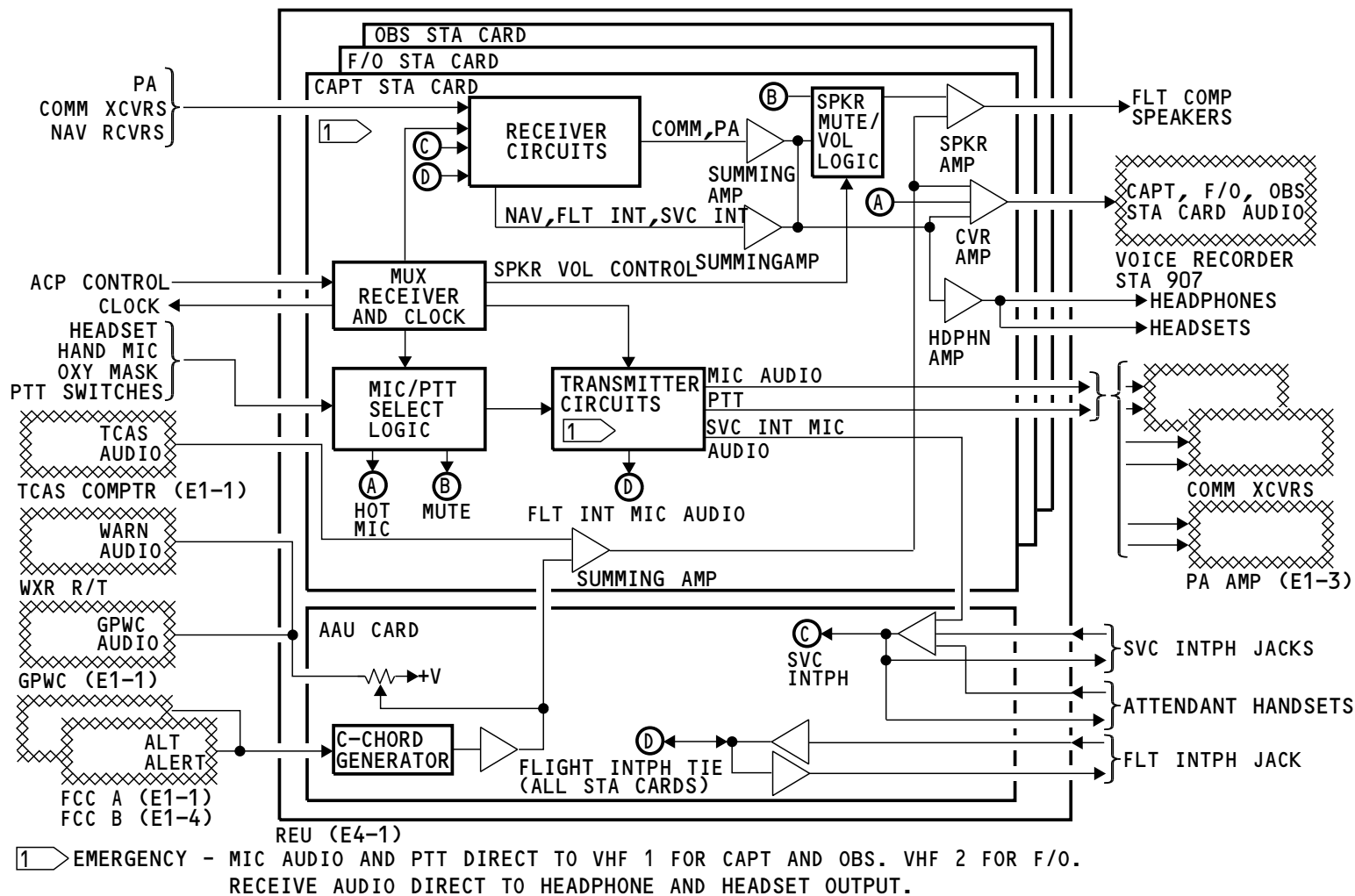
23-51-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA ALL

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



M80947 S0004624631_V1

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - REMOTE ELECTRONICS UNIT FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-51-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



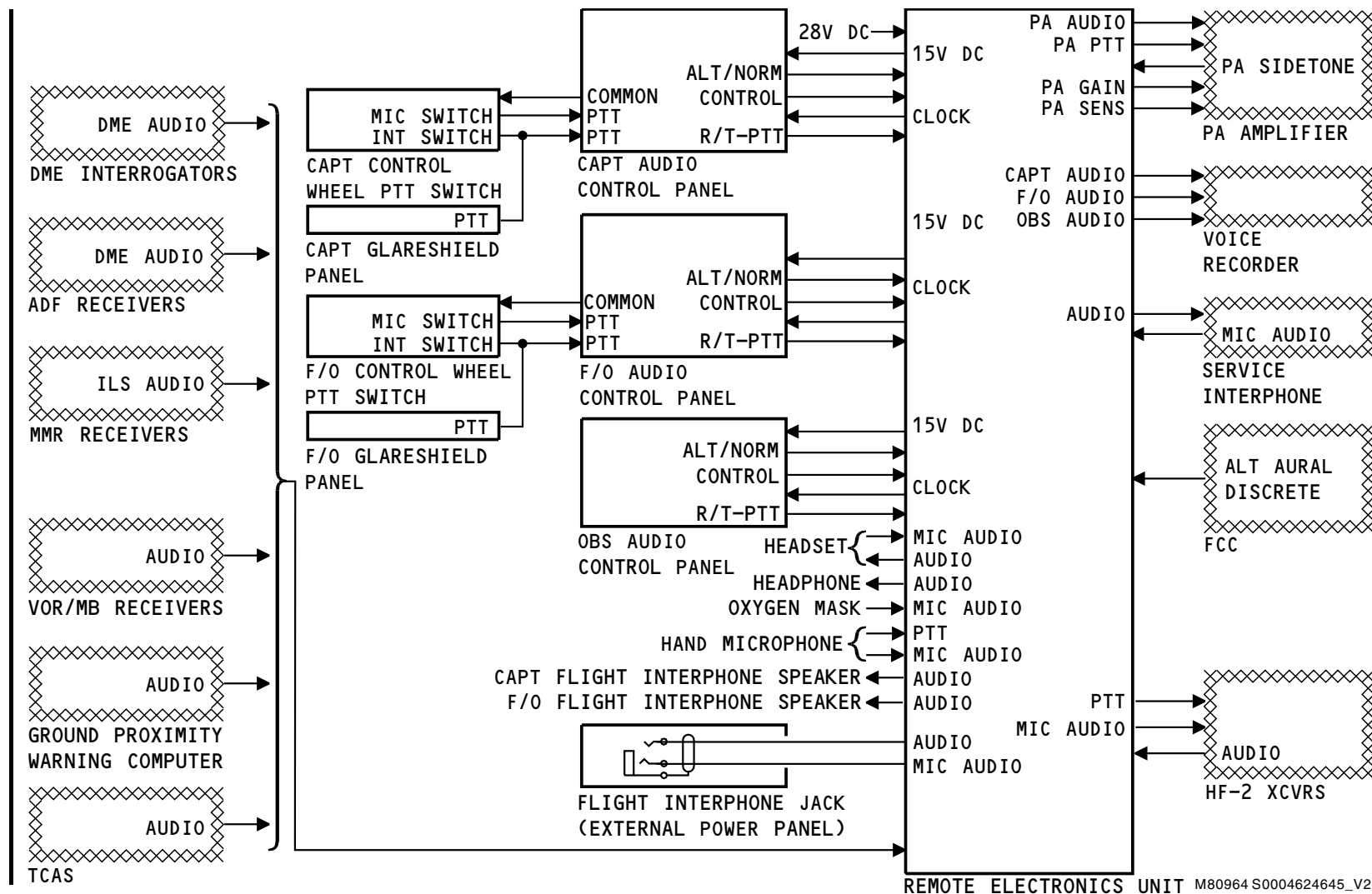
FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

General

This page is for reference.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

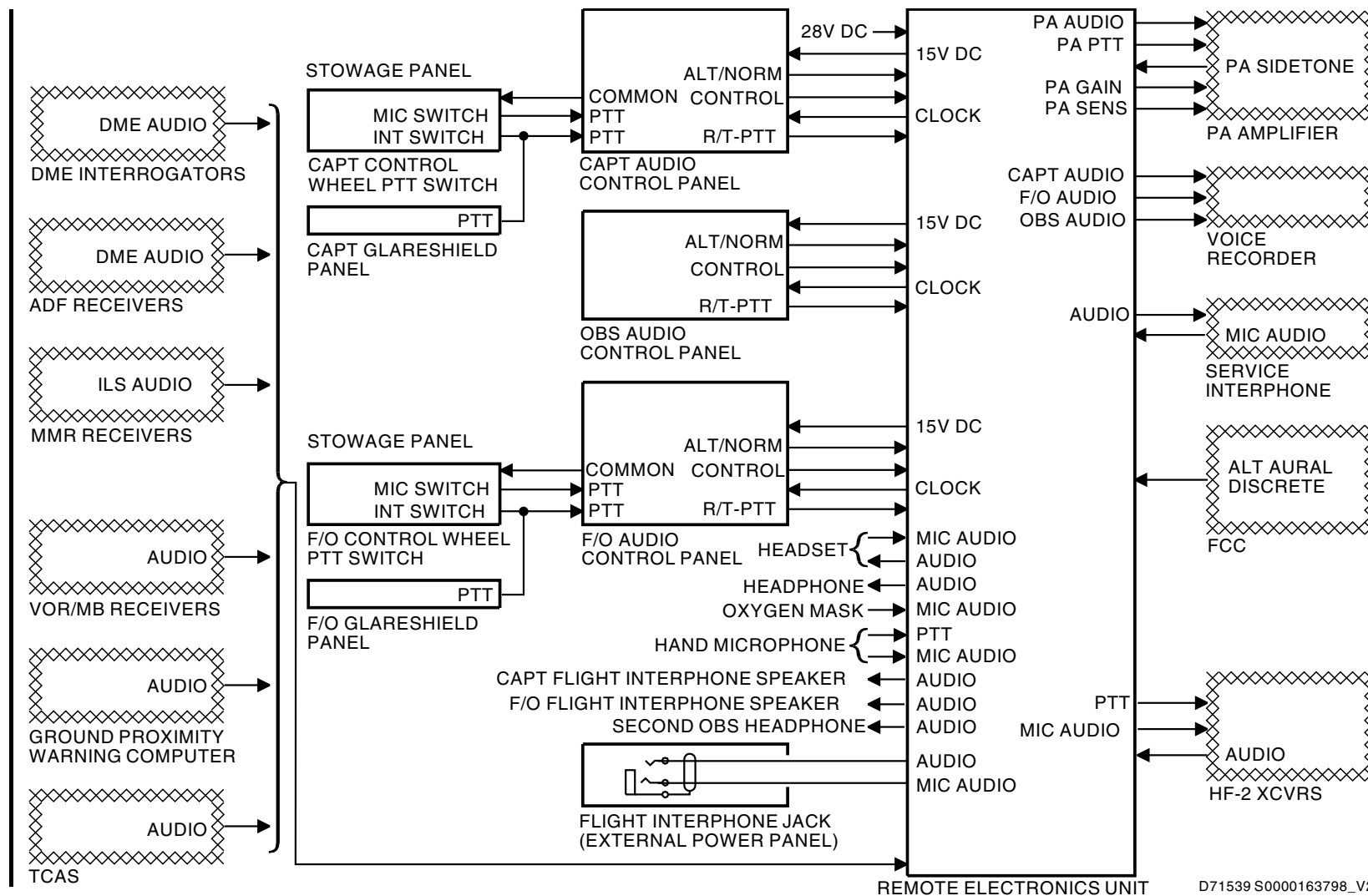
23-51-00

EFFECTIVITY
SIA 703-714, 716-999

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY



FLIGHT INTERPHONE SYSTEM - SYSTEM SUMMARY

23-51-00

SIA 702

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-61-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



STATIC DISCHARGERS

Purpose

There are static dischargers on the airplane to decrease radio receiver interference. The static dischargers discharge static at points as far from the fuselage as possible. This makes sure there is the least amount of coupling into the radio receiver antennas.

Characteristics

Each discharger has a carbon fiber tip at the end of a slender rod. The rod is a resistive (conducting) material and attaches to a metal base. The base attaches and bonds to the airplane surface.

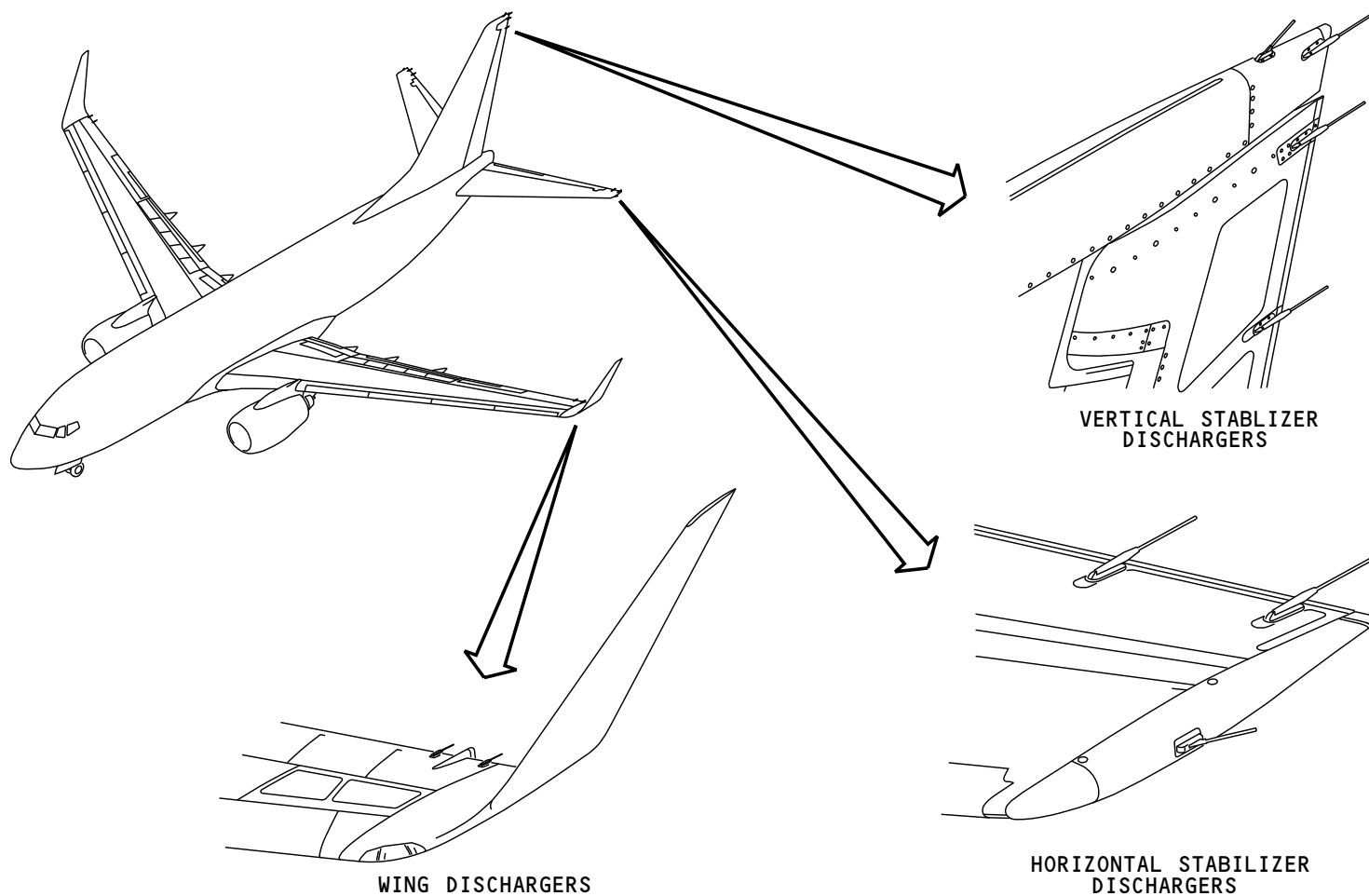
There are trailing edge and tip dischargers. The tip dischargers are smaller than the trailing edge dischargers.

Location

Each wing has two trailing edge dischargers. The vertical fin has a tip discharger and three trailing edge dischargers. Each side of the horizontal stabilizer has a tip discharger and two trailing edge dischargers.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

STATIC DISCHARGERS



M80997 S0004624683_V1

STATIC DISCHARGERS

23-61-00

23-61-00-001

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-71-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

General

The voice recorder continuously records these:

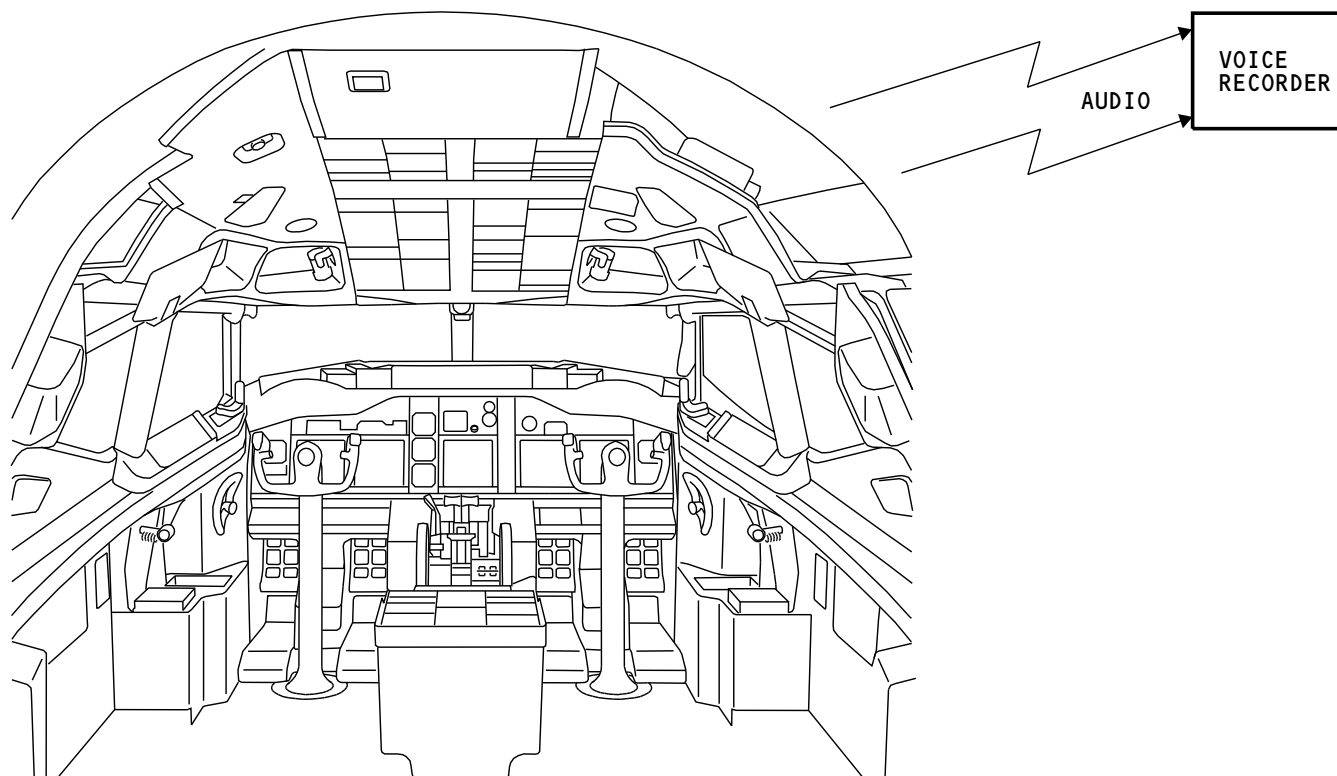
- Flight crew communications
- Flight compartment sounds.

The voice recorder keeps the last 120 minutes of audio.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- ACP - audio control panel
- A/D - analog-to-digital
- ARINC - aeronautical radio incorporated
- BITE - built in test equipment
- capt - captain
- CSMU - crash survivable memory unit
- D/A - digital-to-analog
- F/O - first officer
- F/OBS - first observer
- Hz - hertz
- mic - microphone
- REU - remote electronics unit
- RIPS - recorder independent power supply
- ULB - underwater locator beacon
- V AC - volts alternating current
- V DC - volts direct current
- VR - voice recorder
- xfr - transfer

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



M80999 S0004624687_V1

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-71-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The voice recorder unit makes a record of flight crew communication and flight compartment sounds. It erases the communication data automatically so that the memory stores only recent audio.

The voice recorder unit keeps the last 120 minutes of communication data in memory.

The voice recorder unit receives audio from the remote electronics unit (REU) and the area microphone. The area microphone is in the cockpit voice recorder panel.

The voice recorder unit receives time from the clock system for reference.

Components

The voice recorder system has these components:

- Cockpit voice recorder panel
- Voice recorder switch
- Voice recorder unit.
- Recorder independent power supply.

Functional Description

The pilot uses the voice recorder switch to control voice recorder power. The AUTO switch position provides automatic control. In this position, the voice recorder receives power through the time delay relay. When an engine is at or above idle, an engine running relay energizes the time delay relay. The energized relay keeps voice recorder power on from engine start to engine shutdown. The time delay relay also keeps power for an additional five minutes after engine shutdown to let the pilots complete postflight checks.

The ON position lets you apply power to the voice recorder for maintenance or for preflight tests. In this position, the voice recorder switch latches while it supplies the power. It gives this power until an engine starts or until you put the switch back to AUTO. The switch automatically goes to AUTO when an engine is at or above idle.

The voice recorder unit collects these audio at the same time:

- Captain microphone and headphone
- First officer (F/O) microphone and headphone
- First observer (F/OBS) microphone and headphone
- Area microphone on the cockpit voice recorder panel.

The voice recorder unit also receives time from the clock system.

The inputs from the captain, first officer, and first observer microphones go to the REU. The REU mixes each station microphone audio with that station headphone audio. The REU then increases the audio signal and sends it to the voice recorder.

The area microphone collects flight compartment sounds, such as voices and aural warnings. The cockpit voice recorder panel increases the audio signal from the area microphone and sends it to the voice recorder unit.

You can monitor the voice recorder recorded audio if you connect a headphone to the phone jack at the cockpit voice recorder panel.

An erase switch on the voice recorder control panel removes all the audio that the voice recorder keeps. You can only erase data when the airplane is on the ground and the parking brake is set.

A test switch on the cockpit voice recorder panel starts a test of the voice recorder system. A status indicator LED on the cockpit voice recorder panel shows the results of the test.

An underwater locator beacon is on the front panel of the voice recorder unit.

The recorder independent power supply will supply 10 minutes of auxiliary power to the CVR when aircraft power systems are off or malfunction.

The CVR records the datalink messages from the ACARS system. The CSMU keeps the datalink messages that it receives from the ACARS system.

23-71-00

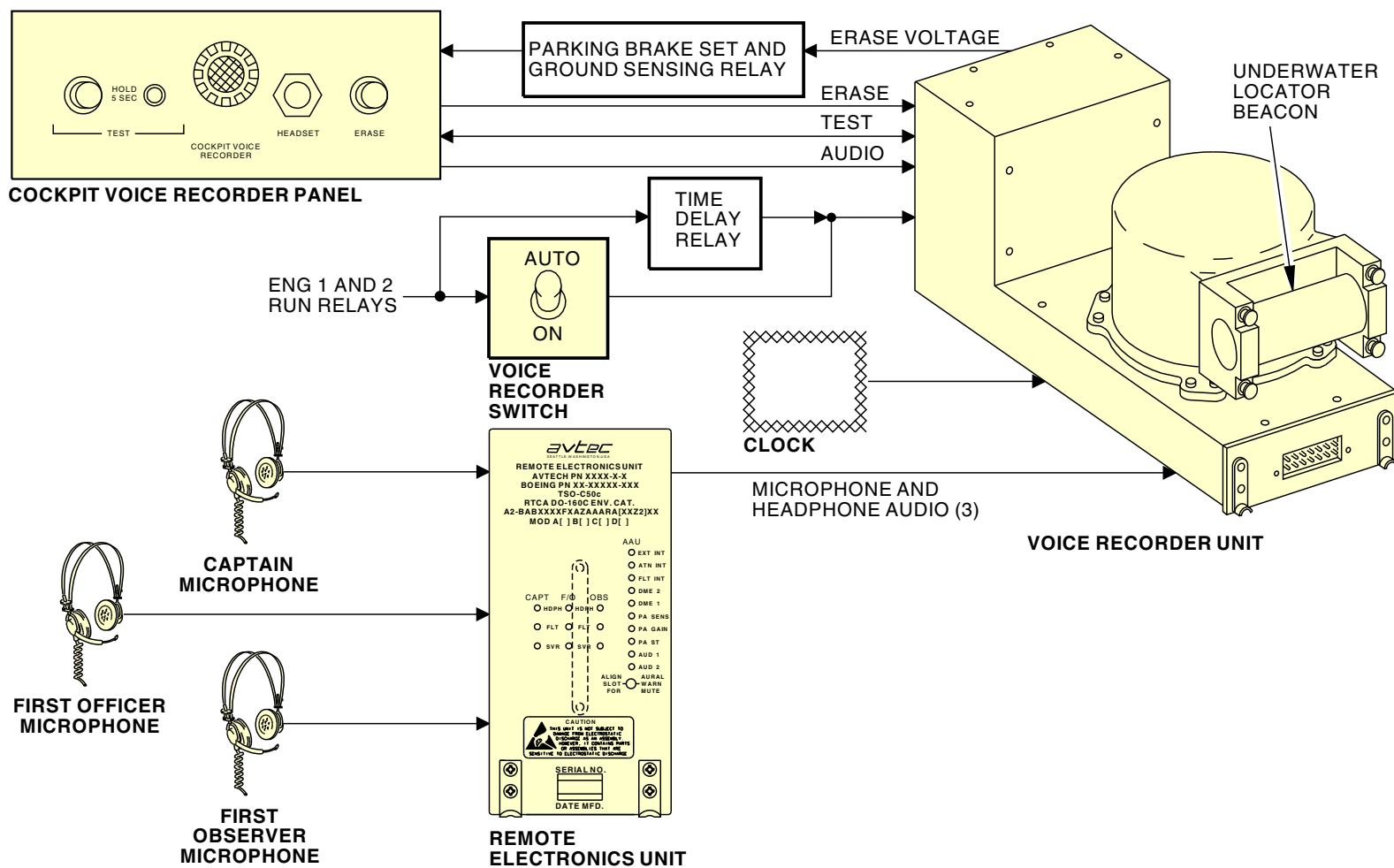
SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



2981871 S0000756847_V1

HF COMMUNICATION SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-71-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

General

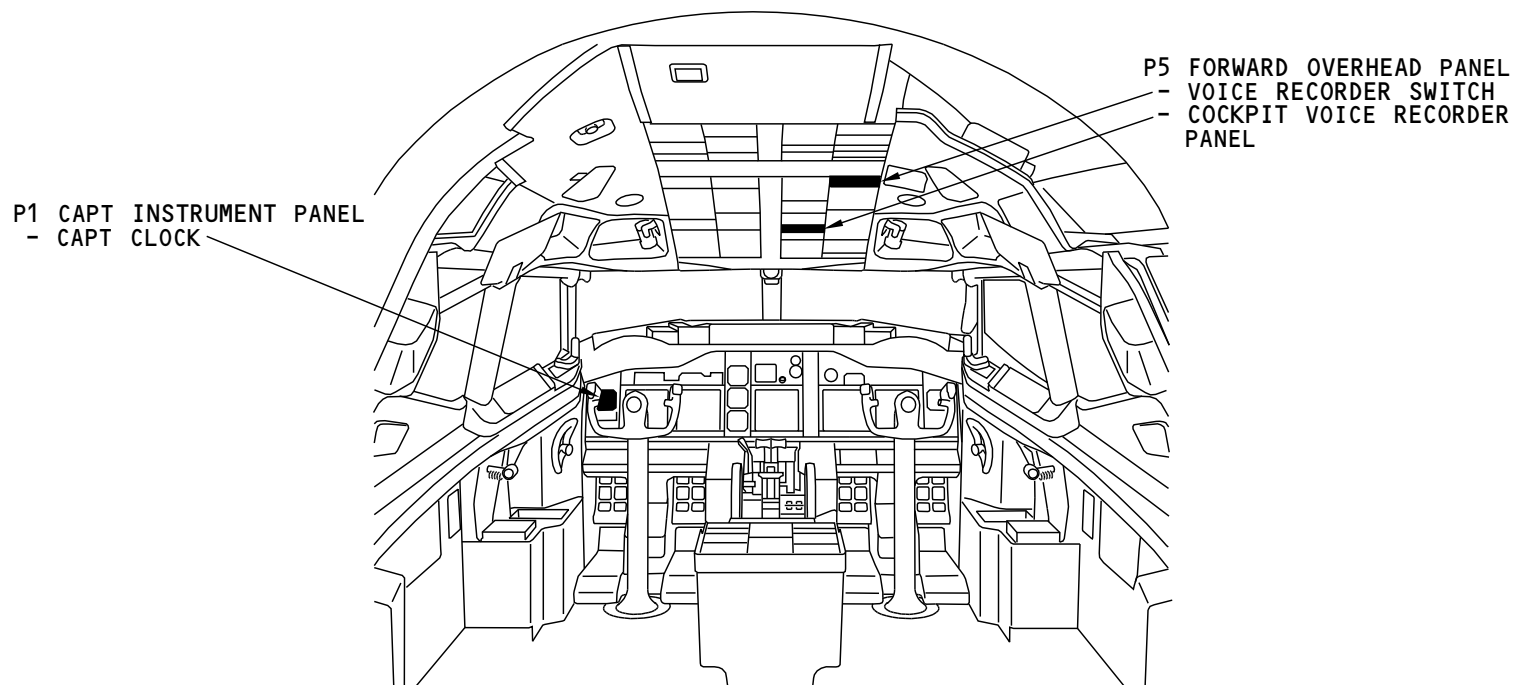
The cockpit voice recorder panel is on the P5 forward overhead panel.

The voice recorder switch is on the P5 forward overhead panel.

The captain clock is on the P1 captain instrument panel.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION



M81017 S0004624707_V1

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - FLIGHT COMPARTMENT COMPONENT LOCATION

23-71-00-003

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

23-71-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



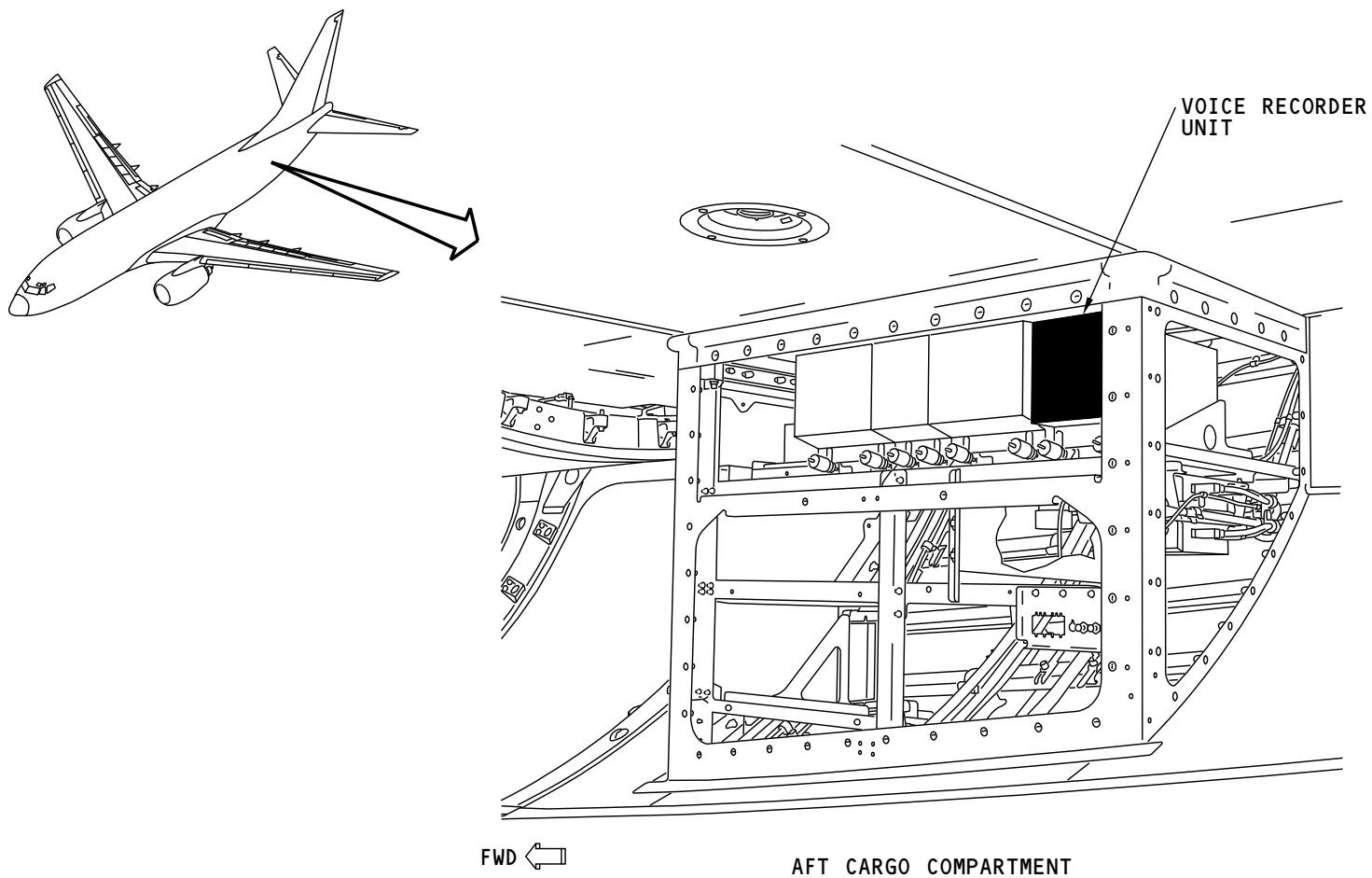
VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - RECORDER LOCATION

General

The voice recorder unit is in the aft cargo compartment on the E6 rack.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - RECORDER LOCATION



M81019 S0004624710_V1

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - RECORDER LOCATION

23-71-00



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-71-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - INTERFACE

Power

The voice recorder system gets power from the airplane 28V DC BUS 2 through the Voice Recorder/RIPS and Voice RCDR Relay circuit breakers.

The Voice Recorder/RIPS circuit breaker supplies power to the Recorder Independent Power Supply (RIPS).

The Voice RCDR Relay circuit breaker supplies power to the voice recorder switch, latch relay and CVR dispatch relay.

The MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay gets 28v dc from the RIPS.

The voice recorder gets power from the RIPS when the MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay is energized.

To energize the MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay, one of these conditions must be occurs:

- The Voice Recorder switch is set to the ON position, or
- One of the engines is running, or
- The airplane is in air mode.

With the MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay energized. The power from the Voice Recorder/RIPS circuit breaker first goes to the RIPS, then the 28v dc output power from the RIPS goes to the voice recorder.

When the RIPS senses less than nominal power from 28V DC BUS 2, the RIPS battery pack supplies the necessary backup power to the voice recorder. The RIPS supplies 28v dc to the voice recorder for ten (10) minutes $\pm$ 1 minute.

The voice recorder supplies 18v dc to the audio amplifier in the cockpit voice recorder panel.

When the voice recorder switch is put to the ON position, this will cause the MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay to energize, and allows the 28v dc power supplies from the RIPS to the voice recorder. A latching relay holds the switch in the ON position. This keeps the voice recorder power on for pre-flight checks.

When one of the engines starts, the latching relay opens. This returns the voice recorder switch to the AUTO position. At the same time, the MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay stays energized and allows the RIPS continuously supplies 28v dc power to the voice recorder.

When the engines are shut down, the RIPS keeps supply power to the voice recorder for an additional 10 minutes. This gives time for post-flight checks.

Cockpit Voice Recorder Panel

The cockpit voice recorder panel sends these signals:

- Erase discrete to the voice recorder (if applicable)
- Test discrete to the voice recorder
- Test discrete to the recorder independent power supply.
- Area audio to the channel 4 input of the voice recorder.

PSEU

The proximity switch electronics unit (PSEU) gets 30v dc from the voice recorder unit. A park and ground relay in the PSEU closes when the parking brake is set and the airplane is on the ground. When it closes, the relay sends 30v dc to the erase switch on the cockpit voice recorder panel.

The Air/Ground System 2 relay is in the PSEU. When the airplane goes in the air mode, this relay will energize and sends a ground signal to the MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay. This will cause the MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay to energize and supplies power to the voice recorder.

Remote Electronics Unit

The remote electronics unit (REU) sends these signals to the voice recorder unit:

- Observer audio
- First officer (F/O) audio
- Captain audio.

23-71-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - INTERFACE****Clock**

Clock data from the captain clock goes to the voice recorder on an ARINC 429 data bus.

Voice Recorder Unit

The voice recorder unit sends 30v dc to the park and squat ground sensing relay. It also sends these signals to the cockpit voice recorder panel:

- Test indication to the monitor indicator
- Monitor/test audio to the headphone jack.

Recorder Independent Power Supply

The recorder independent power supply monitors the 28v dc of the voice recorder unit. It also sends this signal to the cockpit voice recorder panel:

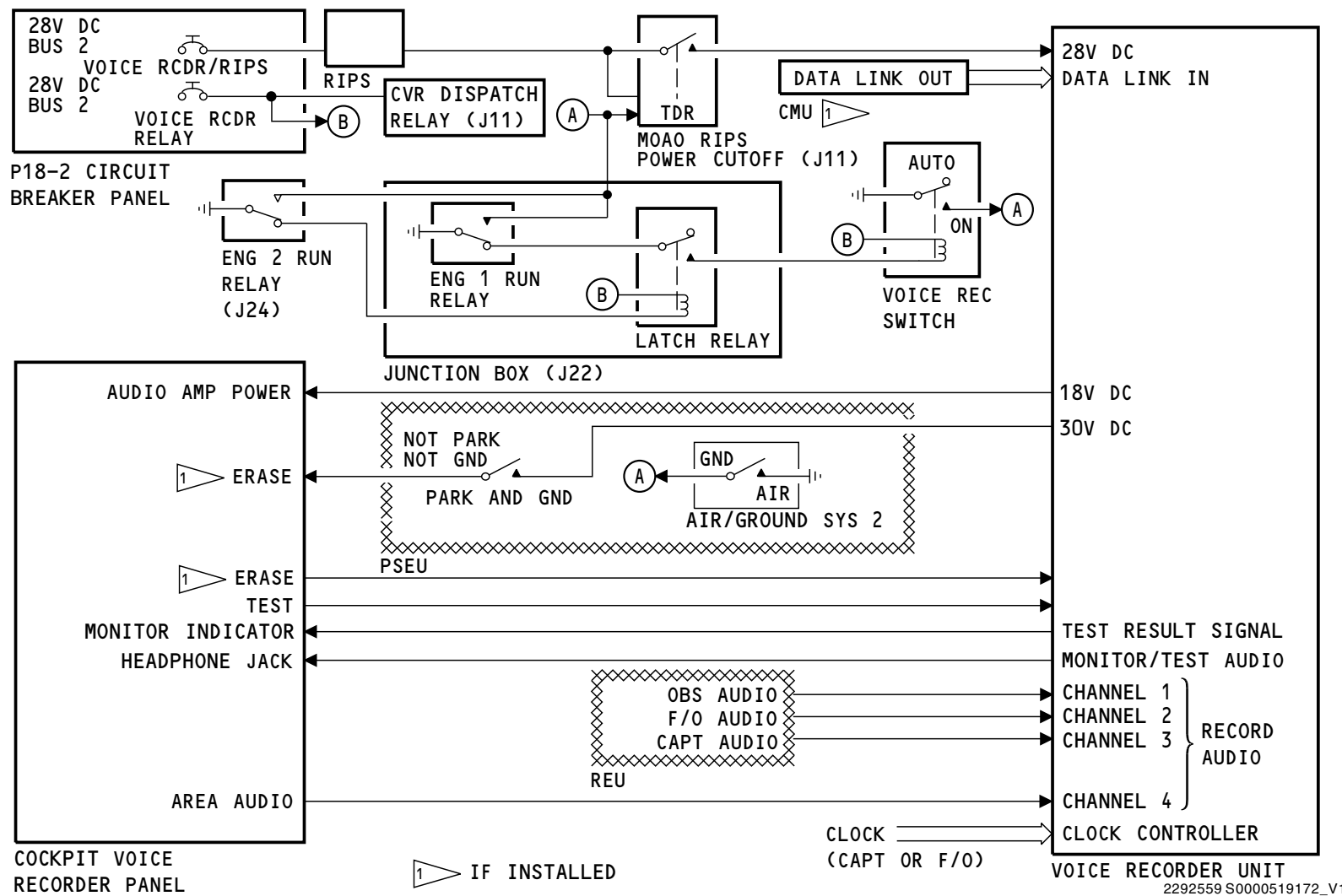
- Test indication to the monitor indicator.

Datalink Recording Activation

The datalink activation occurs when the CMU connects to the CVR by ARINC 429 data buses. This lets the CVR record the datalink messages from the CMU.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - INTERFACE



VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - INTERFACE

23-71-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - VOICE RECORDER SWITCH PANEL****General**

The voice recorder switch lets you control the voice recorder power.

Operation

The voice recorder switch has two positions, AUTO and ON. AUTO is the normal switch position. The AUTO position gives power to the voice recorder at engine start through post-flight checks. In this position, a time delay relay gives power to the voice recorder during these conditions:

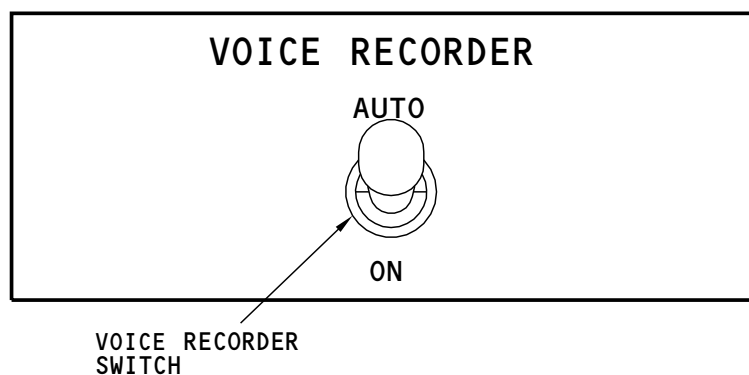
- An engine is at or above idle
- First five minutes after engine shutdown
- An engine start lever is in IDLE for 5 minutes or more.

The ON position is for maintenance and for pre-flight tests. While the switch is in ON, the switch gives power to the voice recorder. The switch latches to this position. The switch goes back to AUTO when you either manually return the switch to AUTO or when an engine running relay energizes. The engine 1 or 2 running relays energize when one of these happens:

- An engine is at or above idle
- An engine start lever is in IDLE for 5 or more minutes.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - VOICE RECORDER SWITCH PANEL



M81061 S0004624717_V1

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - VOICE RECORDER SWITCH PANEL

23-71-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - VOICE RECORDER UNIT

Purpose

The voice recorder unit continuously records these:

- Time
- Flight crew communications
- Flight compartment sounds.

Physical Description

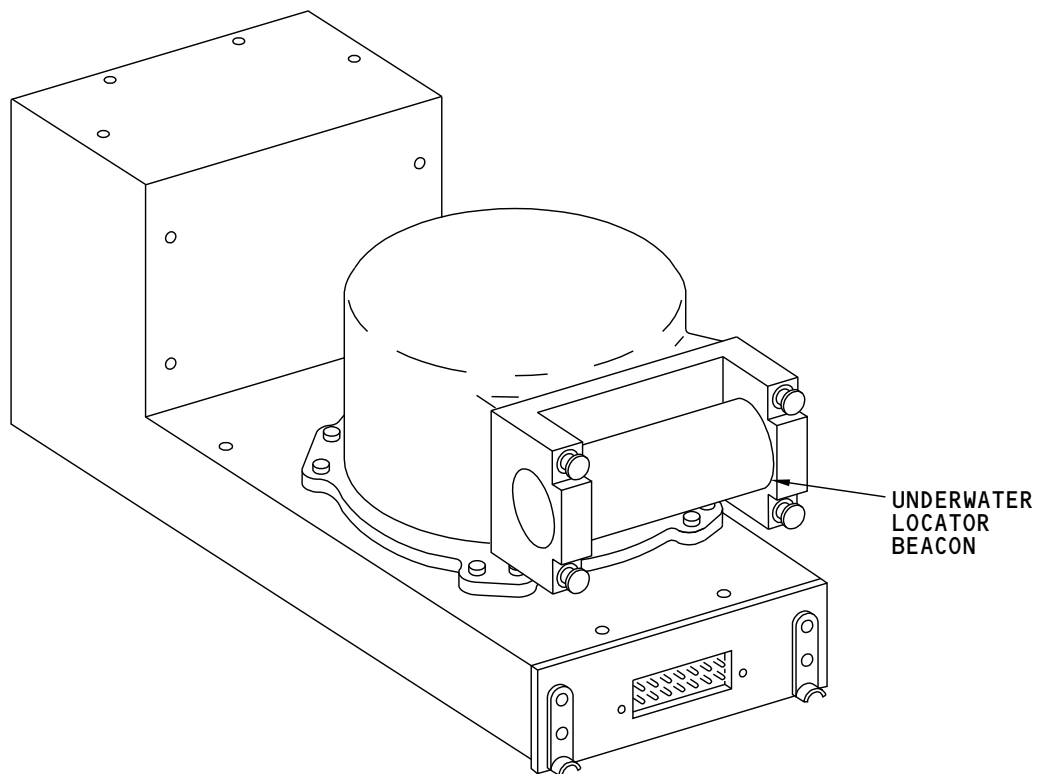
The container for the voice recorder unit has these properties:

- Watertight
- Shock resistant
- Heat resistant.

The voice recorder unit has an underwater locator beacon (ULB) on the front panel. The ULB helps find the voice recorder unit in water.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
D633A101-SIA	

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - VOICE RECORDER UNIT



M81024 S0004624722_V1

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - VOICE RECORDER UNIT

23-71-00-006

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-71-00

**VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - COCKPIT VOICE RECORDER PANEL OPERATION****Purpose**

You can do these functions at the cockpit voice recorder panel:

- Monitor the recorded audio
- Erase the recorded audio (if installed)
- Test the voice recorder system.

Features

The cockpit voice recorder panel has these controls and indicators:

- Status indicator
- Erase switch
- Test switch
- Headphone jack.

The status indicator shows the test results.

You can erase the audio with the ERASE switch if the airplane is on the ground and the parking brake is set.

The TEST switch starts a BITE test.

You can monitor the four audio channels at the headset jack.

An area microphone sends flight compartment sounds to the voice recorder.

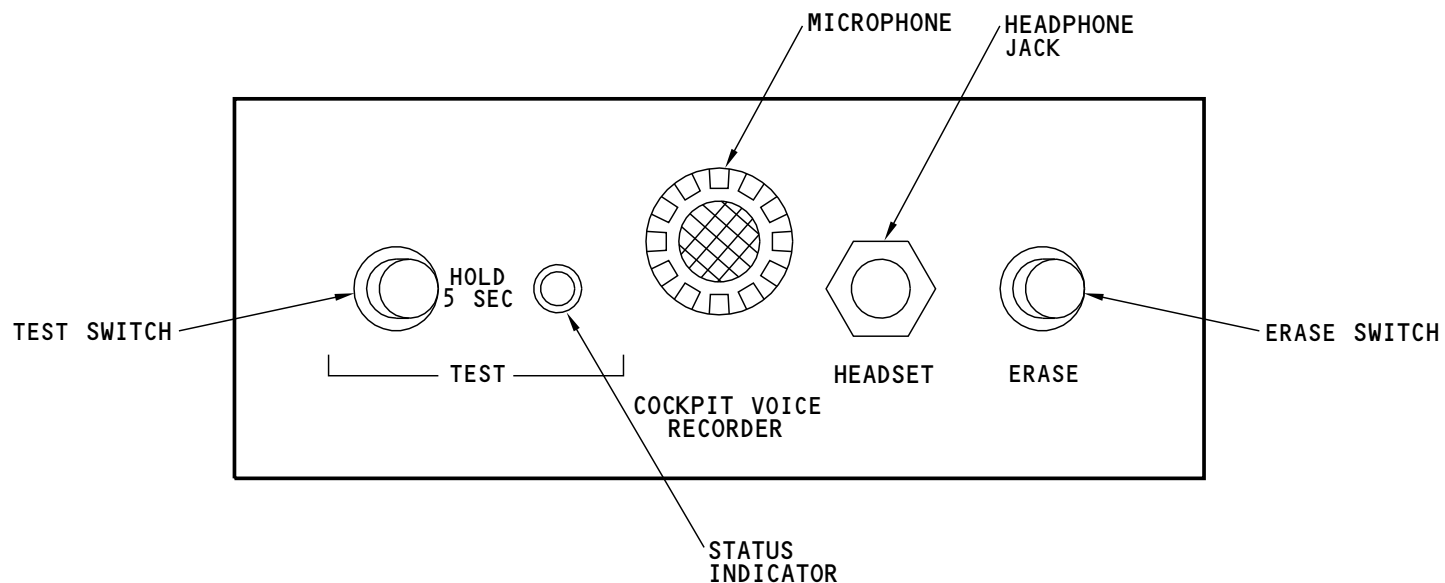
23-71-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - COCKPIT VOICE RECORDER PANEL OPERATION



M81029 S0004624727_V1

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - COCKPIT VOICE RECORDER PANEL OPERATION

23-71-00

23-71-00-007

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - UNDERWATER LOCATOR BEACON

Purpose

The underwater locating device (ULD) is an ultrasonic beacon. It makes the cockpit voice recorder (CVR) easier to find if it is under water.

Physical Description

The ULD is a line replaceable unit that is 1.3 inches (3.3 cm) in diameter and 4 inches (10.2 cm) long. It weighs less than 12 ounces (0.34 kg).

Functional Description

The ULD has these operation characteristics:

- Operates when it is put into water
- Operates to a maximum depth of 20,000 feet (6096 meters)
- Has a detection range of 7,000 (2134 meters) to 12,000 feet (3658 meters)

| SIA 702-714

- Can operate under water for a minimum of 30 days

SIA 716-999

- Can operate under water for a minimum of 90 days

SIA ALL

- Sends out an acoustic pulse tone of 37.5 khz at a rate of one pulse-per-second.

Training Information Point

You replace the underwater locator beacon or the battery on or before the date shown on the replacement label.

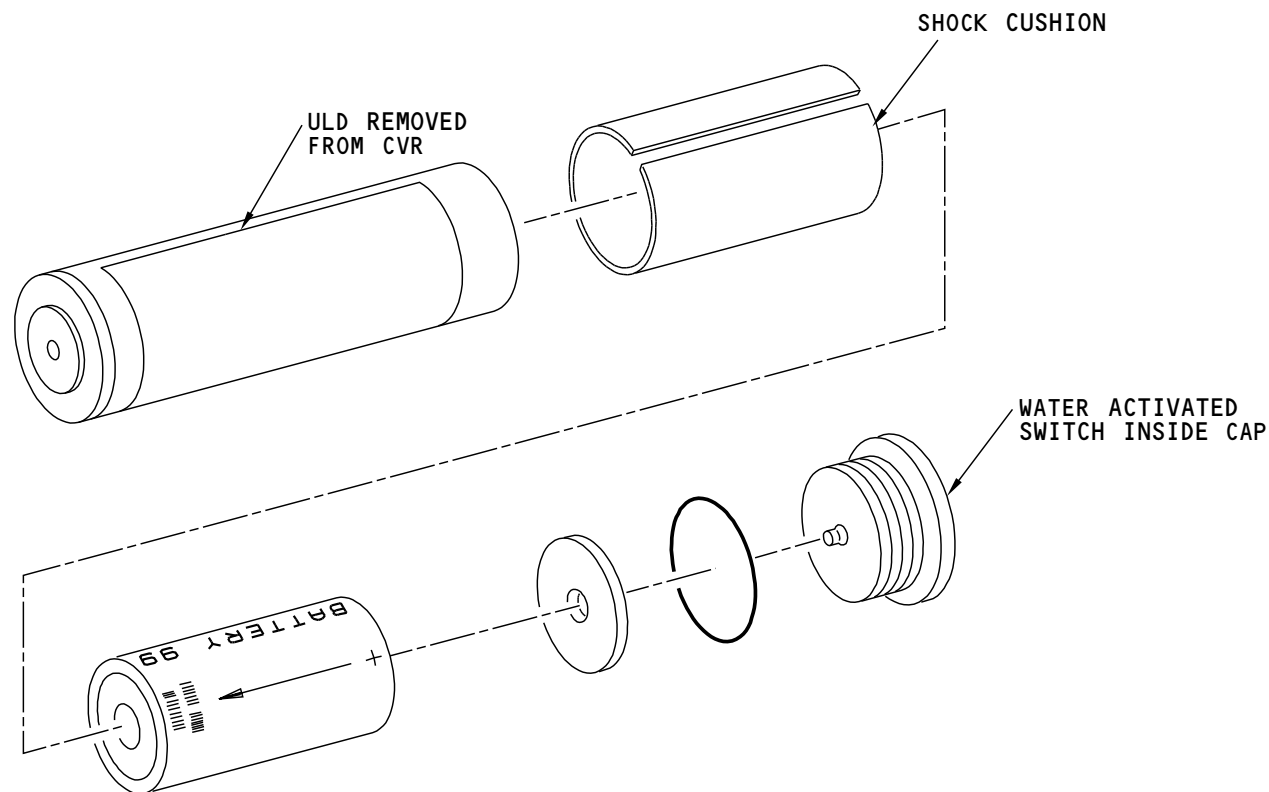
23-71-00

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - UNDERWATER LOCATOR BEACON



M81032 S0004624729_V1

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - UNDERWATER LOCATOR BEACON

23-71-00-008

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-71-00

**VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - RECORDER INDEPENDENT POWER SUPPLY (RIPS)****General Description**

The Recorder Independent Power Supply (RIPS) supplies auxiliary battery power for Cockpit Voice Recorders. The RIPS will supply 10 minutes of auxiliary power when aircraft power systems are off or malfunction.

The RIPS monitors the aircraft bus voltage of 28V dc (volts direct current), charges and keeps its internal battery pack. If the primary voltage of the aircraft decreases to approximately 20V dc, the RIPS will start to operate. This causes the RIPS battery to supply the CVR with 28V dc for a period of 10 minutes.

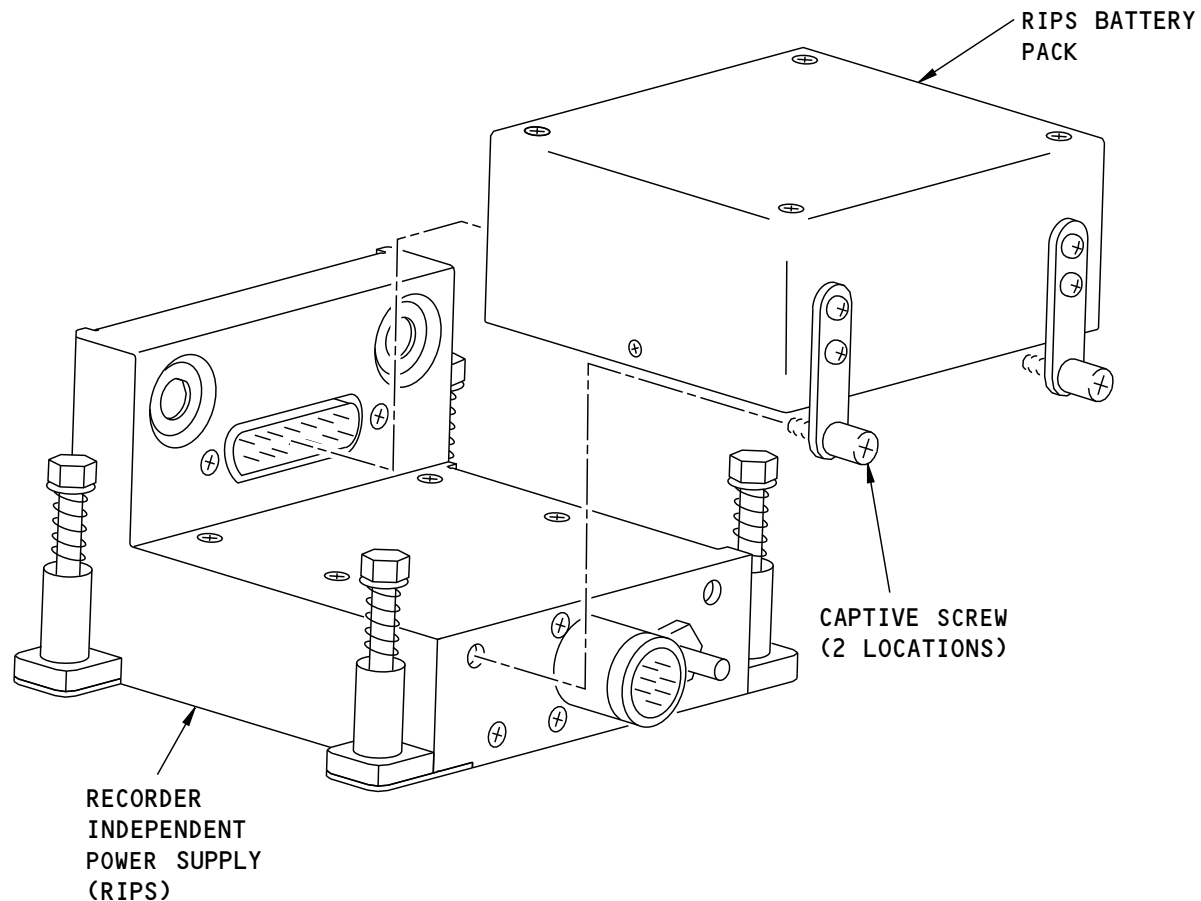
The RIPS will not supply power if the aircraft voltage increases to 22V dc or if the 10 minute period is completed. When standard aircraft power is on, the RIPS batteries will charge if necessary.

The RIPS, PN 100-3020-400 have two assemblies, the Charger Assembly and the Lithium-Ion Battery Pack Assembly.

Physical Description

The RIPS, PN 100-3020-400, is in an aluminum enclosure with an electrical connector in the front. The unit is approximately 4.500 $\pm$ 0.010 in. (114.30 $\pm$ 0.25 mm) long, 4.000 $\pm$ 0.030 in. (101.60 $\pm$ 0.76 mm) wide, and 3.325 $\pm$ 0.040 in. (84.46 $\pm$ 1.02 mm) tall.

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - RECORDER INDEPENDENT POWER SUPPLY (RIPS)



1957275 S0000374163_V1

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - RECORDER INDEPENDENT POWER SUPPLY

23-71-00

23-71-00-015

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-71-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The voice recorder system receives flight compartment sounds and flight crew communications. It keeps this audio in a solid state memory. The voice recorder system has these modes of operation:

- Normal
- Test
- Erase.

Normal Operation

The voice recorder operates continuously when the airplane has power and one of these occurs:

- Voice recorder switch in ON position
- An engine at or above idle
- First ten minutes after engine shutdown
- An engine start lever in IDLE for 5 minutes or more.
- The Airplane is in the air mode.

When one of the above conditions occurs, this will energize the MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay.

The MOAO RIPS Power Cutoff relay controls the 28v dc power supplies from the RIPS to the voice recorder. When this relay energized, this allows the 28v dc power supplies from the RIPS to the voice recorder.

Four audio channels go to the voice recorder. The remote electronics unit gives audio to channels 1, 2, and 3. Each channel gets audio from one person in the flight crew. The audio on each channel is the sum of these signals:

- Hot mic audio (microphone audio without push-to-talk)
- Received audio that crew members select on an audio control panel (ACP)
- Sidetone audio to the crew member.

Channel 4 audio is from the area microphone on the cockpit voice recorder panel. The area microphone sends flight compartment audio to the voice recorder unit. The preamplifier in the cockpit voice recorder panel gets 18v dc from the voice recorder unit. The preamplifier increases the strength of the channel four audio.

All the audio that the voice recorder unit receives goes to the voice recorder unit aircraft interface. The aircraft interface has these functions:

- Connects aircraft wiring to the voice recorder unit
- Regulates power
- Gives pre-amp power to the voice recorder control panel
- Conditions discrete signals.

The aircraft interface sends the four channels of audio to the audio processor.

The audio processor gets the input audio signals from the aircraft interface. The audio processor conditions, amplifies and equalizes the signals. The processor then changes the audio signals to digital audio. This digital audio goes to the store processor.

The audio processor also mixes all the audio signals. This combined audio goes to the aircraft interface. The aircraft interface sends this combined audio to the headphone jacks.

The store processor organizes the digital audio and prepares it for storage. The store processor then sends commands to the flash/crash survivable store unit. These commands select the memory device and the memory address. The memory address tells the solid-state memory where to keep the digital audio data.

Test

Push and hold the TEST switch on the voice recorder panel to start the self test. Hold the TEST switch for at least 5 seconds. The voice recorder panel sends a test signal to the aircraft interface in the voice recorder. This test signal goes through the aircraft interface to the audio processor.

23-71-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION**

The audio processor turns on its test tone generator. The frequency of the tone generator is 620 Hz. This tone goes to each of the four audio channels. While in test, each audio channel turns on for 1/2 seconds in sequence. Each channel changes the test tone to digital audio. The audio processor gets the digital audio from each channel and mixes it. The audio processor then changes the mixed audio to an analog signal. This signal goes to the aircraft interface.

From the aircraft interface, this mixed audio tone goes to the headphone jacks on the control panel and on the voice recorder unit.

The aircraft interface also sends a signal to turn on the status indicator.

During the test, the processors monitor test data for faults. When the processor finds a fault, it stops the signal to the status indicator and stops the audio tone.

With no faults, the status indicator momentarily comes on. At the same time you hear the 620 Hz tone at the headphone jack.

Erase

You erase the memory of the voice recorder unit with these conditions:

- Airplane is on the ground
- Parking brake is set
- Push the ERASE switch for at least 2 seconds, and then release.

The erase cycle starts when you release the switch.

While in erase, the ERASE switch sends an erase signal to the aircraft interface on the voice recorder. This signal then goes to the audio and store processors. The audio processor stops normal audio and the store processor erases the stored data on the flash/crash survivable store unit.

You hear a 400 Hz tone at the headphone jacks while in erase. You hear this tone for about 13 seconds.

Clock Input

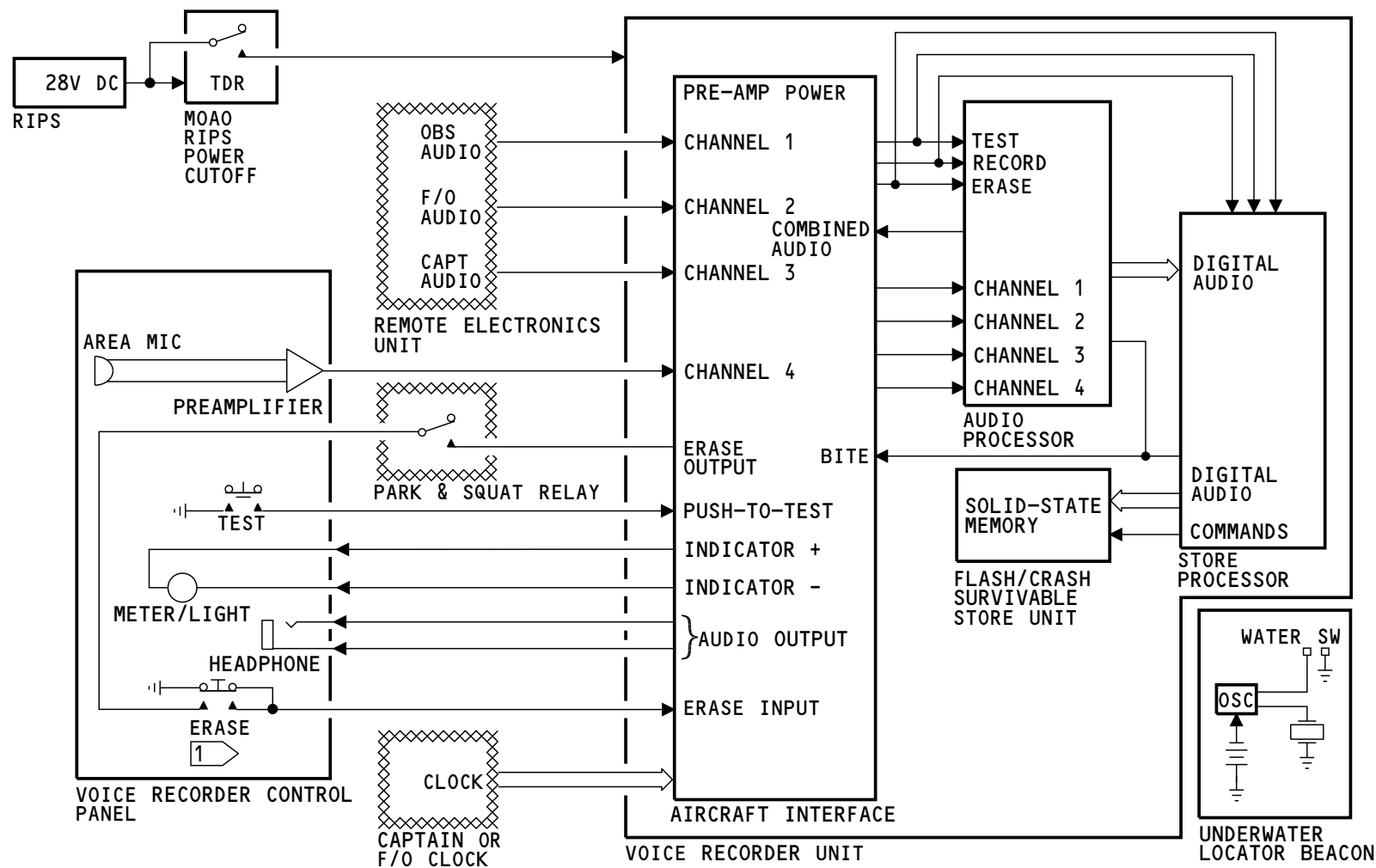
The captain clock data comes into the voice recorder on an ARINC 429 bus. This puts the time data into memory. The clock input gives a time relation between the voice recorder and the flight data recorder.

Underwater Locator Beacon Functions

The underwater locator beacon (ULB) sends a sound signal when in the water. It uses a battery for power. The battery sends power to the oscillator that operates at 37.5 KHz. The transducer changes an electrical signal to a sound signal and transmits the signal once per second.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



1 IF INSTALLED

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

2293469 S0000519415_V1

23-71-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - MAINTENANCE

General

The cockpit voice recorder system has an internal BITE circuit that lets you monitor and do a test of system operation.

A TEST switch on the control panel lets you manually start the system test.

The voice recorder switch lets you apply power to the voice recorder for maintenance and for pre-flight tests.

BITE Operation

You use BITE to do a test of all the recorder circuitry. When you push the control panel TEST switch, BITE makes a test tone. The recorder stores this test tone on each channel. BITE then monitors the stored tone to make sure it is correct.

Operational Test

The voice recorder gets power when one of these things happens:

- Voice recorder switch is ON
- An engine is at or above idle
- First ten minutes after engine shutdown
- An engine start lever is in IDLE for five minutes or more.

When the voice recorder has power, you can start the test.

To start the system test, push and hold the control panel TEST switch for at least five seconds. The system does a test of all four record channels.

You hear a tone on the headphone jack and the green status indicator comes on for a short time.

These are the results if the test fails:

- Green status indicator stays off
- No tone on the headphone jack.

System Test

The system test does not do a check of the audio circuits to the voice recorder. To do a test of these circuits, you must make a test recording.

Do these steps to do a test of the captain, first officer, and first observer input channels:

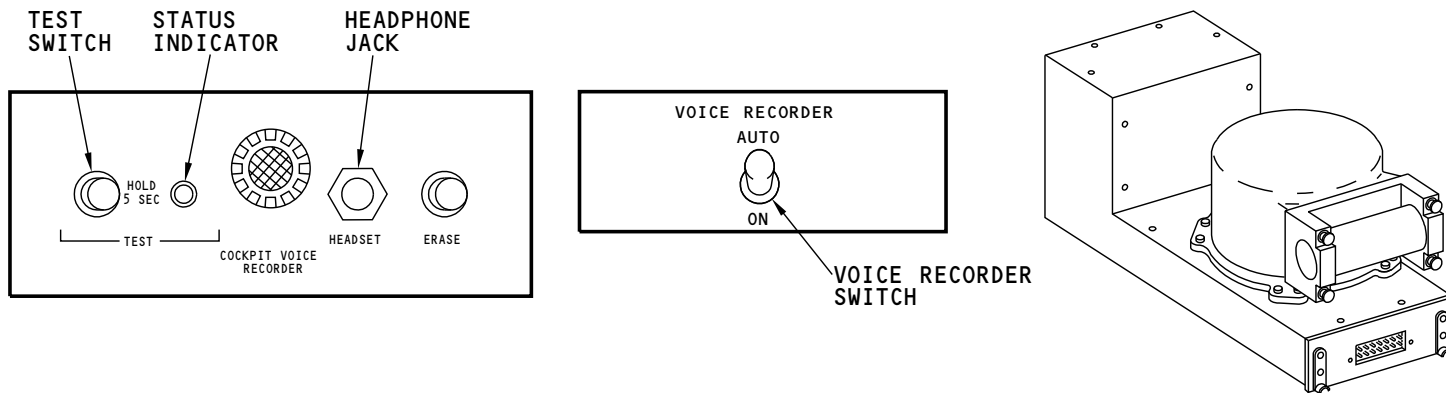
- Disconnect all microphones and cover the area microphone
- Connect a headset to the control panel HEADPHONE jack
- Connect a microphone into a station that you want to monitor
- Speak into microphone and monitor the recorded audio from the HEADPHONE jack.

Do these steps to do a test of the area microphone input:

- Disconnect the microphones for the captain, first officer, and first observer input channels
- Connect a headset to the control panel HEADPHONE jack
- Speak into the area microphone and monitor the recorded audio from the HEADPHONE jack.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - MAINTENANCE



TEST		RESULTS
POWER UP AND CONTINUOUS MONITORING	PASS	NO INDICATION, NORMAL AUDIO
	FAIL	FAILS SYSTEM TEST
SYSTEM TEST	PASS	STATUS INDICATOR COMES ON, 620 HZ TONE ON HEADPHONE
	FAIL	STATUS INDICATOR DOES NOT COME ON, NO TONE
OPERATIONAL TESTS FOR EACH CHANNEL		CHANNEL AUDIO

M81047 S0004624756_V1

VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - TRAINING INFORMATION POINT - MAINTENANCE

23-71-00

23-71-00-010

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



VOICE RECORDER SYSTEM - SUMMARY

General

This graphic is for reference purposes.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA





THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-75-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

General

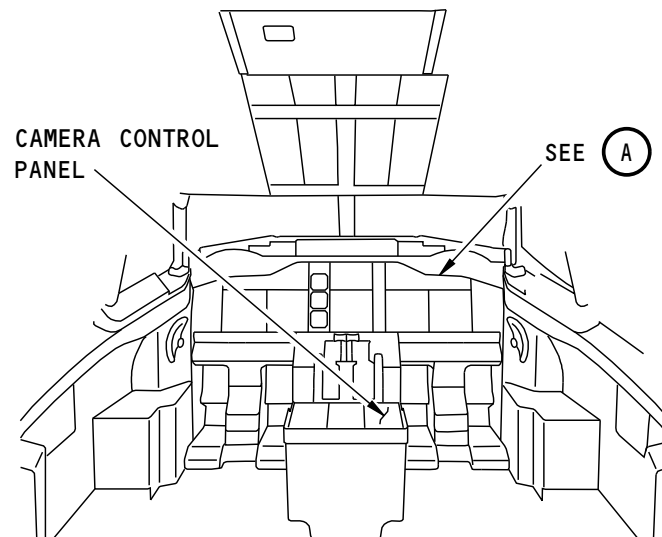
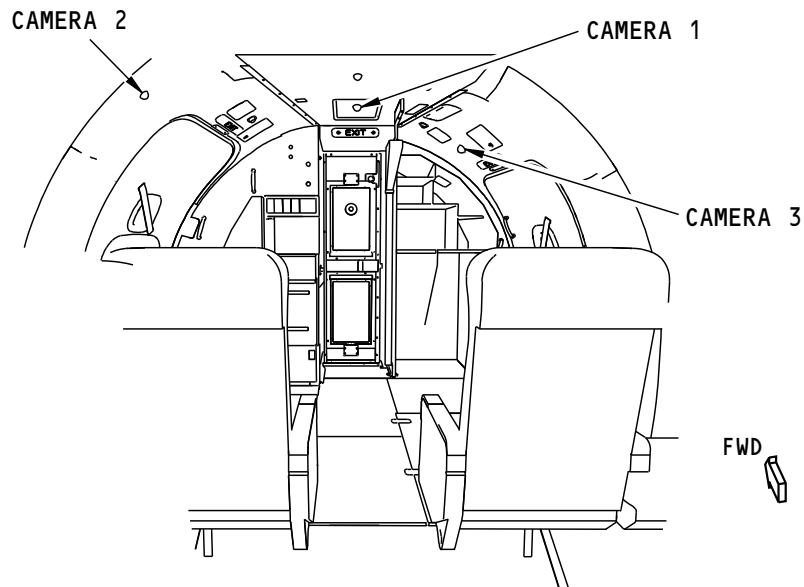
The Flight Deck Entry Video Surveillance System (FDEVSS) is a video system that gives the flight crew surveillance capability of the flight deck entry door, airplane door 1-left, and door 1-right.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

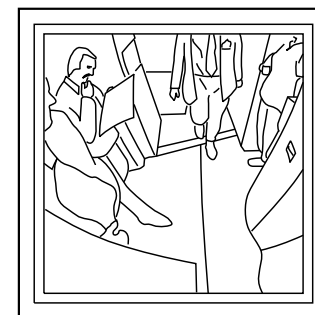
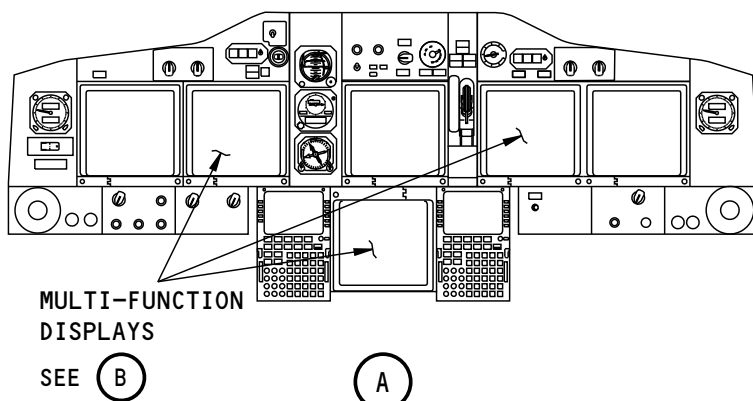
- CDS - common display system
- CCP - camera control panel
- DSPL - display (command)
- DU - display unit
- FDEVSS - flight deck entry video surveillance system
- MFD - multi-function display
- VIU - video interface unit.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



FLIGHT COMPARTMENT



MULTI-FUNCTION DISPLAY
(EXAMPLE)

(B)

1590122 S0000298557_V1

INTRODUCTION

23-75-00



FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The Flight Deck Entry Video Surveillance System (FDEVSS) is a video system that provides video surveillance of the cockpit door and surrounding area. This lets the flight crew, before they allow entry, see the person who wants access to the flight compartment.

Components

The FDEVSS consists of the following components:

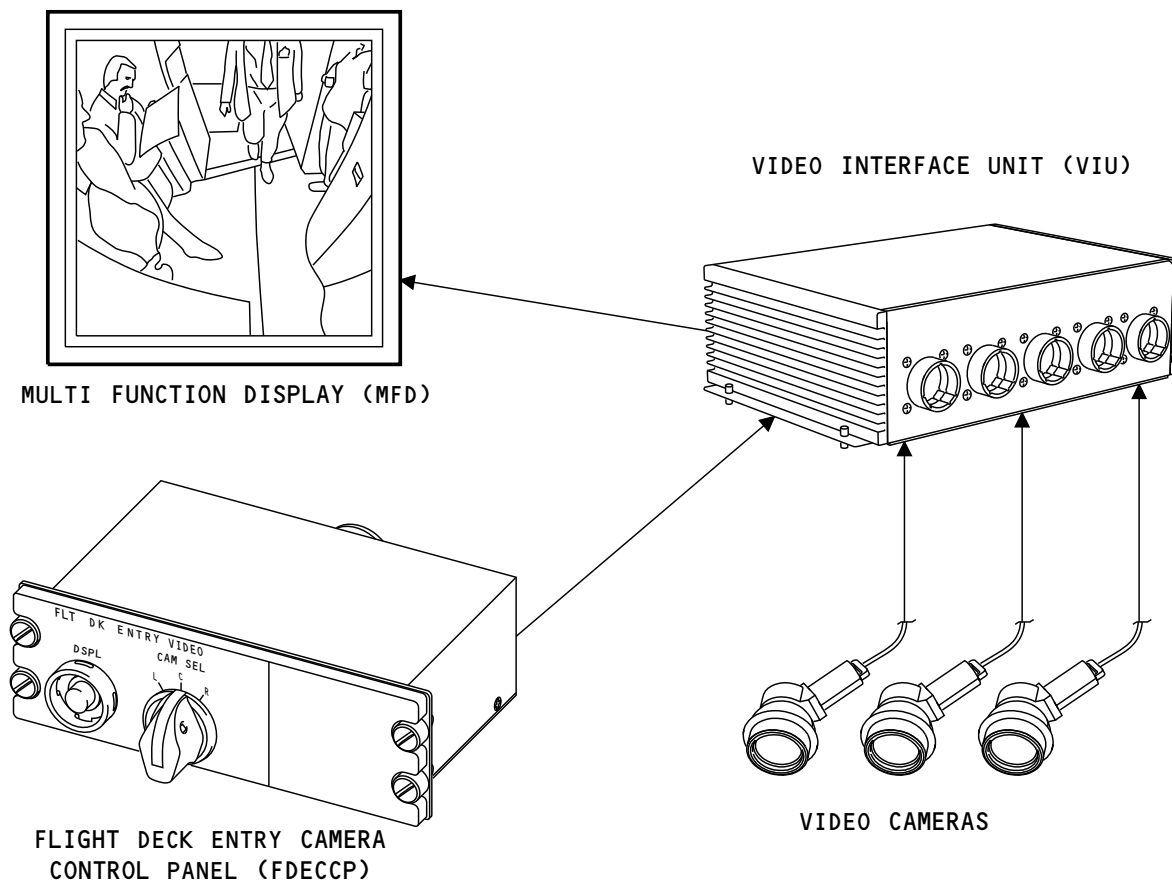
- Three black and white cameras with integrated near-infrared (IR) illumination, M3002, M3026, and M3004
- Video interface unit (VIU), M3001
- Camera control panel (CP), M3000

The FDEVSS video can show on the lower-center multi-function display (MFD), N190. This component is part of the common display system (CDS).

NOTE: Only the lower-center MFD can show flight deck entry video. The inboard-left, and inboard right MFDs are connected to FDEVSS. However, to show video successfully, the optional video-capable MFDs are required.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



FDEVSS GENERAL DESCRIPTION

D81400 S0000166062_V2

**FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS****General**

The Flight Deck Entry Video Surveillance System (FDEVSS) has components in the flight compartment and in the passenger cabin area.

Flight Compartment

In the flight compartment, the camera Control Panel (CP) is installed aft of the throttles, on the P8 aisle stand,

The output of the FDEVSS transmits video to the common display system (CDS). The CDS shows video on the center-lower multi-function display (MFD).

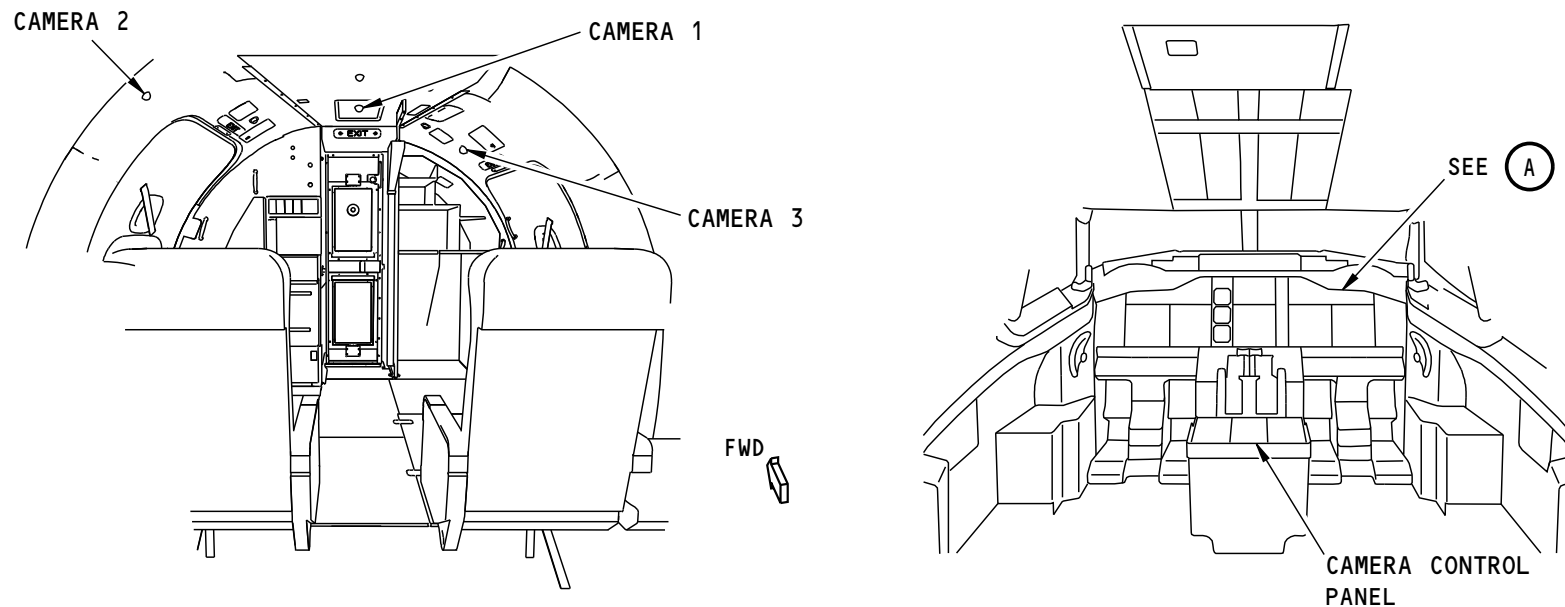
Passenger Cabin

In the passenger cabin, the video interface unit (VIU), M3001, is installed in a frame above the ceiling panel at STA 344, BL 0.

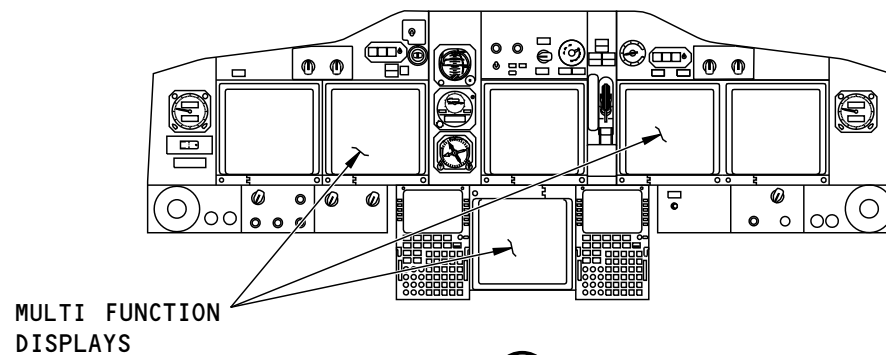
Three separate video cameras are mounted to monitor activity around the flight deck entry door. Their locations are as follows:

- Camera 1, M3002, is installed at STA 285, BL 0, mounted to the back-side of the forward lowered ceiling close-out.
- Camera 2, M3026, is installed at STA 338, LBL 28. It is mounted aft of door 1L, on the appearance side of the doorway liner panel.
- Camera 3, M3004, is installed at STA 300, RBL 23. It is mounted forward of door 1R, on the galley ceiling panel.

FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATIONS



FLIGHT COMPARTMENT



FDEVSS COMPONENT LOCATIONS

1576339 S0000295750_V1



FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INTERFACES

Video Interface Unit (VIU)

The Video Interface Unit (VIU) receives 115V ac (volts alternating current) power from transfer bus 1. Power is controlled by the Surveillance Camera circuit breaker, C01641, on panel P6 -12. The VIU also gives 12V dc (volts direct current) power to each camera.

The VIU has these interfaces:

- Interface A connector (J1)
- Interface B connector (J2)
- One discrete Input/Output (I/O) connector (J3)
- One Ethernet I/O connector (J4)
- One power input connector (J5).

Infrared Camera

The VIU supports three near-infrared video cameras. Each camera has these features:

- Receives 12V dc power from the VIU
- Transmits a continuous analog, NTSC-specification, black and white video signal to the VIU.

Camera Control Panel

The camera Control Panel (CP) has one interface:

- I/O connector (J1).

The CP has a variable-brightness plastic light plate that requires 5V dc. Brightness is controlled by the aislestand panel lighting control. The CP has no other power requirement.

Multi-Function Display

The Multi-Function Display (MFD) is a component of the common display system (CDS). When the CDS is set to show flight deck video, the applicable MFD receives and shows video from the VIU.

NOTE: Only the lower-center MFD can show flight deck entry video. The inboard left, and inboard right MFD units are connected to FDEVSS. However to show video successfully, the optional video-capable MFDs are required.

Automatic Load Shed System

The automatic load shed system for the galleys, and main busses supplies electrical power the flight deck entry video circuit breaker. This system must be ON for FDEVSS to operate.

The switch for this system is the IFE/PASS SEAT switch on P5-13, the electrical meters, battery, an galley power module.

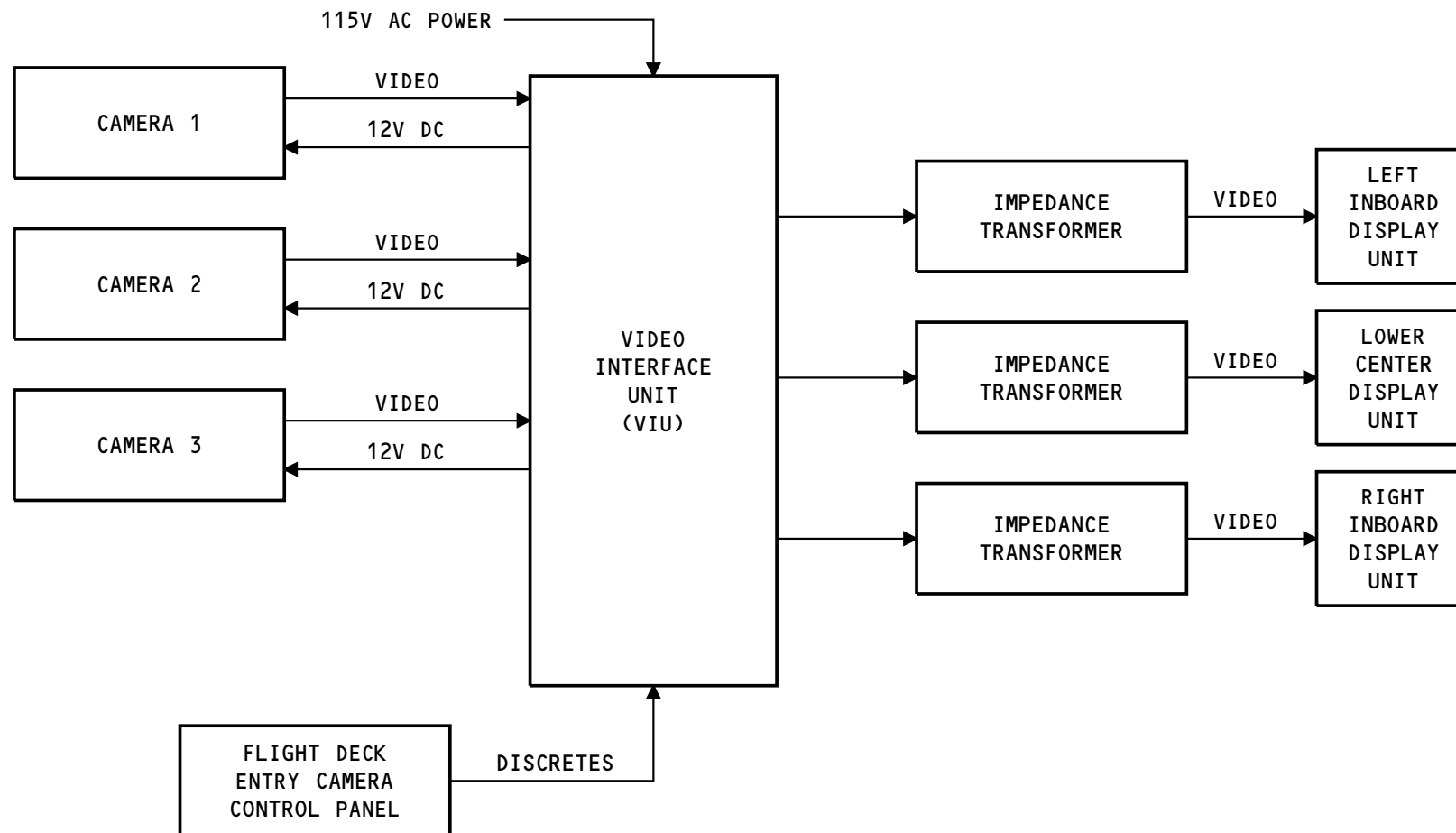
23-75-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INTERFACES



U78611 S0000215734_V1

FDEVSS INTERFACES

23-75-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INFRARED CAMERA

Infrared Camera

The camera is mounted in a swivel reading light housing. The swivel capability allows the camera to be positioned at a desirable camera angle.

Each camera has these approximate physical characteristics:

- Length - 3.1 in. (78.7 mm)
- Diameter - 2.5 in. (63.5 mm)
- Weight - 0.44 lb (199.58 g).

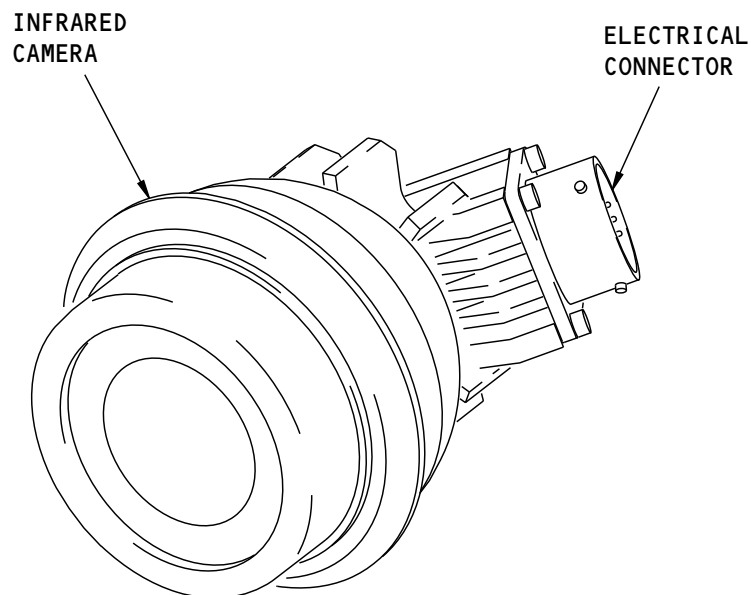
Each camera receives 12V dc (volts direct current) power from the video interface unit (VIU).

The camera assembly consists of three (3) electronic circuit cards with integrated near-infrared (IR) light-emitting diodes (LEDs). Near-IR lighting provides illumination that is visible to the video camera but not to the human eyes. This makes it possible to receive viewable video images even in complete darkness (0 lux).

Each camera makes an analog NTSC black-and-white video signal that is received by the VIU. Each camera makes an analog NTSC black-and-white video signal that the VIU then transmits to the common display system (CDS).

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INFRARED CAMERA



385795 S0000134671_V2

FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - INFRARED CAMERA

23-75-00

23-75-00-013

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The Video Interface Unit (VIU) receives video images from three analog cameras installed aft of the flight deck entry door.

The camera video signals received by the VIU are sent to the common display system (CDS), and show on the lower-center multi-function display (MFD).

NOTE: Airplanes with the optional video-capable MFDs installed in the inboard-left, and inboard-right positions can show flight deck entry video. Airplanes delivered with FDEVSS and MFD displays are pre-wired from the VIU to all three MFD units. However, the video-capable displays are also required.

The camera Control Panel (CP) sets the VIU to send one of the three video signals to the CDS. The CDS uses a separate control panel to select which MFD shows the video.

A three-position rotary switch selects the camera 1 (L), 2 (C), or 3 (R) image to show on the Multi-Function Display (MFD). The push-button marked DSPL (DISPLAY) on the CP sends a discrete to set the MFD to show the video signal.

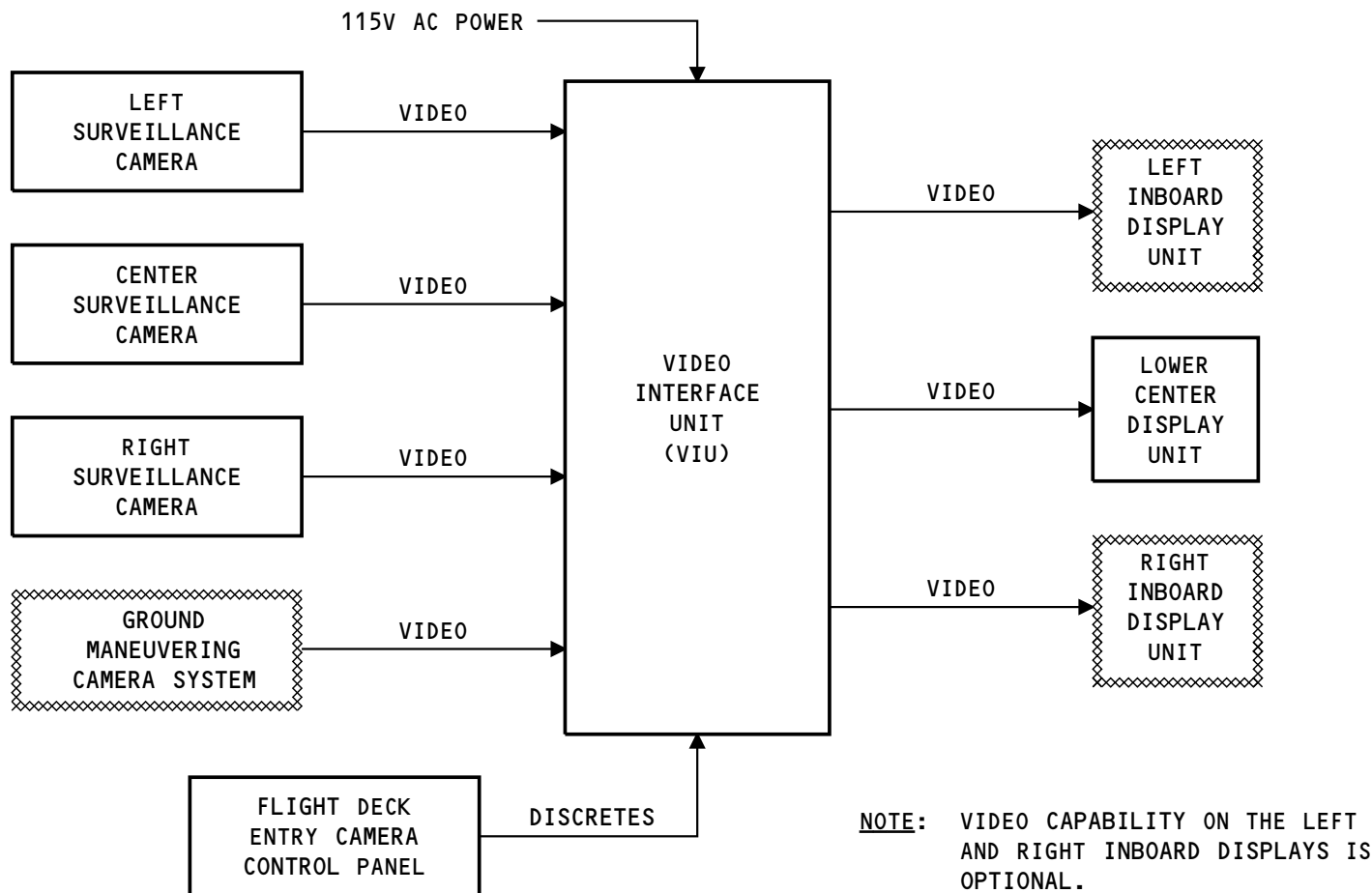
NOTE: The FDEVSS can show only the signal from a single camera at one time.

The primary display is the lower-center MFD, N190, in the P9 lower instrument panel. To view the flight deck entry video on the CDS, the captain's, or first officer's display select panel, M1808 or M1809, must also be set.

NOTE: The camera control panel selects the left, center, or right camera signal. The CDS display select panel chooses the FDEVSS signal, or other flight-related data to show on the MFD.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



D82002 S0000166530_V4

FDEVSS FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-75-00



VIDEO INTERFACE UNIT

General

The video interface unit (VIU) is the video processor, and power supply for each camera, for the flight deck entry video surveillance system (FDEVSS). The VIU is used on aircraft that show this video on the multi-function display (MFD), a component of the common display system (CDS).

The VIU supports three video cameras, and can support video from an optional ground maneuvering system.

Physical Description

The face of the Video Interface Unit (VIU) four connectors for cameras, and a single connector for power input, and video output signals. The VIU has four captive screws that attach the unit to a frame structure.

The VIU has these physical characteristics:

- Height - 4.3 in. (10.9 cm)
- Width - 14.8 in. (37.6 cm)
- Depth - 6.7 in. (17.0 cm)
- Weight -11.0 lb (5.0 kg), maximum.

The VIU has these external connectors:

- Interface A connector (J1)
- Interface B connector (J2)
- One discrete Input/Output (I/O) connector (J3)
- One Ethernet I/O connector (J4)
- One power input connector (J5).

The VIU receives 115V ac (volts alternating current) from transfer bus 1. Power is controlled by the surveillance camera circuit breaker, C01641, located on the right load control center panel, P6.

The VIU output signal is NTSC-format.

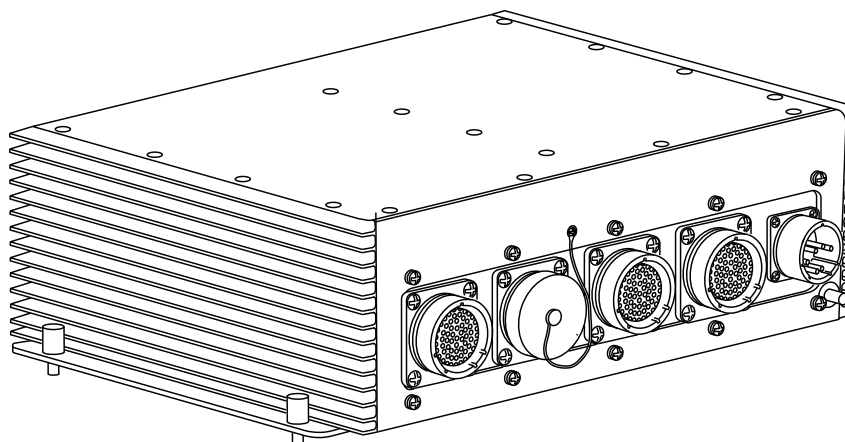
Functional Description

The VIU receives continuous video signals from the three cameras. The VIU transmits only one camera signal to all three display units.

The camera Control Panel (CP) controls which video signal the VIU transmits. The CP rotary switch is set to (R), (C), or (L), and the DSPL (display) button is pushed. An analog discrete sets the VIU camera selection.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

VIDEO INTERFACE UNIT



VIDEO INTERFACE UNIT
(VIU)

VIDEO INTERFACE UNIT

U73161 S0000215432_V1

23-75-00-015

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-75-00



CAMERA CONTROL PANEL

General

The camera Control Panel (CP) sets the video interface unit (VIU) to transmit one of three available camera signals (R, C, or L) to the common display system (CDS).

Physical Description

The face of the CP has one rotary knob, and one push-button. The rear of the unit has one multi-pin connector. The unit has four captive fasteners to attach the unit to the mounting rack.

The CP has these physical characteristics:

- Height - 1.9 in. (4.8 cm)
- Width - 5.7 in. (14.5 cm)
- Depth - 4.7 in. (11.9 cm)
- Weight -0.6 lb (272.2 g), maximum.

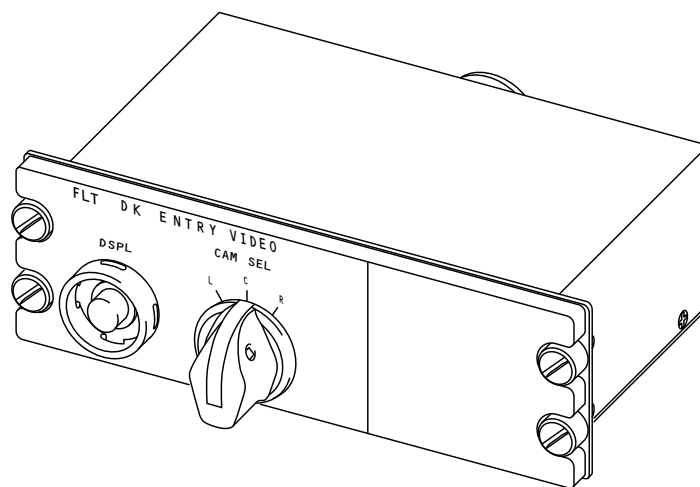
Functional Description

The CP has a three-position rotary switch to select the left, center, or right camera video signal. Adjacent to the rotary switch, a push button marked DSPL (DISPLAY) tells the VIU to transmit the selected video signal.

For illumination, the CP receives 5.0V ac (volts alternating current) from the pilot's control stand lighting circuit breaker, C1115.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

CAMERA CONTROL PANEL



FLIGHT DECK ENTRY VIDEO
CAMERA CONTROL PANEL

CAMERA CONTROL PANEL

U72964 S0000215417_V1

23-75-00-016

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-75-00



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-81-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PC POWER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

General

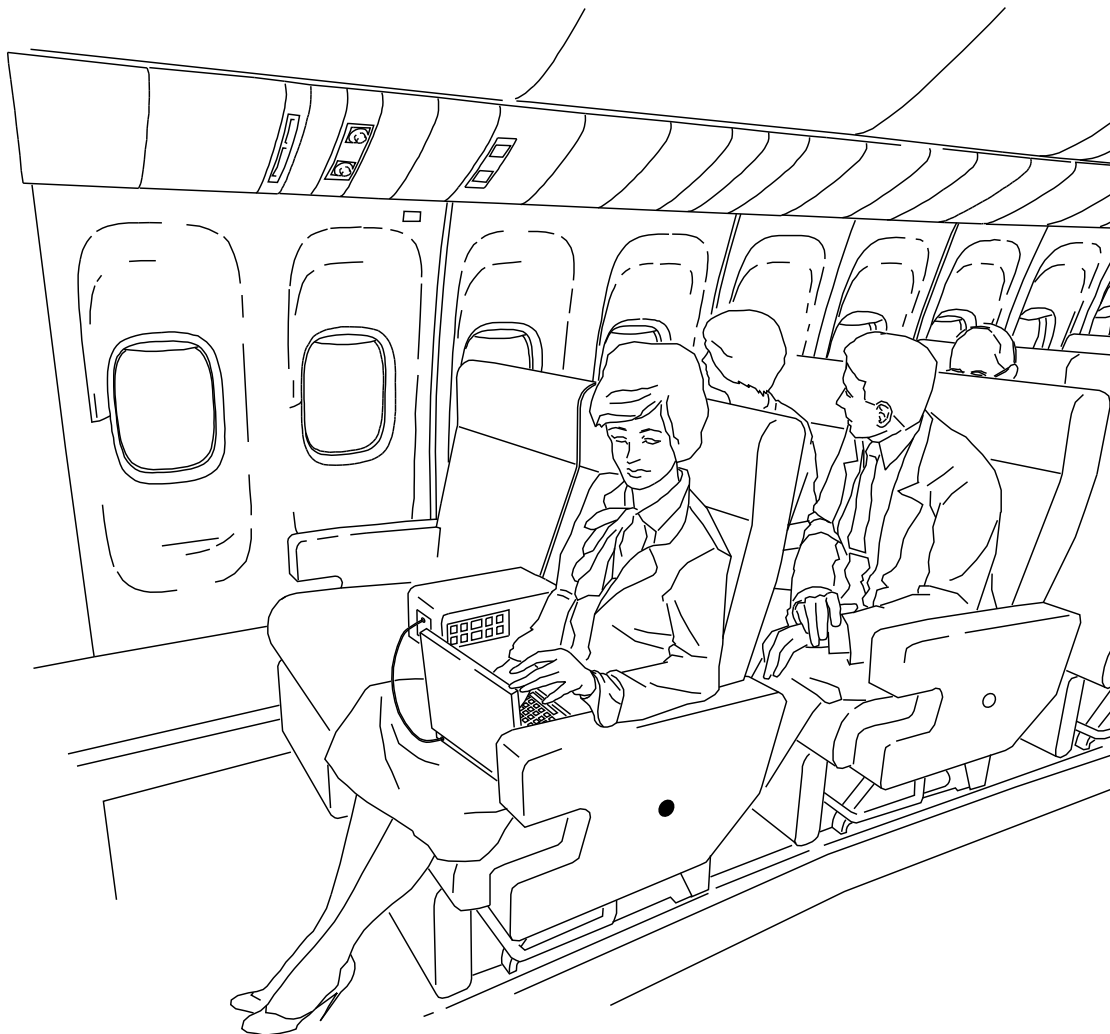
The PC Power System provides electrical power for use by passengers and crew. The interface to the PC Power System is through outlets installed in selected passenger seats. The user connects a laptop computer or other personal electronic device (PED) to the outlets.

Abbreviations and Acronyms

- A/C - alternating current
- BITE - built-in test equipment
- C/B - circuit breaker
- DC - direct current
- ISPS - in-seat power supply
- LED - light emitting diode
- LRU - line replaceable unit
- MCU - master control unit
- OU - outlet unit
- PED - personal electronic device
- CM - configuration module
- VDC - volts direct current

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

PC POWER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



421893 S0000136681_V1

PC POWER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION

23-81-00

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PC POWER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The PC Power System provides 110 VAC/60Hz or low-voltage DC electrical power electrical power for use by passengers and crew.

The interface to the PC Power System is through outlets installed in selected passenger seats and certain crew areas. The user connects a laptop computer or other personal electronic device (PED) to the outlets to get access to the PC Power System.

Power Interface

The PC Power System receives 115 VAC/400 Hz aircraft power and converts it to 110 VAC/60 Hz power for passenger and crew use.

The PC Power System receives 115 VAC/400 Hz aircraft power and converts it to 15 VDC power for passenger and crew use.

The power to the PC POWER system can be set to ON or OFF at the forward attendant panel.

The IFE/PASS SEAT switch on the pilot's overhead panel P5 also controls power to the system.

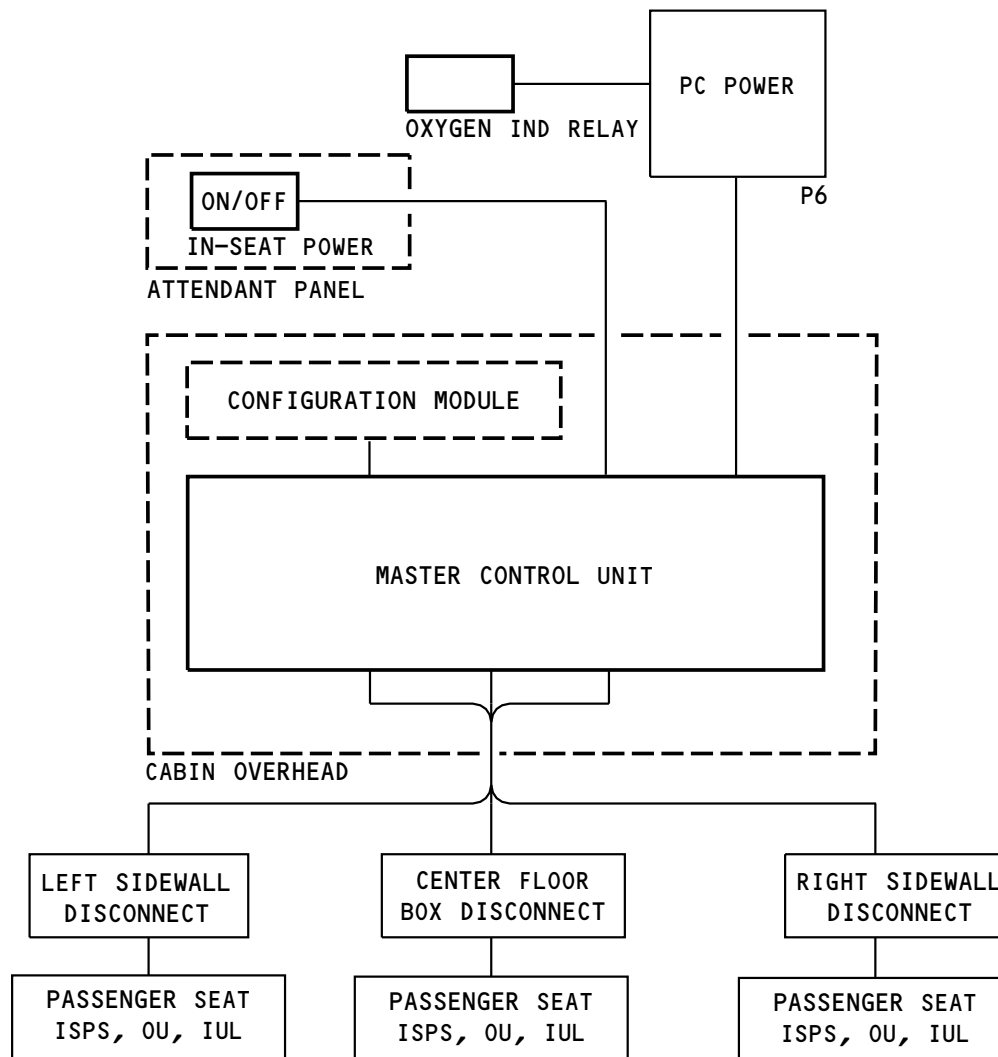
Components

The PC Power System has these components:

- Master Control Unit (MCU)
- Configuration Module (CM)
- In-Seat Power Supply (ISPS)
- Outlet Units (OU)
- PC Power soft button on the LCD Touch screen Passenger Services menu at the forward attendant control panel
- Applicable cables and harness connections.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

PC POWER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



1931885 S0000364798_V3

PC POWER SYSTEM - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-81-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**PC POWER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION****Passenger Seats**

In selected areas of the cabin where the PC Power System is installed, each passenger seat has an outlet unit (OU) in the armrest. Installed underneath one seat in each applicable seat group is an in-seat power supply (ISPS).

NOTE: The ISPS can be a double-seat group configuration that supplies power to two different seat OUs. Or, the ISPS can be a triple-seat group configuration that supplies power to three different seat OUs.

Cabin Ceiling

The PC Power System master control unit(s) (MCU) is installed in the passenger compartment ceiling. There is a configuration module (CM) that is connected to each MCU.

Attendant Control Panel

The PC Power ON/OFF soft button in the LCD Touchscreen Passenger Services menu at the forward attendant control panel.

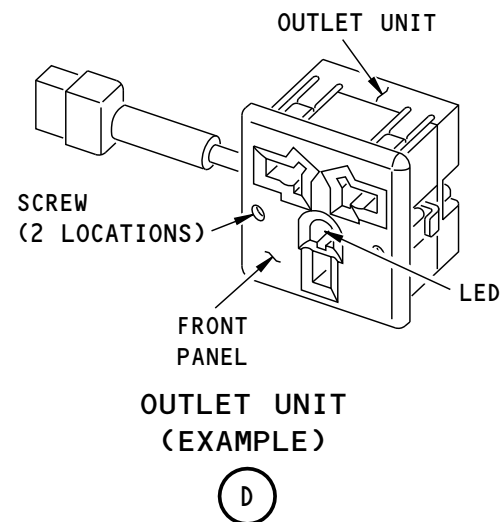
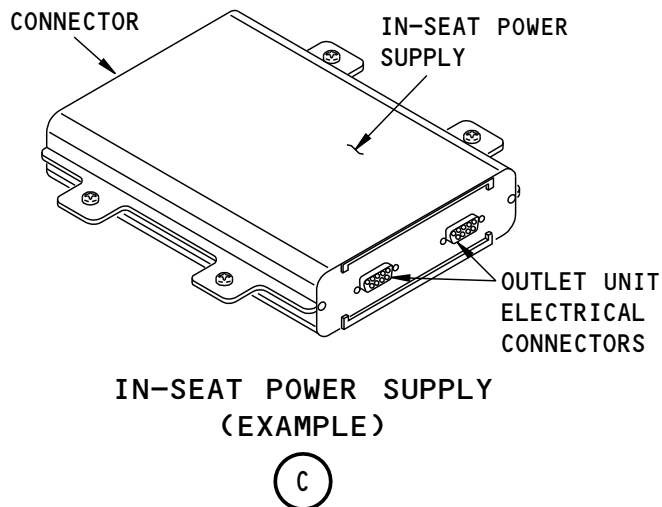
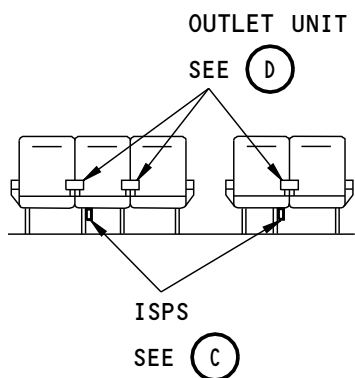
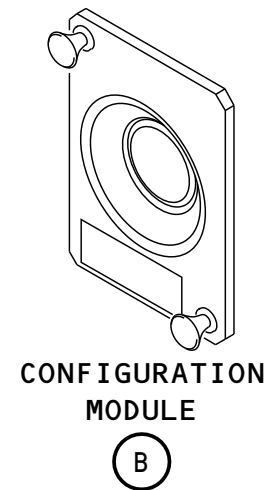
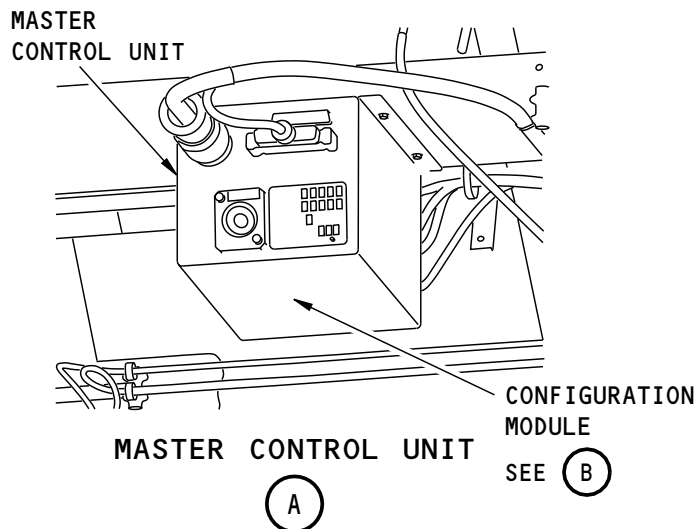
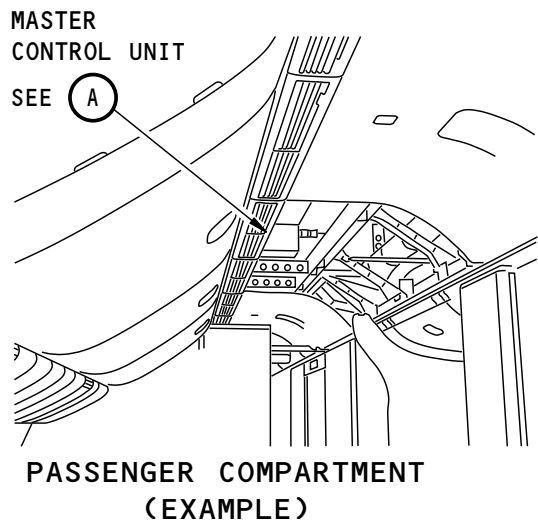
Flight Compartment

There is a three-phase 115 VAC circuit breaker and one associated relay that provide power to each MCU. The relay is powered by a separate 28 VAC circuit breaker. The circuit breakers and relay are installed in the P6.

The IFE/PASS SEAT switch is installed on the pilot's overhead panel P5. This switch turns power on or off for the system.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

PC POWER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION



1931884 S0000364876_V1

PC POWER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION

**PC POWER SYSTEM - MCU - GENERAL DESCRIPTION****General**

The master control unit (MCU) is installed in the passenger compartment ceiling. You get access to the MCU when you remove the main ceiling panel. The MCU is installed with four fasteners.

Physical Description

Each MCU has connections for:

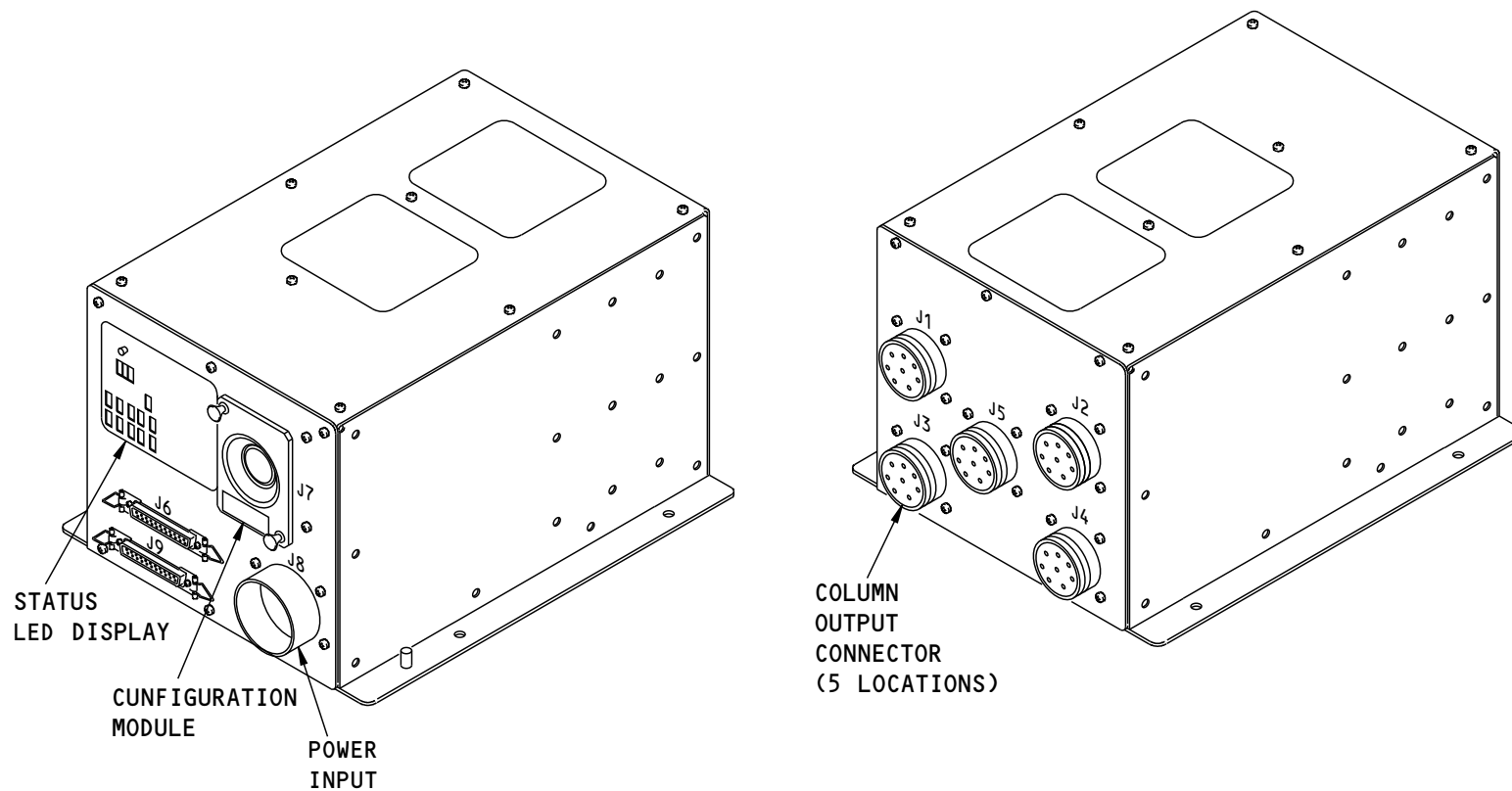
- Input power.
- Airplane systems interface (to monitor the cabin decompression signal, for example).
- A configuration module (CM).
- One connector for each seat column (five maximum).

The seat column connections:

- Send 115 VAC output power from the MCUs, through the sidewall disconnects to the ISPSs.
- Supply a path for the MCUs and the OUs to monitor the electrical current.
- Supply a path for the MCUs to remove power when conditions are necessary.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

PC POWER SYSTEM - MCU - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



MASTER CONTROL UNIT

PC POWER SYSTEM - MCU - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

J94218 S0000187158_V1

23-81-00

23-81-00-004

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-81-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PC POWER SYSTEM - MCU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

General

The master control unit (MCU) provides power management and distribution for the PC Power system.

The MCU provides three phase 115VAC, 400 Hz power AC power to the PC Power system on each of five individual column outputs. The current in each column is continuously monitored. If power faults are detected, it is indicated and power lines are switched off.

Power limit can be configured for individual aircraft using a Configuration Module.

The MCU measures the total current consumption of the seat demands by portable electronic devices (PED) at the OUs and limits or shuts off the available power if necessary.

An Ethernet interface provides the MCU operational status, Built-In-Test (BIT) information and control of power distribution.

The PC Power System is disabled when the MCU receives a cabin decompression signal.

The MCU can operate as part of an IFE system or independently.

Operation

The PC Power system must have the following inputs to operate:

- The power of the system must be set to ON at the Forward Attendant Control Panel.

The MCU operates with three phase 115 VAC/400Hz aircraft power from the 115 VAC Transfer bus 2. The PC Power System circuit breaker (PC POWER, C1558) is on the P6 Load Control Panel in the Flight compartment.

Also installed on the P6 Load Control Panel is Relay K940 (IFE/PASS SEAT CONTROL RELAY 2). The relay is energized when the power to the PC Power system is set to ON at the forward attendant control panel. Power is then applied from the circuit breaker across the energized relay to the MCU.

Functional Description

The MCU receives aircraft power from one input and provides power distribution to the column outputs (up to five). The power path includes a fuse for each output phase after the separation point, a relay for switching purposes and a current sensor for power management. The GFI protection circuit uses a separate current transformer that monitors the differential current of 3 phases and aircraft return for each column output.

The internal circuits of the MCU are directly supplied by any of the 3 power input phases. The power supply is protected by a fuse for each supply phase. The MCU contains GFI circuits and a microcontroller. The purpose of the microcontroller system is to control the power path, evaluate the current measurement, control (through a discrete) the relays for switching, control the data out control line interface and evaluate most of the discrete inputs and outputs.

Status Display

The Status Display LEDs are on the front panel of the MCU. The three Input Power LEDs and the five Output Power LEDs are single green LEDs. The BITE LED and the five GFI LED's are dual LEDs, one red and one green in the same package. If both diodes in the package turn on at the same time, an amber glow will result.

Power Limitations

The MCU has a connector for the Configuration Module (CM). The MCU uses the configuration parameters set in the CM to define power output. The CM is part of an assembly that can be installed, removed or replaced in the field. If the CM is not installed, the MCU uses the default configuration settings.

The maximum output current supply is 25 amps per phase (75 amps system maximum).

The power management function in the MCU has three threshold levels:

- Total aircraft power limitation - If this limit is reached, power to additional PEDs is not available, but PEDs already connected will remain powered, but may disconnect.

23-81-00

SIA ALL EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

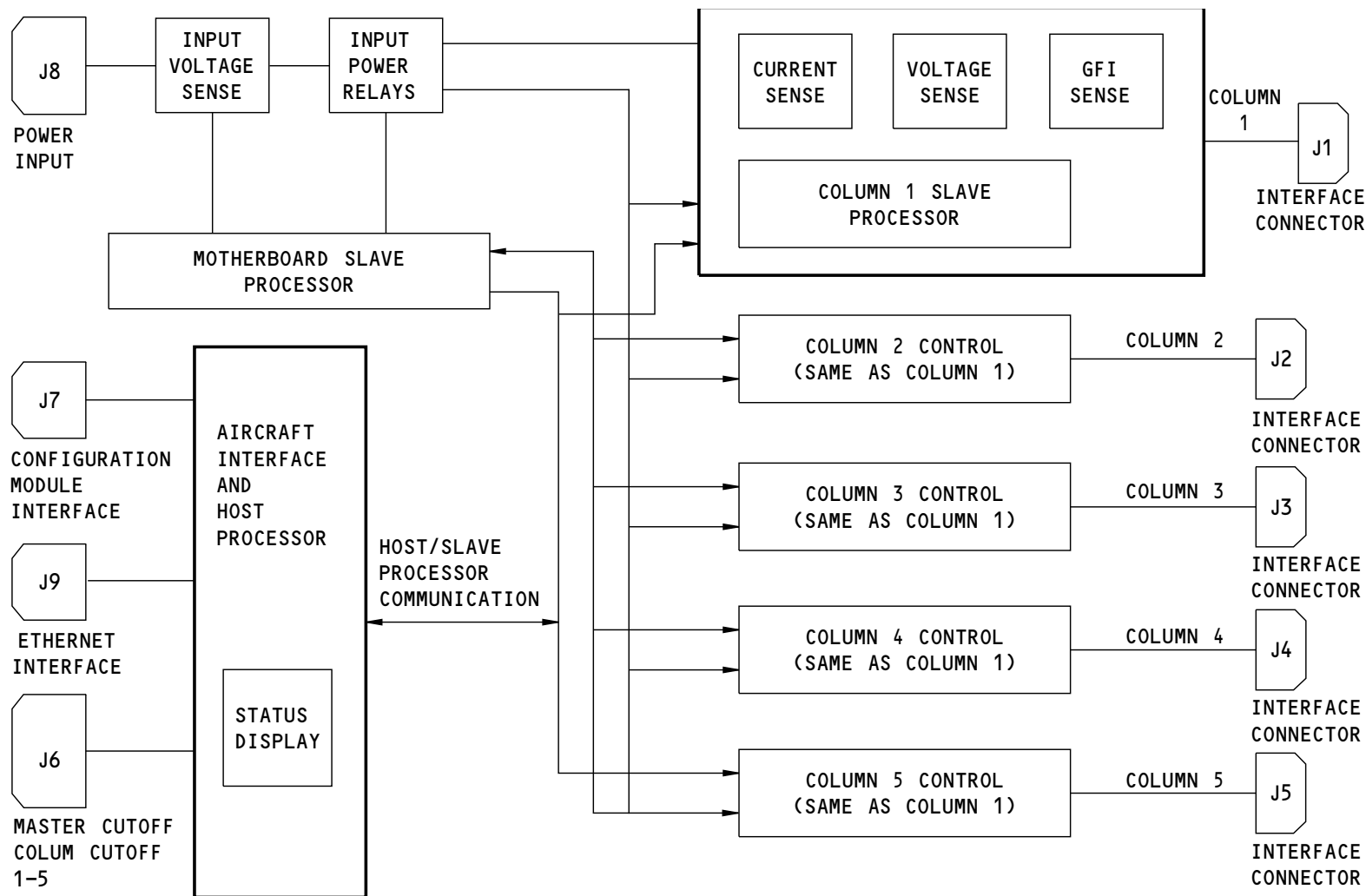
**PC POWER SYSTEM - MCU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION**

- Total aircraft power limitation per Input Phase - If this limit is reached, power to additional PEDs is not available, but PEDs already connected remain powered.
- Power line limitation for each column (1-5) per Phase (A-C) - If this limit is reached, all ISPSs in a seat column are limited; it is not possible to connect additional PEDs until a lower current level is reached.

The MCU has a ground fault interrupter (GFI) for each output column. GFI levels are set by default or in the configuration module. A tripped GFI is latched until next power up or a reset will unlatch the GFI.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

PC POWER SYSTEM - MCU - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION



J94946 S0000187432_V1

MASTER CONTROL UNIT (MCU) - FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

23-81-00

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



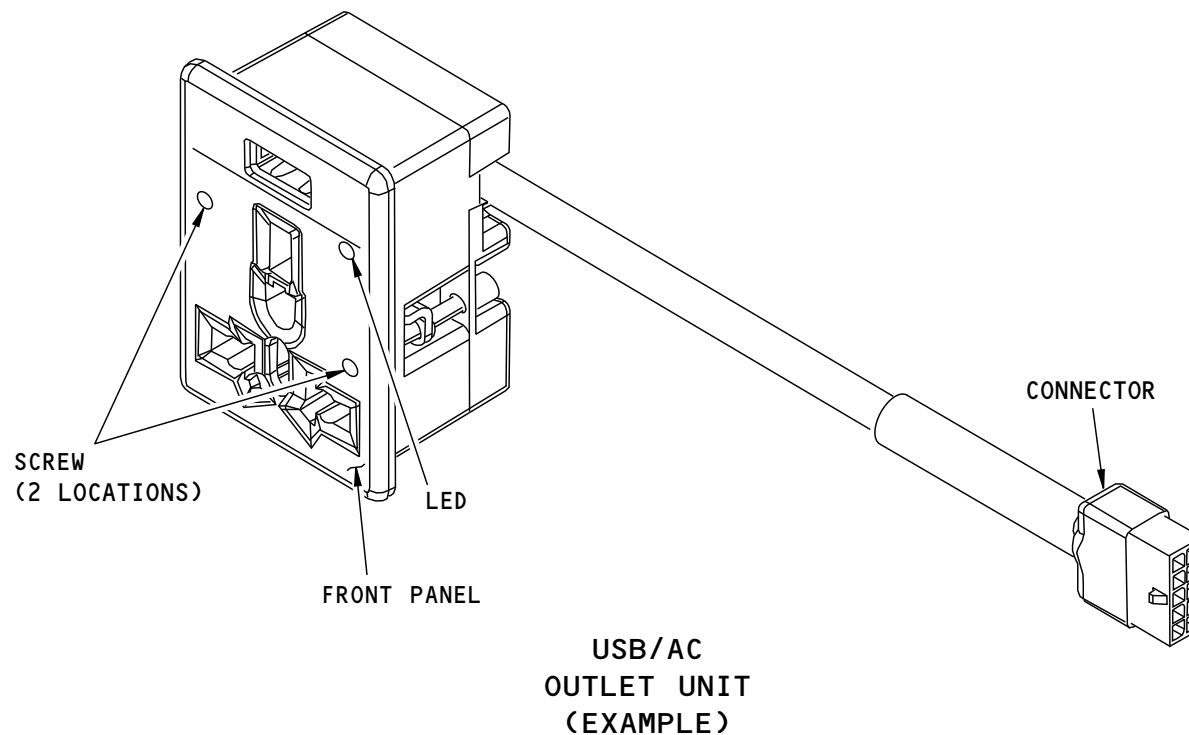
PC POWER SYSTEM - OUTLET UNITS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The Outlet Unit connects to the In-Seat Power Supply output. It supplies a power socket to operate a laptop computer or a passenger electronic device (PED) and recharge its battery.

This unit also include an USB outlet which can provide an output of 5VDC.

PC POWER SYSTEM - OUTLET UNITS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



PC POWER SYSTEM - OUTLET UNIT - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

2305974 S0000523709_V1

23-81-00-009.001

SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-81-00



PC POWER SYSTEM - ISPS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The In-Seat Power Supply supplies power to operate a laptop computer or PED and recharge its battery. The In-Seat Power Supply output connects through two or three outlet units. Each ISPS can provide power to two or three seats.

Physical Description

On one end of the ISPS, there is a connector for input power and data output. On the other end, there are two or three output connectors for the OUs.

The ISPS component is installed below the seat. Four quarter-turn fasteners hold the ISPS in place.

23-81-00-012

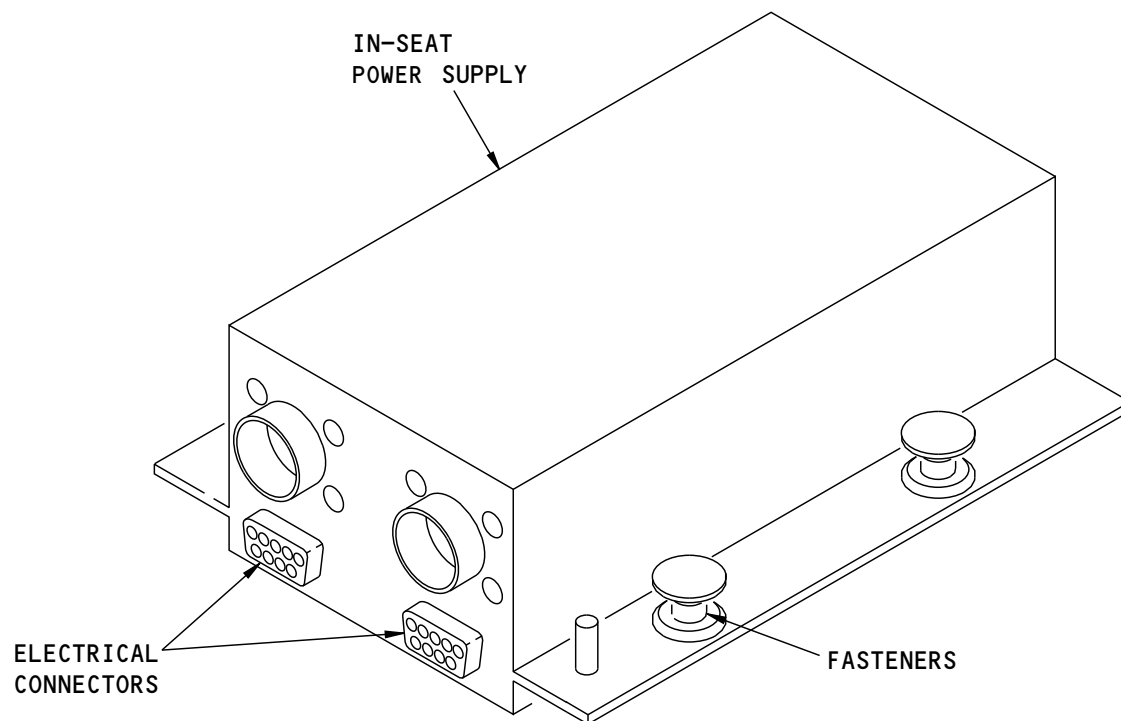
EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-81-00

PC POWER SYSTEM - ISPS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



IN-SEAT POWER SUPPLY
(EXAMPLE)

IN-SEAT POWER SUPPLY - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

1341892 S0000237492_V1

23-81-00-012

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

23-81-00



PC POWER SYSTEM - CONFIGURATION MODULE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

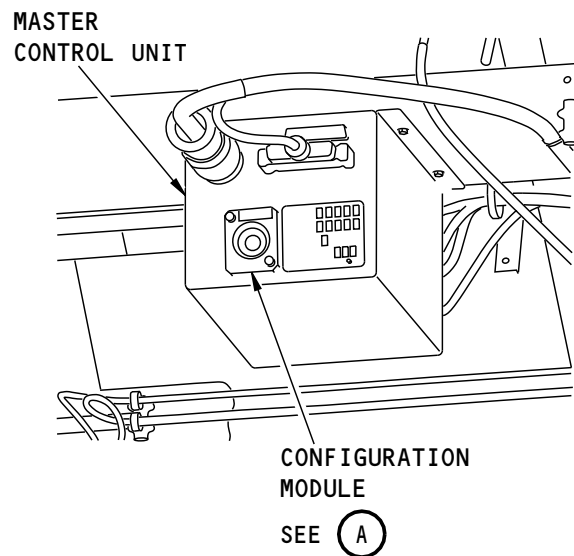
General

The configuration module (CM) is connected to the master control unit (MCU). It is not a part of the MCU. The CM contains user definable parameters such as enable/disable control, status indications. A unique CM is defined depending on available aircraft system power and specific customer desired features and control.

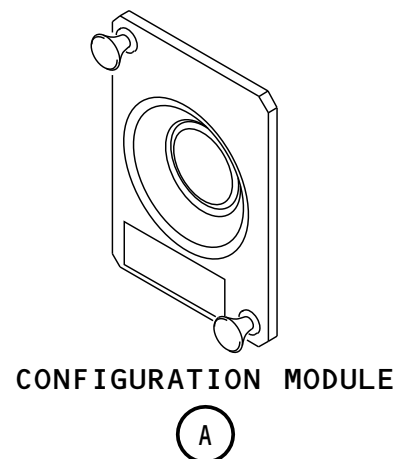
The MCU will operate without the CM, but will default to a configuration that provides basic functions and limited control features.

EFFECTIVITY	
SIA ALL	

PC POWER SYSTEM - CONFIGURATION MODULE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



MASTER CONTROL UNIT



CONFIGURATION MODULE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

J95518 S0000189053_V1

23-81-00

23-81-00-016

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



PC POWER SYSTEM - CONFIGURATION MODULE - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-82-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

**FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION****General**

The Flight Compartment PC Power System provides 110 VAC/60Hz electrical power for use by the flight crew. The interface to the PC Power System is through outlets installed in the flight compartment. The user connects a laptop computer or other Portable Electronic Device (PED) to the outlets.

The Flight Compartment PC Power System receives 115 VAC/400 Hz aircraft power and converts it to 110 VAC/60 Hz power for flight crew use.

The PC Power System has the following components:

- In-Seat Power Converter (ISPC)
- Outlet Units (OU)

Component Location

Two PC Power Outlet Units (OUs) are installed in the flight compartment. The OUs are installed on the forward face of the P18 and P6 panels, behind the captain and first officer's seats.

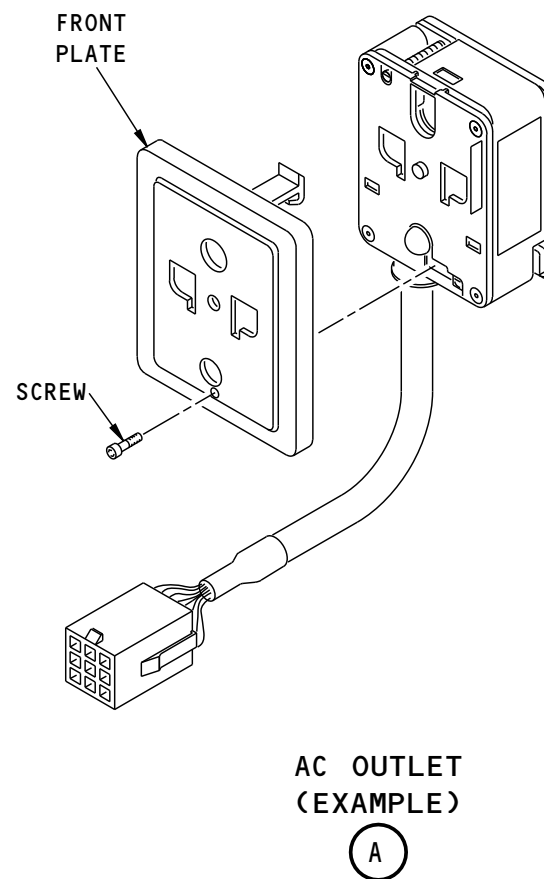
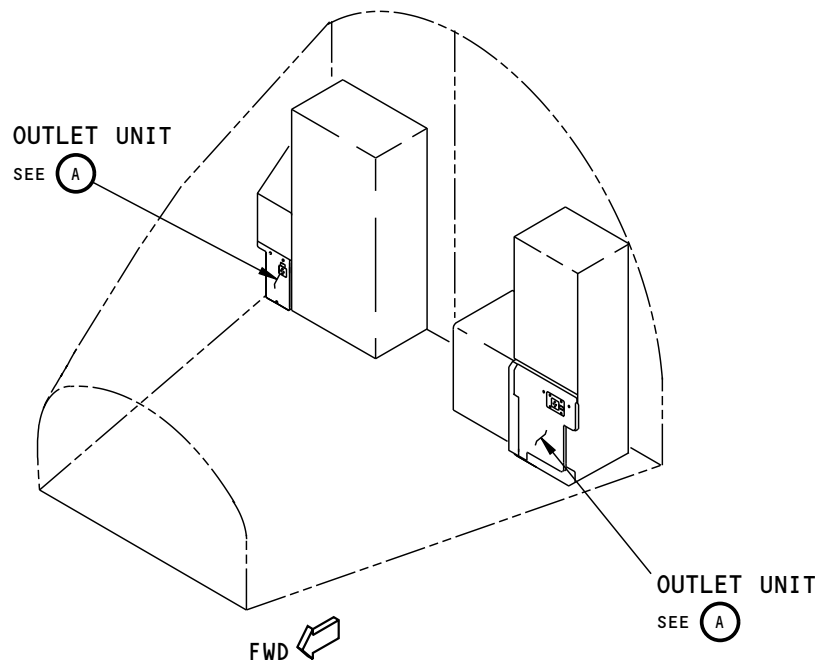
An In-Seat Power Converter (ISPC) is installed in the Electrical and Electronics (EE) compartment.

23-82-00**SIA ALL** **EFFECTIVITY**

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



1559535 S0000288130_V1

FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION

23-82-00

23-82-00-001

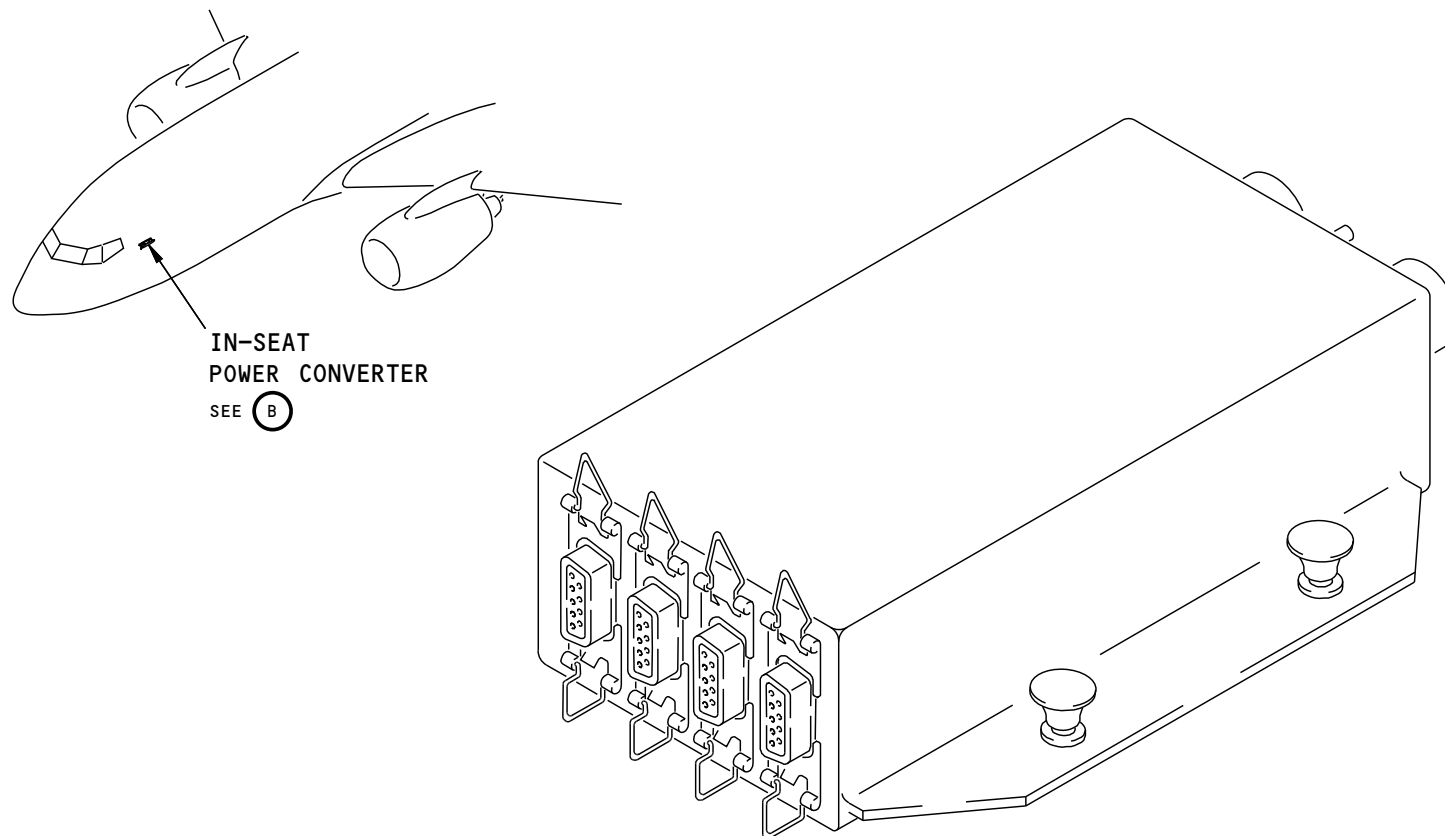
SIA ALL

EFFECTIVITY

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details

FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - INTRODUCTION



IN-SEAT POWER CONVERTER
(EXAMPLE)

(B)

1559534 S0000288131_V1

FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - COMPONENT LOCATION

23-82-00

23-82-00-001

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA



THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

23-82-00

D633A101-SIA

ECCN 9E991 BOEING PROPRIETARY - See title page for details



FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - OUTLET UNITS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The Outlet Unit (OU) connects to the In-Seat Power Supply output.

The Outlet Unit supplies power to operate a laptop computer or a Portable Electronic Device (PED) to recharge its battery.

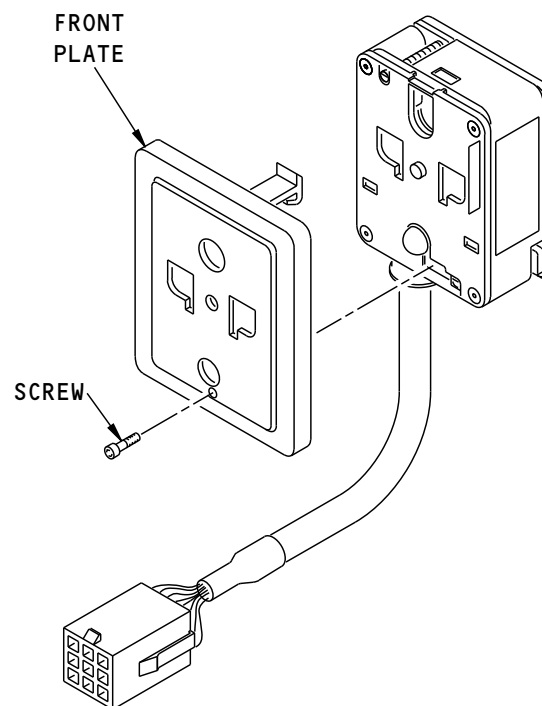
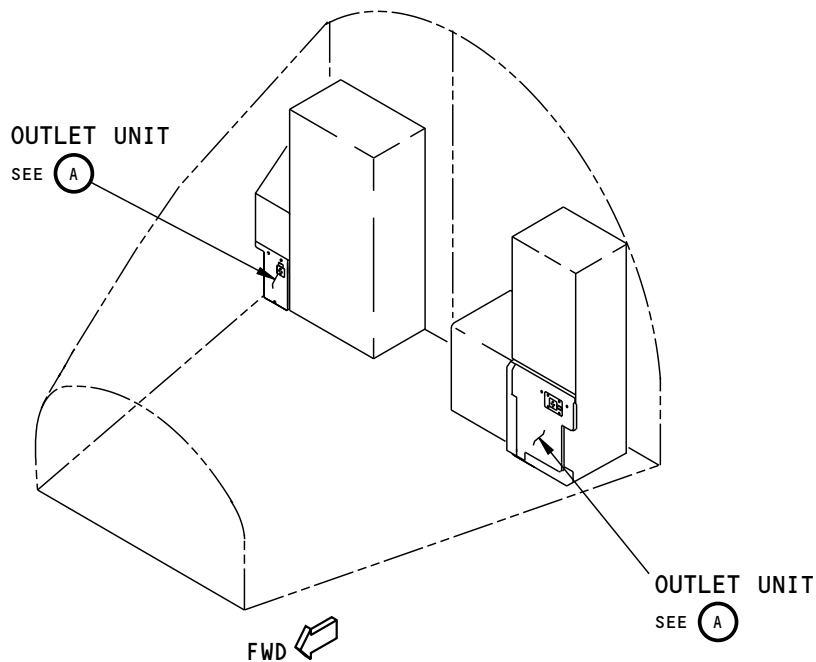
The Outlet Unit is used to power 110VAC/60 Hz electrical power systems.

LED Indicator

- The Outlet Unit has a Light Emitting Diode (LED) and is disabled to prevent a glare during nighttime operations.

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - OUTLET UNITS - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



AC OUTLET
(EXAMPLE)

(A)

1559535 S0000288130_V1

OUTLET UNIT - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

23-82-00



FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - ISPC - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

General

The In-Seat Power Converter (ISPC) supplies power to operate a laptop computer or PED and recharge its battery.

The ISPC is a rectangular box with two circular connectors on one end and three or four rectangular connectors on the other end.

The ISPC is installed in the Electrical and Electronics (EE) compartment. Four fasteners hold the ISPC in place.

Functional Description

The ISPC converts the airplane input power of 115VAC/400 Hz to the output power of 110VAC/60Hz for the outlet unit.

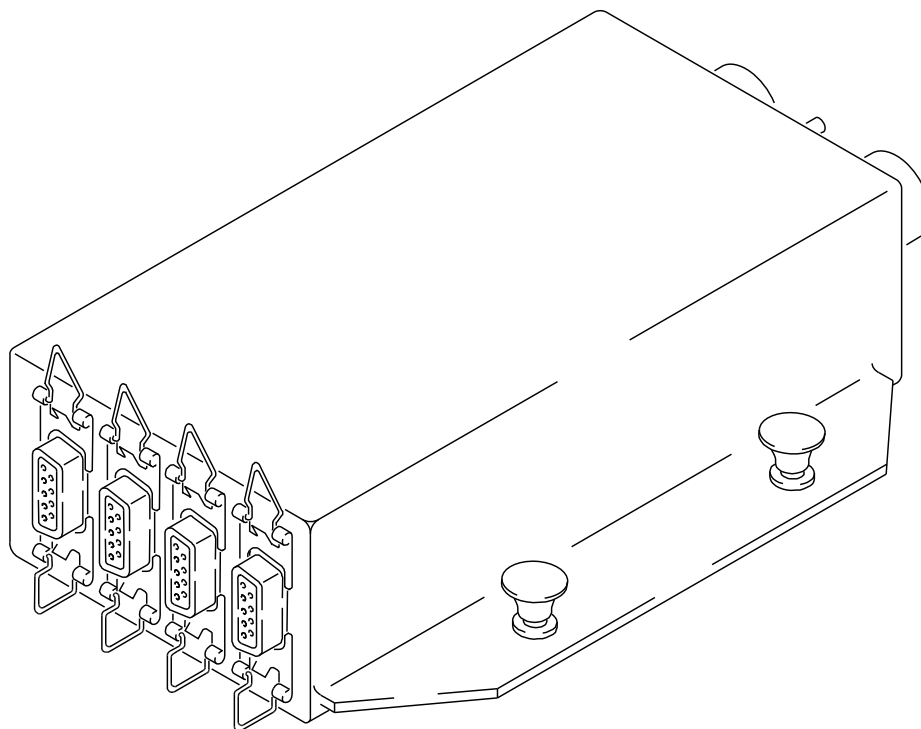
The ISPC monitors the current of the output. When an overload happens, the output will be switched off .

The ISPC monitors the leakage current (ground fault current) of the connected PEDs. When a leakage current is detected, the ISPC is deactivated.

The ISPC monitors the temperature for the outlet. If the temperature goes over the set value, the outlet is disabled.

The ISPC operates the status LED on the outlet unit. The status LED shows the power status of the outlet unit.

FLIGHT COMPARTMENT PC POWER SYSTEM - ISPC - GENERAL DESCRIPTION



IN-SEAT POWER CONVERTER
(EXAMPLE)

PC POWER SYSTEM - ISPC - GENERAL DESCRIPTION

1362528 S0000245946_V1

23-82-00-004

SIA ALL	EFFECTIVITY
	D633A101-SIA

23-82-00

